NTT DoCoMo

Manual for
mova SH506iC

FeliCa

mo))))
va
'04.7

DoCoMo 800MHz Digital

Thank you for selecting the "mova SH506iC".
Please read this manual thoroughly before and during use to ensure that your mova SH506iC is being operated properly and efficiently.
The mova SH506iC is designed to be your close partner.
Handle it carefully at all times to ensure its long-term performance.

Using Your mova

● Because your DoCoMo cellular/car phone uses signals, it cannot be used in places where signals do not reach, such as inside tunnels, underground, or in buildings. Even when you are outdoors it cannot be used in areas where the signal is weak or outside the service area. There may also be times when your mova cannot be used in high-rise buildings even though there are no obstructions in sight. Even when you are standing still, your calls may be interrupted despite the fact that the signal is strong enough for all 3 antenna marks to appear on the display.

● Please be considerate of the people around you when using the terminal in public places, crowded locations, or quiet areas.

● Because your mova uses waves, cases of tapping by a third party cannot be ruled out. However, since tapping prevention is automatically provided for every digital call, your conversations will be incomprehensible to the third party.

● When you talk on your mova, your voice is converted into a digital signal and sent to the other party. If you move to a location where signals are weak, the digital signal may not be reconverted properly, and the voice you hear may differ from its actual sound.

● Take care to record in another location any data that you personally store on your mova. DoCoMo cannot be held responsible in any way for the loss of data saved in the mova.

● DoCoMo assumes that SSL is used with your own judgment and responsibility. It should be noted that DoCoMo and the authentication firms separately indicated neither guarantee the security of the SSL, nor take responsibility for any damages caused by the use of SSL. Certifier: VeriSign Japan K.K., Baltimore Technologies Japan Co., Ltd.

● DoCoMo mova is exclusively for use in Japan.

● "i-mode", "Hypertalk", "i-αppli", "i-αppli search", "i-area", "i-navi link", "i-animation", "i-melody", "i-shot", "QUICKCAST", as well as logos for "i-mode", "i-αppli", "i-shot" are trademarks or registered trademarks of NTT DoCoMo, Inc.

Please read this manual thoroughly before use. Also, please read the separate device manuals included for the battery pack and adapter (including the battery charger) thoroughly before use. Should any questions concerning the contents of the manuals arise, please contact DoCoMo at one of the following telephone numbers.

For inquiries

When calling from an ordinary (landline) phone

0120-005-250 (toll free) (in English)
携帯・PHS OK

※ You can also call this number from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHS phones.
※ Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

General contact for the DoCoMo Information Center

When calling from DoCoMo mobile phones or PHS phones

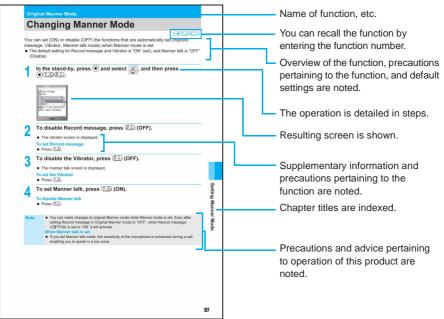**151** (no area code) (toll free) (in Japanese only)

※ You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.

In this "Manual for mova SH506iC", the "mova SH506iC" is referred to as "mova". Keep this in mind when using the manual.

Structure of This Manual

Layout of Manual

The layout of this manual is as illustrated below.

Name of function, etc.

You can recall the function by entering the function number.

Overview of the function, precautions pertaining to the function, and default settings are noted.

The operation is detailed in steps.

Resulting screen is shown.

Supplementary information and precautions pertaining to the function are noted.

Chapter titles are indexed.

Precautions and advice pertaining to operation of this product are noted.

(Sample page shown: "Original Manner Mode — Changing Manner Mode", page 97, chapter index "Setting Manner Mode")

- For key notations used in this manual, refer to P.9.
- This manual mainly explains operations performed from the TOP menu in Normal position.
- For information on the default settings, see the menu list on P.547 to P.551.
- The Quick Manual is included at the end of this manual. Detach and use if necessary.

- QR Code is a registered trademark of DENSO WAVE INCORPORATED.
- Microsoft and Windows are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S.A. and other countries.
- Windows and PowerPoint are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S.A. and other countries. (The official name of Windows is Microsoft® Windows® operating system)
- Microsoft Excel and Microsoft Word are product names of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S.A.
- AVE®-File produced by ACCESS CO., LTD. is used for data storage on this product. Copyright © 2000-2004 ACCESS CO., LTD.
- Java and all Java related trademarks in the USA and other countries are the trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc.
- Contains Macromedia® Flash™ Player technology by Macromedia, Inc., Copyright© 1995-2004 Macromedia, Inc. All rights reserved. Macromedia, Flash and Macromedia Flash are trademarks or registered trademarks of Macromedia, Inc. in the United States and other countries.
- The miniSD™ mark is a trademark of SD Association.
- Powered by JBlend™ © 1997-2004 Aplix Corporation. All rights reserved. JBlend and all JBlend-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.
- **picsel** — Document viewer is made possible by Picsel Technologies. Picsel, Picsel Powered, Picsel Viewer and the Picsel cube logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Picsel Technologies and/or its affiliates.
- FeliCa is a contactless IC card technology developed by Sony Corporation.
- FeliCa is a trademark of Sony Corporation.

Contents

1 ## Before Using the mova.. 27
Battery pack, Charging, Battery level, Power ON/OFF, Select language, Initial settings, Date/time settings, Send own number, Own number

2 ## Making Calls.. 41
Making a call, Redial, 186/184, Short dialing and Rejecting "wangiri" (one-ring) calls, Send pager*, WORLD CALL

3 ## Answering Calls.. 51
Answering calls, Received calls history, Earpiece volume, Ring volume, Accept calls, Reject calls, Rejecting by Reasons for Non-disclosure, Set mute seconds, Reject unknown

4 ## Setting the Response When You Cannot Take a Call 65
Answer hold, Drive mode, Missed calls, Record message, Quick record message, etc.

5 ## Using the Phonebook 75
Add to phonebook, Group settings, Search phonebook, Edit phonebook, Delete phonebook, Secret mode, Checking the registration status, 2-touch dialing, Copy item

6 ## Setting Manner Mode.. 95
Manner mode, Original manner mode, Vibrator, Keypad sound, Charge start sound/Charge end sound

7 ## Changing the Ring Tone and Other Sounds 101
Sound settings, Setting sound effects volume, Voice, My melody, Mail ring duration, Ring output

8 ## Using the Camera 115
Camera mode, Taking still pictures, Shoot movie, My picture, Edit images, DPOF, Character reader (OCR), Play movie, Editing movie, Bar code reader, etc.

9 ## Changing Display and Key Settings 183
Stand-by display, Brightness, Switch sub display, Power saver mode, Display light time, Called LED, Miscellaneous displays, etc.

10 ## Restricting Mobile Phone Operations... 199
Changing the terminal security code, Security setting, Keypad dial lock, Side key guard, Keypad lock, Remote keypad lock, Limit settings, Deleting all secret data

11 ## Using Timer and Schedule Functions... 213
Auto power ON, Auto power OFF, Timer, Alarm, Calendar, Schedule, ToDo list

12 ## Viewing Information Using i-mode.. 249
i-mode, i-mode menu, Displaying sites, My menu, Changing your i-mode password, Accessing the Internet, Bookmarks, Screen memo, Saving images, Save frame/stamp, Display Flash Movie, i-melody, Data file, Phone To/Mail To/Web To functions, i-mode settings, i-mode lock, etc.

Contents

* From January 2001, the DoCoMo pager changed its name to "QUICKCAST".

Features of the mova SH506iC

Remarkable i-mode!

The following services can be used if you register for i-mode.

Site Connection Service

This is an online service that allows access to various services offered by IPs (information providers) through simple keypad operations. For example, you can inquire about your bank balance, reserve various tickets, and download games or ring tones, all on your mova's display. (Service details may vary depending on the site. Separate subscription may also be necessary.)

i-mode mail

This service allows you to exchange mail using only your mobile phone. Mail can be exchanged between registered i-mode phones, or as e-mail via the Internet.

Internet Connection

You can view websites by directly entering its URL and connecting to the Internet. (Websites not compatible with i-mode may not display correctly.)

Receive up to 28.8kbps via packet transmission, enabling high speed downloads

Subscribing to i-mode enables you to receive up to 28.8kbps via packet transmission, giving you access to a wealth of information through site (program) connection services and connection to the Internet.

i-mode is a charged service that requires a subscription.

Camera

2.02 Effective megapixel
(2 million recorded pixels)
Auto focus camera

Shoot sharp, high quality images with the auto focus feature. Set image quality and size. High image quality is maintained when an image shot in 2 megapixel size is printed in 2L size. In addition, shoot with frame, use Continuous mode, or shoot according to scene to enliven your shooting experience. Also use miniSD memory cards to record long movies.
☞P.115

Various image editing functions

You can perform a variety of image editing functions such as correcting images, adding face effects and creating panoramic images while comparing with the original still picture. ☞P.158

Bar code reader

Use the camera to read barcodes (JAN codes and QR codes). Read characters can be added to the phonebook and read images and melodies can be played back.
☞P.179

Character reader (OCR)

The mova can shoot URLs, mail addresses, and phone numbers printed on paper, and convert them into characters. If a conversion result is an English word, use the e-dictionary function to search for the words in Japanese.
☞P.171

Frame/Stamp download

You can download frames/stamps from sites and use them when editing images.
☞P.277

IC Card

FeliCa

Use the mova in place of your wallet by placing the card over a reader/writer to pay for goods.
☞P.409

i-mode Function (Fees apply)

Flash movies

Flash movies enhance your experience of websites. You can also set Flash movies as the stand-by display.
☞P.184, P.277

i-melody

Save up to 60 items (64 chords: PCM format). Voice (or sound effects) ring tones are also supported.
☞P.278

Mail

i-shot
You can send still pictures shot with your mova to i-mode compatible phones as well as to other mobile phones and PCs (via the Internet).
☞P.377

Chat mail
Send and receive mail as if you are chatting with many people. ☞P.365

Quick reply mail
You can immediately reply to received mail while the mova is in Viewer position.
☞P.318

Quick i-shot
Send shot still pictures quickly to a person registered in the phonebook.
☞P.382

Abundant Network Services

Voice Mail Service (Fees apply)
● Subscription is necessary.
☞P.414

Call Waiting Service (Fees apply)
● Subscription is necessary.
☞P.420

Call Forwarding Service (Free)
● Subscription is necessary.
☞P.423

Caller ID Display Request Service (Free)
☞P.433

Useful Functions

High-definition 2.2 QVGA large-screen LCD
Displays shot still pictures and characters with rich expression.
LC Font is used, allowing you to adjust font size and width, making sites and mail easier to view.

Menu settings
Set downloaded images or images taken with the camera as the TOP menu, background for the shortcut menu, or an icon. You can also change the layout of icons.
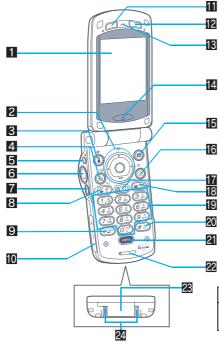☞P.196, P.480

Zoom menu
You can select phone functions, mail functions, camera, or My picture from menus using larger characters.
☞P.25
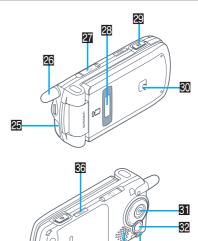
Assistant view
View and copy data from other functions during a call, etc. Check your schedule during a call or copy contents of memos while composing a mail.
☞P.478

Security settings
Features you do not wish to be seen, such as mail, My picture, Phonebook, history, and schedule, can be collectively kept private. ☞P.202

Side keys
The mova is equipped with 4-way key/clear key/OK key on the side. Navigate functions/operations in Viewer position as you would in Normal position. ☞P.9

You can enjoy i-αppli and i-αppli DX
Your choices for enjoying i-αppli have greatly expanded. You can set an i-αppli as the stand-by display, or use network interactive i-αppli to obtain real-time information and access data in your mova.
☞P.387

Infrared exchange/ Infrared remote control
By using the Infrared exchange function, data can be transmitted between mova phones. The mova can also operate devices that support infrared remote control, such as televisions.
☞P.435, P.442

Features a miniSD memory card
Compatible with compact miniSD memory cards. You can exchange data between the mova and miniSD memory card, or use the card with your PC. ☞P.444

Document viewer
Store PC files such as Word/ Excel/PowerPoint/PDF files on a miniSD memory card. Smoothly zoom in/out when viewing. ☞P.471

e-Dictionary & Book
If you come across a word in a message that is unfamiliar, look it up in the e-dictionary. Novels and encyclopedias can also be stored. ☞P.460

Improved character input Keitai Shoin 3
In addition to Predictive Conversion, grammatical information has been enhanced. Grammatical information is added to downloaded dictionaries, enabling smoother conversion. Pictographs and series of symbols can also be entered.

Component Names and Functions

Size (mm)	49 (W) × 103 (H) × 26 (D)
Weight (g)	Approximately 136 (with battery pack installed)

● Height and depth are for when the mova is closed.

1 Display (☞P.10)

2 Multi guide key (4-way key and OK key) (☞P.9)
- ● Press to display/select TOP menu, redial, received call history, record message/voice memo, and the shortcut menu, or to run/confirm an operation.
- ● Press OK key for at least 1 second to set/cancel Key guard (☞P.206).

3 i-mode/operation guidance key (i)
- ● Press to use i-mode (☞P.255).
- ● Press to perform a function that is displayed in the operation guidance (☞P.9).
- ● Press twice, or for at least 1 second to display the i-αppli screen (☞P.392).

4 Mail/A/a key (ⓐ)
- ● Press to use mail functions (☞P.306).
- ● When entering characters, switches between upper case and lower case (☞P.511).
- ● Press for at least 1 second in the character input screen to display the Insert phrase screen (☞P.517).

5 Side clear key (CLR)
- ● Press in place of the clear key when in Viewer position.

- ● Press in Viewer position to activate i-αppli when i-αppli stand-by is set (☞P.401).
- ● Press the side clear key for at least 1 second in the stand-by when the mova is closed or in Viewer position to illuminate the spotlight. Press the side clear key while lit to change the light color in the following order: White, red, green, blue, yellow, purple, light blue. Wait approximately 30 seconds, press a side key, or open and close the mova or rotate the display to turn off.

6 Side 4-way key (ⓝ) (☞P.9)
- ● Use in place of the multi guide (4-way) key when in Viewer position to select menu items, etc.
- ● Press in normal position to activate a function set as a shortcut in advance. (☞P.484)

7 Side OK key (⬤) (☞P.9)
Press in place of the multi guide OK key when in Viewer position to commit to a menu selection, etc.

6

8 Start/Speakerphone key (🔘)
- Press when making or answering a call.
- Press for at least 1 second while talking to switch to speakerphone (☞P.43).

9 ✗/Drive mode key (✗⌨)
- Press to enter "✗", " " (Dakuten), " " (Handakuten), or "↵" (line breaks) (☞P.513).
- Press for at least 1 second to set/ release Drive mode (☞P.66).

10 miniSD memory card slot cover
This covers the slot for inserting a miniSD memory card (☞P.445).
This should stay closed during normal use.

11 Right guidance key ⬜ (☞P.9)
Press in place of the camera/Operation guidance key when in Viewer position to perform a function displayed in the right operation guidance.

12 Left guidance key ⬜ (☞P.9)
Press in place of the i-mode/Operation guidance key when in Viewer position to perform a function displayed in the left operation guidance.

13 Earpiece
Emits the other party's voice.

14 Earpiece (Viewer position)
Emits the other party's voice when in Viewer position.

15 Camera/Operation guidance key (🔘)
- Press to use Camera mode (☞P.127).
- Press to perform a function that is displayed in the operation guidance (☞P.9).
- Press for at least 1 second to display My picture (☞P.149).

16 Phonebook key (🔘)
- Press to use the Phonebook (☞P.77).
- Press to change the type of character to enter (☞P.530).
- Press for at least 1 second in the character input screen to use "Internet" phrases (☞P.517).

17 Clear key/i-αppli stand-by (🔘)
- Press to delete entered phone numbers and characters (☞P.514).
- Press to return to the previous menu or page.
- Activate the i-αppli stand-by display: When an i-αppli is set as the stand-by, press to activate the i-αppli (☞P.401).

18 Power/End/On-hold key (🔘)
- Press for at least 2 seconds to turn the power ON/OFF (☞P.35).
- Press to disconnect a call, end i-mode, or to place a call on hold when called (☞P.66).

19 Dial/Character input keys
- Press to enter phone numbers (☞P.42).
- Press to enter characters (☞P.510).

20 #/Symbol key (#⌨)
- Press to enter "#" and symbols.
- Press for at least 1 second to set/ disable Manner mode (☞P.96).

21 View key (view)
- Assistant view: Press during a call or when using other functions to view Phonebook data or mail (☞P.478).
- Register shortcut: While "↵" is displayed, press for at least 1 second to add to the shortcut menu (☞P.480).
- Full-screen display when taking still pictures: Press in Camera mode (Still picture mode) before or after taking a picture to display the image full-screen (☞P.143).

22 Microphone
Transmits your voice.

23 External connector terminal
Terminal to connect external devices such as the AC adapter (☞P.31), DC adapter (☞P.33), and transmission cables.

24 Battery charging terminal
Terminal used when charging with desktop holder.

25 Infrared port
Port for sending and receiving infrared signals (☞P.437).

26 Antenna (☞P.35)
Do not touch or cover the antenna with your hand.

27 Earphone/Microphone terminal
Terminal for connecting the flat-type earphone microphone with switch (sold separately), etc. (☞P.502).
The conventional switch-equipped earphone microphone can be used when the earphone jack adapter (sold separately) is used.

28 Sub display

29 Shutter
- Shutter for the camera (☞P.127 to P.129)
- Press during a call or while operating in Viewer position to start Assistant view and check data from functions such as Phonebook and mail (☞P.480).

30 FeliCa Mark 🔲

The IC card is enclosed here. (Cannot be removed.) To use the IC card function, hold the mova with this mark facing the reader/writer (external device) (☞P.411).

31 Camera

Images taken are displayed on the screen (☞P.127).

32 Picture light/Called/Charge LED

- This light assists the camera when shooting in dark places (☞P.125).
- Flashes when the mova receives a call.
- Lights red during charging (☞P.31).

- Flashes yellow if LED display is set ON in Power saver mode. However, LED will not flash even when set to LED display ON, if sub display is ON (☞P.189).
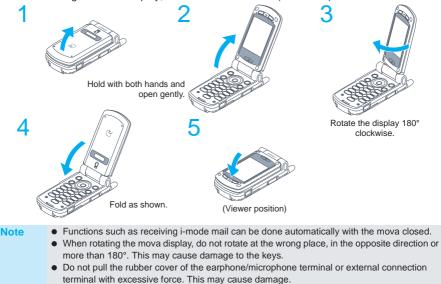
33 Strap eyelet (☞P.35)

34 Speaker

- Emits sounds such as the ring tone.
- You can use the speakerphone to hear the other party's voice, or the contents of recorded messages and Voice memos.

35 Rear cover (☞P.28)

36 Rear cover lock release button (PUSH) (☞P.28)

Opening the mova

Use the mova open (Normal position) or in Viewer position.

- It is recommended that the mova be closed when transporting, as shown in step 1.

Normal position

1
2
3

Hold with both hands and open gently.

(Normal position)
Push display all the way.

Viewer position

- To rotate the mova display from the Normal position, open the display partially until it stops (the position in step 2), and then rotate 180° clockwise.
- When rotating the mova display, a sound effect is heard (☞P.105).

1
2
3

Hold with both hands and open gently.

Rotate the display 180° clockwise.

4
5

Fold as shown.

(Viewer position)

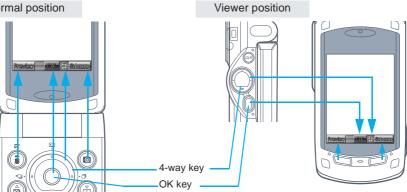| Note	● Functions such as receiving i-mode mail can be done automatically with the mova closed.
	● When rotating the mova display, do not rotate at the wrong place, in the opposite direction or more than 180°. This may cause damage to the keys.
	● Do not pull the rubber cover of the earphone/microphone terminal or external connection terminal with excessive force. This may cause damage.
	● Do not force open the miniSD memory card slot cover. This may cause damage.

■ The operation guidance

To use a function displayed in the operation guidance, press the corresponding key.

Normal position	Viewer position	Explanation
ⓘ	◯ (left guidance key)	Performs the function displayed on the bottom left.
●	◉	Performs the function displayed on the bottom center.
◎	◯ (right guidance key)	Performs the function displayed on the bottom right.
⊕	◉	The arrows indicate the direction in which operations can be performed.

Normal position   Viewer position

4-way key
OK key

■ Multi guide key (4-way key & OK key)

In this manual, operations using the multi guide key are noted as follows.

● Unless stated otherwise, you can also use ⓤ (side 4-way key) and ◉ (side OK key) instead of the multi guide key when in Viewer position.

If ● is noted, press the OK key.

● Press to run/confirm an operation.
● Use ◉ (side OK key) when in Viewer position.

If ◠, ◡, ◔, ◕, ◓, ◑, or ⊕ is noted, press the corresponding direction on the 4-way key.

● Use ⓤ (side 4-way key) when in Viewer position.

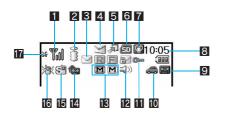| Note	● Refer to P.123 and after for operations during still picture shooting.
	● This manual mainly explains operations performed from the TOP menu in Normal position.

Notes on Viewer position

● Dial/Character input keys cannot be used.
● Characters cannot be entered using the dial/character keys.
● During 3-way Call or Call Waiting, you cannot switch to speakerphone.
● Direct selection cannot be performed using the dial/character keys.
● Autoscroll cannot be used with i-mode and mail.
● Shortcuts cannot be registered.
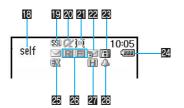● Power cannot be turned off.

Viewing the Display

The current status can be viewed, such as the power being on or functions being set. The display is lit temporarily when a key is pressed. The default setting is "15 seconds" (☞P.189).
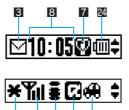
Icons displayed at the top of the screen

Icons displayed at the top of the screen

Icons displayed at the bottom of the screen

Sub display

● Displayed during stand-by.

1 Signal status 📶 (☞P.43)
Indicates the strength of the signal.

2 i-mode (☞P.255)
Indicates the i-mode status. (If this is not displayed, i-mode cannot be accessed.)

3 Mail received (☞P.313)
The i-mode mail receive status is displayed. Also, memory status for saving received mail is displayed.

4 Assistant view
(☞P.478)
Displays the type of the original application when checking data using the Assistant view. (The common icon "" is displayed during i-mode.)

5 Shortcut menu (☞P.480)
Displayed when displaying a screen that can be added to the Shortcut menu.

6 miniSD memory card (☞P.444)
 (Gray) : Displayed when a miniSD memory card is inserted.
 (Pink) : Displayed when a miniSD memory card is being viewed.
 flashing : Displayed when the miniSD memory card is being accessed.

7 Manner mode (☞P.96)
Displayed when Manner mode is set.

8 Clock (☞P.37)
Displays the time that is set.

9 Record message (☞P.69)
Displayed when Record message is set. "" (1 message), "" (2 messages) are displayed when there are recorded messages.

10 Drive mode (☞P.66)
Displayed when Drive mode is set.

11 Secret mode (☞P.93)
Displayed when Secret mode is set.

⓬ **Speakerphone** 🔊 (☞P.43)

Displayed when emitting the other party's voice and when playing Recorded messages, Voice memos (during call), and contents of Voice memos (stand-by) through the speaker.

⓭ **Memory status** Ⓜ (☞P.491)

Displays the status of the memory stored by My picture and i-αppli.

Ⓜ (Yellow) : Displayed when available memory level is low.

Ⓜ (Red) : Displayed when memory is full.

⓮ **New Voice mail message** 📧

(☞P.418)

If you are using Voice Mail Service, this is displayed when there are new messages.

⓯ **Silent** 🔕 (☞P.56)

Displayed when ring volume is set to "Silent".

⓰ **Vibrator** 📳 (☞P.98)

"📳" is displayed when the Vibrator is set.

⓱ **Battery saver mode** ✳ (☞P.486)

"✳" is displayed when you are inside the service area. "✳" flashes during calls when Battery saver mode is on.

⓲ **Self mode** self (☞P.504)

Displayed when incoming and outgoing calls, sending and receiving messages, i-mode functions, and infrared exchange are disabled.

⓳ **SSL** 🔒 (☞P.258)

Displayed when viewing SSL compatible i-mode sites.

⓴ **i-αppli** 𝕏 𝕏 𝕏 𝕏 (☞P.388)

Indicates the i-αppli status.

㉑ **Ir Data Exchange** 📶

● Lights when exchanging data using Infrared (Ir) data exchange with other devices (☞P.436).

● Flashes when infrared remote control is sending (☞P.442).

㉒ **Mail lock** 🔐 (☞P.202)

Displayed when Mail security is set.

㉓ **Lock** 🔒

Displayed when the Key guard (🔒: blue background) or Keypad lock (🔒: red background) is set (☞P.206 and P.207).

㉔ **Battery level/Charging**

🔋🔋🔋🔋➡🔋 (☞P.34)

Displays the status of the battery pack.

㉕ **i-navi link/"PlayStation" connection**

🎮 (☞P.506)

Displayed when connected to a car navigation system or a "PlayStation".

㉖ **Message R icon, Message F icon**

🇷 🇫 🇷 🇫 🇷 🇫 🇷 🇫 (☞P.293)

Displays the message reception status and message storage status of the i-mode center. However, the status may not always display even when there are messages held at the center.

㉗ **Hands-free** Ⓗ

Displayed when connected to a Hands-free supported device.

㉘ **Alarm/Schedule alarm/ToDo alarm** ⏰

(☞P.217, P.235, P.244)

Displayed when a Schedule alarm or an alarm is set on this date.

㉙ **Operation guidance**

Indicates operations that can be performed using key operations such as ⓘ, ●, and 📷.

㉚ **Display navigation**

Shows the directions in which the screen can be scrolled using the multi guide key.

● This may not apply, depending on the site's construction.

Note	● This manual uses the terms "miniSD memory card" or "miniSD", but the mova will display "miniSD" or "SD".
	● Some screenshots in this manual have been modified or abbreviated.
	● The display for the mova is manufactured using high-precision technology. Still, the display may occasionally contain pixels that fail to light or remain permanently lit. This is not a malfunction.
	Viewing the Display
	● The explanations in this manual are based on the default settings. Therefore, screens shown in this manual may differ from your mova, depending on the settings that have been made after purchase.
	● Some screenshots may not look the same as the actual site screen when a Flash movie is displayed.

Safety Precautions (To Be Strictly Followed)

- Before use, read these "Safety Precautions" carefully and use your mova properly.
  Keep this manual in a safe place for future reference.
- These safety precautions contain information intended to prevent bodily injury to the user and to surrounding people, as well as damage to property, and must be observed at all times.

The following symbols indicate the different degrees of injury and damage that may occur if information provided is not observed and the mova is used improperly.

⚠ **Danger**	This symbol indicates that "death or serious bodily injury may directly and immediately result from improper use".
⚠ **Warning**	This symbol indicates that "death or serious bodily injury may result from improper use".
⚠ **Caution**	This symbol indicates that "serious bodily injury and/or property damage may result from improper use".

The following symbols indicate specific directions.

🚫 Don't	Indicates a prohibited action.		
🚫 Do not Disassemble	Indicates not to disassemble the device.	🚫 No liquids	Indicates not to use the device near water or get it wet.
🚫 No wet hands	Indicates not to handle the device with wet hands.		

❗ Instruction	Indicates that instructions specified are compulsory (must be followed).	
🔌 Unplug	Indicates that the power cord must be unplugged from the power outlet.	

These "Safety Precautions" are explained in the following 5 categories.

Handling the mova, Battery Pack and Adapters (Charger) (General)

⚠ Danger
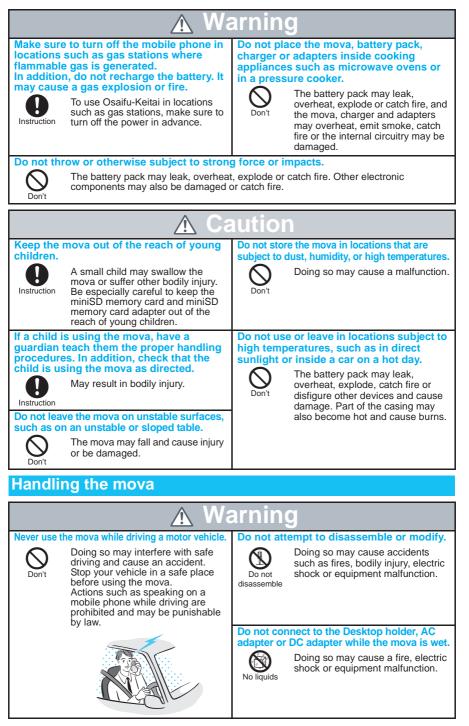
Use only the battery packs, adapters, and chargers specified by NTT DoCoMo for use with the mova.

❗ Instruction   The use of devices other than those specified may result in the battery pack and other parts leaking, overheating, exploding, or catching fire.

- Battery pack SH007
- Desktop holder SH006
- AC adapter SH002
- Doccimo DC adapter SH2001

For information on other compatible products, contact a DoCoMo retailer.

⚠ Warning

Make sure to turn off the mobile phone in locations such as gas stations where flammable gas is generated.
In addition, do not recharge the battery. It may cause a gas explosion or fire.

! Instruction

To use Osaifu-Keitai in locations such as gas stations, make sure to turn off the power in advance.

Do not place the mova, battery pack, charger or adapters inside cooking appliances such as microwave ovens or in a pressure cooker.

🚫 Don't

The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire, and the mova, charger and adapters may overheat, emit smoke, catch fire or the internal circuitry may be damaged.

Do not throw or otherwise subject to strong force or impacts.

🚫 Don't

The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire. Other electronic components may also be damaged or catch fire.

⚠ Caution

Keep the mova out of the reach of young children.

! Instruction

A small child may swallow the mova or suffer other bodily injury. Be especially careful to keep the miniSD memory card and miniSD memory card adapter out of the reach of young children.

Do not store the mova in locations that are subject to dust, humidity, or high temperatures.

🚫 Don't

Doing so may cause a malfunction.

If a child is using the mova, have a guardian teach them the proper handling procedures. In addition, check that the child is using the mova as directed.

! Instruction

May result in bodily injury.

Do not use or leave in locations subject to high temperatures, such as in direct sunlight or inside a car on a hot day.

🚫 Don't

The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode, catch fire or disfigure other devices and cause damage. Part of the casing may also become hot and cause burns.

Do not leave the mova on unstable surfaces, such as on an unstable or sloped table.

🚫 Don't

The mova may fall and cause injury or be damaged.

Handling the mova

⚠ Warning

Never use the mova while driving a motor vehicle.

🚫 Don't

Doing so may interfere with safe driving and cause an accident. Stop your vehicle in a safe place before using the mova.
Actions such as speaking on a mobile phone while driving are prohibited and may be punishable by law.

Do not attempt to disassemble or modify.

🚫 Do not disassemble

Doing so may cause accidents such as fires, bodily injury, electric shock or equipment malfunction.

Do not connect to the Desktop holder, AC adapter or DC adapter while the mova is wet.

🚫 No liquids

Doing so may cause a fire, electric shock or equipment malfunction.

13

⚠ Warning

Turn off the mova in areas where the use of mobile phones is prohibited, such as in aircraft or hospitals.

Instruction

The mova may interfere with the operation of sensitive devices and electronic medical equipment. In addition, make sure that the Auto power ON function is set to "OFF" before turning the mova OFF. Follow the instructions given by the respective medical facilities regarding the use of mobile phones on their premises. Actions such as speaking on a mobile phone while on board an aircraft is prohibited and may be punishable by law.

Turn the mova off near high-precision electronic devices or devices that use weak electronic signals.

Instruction

The mova may interfere with the operation of sensitive electronic equipment.

Take particular care with the following devices
Hearing aids, implanted cardiac pacemakers, implanted cardioverter-defribrillators, and other electronic medical equipment. Fire alarms, automatic doors and other equipment controlled by electronic signals. If you use an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted cardioverter-defribrillator or other medical equipment, contact the respective manufacturer or vendor to check whether the operation of the equipment is affected by waves.

If you are using electronic medical equipment, do not put the mova in your breast pocket or in the inside pocket of your jacket.

Don't

Using the mova in close proximity to electronic medical equipment may cause the equipment to malfunction.

Do not look directly at the illuminated Picture light, or point it directly into someone's eyes.

Don't

Doing so may damage eyesight. In addition, this may cause momentary sight loss or startle someone and cause an accident.

To remove the miniSD memory card, press the miniSD memory card inward. Do not immediately let go of the miniSD memory card with your finger.
To insert, push the miniSD memory card firmly into the slot, and hold with your finger for a moment. Keep your face away from the miniSD memory card slot when inserting or removing the miniSD memory card.

Don't

Immediately removing your finger may cause the miniSD memory card to pop out, resulting in injury.

Do not aim the Infrared (Ir) data port towards another person's eyes when using infrared exchange.

Don't

Doing so may damage eyesight. In addition, do not aim the infrared data port towards another infrared device as this may cause the device to malfunction.

If you have a weak heart, take extra precautions when setting functions such as the Vibrator and Ring tone volume for incoming calls.

Instruction

Various settings may have effects on your heart.

⚠ Caution

In some types of vehicles, use of the mova may interfere with the vehicle's operation of electronic equipment.

Instruction

In this situation please do not use the mova as doing so may interfere with safe driving.

Do not let the mova come close to or enclose magnetic cards and other magnetic recording media.

Don't

The stored magnetic data in cash cards, credit cards, telephone cards and floppy disks, etc. may be erased.

Never swing the mova by its strap.

Don't

The mova may strike you or others around you, resulting in bodily injury or damage to the mova or other property.

Do not enclose the strap when closing the mova.

Don't

Doing so may cause damage to the display.

⚠ Caution

Do not leave the camera lens exposed to direct sunlight or other powerful light sources for a long period of time. 🚫 Don't The lens may cause fires or malfunctions.	**Keep the mova dry.** 🚫 No liquids Exposing the mova to liquids such as water or pet urine may cause overheating, electric shock or malfunctions. Please be careful about where you handle the mova.
Use of the mova may cause skin irritations such as itchiness, rashes or eczema in some people. If this occurs, immediately stop using the mova and seek medical treatment. ❗ Instruction Metal is used in the following components. Multi guide key, i-mode key, camera key, mail key, phonebook key, side 4-way key, and rear camera area (chromium plated)	**Before use, confirm that there are no foreign objects stuck to the back of the mova.** ❗ Instruction Pushpins or thumbtacks stuck to the magnet in the rear speaker may cause unexpected injuries.
	If you hear thunder while using the mova outdoors, immediately turn off the mova and take shelter in a safe location. ❗ Instruction There is a risk of being struck by lightning and suffering electric shock.

Handling the Battery Pack

Check the type of battery recorded on the battery pack label.

Display	Battery type
Li-ion	Lithium-ion

⚠ Danger

Do not remove the seal wrapped around the battery pack, or disassemble or modify the battery pack. In addition, do not solder directly to the mova. 🚫 Do not disassemble The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire. Help!	**Do not use or charge batteries that are wet with water, rain, seawater, pet urine, etc.** 🚫 No liquids The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.
	Do not throw the battery pack into a fire. 🚫 Don't The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.
	Do not use or leave the battery pack in places where it is exposed to high temperatures, such as near an open flame or heating appliance. 🚫 Don't The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.
Do not connect metallic objects such as wires across the terminals. In addition, do not carry or store the battery pack with metallic necklaces, etc. 🚫 Don't The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.	**Keep the battery pack dry.** 🚫 No liquids Exposing the battery pack to liquids such as water or pet urine may cause overheating, electric shock or malfunctions. Please be careful about where you handle the battery pack.

15

⚠ Danger

If you are having difficulty fitting the battery pack into the mova, do not use excessive pressure to force the battery into place. Check that the battery pack is facing the correct direction before you attach it.

🚫 Don't

The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.

Do not puncture, hit with a hammer or step on the battery pack.

🚫 Don't

The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.

If the battery fluid comes into contact with your eyes, do not rub your eyes but immediately rinse your eyes with clean water. Then seek prompt medical treatment.

❗ Instruction

Battery fluid is harmful to your eyes and may result in the loss of eyesight.

⚠ Warning

If you notice anything unusual about the battery pack, such as an unusual odor, overheating, discoloration or deformation during use, charging or storage, immediately remove it from the mova and do not use it.

🚫 Don't

Continued use of a faulty battery pack may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.

If battery fluid comes into contact with your skin or clothing, stop using the mova immediately and rinse it off with clean water.

❗ Instruction

Battery fluid is harmful to your skin.

If the battery pack is not fully charged after the specified time has elapsed, stop charging.

❗ Instruction

The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.

Do not use or leave the battery pack in locations subject to high temperatures, such as in direct sunlight or inside a car on a hot day.

🚫 Don't

The battery pack may leak, overheat or suffer performance loss and a reduced service life.

If the battery pack leaks or emits an unusual odor, immediately move it as far away as possible from any flame or fire.

❗ Instruction

The battery fluid is flammable and could ignite, causing a fire or explosion.

⚠ Caution

Do not dispose of used battery packs in ordinary garbage.

🚫 Don't

This may cause fires and environmental damage. Place tape over the terminals to insulate unneeded battery packs, and take them to a DoCoMo retailer or institution that handles used batteries in your area.

If the battery pack will not be used for a long time, remove from the mova and store in a cool, dry place.

❗ Instruction

The battery pack may suffer performance loss and reduced service life if not stored in a cool, dry place.
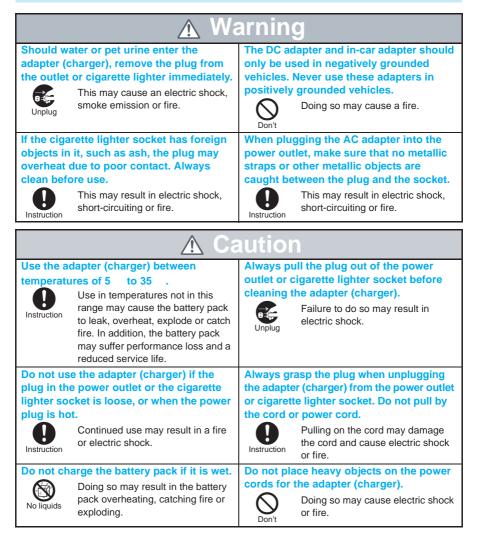
Do not store or leave the battery empty.

🚫 Don't

If the battery pack will not be used for a long time, charge once every 6 months or so.

Handling the Adapters and Charger

⚠ Warning

Take care not to short-circuit the charging terminal when the adapter or charger is connected to a power outlet or cigarette lighter. Also, take care not to allow any part of your body (fingers, etc.) to come into contact with the charging terminal. Don't — Failure to observe this precaution may result in a fire, electric shock, equipment malfunction or bodily injury.	**Do not place the charger and desktop holder on an unstable surface during charging. Do not cover or wrap the charger or desktop holder with clothing or bedding.** Don't — Doing so may cause the mova to fall out of the charger or heat to build up, resulting in a fire or malfunction.
Never use the adapter and charger in places where it is likely to get wet from water, rain, seawater, pet urine, etc. No liquids — Doing so may result in accidents such as overheating or catching fire or damage (insufficient charging).	**Never use the AC adapter, desktop holder or the DC adapter in humid or steamy locations such as a bathroom.** Don't — Failure to observe this precaution may result in electric shock.
Do not plug too many appliances into a single socket. Don't — Doing so may cause a fire, electric shock or other malfunction.	**Do not throw or otherwise subject to strong force or impacts.** Don't — This could cause bodily injury, electric shock, or overheating due to adapter (and charger) damage.
To prevent fires, do not charge in places where flammable gases accumulate. Don't — Doing so may result in explosions or fires.	**Do not leave the cord of the adapter (or charger) near heating appliances.** Don't — Doing so may result in melting the cord insulation, causing a fire or electric shock.
Do not handle the cord and plug of the adapter (charger) with wet hands. No wet hands — Failure to observe this precaution may result in electric shock.	**Keep the adapter (charger) dry.** No liquids — Exposing the adapter to liquids such as water or pet urine may cause overheating, electric shock or malfunctions. Please be careful about where you handle the adapter.
Do not use if the adapter's (charger's) cord or power cord is damaged. Don't — Doing so may cause electric shock, overheating, or fire.	**Do not attempt to disassemble or modify.** Do not disassemble — Doing so may cause a fire, electric shock or other malfunctions.
Always use the specified power supply and voltage. **Using the incorrect voltage may cause a fire or malfunction. Using overseas may also cause malfunctions.** Instruction — AC adapter: 100V AC (Use only with household 100V outlets.) DC adapter: 12/24V DC (for negatively grounded automobiles)	**If the fuse in the DC adapter or in-car adapter blows, always replace it with a fuse of the specified type.** Instruction — Using the incorrect fuse may cause a fire or malfunction. Refer to the respective manuals for information on the correct fuse specifications.
Wipe off any dust on the plug. Instruction — Failure to do so may cause a fire.	**Unplug the power cord from the outlet when not using for a long time.** Unplug — Failure to do so may cause an electric shock, equipment malfunction, or fire.

⚠ Warning

Should water or pet urine enter the adapter (charger), remove the plug from the outlet or cigarette lighter immediately. Unplug — This may cause an electric shock, smoke emission or fire.	**The DC adapter and in-car adapter should only be used in negatively grounded vehicles. Never use these adapters in positively grounded vehicles.** Don't — Doing so may cause a fire.
If the cigarette lighter socket has foreign objects in it, such as ash, the plug may overheat due to poor contact. Always clean before use. Instruction — This may result in electric shock, short-circuiting or fire.	**When plugging the AC adapter into the power outlet, make sure that no metallic straps or other metallic objects are caught between the plug and the socket.** Instruction — This may result in electric shock, short-circuiting or fire.

⚠ Caution

Use the adapter (charger) between temperatures of 5 to 35 . Instruction — Use in temperatures not in this range may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or catch fire. In addition, the battery pack may suffer performance loss and a reduced service life.	**Always pull the plug out of the power outlet or cigarette lighter socket before cleaning the adapter (charger).** Unplug — Failure to do so may result in electric shock.
Do not use the adapter (charger) if the plug in the power outlet or the cigarette lighter socket is loose, or when the power plug is hot. Instruction — Continued use may result in a fire or electric shock.	**Always grasp the plug when unplugging the adapter (charger) from the power outlet or cigarette lighter socket. Do not pull by the cord or power cord.** Instruction — Pulling on the cord may damage the cord and cause electric shock or fire.
Do not charge the battery pack if it is wet. No liquids — Doing so may result in the battery pack overheating, catching fire or exploding.	**Do not place heavy objects on the power cords for the adapter (charger).** Don't — Doing so may cause electric shock or fire.

Handling Mobile Phones Near Electronic Medical Equipment

The safety precautions detailed here conform to the guidelines drawn up by the Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference Japan, regarding the protection of electronic medical equipment from waves emitted by mobile phones.

⚠ Warning

If you use an implanted cardiac pacemaker or an implanted cardioverter-defribrillator, keep mobile phones (with an output power of 0.8W) at a distance of at least 22cm, and car phone or shoulder phones (with an output power of 2.0W) at a distance of at least 30cm. **Instruction** Waves may affect the operation of implanted cardiac pacemakers and implanted cardioverter-defribrillators if used in close proximity.	**Observe the following in hospitals or other medical facilities.** **Instruction** ● Do not take your mobile phone into operating rooms, ICUs (Intensive Care Units) or CCUs (Coronary Care Units). ● Turn off your mobile phone inside hospital wards. ● Turn off your mobile phone even when you are in an area outside hospital wards, such as a hospital lobby, since electronic medical equipment may be in use nearby. ● Where a medical facility has specific instructions prohibiting the carrying and use of mobile phones, observe those instructions strictly. ● If your mobile phone has the Auto power function set ON, disable this function before turning off your mobile phone.
Turn off your mobile phone in crowded places such as rush-hour trains in case somebody nearby is using an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted cardioverter-defribrillator. **Instruction** Waves may affect the operation of implanted cardiac pacemakers and implanted cardioverter-defribrillators if used in close proximity.	**Patients receiving medical treatment away from a hospital or medical facility (e.g. home treatment) who are using electronic medical equipment other than implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted cardioverter-defribrillators should consult the respective manufacturers for information regarding the effects of waves on the equipment.** **Instruction** Waves may affect the operation of implanted cardiac pacemakers and implanted cardioverter-defribrillators if used in close proximity.

Handling Precautions

General Notes

- Do not expose to water. The mova, battery pack and adapters (charger) are not waterproof. Do not use them in humid or steamy locations such as bathrooms and avoid exposing them to rain and other forms of moisture. If you carry your mova close to your skin, perspiration may cause internal components to corrode and result in a malfunction. Note that if the problem is found to be due to moisture, it will not be covered by the warranty and in some cases may be irreparable. Even when repairs are possible, repair charges will be incurred since the damage is not covered by the warranty.
- Clean only with a soft, dry cloth. The surface of the mova's LCD has a special coating to improve the visibility of the color display. Forceful rubbing of the LCD with a dry cloth to clean it may scratch the LCD surface. Handle the mova carefully and clean it using a soft dry cloth (such as the type used for eyeglasses). Note also that the LCD coating may peel off or stain if moisture or soiling is left on the surface for a long period. Never use chemicals such as alcohol, thinners, benzene, or detergents, as these agents may erase the printing on the mova or cause discoloration.
- Do not use in places where magnetic fields exist, such as near electrical appliances, audiovisual equipment or OA equipment, or where there are electromagnetic waves (near microwave ovens, speakers, TVs, radios, fax machines, fluorescent lamps, word processors, inverter air conditioners, electromagnetic cooking appliances, etc.). Interference may become louder or calling may become impossible if affected by magnetic fields or electrical interference (especially when microwave ovens are used).
- Interference may arise when trucks, cars or motorcycles pass nearby.
- Keep away from places where the mova is likely to become soiled.
- The back of the mova (speaker) and the earpiece contain parts that generate magnetic waves. Keep credit cards and other objects likely to be affected by magnetic waves away from the rear of the mova (speaker) and microphone. Cards may become unusable if not kept away.
- Occasionally clean the charging terminal with a dry cotton swab.
  Soiled connection terminals may result in poor connections and loss of power. Also, as it may cause insufficient charging performance, keep the terminal clean with a dry cloth or cotton swab.
- Use the mova in locations within a normal temperature range (5 ºC to 35 ºC).
- Do not place the mova near an air conditioning vent. Condensation formed due to rapid changes in humidity may cause internal corrosion and the mova may malfunction.
- Do not leave the mova in locations where it may be subject to excessive pressure or weight. Do not put the mova in a bag filled with other objects or in the hip pocket of clothing when you sit down. Such actions may result in faults or damage to the LCD or other internal components, and are not covered by your warranty. In addition, dust and other particles on the LCD or keys may scratch the LCD. Please clean the mova periodically.
- If you use an electrical outlet with a feature to prevent the plug being removed accidentally, follow the instructions in the outlet user manual.
- Read the separate manuals supplied with the battery pack and adapters (charger) carefully.
- If the mova is used in a criminal manner that inconveniences the public, the owner may be subject to punishment under legal and/or regulatory guidelines (such as the nuisance prevention ordinance).

> **Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.**

Handling the mova

- Using the mova close to ordinary (landline) phones, or TVs or radios may affect the operation of such equipment. Move as far away as possible from such items before using the mova.
- Take care to record any data that you personally register on your mova in another location. DoCoMo cannot be held responsible in any way for the loss of data registered in the mova.
- Take care not to put the mova in the back pocket of your pants or skirt and then sit on it. Also, do not put the mova where it may be subjected to excessive weight or pressure, such as the bottom of a briefcase. Doing so may cause a malfunction.
- Do not close the mova while the strap is caught between the folding parts. Doing so may damage the mova and cause it to malfunction.
- Avoid using the mova in extremely high or low temperatures. Use the mova at temperatures between 5 ºC to 35 ºC.
- Continuous talking and consecutive camera shooting may result in the battery becoming warm. This is not a malfunction.
- Leaving the miniSD memory card slot cover open may result in damage caused by impact. Always close the miniSD memory card cover after inserting or removing the miniSD memory card.
- The mova may become warm during operation or charging. This is not a malfunction. No action is necessary.

Notes About the miniSD Memory Card

- Do not insert or remove the miniSD memory card while the mova is on. Also, do not turn the power off, remove the battery, or subject the mova to severe impact while the miniSD memory card is being accessed. ("🆂🅳" flashes.) Doing so may damage data in the card, and cause a malfunction.
- When removing the miniSD memory card, gently push in the miniSD memory card in until you hear a click, and then remove the miniSD memory card. Forcefully removing the miniSD memory card may damage the miniSD memory card or the mova.

Handling the Battery Pack

- The battery pack is a consumable product. Though usage time varies, if the battery usage time becomes extremely short even after fully charging, it is time to change the battery. Purchase a new battery pack.
- Shorting the battery pack by touching the terminals with a metal object causes a large amount of electricity to flow, and may overheat the battery. Please handle with care.
- Do not dispose of used battery packs in ordinary garbage. Apply insulation tape to the terminals of used battery packs and return them to a DoCoMo retailer. If there are separate battery disposal facilities in your area, dispose of the battery packs in accordance with local regulations.
- When using for the first time or for the first time in a while, be sure to charge the battery pack first.
- The usage time for a battery depends on usage conditions and the deterioration of the battery pack itself.
- Charge the battery in a location within the correct temperature range (5 ºC to 35 ºC).

Handling the Adapters (Charger)

- Always charge the battery pack with the specified adapter (charger). Failure to use the specified adapter (charger) may result in accidents. In addition, only use the adapter (charger) for charging the battery pack.
- The adapter (charger) may become warm during charging. This is normal and not a malfunction. No action is necessary.
- Do not charge the battery pack in the following locations:
  - Where the ambient temperature is lower than 5 ºC or higher than 35 ºC
  - In very humid or dusty locations or in locations exposed to strong vibrations
  - Close to ordinary (landline) phones, TVs or radios
- Do not use the DC adapter to charge the battery when the car is not running. This may cause the car battery to run down.

Standard Accessories and Basic Options

Standard Accessories

mova SH506iC
● Rear cover SH006/ warranty

miniSD memory card

miniSD memory card Adapter

● miniSD memory card/miniSD memory card adapter user's manual

(Sample: 16MB)

(Sample)

User's manual
(this manual)

"ｉ　　　　　　"
(Separate mova "SH506iC i-αppli" manual)

Manual

ｉアプリのご紹介

☞Refer to P.580 for the Quick Manual

Battery pack SH007

Basic Options

AC adapter SH002
● Includes warranty

Desktop holder SH006

Refer to P.552 for other optional components.

Making Menu Selections

Functions are set or registered after displaying a menu.
- Menus can be displayed using the following methods.
  - Selecting the function by starting from the TOP menu
  - Recalling the function by entering the function number
  - Selecting the function from the shortcut menu (☞P.480)
  - Selecting the phone function, mail function, camera, or My picture display using larger characters (Zoom menu)
  - Selecting an item from the submenu displayed in the operation guidance
- Press 🛈 in a menu to switch in order between the TOP menu, Shortcut menu (☞P.480), and Zoom menu. Press ⦿ in the stand-by display to display the previous menu.

Selecting Functions from the TOP Menu

Use and set functions from menus separated into 9 icons. (Refer to P.547 to P.551 menu setting methods.)
- When the icon is selected, the function details are displayed scrolling above the operation guidance.
- You can change the icons (Menu icon settings☞P.196).
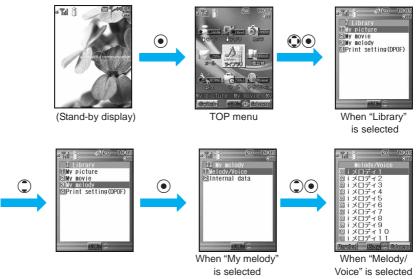
Icon	Menu	Function
i-mode	i-mode	1 📖Menu
		2 Message
		3 Bookmark
		4 Check new message
		5 Screen memo
		6 Last URL
		7 URL history
		8 Go to location
		9 i-mode setting
i-αppli	i-αppli	1 Software list
		2 i-αppli volume
		3 Soft description
		4 Auto start
		5 Error display
Camera	Camera	Activate Camera
Mail	Mail	1 Inbox
		2 Outbox
		3 Unsent messages
		4 Compose message
		5 Chat mail
		6 Compose shortmail
		7 Check new message
		8 Receive option
		9 Mail setting

Icon	Menu	Function
Library	Library	1 My picture
		2 My movie
		3 My melody
		4 Print setting (DPOF)
Phonebook	Phonebook	Search phonebook
Settings	Settings	1 Sound
		2 Display
		3 General settings
		4 Network services
		5 Phone settings
		6 Support menu
		0 Own number
		* Initial setting
		# Reset settings
Tools	Tools	1 Schedule
		2 ToDo list
		3 Calculator
		4 Money Calc
		5 Timer
		6 Alarm
		7 Memo pad
		8 Receive Ir data
		9 miniSD manager
KEITAI viewer	KEITAI viewer	1 e-Dict/Book
		2 Document viewer

23

In the stand-by, press ⦿, select a menu or icon with ⬡, and then press ⦿. Additionally, select a function with ⬦, and then press ⦿.

● When in Viewer position, press ◖ in the Stand-by display, select an icon with ◖, and then press ◖. Select a function with ◖, and then press ◖.

(Stand-by display)   TOP menu   When "Library"
                                                                  is selected

When "My melody"   When "Melody/
is selected   Voice" is selected

● To reselect a function, press ⓒⁱʳ in Normal position or ⓒⁱʳ in Viewer position and return to the previous screen.
● If Zoom menu or Shortcut menu is displayed when ⦿ or ◖ is pressed in the stand-by display, press ⓘ or ⬡ (left guidance key) to return to the TOP menu. Press ⦿ or ◖ in the stand-by to display the previously used menu.

Recalling the Function by Entering the Function Number <Direct Selection>

The desired function can be recalled quickly by entering the function number.
 "1" to "6" are general settings, "7" is the Library, "8" is Tools, and "9" Keitai viewer for the first number of the function number.
Refer to P.547 to P.551 for details on the function number (key operation) for each function.
This will describe "Select ring tone" using function number "121".

● The desired function cannot be recalled by entering the function number in Viewer position. Recall desired functions by selecting functions (☞P.23 and 24) from the TOP menu.

Example: Function number "121" for "Select ring tone"

1 **In the stand-by, press ⦿①②③①.**

● The screen for the specified function (Select ring tone) is displayed.

| Note | ● Functions cannot be accessed using Direct selection from the Shortcut menu or Zoom menu. |

Using the in-call menu

If ⊙ is pressed during a call, functions that can be used during calls are displayed.
● Voice memo (during call) (☞P.487)
● FAX mode (☞P.501)
● Date settings (☞P.36)
● Battery saver mode (☞P.486)
● Own number (☞P.39)
After operations are completed, press ⊚CLR a few times to return to the call display.

Selecting a Function from the Simple Menu <Zoom Menu>

In the Zoom menu, the basic functions for phone, mail, camera, and My picture can be performed with a large character display.
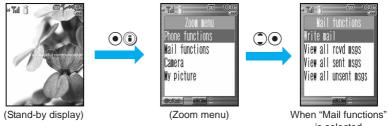
Menu	Function	Displayed screen	Operating procedures
Phone functions	View phonebook	Search phonebook	P.86
	Redial	Display 1 item	P.44
	Received calls	Display 1 item	P.54
	Own phone number	Phone number verification screen	P.39
Mail functions	Write mail	Screen to enter receiver/subject/message for Compose message	P.307
	View all rcvd msgs	Subject list/sender list/still picture, name, and subject display/subject and text display screen for all received messages	P.325
	View all sent msgs	Subject list/receiver list/still picture, name, and subject display/subject and text display screen for all sent messages	P.325
	View all unsent msgs	Subject list/receiver list/still picture, name, and subject display/subject and text display screen for all unsent messages	P.325
Camera	Activate camera	Still picture shooting screen	P.127
My picture	–	List of images in the Camera image folder	P.149

In the stand-by, press ⊙, and then press ⊞ (Switch) to switch the menu in order. Select Zoom menu, select function with ◯, and then press ⊙.
● When in viewer position, press ❶ in the stand-by display, and then press ◁ (left guidance key) to switch the menu in order. Select Zoom menu, select a function with ❷, and then press ❶.

(Stand-by display)　　　　(Zoom menu)　　　　When "Mail functions" is selected

● To reselect a function, press ⊚CLR in Normal position or ⊙ in Viewer position.
● Press ⊙ or ❶ in the stand-by to display the previously used menu.

25

Note	● When operating from the Zoom menu, character size for mail and character input can be changed. However, when operations are performed from the Zoom menu again, characters will be displayed in large size. Changes to font size are not reflected when operations are performed from the TOP menu. ● The displays for Phonebook, mail, and image lists can be changed. However, when operations are performed from the Zoom menu again, Phonebook will be displayed without still pictures, mail will be displayed by subject list, and image lists will be displayed in 9 frames. In addition, even if you make changes in the Zoom menu, the list of operations performed from the TOP menu will not change. (The image list is refreshed.) ● Refer to P.127 for operations of shooting still pictures.

Selecting a Function from a Submenu

If operation guidance "Submenu" is displayed, press ⓘ or ⭤ (right guidance key) to display the functions (Submenu) that are available from that screen.

Explanations in this manual are based on using function menus by directly entering function numbers.
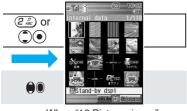
However, function numbers may not be entered for some submenus. In such cases, press ⟳ and select the function, and then press ⦿.

● The desired function cannot be recalled by entering the function number in Viewer position. Select the desired function with ⬤, and then press ⬤.

Normal position

Viewer position

(right guidance key)

(Submenu)
Items that cannot be selected are displayed in gray.

When "Switch view mode" is selected

When "16 Picture viewer" is selected

● To reselect a function, press ⊗CLR in Normal position or ⓒ in Viewer position.

1

Before Using the mova
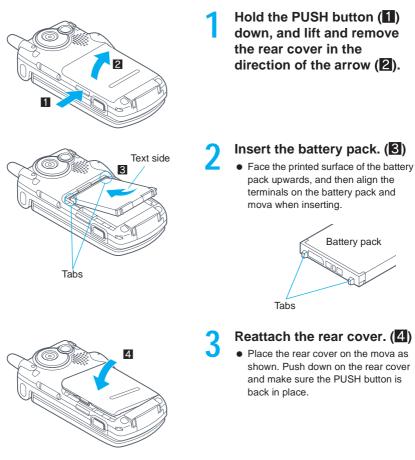
Attaching and Removing the Battery Pack

Use the battery pack SH007, especially designed for the mova.
Always turn the power off before attaching or removing the battery pack.
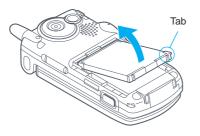
Attaching the battery pack

1 **Hold the PUSH button (■1) down, and lift and remove the rear cover in the direction of the arrow (■2).**

Text side

Tabs

2 **Insert the battery pack. (■3)**
- Face the printed surface of the battery pack upwards, and then align the terminals on the battery pack and mova when inserting.

Battery pack

Tabs

3 **Reattach the rear cover. (■4)**
- Place the rear cover on the mova as shown. Push down on the rear cover and make sure the PUSH button is back in place.

Note	● Use of unnecessary force when inserting or removing the battery pack may damage the battery pack connection terminal on the mova.
	● Only use the specified battery pack.
	● Close the rear cover securely. If not secured, the rear cover may detach and vibrations may cause the battery pack to fall out.
	● Do not attach or remove the battery pack while the mova is in Viewer position. The display may be scratched.

█ Removing the battery pack

Make sure that the mova is turned off before removing.

Tab

1 **Remove the rear cover following the step 1 on P.28.**

2 **Remove the battery pack.**
   ● The battery pack is equipped with a tab to assist removal. Place your finger on the tab so as not to apply unnecessary force, and then lift the battery pack to remove.

Note	● The following registrations and settings will change when the battery is removed.

Those that immediately return to default values or are erased when the battery is removed
■ Missed call display ■ Data being edited

Those that return to default values or are erased if the mova is left with no battery for approximately 2 weeks or with an empty battery
■ Date settings ■ i-mode cache* ■ Calendar display ■ Earpiece volume

　*　The mova records the route in which sites and web pages were displayed. This is called the i-mode cache.
　●　Always charge the battery pack for approximately 140 minutes before using for the first time or after replacing the battery pack.
　　The battery pack is not fully charged at the time of purchase.
　●　To protect the environment, you are requested to dispose of used batteries at the nearest DoCoMo dealer, retailer, or a participating recycling shop.

Li-ion

Before Using the mova

29

Charging the mova

The battery pack is not fully charged at the time of purchase. Always charge the battery using the specified AC or DC adapter before use.

Battery Pack and Charging

Estimated charging times and lamp display

The following figures are estimated charge times for charging an empty battery pack with the mova turned off.

Charger name	Charging time
AC adapter SH002	Approximately 140 minutes
Doccimo DC adapter SH2001	Approximately 140 minutes

● During charging, the picture light/charge LED lights red and turns off when charging is completed.
● If the Picture light/charge LED flashes red, check that the battery pack has been inserted correctly. The light also flashes red when the battery has reached the end of its service life.
● The battery pack can also be charged with the mova turned on. (The "➔▭" on the display will flash during charging.) When charging is complete, the Picture light/charge LED turns off, and the "➔▭" on the display changes to "▥▥▥".

Usage time when fully charged (estimate)

Criteria	Battery pack SH007
Continuous stand-by time	Approximately 350 hours
Continuous talk (communication) time	Approximately 135 minutes

● Continuous talk time is measured at maximum transmission power with the Battery saver mode off. Continuous stand-by time is measured while moving with the mova closed in good signal conditions. Talk and stand-by time may be reduced by about half depending on function settings such as Power saver mode, temperature, and other environmental conditions, and signal strength (out of service area, weak signal, etc.). Using i-mode or sending i-shot reduces the talk time (communication time) and stand-by time. Even if you do not make calls, use i-mode, or send i-shot, the talk time (communication time) and stand-by time will be shortened when pictures are taken or edited, messages are composed, or downloaded i-αppli are activated or set as stand-by display. Some i-αppli software may continue data exchange after downloading. You can set them in advance so that they do not connect.
● Actual usage time is a combination of stand-by time and talk time. The longer the talking duration, the shorter the stand-by time becomes.

Battery pack service life
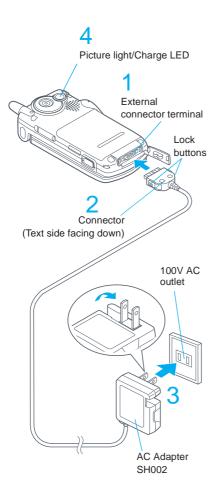
● When the usage time of the battery pack shortens to about half that of a new battery pack, consider this the end of the service life. (The estimated service life for a battery pack is 1 year.)

Cautions on charging

● Do not charge for long periods with the power left on. If the mova is left on after charging is complete, the battery pack charge decreases.
When this happens, the AC or DC adapter charges the battery again. However, depending on when the mova is disconnected from the AC or DC adapter, the battery charge level may be low, the warning tone may sound, or the battery may only be used for a short time.
● If the warning tone sounds and you are unable to turn the power on, charge the battery.
● If the battery empty warning is displayed and charging is begun within 20 seconds of the alarm tone, the mova returns to normal.
● Even when the Picture light/charge LED is lit red while charging, the power may not be able to be turned on. In such cases, charge for a while before turning the power on.

Charging Using the AC Adapter

[Refer to the operating manual for the AC adapter SH002]

4

Picture light/Charge LED

1

External connector terminal

Lock buttons

2

Connector
(Text side facing down)

100V AC outlet

3

AC Adapter SH002

1 Open the external connector terminal cover.

● You can also charge the battery pack with the mova open.

2 Face the writing on the AC adapter connector in the same direction as the mova sub display and insert into the external connector terminal.

● Make the connecter level with the mova, then push all the way in until you hear a click.

3 Plug the AC adapter into a 100V AC outlet.

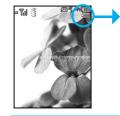● The charge start sound is heard and the Picture light/charge LED lights red.
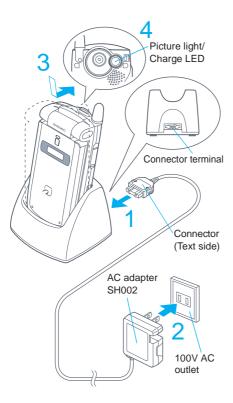
4 When the charge end sound is heard and the Picture light/charge LED turns off, charging is complete.

● While pressing the lock buttons on both sides of the connector, unplug the connector, and then close the external connector terminal cover.
● When not in use for long periods, unplug the AC adapter from the outlet.

Note	● You cannot charge the battery pack by itself.
	● If you use the data communications adapter SH2001, you can perform data communications while charging.
	● Do not forcefully pull the rubber covers of the earphone/microphone socket or the external connector terminal. This may cause damage.
	● You can change or disable the charge start sound volume and charge end sound volume (☞P.99).
	● Do not charge in Viewer position. The display may be scratched.
	● If the battery is empty when beginning charging, Picture light/Charge LED may not illuminate immediately. However, charging will have begun.

Before Using the mova

Charging using the desktop holder

[Refer to the desktop holder SH006 operating manual]

4 Picture light/
Charge LED

3

Connector terminal

1

Connector
(Text side)

AC adapter
SH002

2

100V AC
outlet

1 **Face the writing on the AC adapter connector up and insert into the connector terminal of the desktop holder.**
- Make the connecter level with the desktop holder, then push all the way in until you hear a click.

2 **Plug the AC adapter into a 100V AC outlet.**

3 **Place the mova in the desktop holder and tilt.**
- The charge start sound is heard and the Picture light/charge LED lights red. If a call is received during charging, the Called LED flashes in the set color.
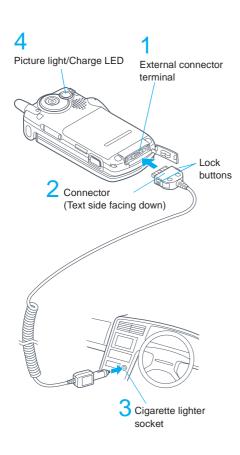
4 **When the charge end sound is heard and the Picture light/charge LED turns off, charging is complete.**
- When not in use for long periods, unplug the AC adapter from the outlet.

Note	● The mova can also be charged in Viewer position with the desktop holder.
	● Close the mova when placing in the desktop holder.
	● Avoid enclosing the strap when placing in the desktop holder.
	● You cannot charge the battery pack by itself.
	● You can change or disable the charge start sound volume and charge end sound volume (☞P.99).
	● When the charge start sound is not heard (excluding when set not to sound), or the charge LED does not light red, check to see that the mova is set properly in the desktop holder.
	● If the battery is empty when beginning charging, Picture light/Charge LED may not illuminate immediately. However, charging will have begun.

Charging Using the DC Adapter

[Refer to the operating manual for the Doccimo DC adapter SH2001]

4 Picture light/Charge LED

1 External connector terminal

Lock buttons

2 Connector (Text side facing down)

3 Cigarette lighter socket

1 Open the external connector terminal cover.

● You can also charge the battery pack with the mova open.

2 Face the writing on the DC adapter connector in the same direction as the mova sub display and insert into the external connector terminal.

● Make the connecter level with the mova, then push all the way in until you hear a click.

3 Plug the DC adapter into the cigarette lighter of your car.

● The charge start sound is heard and the Picture light/charge LED lights red.

4 When the charge end sound is heard and the Picture light/charge LED turns off, charging is complete.

● Press the lock buttons on both sides of the connector, unplug the connector, and then close the external connector terminal cover.

Note	● You cannot charge the battery pack by itself.
	● Do not use with the car engine shut off. This may run down your car battery.
	● The DC adapter is for use in negatively grounded vehicles (Both 12V and 24V).
	● The DC adapter power switch is interlocked with the car ignition switch, but the interlock may not work with some vehicles. Make sure that the power is turned off before leaving the car.
	● Note that even if the mova is on, turning the ignition off or pulling the DC adapter out of the cigarette lighter socket will turn the mova off. To continue a call or remain in stand-by status, disconnect the connector from the mova first.
	● Do not forcefully pull the rubber covers of the earphone/microphone socket or the external connector terminal. This may cause damage.
	● The fuse (1A) will wear out. Purchase a replacement fuse at an auto parts store near you.
	● You can change or disable the charge start sound volume and charge end sound volume (☞P.99).
	● Do not charge in Viewer position. The display may be scratched.
	● If the battery is empty when beginning charging, Picture light/Charge LED may not illuminate immediately. However, charging will have begun.

Checking the Battery Level

You can check the remaining battery level on the display.

(batt full icon)	The battery level is sufficient
(batt low icon)	The battery level is low
(batt almost empty icon)	The battery is almost empty
(batt empty icon)	The battery is empty (The power will turn off soon.)
(charging icon)	The battery pack is being charged

● You can also check the battery level on the sub display.

Checking the Battery Level with Sound and Display

〈●③DEF②ABC〉

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select (settings icon), and then press ●③DEF②ABC.**

● The battery level graphic is displayed. (A different sound will be emitted for each battery level.)
● Wait 3 seconds or press ⓐCLR to return to the general settings menu.

Graphic	32 Battery level	32 Battery level	32 Battery level
Sound	3 beeps	2 beeps	1 beep
Status	Battery is full	Battery is running low	Battery is almost empty

Note	● The Battery level sound does not sound if the Keypad sound (☞P.107) is set to "Silent" or if Manner mode is set.

When Your Battery Runs Out

The message on the right is displayed, an alert sounds, and then the power turns off in approximately 20 seconds.

● During a call, this message is displayed, an alert sounds, and in approximately 20 seconds the call is disconnected and the power turns off.
● Press ☎PWR/HLD during a call to disconnect the call. Turn off the power and charge the battery pack.

Note	● If you are in Manner mode (☞P.96) or Drive mode (☞P.66), the alerts will not sound.

Turning the Power ON/OFF

Turning the Power On

When the power is turned on, the display backlight lights, and you can make or receive calls (stand-by status).

1 **Press ○$_{HLD}^{PWR}$ (PWR) for at least 2 seconds.**

日時設定

2004年
01月01日
00：00

決定
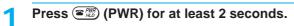
- After " " is displayed (When the display is changed to English, "Running. Please wait." is displayed) the screen for Initial settings is displayed. Continue with the Initial settings on P.36.
- To set Initial setting in English, perform "Switching the display language to English" as described on P.36.

If Initial settings have already been set
- When the power is turned on, the screen shown at right is displayed. This is the "stand-by display".

Turning the Power Off

1 **Press ○$_{HLD}^{PWR}$ (PWR) for at least 2 seconds.**

The power turns off.
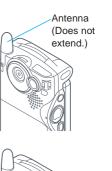
- If the mova is turned off while i-mode is in use (☞P.255), the i-mode end confirmation screen is displayed, and it may take some time before the mova turns off. (The power will turn off when you hold down ○$_{HLD}^{PWR}$.)

Note
- When connected with external devices such as car navigation systems, confirm that all data exchanges are complete, and then turn off the mova.
- The initial settings screen is displayed when Reset settings (☞P.505) is performed.

About the antenna
- Do not touch or cover the antenna with your hand.
- The antenna does not extend. Forcing the antenna to extend may cause damage.
- Do not attach decals on the antenna. This will reduce call quality.

Antenna (Does not extend.)

Attaching a purchased strap
- With the mova closed, pass the strap through the strap eyelet, and pass the other end through the loop.

Switching the Display Language to English

⟨●③⑤♯⟩

You can switch the display language to Japanese or English for function names, messages, and menu items.

1 In the stand-by, press ● and select [icon], and then press ●③⑤♯.

2 Press ②⑤ (English).

● The display language switches to English.
● Days are also displayed in English.

To switch to Japanese display

● Press ①.

| Note | ● This setting also applies to the sub-display. |

Initial Settings

⟨●⁎⟩

The initial settings screen is displayed automatically when the mova is turned on for the first time. The following items can be set here. (When Initial settings are completed, the stand-by display is displayed.)

Settings	Details	Page
Date settings	Set the date and time for the mova.	P.37
Change terminal security code	Register your terminal security code to be used for various functions on the mova.	P.200
Send own number	Set whether to send your phone number to the other party (on their phone display) when making a call. When sending i-shot, notification must be set to "ON".	P.38

1 In the stand-by, press ● and select [icon], and then press ●⁎.

2 Set the date and time.

● The default time is "2004, 01/01, 00:00".

3 **Register the terminal security code.**

● The default terminal security code is "0000".

4 **Set Send own number.**

To send
● Press $\boxed{1}$.
To not send
● Press $\boxed{2}$.

Note	● When Limit settings are set to "Able" (☞P.210), you will need to enter your terminal security code to change the date and time settings.
	To exit initial settings
	● Press $\boxed{PWR}$ or $\boxed{CLR}$ for at least 1 second while setting. Only the settings that have been completed will become effective. If "Date settings", "Change sec code", and "Send own number" are not set, the setting screen for items not set will be displayed each time the mova is turned ON.
	● If a call is received while setting, only the settings that have been completed will become effective.

Date Settings

Setting the Date/Time

〈$\boxed{●}\boxed{3}\boxed{8}$〉

Set the date and time for the mova.
● The default time is "2004, 01/01, 00:00".

1 **In the stand-by, press $\boxed{●}$ and select [icon], and then press $\boxed{●}\boxed{3}\boxed{8}$.**

```
3.0 Date settings

Year ■004
Date 01／01
Time 00：00
```

● During a call, press $\boxed{●}\boxed{3}$.

2 **Enter the year, month, date, and time.**

● Enter the time in 24-hour format. If the year, month, date and/or time is 1 digit (1 to 9), add a "0" in the beginning, such as 01 to 09.
● If you make a mistake, move the cursor "■" using $\boxed{◇}$ and enter again.

3 **Press $\boxed{●}$ (OK).**

● Date and time are set.
● If a time other than one up to 23:59 is entered and $\boxed{●}$ is pressed, the cursor returns to the year. Enter the correct time.
● Press $\boxed{PWR}$ to return to the stand-by display.

Note	● You can set the date from January 1, 2000, 00:00 to December 31, 2099, 23:59.

● Time is displayed in 24-hour format.
● The set date and time will be saved when the battery pack is removed. However, if the mova is left without the battery pack attached for approximately 2 weeks or left with the battery empty, the settings may be reset. In this case, set again after charging.
● If date and time are not set, dates are not recorded for Redials, Received calls, Record message, i-αppli auto start and Camera image titles/shot date. In addition, functions that use the clock, such as Auto power ON/OFF, Alarm, and Schedule cannot be used.
● When Limit settings are set to "Able" (☞P.210), you will need to enter your terminal security code to change the date and time settings.

Send Own Number

Sending Your Phone Number to the Other Party

⟨●6ₘₙₒ5ⱼₖₗ⟩

You can display your number on the other party's mobile phone (display) when you call or send short mail.
● The default setting is "OFF".

1 In the stand-by, press ● and select [icon], and then press ●6ₘₙₒ5ⱼₖₗ.

[screen: Send own number / Security code?]

2 Enter your terminal security code (4 digits), and then press 1.@ (ON).

● The default terminal security code is "0000".
● Each entered digit is displayed as "✱".
● Send own number is set.

To not send
● Press 2ₐ｟｣ .

Note	● When sending i-shot, set Send own number to "ON".

If you attempt to send i-shot while this is set to "OFF", a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether you wish to temporarily turn Send own number "ON" (☞P.380).
● If you hear a guidance requesting you to send caller ID, set Send own number to "ON" or redial adding "186" to the beginning of the other party's phone number.
● Send own number is available only when the other party's phone is capable of displaying the number.
● Your own number is important personal information. Make your decision very carefully before setting this "ON" or "OFF".

Verifying Your Own Phone Number

⟨●(0)⟩

You can verify your own phone number (Own number).

1 In the stand-by, press ● and select 🔧, and then press ●(0).

● Your phone number is displayed.
● This can be done during a call from the in-call menu.
● To view Owner information, press ● (Details) and enter your terminal security code (4 digits).

Saving Owner Information

You can change Owner information to include information such as your name and its reading, home phone number, mail address, personal data, and still pictures.
You can save two phone numbers in addition to the mova number, and up to three mail addresses.

● Only the phone number is registered as a default setting. Mail address is not registered. Please register your i-mode mail address.

■ Items you can save

Icon	Saved item
👤	Name (max. 16 full-pitch/32 half-pitch characters)
R	Reading (max. 32 half-pitch characters)
📱	Own number (cannot be edited)
☎	Phone number (2 entries, max. 24 digits per entry)
✉	Mail address (3 entries, max. 50 half-pitch characters per entry)
🗒	Personal data (max. 30 full-pitch/60 half-pitch characters)
🖼	Own image

1 In the stand-by, press ● and select 🔧, press ●(0), and then press ● (Details).

● The screen to enter your terminal security code is displayed.

2 Enter your security code (4 digits).

● Each entered digit is displayed as "✳". Refer to P.200 for information on the terminal security code.
● Owner information is displayed.

Before Using the mova

39

3 Press ⓞ① (Edit).

```
(Not registered)
R (Not registered)
090XXXXXXXX
(Not registered)
(Not registered)
(Not registered)
(Not registered)
(Not registered)
(Not registered)
Own image
(Not set)
Complete  OK
```

4 Select the items you wish to edit using ⌄, and then save their contents.

● The saving method is the same as for the Phonebook. Refer to P.77 for details.
● Once 1 item is saved, the mova returns to the screen of step 3. You can continue to save other items.

5 After you have saved the necessary items, press ⓘ (Complete).

● Use ⟷ to select an icon for each item. The saved information is displayed.

Note	● You can change your i-mode mail address (☞P.345).
	● Changing your i-mode mail address will not automatically change the mail address displayed in the phone number display. Please re-register your mail address.
	● The mail address displayed in the screen to set Chat mail members is linked with Owner information (☞P.365).
	● Refer to P.431 and P.432 for information on registering/viewing the Number Plus number.
	To verify your own i-mode mail address (requires an i-mode subscription)
	● In the stand-by, press ⓘⓞ. In the iMenu, press ⑧ (Option setting), press ① (Mail setting), select "Check address" (Confirm Mail Address), and then press ⓞ. In the stand-by, press ⓐ⑨, select "■Mail center setting", press ⓞ, and then select "Check address" (Confirm Mail Address) to also confirm.

Using Owner Information

You can copy from items in your Owner information and paste them to other screens.

1 In the stand-by, press ⓞ and select 🗒, press ⓞ⓪, and then press ⓞ (Details).

● The screen to enter your terminal security code is displayed.

2 Enter your current terminal security code (4 digits).

● Each entered digit is displayed as "✳".

3 Select the item to copy using ⟷.

● "Own image" and "Personal data" cannot be copied.

4 Press ⓞ② (Copy item).

● The character information for the item is copied.
● Perform paste operations in another screen to enter the copied text (☞P.524).

Note	**Owner information can be used as follows.**
	● In the input screen, press ⓞ✖ (Quote owner info), and then press ⓞ (Details). Enter the terminal security code (4 digits), select the item to copy, and then press ⓞ.
	● You can also use the infrared communications function to send your Owner information to another mova (☞P.436).

2

Making Calls

Making a Call

Check that you have sufficient battery and signal levels.

1 Dial the phone number starting with the area code.

090XXXXXXXX

- Always include the area code, even when calling a number in the same area.
- You can enter up to 24 digits for the phone number. After 13 digits, the phone number is displayed on 2 lines.

To call a mobile phone or PHS
Mobile Phones   090-XXXX-XXXX   or   080-XXXX-XXXX
PHS   070-XXXX-XXXX

If you make a mistake
- Press ⓐⓒⓛⓡ to delete the last digit. Press 🔘 to move the cursor "▮" to the digit you wish to delete, and then press ⓐⓒⓛⓡ to delete a digit in the middle of a number.
- Press ⓐⓒⓛⓡ for at least 1 second to delete all digits. (Returns to the stand-by display.)

2 Press ☎AF.

Calling

Ueda Mikio

090XXXXXXXX

When name and still picture are registered in the phonebook

- Unlike ordinary telephones, mobile phones send call tones in a series of blips before the standard ring tone. Talk when the other party answers.

If the number is registered in the Phonebook
- The name is displayed. In addition, if a still picture is set, the name and still picture are displayed.

If the number you have dialed is busy
- You will hear a busy signal. Press ☎PWR/HLD to disconnect the call. Try again later.

If you hear short beeps during your call
- The battery is almost empty. The call will be disconnected after approximately 20 seconds. End the call and charge the battery.

If you hear long beeps during your call
- The signal is weak. Move to a place where the signal is stronger and the alarm stops.

3 Press ☎PWR/HLD when you have finished your call.

Making calls in Viewer position

When in Viewer position, hold the mova as shown to the right.

- You can make a call in Viewer position if you use 🔘 (Redial/☞P.44), 🔘 (Received calls history/☞P.54), or the Phonebook (☞P.86) from the menu.
- You can make a call after dialing in Normal position and changing to Viewer position by pressing ⬜ (left guidance key).
- When finished talking, press ⬜ (right guidance key).

▮ To hear the call on the speaker (speakerphone)

Press 🔘 for at least 1 second during a call. You will hear the call on the speaker.
● When in Viewer position, press ▭ (left guidance key).
● "📢)" lights.
● During speakerphone, the other party cannot hear your voice.
● Press 🔘 during speakerphone to adjust the earpiece volume.
● Press 🔘 again for at least 1 second to quit speakerphone.
● You can also start/quit Speakerphone mode by pressing 🔘 for at least 1 second while calling/ringing.

▮ Checking the signal level

The signal strength is displayed.

● If "圏外" is displayed, you are out of the service area or in a location the signal cannot reach. Move to a location where this display disappears.
● Your call may be interrupted even when the signal is strong and "📶" is displayed, and you are talking without moving.
● When "self" is displayed, the mova is set on "Self mode" (☞P.504). When set to Self mode, you cannot make/receive calls or send/receive e-mail.

Note	● When making a call, do not cover the antenna.
	● You can also make a call by performing steps 1 and 2 in reverse order. If you do not perform any operations for at least 5 seconds after dialing, the call is placed. If you dial the wrong number, press 🔘 and dial again.
	● If the Close operation is set to "Finish call", you can disconnect the call by closing the mova (☞P.485).
	● During a call, the approximate duration of the call is displayed. The call time can be displayed up to 9:59:59. When this is exceeded, the display returns to 0:00.
	● The mova may become warm after continuous talking. This is not a malfunction.
	● Background patterns are not displayed during calls.
	To clear text messages
	● You may see a notification message displayed when making a call. Press 🔘 for at least 1 second to clear the message.

Making Calls

Redialing a Previously Called Number

The mova keeps a record of the phone numbers (redial) of the 30 most recent calls made, beginning with the most recent. You can retrieve these phone numbers to make calls.

● If the number of records exceeds the maximum, the numbers are deleted starting with the oldest.
● If you have called the same number more than once, the most recent call is saved.

1 In the stand-by, press ◗ (🔲).

Redial list

● Phone numbers are listed with their dates and times, starting with the most recent.
If the same phone number is saved in the Phonebook, the name is also displayed. If a still picture is set, the set still picture is also displayed.

2 Select the number you wish to call, and then press 📞.

● Select a phone number, and then press ● to display the redial details.
● Phone numbers called with "184" and "186" added are saved as a separate redial.
● You can also press ● twice to make the call.
● When in Viewer position, press ◖ in the Redial details screen to make the call.
Press 🠒 (right guidance key) when the call is finished.

Note	● When the Security setting for redial is ON (to not display), "Security on. Show redial is turned OFF" is displayed. Refer to P.202 for information on Security settings.

● In the Redial list, press 🔵 to display the sent address screen.
Refer to P.341 for viewing the history, and P.343 for information on using the Sent address history.
● If date and time are not set, the date and time are not recorded in the redials.
What you can do from the submenu
● Press 🔵 in the Redial list or details screen, the submenu is displayed.
If an item in the submenu is selected, the following operations can be performed.
● The screen at right is when operated from the list. The menu is slightly different when operated from the details screen.
● Items that cannot be operated are shown in gray.

Redial list screen menu items	Redial detail screen menu items	Function
1 Add to phonebook	1 Add to phonebook	Save phone number to phonebook.
2 Delete	2 Delete one	Delete a saved phone number (☞P.45).
—	3 Add 184	Add "184" to the beginning of the number.
—	4 Add 186	Add "186" to the beginning of the number.
—	5 Int'l call	Add international call numbers (☞P.50) to the beginning of the number.
—	6 Delete added #	Delete numbers added to the beginning, such as "184", "186" and international call numbers.
7 Compose message	7 Compose message	Compose a message (☞P.307).
8 Create schedule	8 Create schedule	Create a schedule (☞P.228).
🔒 Security setting	—	Perform Security settings (☞P.202). If set to "ON", the Show redial is set to "OFF".
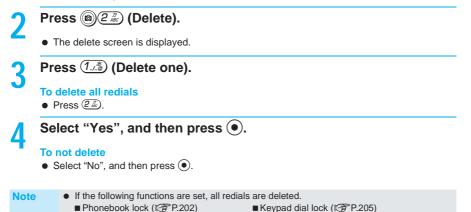
Deleting Redials

Redials are not deleted even when the power is turned off. If you do not wish other people to see your call history, delete your redials.

● You can delete redials one at a time or all at once.

1 **In the stand-by, press ◯ (□), and then select the phone number to delete.**

● When deleting all, phone numbers do not need to be selected.

2 **Press ⓐ ②ᴬᴮᶜ (Delete).**

● The delete screen is displayed.

3 **Press ①. (Delete one).**

To delete all redials
● Press ②ᴬᴮᶜ.

4 **Select "Yes", and then press ●.**

To not delete
● Select "No", and then press ●.

Note	● If the following functions are set, all redials are deleted.
	■ Phonebook lock (☞P.202)　　　■ Keypad dial lock (☞P.205)

186/184

Setting Send Own Number On/Off for Each Call

Regardless of Send own number settings (☞P.38), for each call you can select whether or not to send your own number to the other party by dialing 186 or 184 before their phone number.

■ To send your own number to the other party

This is valid when Send own number is not set.

①. ⑧ᵀᵁⱽ ⑥ᴹᴺᴼ 　|× × × -× × × × -× × × ×|　⭍ᴬᶠ
Other party's phone number

■ To not send your own number to the other party

This is valid when Send own number is set.

①. ⑧ᵀᵁⱽ ④ᴳᴴᴵ 　|× × × -× × × × -× × × ×|　⭍ᴬᶠ
Other party's phone number

Note	● You can also add "184" or "186" by pressing ⓐ②ᴬᴮᶜ (Add 184) or ⓐ③ᴰᴱᶠ (Add 186) after entering the other party's phone number.
	● When neither "186" nor "184" is dialed before dialing a number, the mova will operate according to the "Send own number" setting.
	● Send own number is available only when the other party's phone is capable of displaying the number.
	● You cannot dial "186" or "184" before international calls.
	● You can make calls with 184/186 added by displaying the submenu in the Phonebook or redials details screen.

Making Calls

45

Convenient Features to Use by Saving Phone Numbers onto the DoCoMo Network

<Short Dialing> and <Reject "Wangiri" (one-ring) Calls>

You can access convenient functions by saving the following phone numbers onto the DoCoMo network.

Function	Details
Short dialing	You can save up to 20 phone numbers consisting of up to 11 digits on the DoCoMo network.
Reject "wangiri" (one-ring) calls	You can save up to 19 "wangiri" (one-ring) numbers and other landline phone numbers generating unwanted calls to the DoCoMo network and reject calls from them. By doing so, you will no longer receive calls from those registered numbers.

- You can use either "Short dialing" or "Reject wangiri (one-ring) calls". These numbers are not saved on the mova. Please write them down.
- The default setting is short dialing.
- When "圏外" or "ˢᵉˡᶠ" are displayed, you cannot save numbers.
- If you have requested an itemized bill and use short dialing, the phone number appears on your bill.

Using Short Dialing

Saving Short dialing numbers

1 **Press ⓪①④(✱☐) ➡ ✕ ✕ (2-digit short dialing number) ➡ the phone number to save.**

- Enter numbers from "00" to "19" for ✕ ✕.
- Always include the area code when entering the phone number.
- To switch to "Reject wangiri (one-ring) calls", save "9999" in short dialing number "00", and then press (✎ᴬᶠ). This will delete all short dialing numbers saved in "00" to "19".

2 **Press (✎ᴬᶠ).**

- You will hear a series of short tones, and the saving process begins.

3 **When the tone changes, press (☎ᴾᵂᴿ_ᴴᴸᴰ).**

- The phone number is saved.
- If you do not press (☎ᴾᵂᴿ), a call is placed to the saved number.

Making a call using Short dialing

1 **Press (✱☐) ➡ Short dialing number (2 digits) ➡ (✎ᴬᶠ).**

- The phone number cannot be displayed.

Note	• Numbers exceeding 11 digits, such as WORLD CALL, cannot be saved.
	• To change a saved phone number, save the new phone number to the same short dialing number. When saved again (overwritten), the previously saved phone number is deleted.

Making Calls

Using the Reject "Wangiri" (one-ring) Calls Function

Starting the Reject "wangiri" (one-ring) calls function

1 **Press ⓪※ ➡ ⓪⓪ ➡ ⑨⑨⑨⑨, and then press ⓔ.**

- You will hear a series of tones, and the Reject "wangiri" (one-ring) calls function is started.
- After this, save the phone numbers you wish to reject.
- **To return to the short dialing function**
- The Reject "wangiri" calls function can be disabled by saving usable phone numbers other than "9999", such as your home phone number, to short dial number "00". Saved phone numbers can be used as a Short dial.

Saving a phone number to reject calls

1 **Press ⓪※ ➡ ☒ ☒ (2-digit reject call number) ➡ the phone number to save.**

- Enter numbers from "01" to "19" for ☒ ☒ .
- You cannot save a number in Reject call number "00". Saving a number in "00" will cancel the Reject "wangiri" (one-ring) calls function.

2 **Press ⓔ.**

- You will hear a series of tones, and the Reject "wangiri" (one-ring) call number is saved.

Note	● Only "normal landline phone numbers" can be registered to reject "wangiri" (one-ring) calls. "Mobile phone numbers" cannot be registered.
	● To change a saved phone number, save a new phone number using the same Reject call number. When saved again (overwritten), the previously saved phone number is deleted.
	● If you are subscribed to the Dual Network Service, you cannot use this function on a FOMA.

Send Pager

Sending Messages to a Pager

Save the pager number and frequently sent messages (numbers) in your Phonebook, and you can send them with a simple operation.
- You can also use this to navigate touch-tone menus for ticket reservations, bank balance inquiries, etc.
- When a pager is called, send touch-tone signals while the guidance is playing to abbreviate the guidance.

Saving Touch-Tone Data to the Phonebook

1 **Display the phonebook entry screen (☞Steps 1 to 4 on P.77 and P.78).**

2 **Press ⌒.**

- A pause is entered. ("P" is displayed.)

From January 2001, the DoCoMo pager changed its name to "QUICKCAST".

Making Calls

3 **Enter the number to send, and then press $\textcircled{\bullet}$.**

● To add numbers to send, repeat steps 2 and 3.

4 **Enter the other items in the Phonebook, and then complete saving the Phonebook.**

● Refer to P.78 and P.79.

Note	● Character types and character limits vary depending on the pager.

Sending Messages Using Touch-Tone Signals

1 **Make a call from the Phonebook in which a touch-tone signal is saved.**

● Refer to P.86 to P.89.
● When the call is connected, the numbers that come after the "P" saved in the touch-tone function are displayed.

2 **Press $\textcircled{\textbf{i}}$ (Send PB) at the appropriate time to send the touch-tone signal.**

● The numbers after "P" are sent by touch-tone signals.
● When additional numbers to send are saved, press $\textcircled{\textbf{i}}$ (Send PB) to send each one.
● You can also press $\textcircled{\bullet}$ to send.

Sending All Numbers Saved in the Phonebook at Once

You can retrieve your Phonebook during a call and send saved numbers all at once as touch-tone signals.
● Save the touch-tone signals to send as a phone number entry in your Phonebook (☞P.77) in advance.
● Using the same operations, you can retrieve redials and received calls history during a call, and send the saved numbers.

1 **After your call is connected, retrieve the Phonebook entry with the numbers to send.**

● Refer to P.86 to P.89.

2 **Press $\textcircled{\textbf{i}}$ (Send PB).**

● Numbers saved as a phone number entry in the Phonebook is sent as a touch-tone signal.

Sending Numbers Using the Dial Keys During a Call

You can enter the numbers using the dial keys during a call to send touch-tone signals one at a time.

1 **After your call is connected, press the number to send on the keypad.**

● The number of the dial key you pressed is sent as a touch-tone signal.

Making Calls

Making International Calls

DoCoMo International Call Service "WORLD CALL"

WORLD CALL is an international call service for customers with contracts for DoCoMo digital mobile phones.

[Calling method]

> 009130 ➡ 010 ➡ Country code ➡ Area code ➡ Other party's number ➡ 🔲

> You can store the above operation procedures in the mova phonebook.
> If the area code starts with "0", omit the "0" when dialing.
> (However, the "0" must be dialed when calling a landline telephone in Italy.)

● You can make calls to approximately 220 countries and regions worldwide.
● "WORLD CALL" charges are billed with the monthly mobile phone calling charges.
● There is no application fee or monthly charge for this service. (Registration is required.)
● When you use WORLD CALL, you can verify the most recent call duration and estimated charges on your mova (☞P.489).
● When using Phonebook, Redial, or Received calls, you can automatically add 009130010 to make a call (☞P.50).

[About the change in procedures for making international calls]
Since "MYLINE" service is not applicable to mobile communications such as mobile phones and similar devices, WORLD CALL also cannot be used with "MYLINE".
However, the offering of the "MYLINE" services, the dialing procedures for making international calls using a mobile phone have changed.
Consequently, with the offering of the "MYLINE" service, the current dialing procedure (the procedure listed above without "010") cannot be used.

[Direct inquiries to]

	For inquiries	General contact for the DoCoMo Information Center
WORLD CALL	**To call from ordinary phones** ☎ **0120-005-250** 携帯・PHS OK **(toll free) (in English)** ※ Can also be used from DoCoMo mobile phones or PHS phones. ※ Please check the number carefully, so that you do not dial the wrong number.	**When calling from DoCoMo mobile phones or PHS phones** **151** **(no area code) (toll free) (in Japanese only)** ※ Cannot be used from ordinary phones.

Check the telephone number carefully before dialing.

To make international calls through a company other than DoCoMo, contact the respective companies directly for instructions.

Customers with mobile phone service contracts signed after May 23, 2002 have "WORLD CALL" in their contract as a basic service. However, if you did not want the service when signing up, you will need to reapply for a contract for this service.

This may not be available with some billing plans.

Making International Calls With Simple Operations

International calls can be made by entering the country code, area code, and phone number.

1 **In the stand-by, enter the country code, area code, and the other party's telephone number.**

2 **Press ⓐ④.**

3 **Press ①(009130-010), and then press ⽾.**

● Select another item if calling using an international calling service other than DoCoMo's. In such cases, the following international calling settings must be made in advance.

Setting Numbers Other Than WORLD CALL Numbers <Int'l Prefix>

〈●⑤⓪〉

You can save up to 5 international numbers to automatically add an international prefix when calling from the phonebook, Redial, or Received calls.
● International numbers are saved under "Int'l prefix". They are not saved in the Phonebook.
● The default setting is "009130010", the DoCoMo WORLD CALL number.

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select [icon], press ●⑤⓪, select an item, and then press ●.**

● To save a new number, select a number with "------------------" displayed.

To delete or change a number that is already saved
● Select the number you wish to change or delete, and then press ●. Press ① (Change) or ② (Delete). If you wish to delete, a confirmation screen is displayed. Select "Yes", and then press ●.

2 **Enter the number to add, and then press ●.**

● You can register up to 16 digits.
● You can continue to save other numbers.

Note	● When Keypad dial lock (☞P.205) is set, numbers cannot be registered, edited, or deleted.

Using a saved international phone number
1 In the Phonebook, Redial, or Received calls list, press ⓐ.
2 Select "Int'l call", and then press ●.
3 Select the international call prefix to add, and then press ●.
● Next, press ⽾ to call with the international prefix added.

3

Answering Calls

Answering Calls

You can be notified of an incoming call by a ring tone, Picture light/Called LED, or Vibrator.
● A notification is also displayed in the sub display if the mova is closed. (Up to 5 full-pitch characters may be displayed. If there are 6 or more characters, press ● to scroll.)

1 When a call is received, the ring tone sounds and the Picture light/Called LED flashes.

If caller ID is received
● The phone number is displayed. If the caller's name and phone number are registered in the phonebook, the name is displayed. If a still picture is set, the name and image are displayed alternately.

If caller ID is not received
● Depending on the reason for their caller ID non-disclosure, one of the following messages is displayed.

"User unset"   Caller wishes to withhold their caller ID.
"Payphone"   Includes calls from NTT payphones and DoCoMo car payphones.
"Not support"   Call from a network not enabled for caller ID. This is displayed for calls received from overseas, or calls from regular (landline) telephones via various transfer services. However, the caller ID may still be displayed, depending on the telephone company involved.

Sub display

To silence the ring tone (Quick silent)
● Press (#) or press ● for at least 1 second while the phone is ringing. The ring tone is silenced for that call only. ("🔇" lights on the display.)
● When the mova is closed, press ◉ for at least 1 second.

2 Press (📞).

● You can speak to the caller.

You can answer the call with keys other than (📞).
● You can also answer a call using (0), (1) to (9), or (*) on the keypad when Any key answer is "ON" (☞P.486).

3 Press (📴 PWR/HLD) when you have finished your call.

Receiving Calls in Viewer Position

When in Viewer position, hold the mova as shown below.

1 **When a call is received, the ring tone sounds and the Picture light/Called LED flashes.**

● Guide displays differ in Viewer position and Normal position.

Receiving call

UedaMikio

090XXXXXXXX

2 **Press ⬡ (left guidance key).**

● You can speak to the caller.

3 **When finished, press ⬡ (right guidance key).**

Key operations when receiving a call

Style	On hold (☞P.66)	Quick silent	Record message /Call transfer /Forward voice mail	Manner mode (☞P.96)	Quick Record Message (☞P.72)
Normal position	(⬛ PWR/HLD)	(# ☞) or (●) (at least 1 sec)	(●)	(# ☞) (at least 1 sec)	(●)(●)
Viewer position	⬡ (right guidance key)	◉ (at least 1 sec)	◉	◉ (at least 1 sec)	◉◉
Closed	(CLR) (at least 1 sec)	◉ (at least 1 sec)	—	◉ (at least 1 sec)	◉

Note
● You cannot make a call to a mova from a phone with no direct outside line, such as an internal phone in an office building.
● Reject call settings etc. can be done while setting the ring tone not to ring immediately when you receive an incoming call (☞P.62) and with Add to phonebook settings.
● Background patterns are not displayed during calls.
● If you have a contract for the mova Voice Mail Service, Call Forwarding Service, or Call Waiting Service, and you have (1.)(4 ghi)(5 jkl)(0) set, when another call is received while you are talking on the phone, a tone is heard to notify you of the new call. You can then take the following actions.

Voice Mail Service	You can transfer the call to the Voice Mail Service center (☞P.416).
Call Forwarding Service	You can forward the call to the saved forwarding number (☞P.426).
Call Waiting Service	You can place the current call on hold and answer the new call (☞P.421).

When a call is received during editing
● If you receive a call or mail while editing the phonebook or mail, editing is temporarily suspended. When the call or message reception is completed, the mova returns to the screen from before reception and you can resume editing. Characters you were in the process of converting but had not yet confirmed may not be saved. Data being edited will be lost if returned to the stand-by display.

Using Received Calls History

The mova keeps a record of the 30 most recent calls received. You can retrieve these phone numbers (received calls history) to make calls.

● If the number of records exceeds the maximum, the numbers are deleted starting with the oldest.

Making Calls from Received Calls History

1 **In the stand-by, press ⬤ (→🔲).**

Received calls
history list

● Phone numbers are listed with their dates and times, from the most recent.
   If the same phone number is saved in the Phonebook, the name is displayed. If a still picture is set, the set still picture is also displayed.

📞 : Calls that you answered or calls that were accidentally or intentionally disconnected while on hold

📧 : Calls that left a recorded message

☎ : Received calls that were not answered, calls that were transferred to the Voice Mail Service center and other destinations, calls that were rejected because of the settings of Accept/Reject calls (☞P.57, P.59), Reject unknown (☞P.63), rejecting by reasons for non-disclosure (☞P.61), and Drive mode (☞P.66)

When "* missed calls" is displayed on the stand-by display

● This indicates that you did not answer a received call (Missed calls). Press ⬤ to display Received calls history (☞P.68).

2 **Select the number you wish to call, and then press 📞.**

● Select a telephone number and then press ⬤ to display the received calls details screen. Also, press ⬤ to make a call.
● When in Viewer position, press 🔘 in the received calls history details screen to make the call. Press ⬜ (right guidance key) when the call is finished.

Note	● If you did not answer a call, press 📷 in the received calls history details screen, select "🄋Ringing time", and then press ⬤. You can display the ring time for received calls. Ring time is displayed as "0min 00sec" when a call is rejected because of the settings for Accept/Reject calls, Reject unknown, rejecting by reasons for non-disclosure, and Drive mode.

Ring time is not shown when "📞" is displayed (when a call has been answered, or disconnected while on hold).
● When a call from someone using Dial-in is received, a number different from the caller's Dial-in number may be displayed.
● When security for the received calls is ON (to not display), "Security on. Show rcvd calls is turned OFF" is displayed. Refer to P.202 for information on Security settings.
● In the received calls history, press 🄘 to display the received address.
   Refer to P.341 for viewing the display, and P.342 for information on using the received address.
● If date and time are not set, the date and time are not recorded in the received calls history.

When a call is received at the registered Number Plus number
● Depending on the Number Plus number called, "N1" or "N2" is displayed on the right of "📞", "📧", or "☎" (☞P.431).

Answering Calls

Note	**What you can do in the submenu**

- If ⓘ is pressed in the received calls history or details screen, the submenu is displayed. If an item in the submenu is selected, the following operations can be performed.
- The screen at right is when operated from the list. The menu is slightly different when operated from the details screen.
- Items that cannot be operated are displayed in gray.

Received calls history screen menu items	Received calls details screen menu items	Function
1 Add to phonebook	1 Add to phonebook	Save a phone number to phonebook.
2 Delete	2 Delete one	Delete a saved phone number.
—	3 Add 184	Add "184" to the beginning of the number.
—	4 Add 186	Add "186" to the beginning of the number.
—	5 Int'l call	Add the international call number (☞P.50) to the beginning of the number.
—	6 Delete added #	Delete numbers added to the beginning, such as "184", "186" and the international prefix.
7 Compose message	7 Compose message	Compose a message (☞P.307). If the mail address is not registered in the phonebook, the phone number is entered in the receiver field.
8 Create schedule	8 Create schedule	Compose a schedule (☞P.228).
9 Display all/ Limit display	9 Display all/ Limit display	Switches between Display all and Limit display. Missed calls that were disconnected during the mute seconds can also be displayed, when Set mute seconds is set to a value other than 0 seconds, and the displaying of missed calls history is set to "OFF".
—	0 Ringing time	Display the ring duration.
Security setting	—	Perform Security settings (☞P.202). If set to "ON", the received calls history is set to "OFF".

Deleting the received calls history

Received calls history is not deleted even when the power is turned off. If you do not wish others to see who has called you, delete your received calls history.

- You can delete received calls history one at a time or all at once.

1 **In the stand-by, press ◯ (➔⤵), and then select the phone number to delete.**

- If deleting all, phone numbers do not need to be selected.

2 **Press ⓘ 2ABC (Delete).**

- The delete screen is displayed.

3 **Press 1.? (Delete one).**

To delete all received calls history
- Press 2ABC.

4 **Select "Yes", and then press ⦿.**

To not delete
- Select "No", and then press ⦿.

Answering Calls

Adjusting the Earpiece Volume During a Call

You can adjust the earpiece volume in 5 levels during a call.
● You cannot adjust the volume while receiving a call.
● The default setting is "Volume 3".

1 **Press ⌃ or ⌄ during a call.**

To operate in the stand-by display
● Press ⌃ or ⌄ for at least 2 seconds. Then, you can adjust the earpiece volume by pressing ⌃ or ⌄.

2 **Press ⌃ (Louder) or ⌄ (Quieter).**

● Do nothing for approximately 2 seconds or press ● to set the volume.
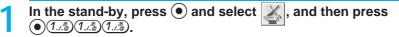
Note	● Once the volume is adjusted, it remains set even after the power is turned off.

Adjusting the Ring Volume

⟨●⟩⟨1./.@⟩⟨1./.@⟩⟨1./.@⟩
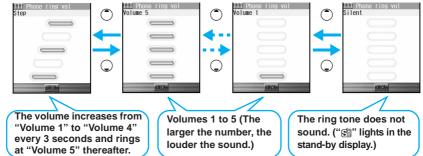
Adjust the ring volume to accommodate the location or situation of use.
● You can turn the sound off (Silent) or set it to gradually get louder (Step).
● The default setting is "Volume 3".

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select 🔧, and then press ● ⟨1./.@⟩⟨1./.@⟩⟨1./.@⟩.**

● The screen to select the ring tone volume is displayed.

2 **Select the volume you wish to use, and then press ●.**

The volume increases from "Volume 1" to "Volume 4" every 3 seconds and rings at "Volume 5" thereafter.

Volumes 1 to 5 (The larger the number, the louder the sound.)

The ring tone does not sound. ("📵" lights in the stand-by display.)

● The ring volume is set.

Note	● If the ring volume is set to "Silent", incoming calls are indicated by the flashing Picture light/ Called LED and the incoming call display.
	● Once the volume is adjusted, it remains set even after the power is turned off.

Receiving Calls Only from Specified Phone Numbers

You can set your mova to only connect calls from callers you specified in the phonebook. Calls from other numbers (including those where the caller does not send their number) are not connected.

To set Accept calls, register the phone numbers of all members registered in the phonebook who you wish to allow to the list and set collectively later.

- When a call is received from a caller who is set in Accept calls without sending their number, the call is not connected. It is recommended that the Caller ID Request Service, in which a guidance informs the caller to send their ID, also be set.
- Accept calls cannot be set when Reject calls, calls from numbers not in the phonebook, unknown numbers, payphone, and are set to be rejected.
- Callers not on your Accept calls list hear a busy signal. In such cases, "* missed calls" is displayed and information such as the name or phone number is recorded in the received calls history.
- Even if "Set i-mode rcv" (☞P.281) is set to "i-mode answer", calls from numbers in the phonebook that do not have "Accept calls" set are not connected.
- Short mail and i-mode mail are received regardless of this function.

Saving a Caller in Accept Calls

⟨ ● 6ᴹᴺᴼ 4ᴳᴴᴵ ⟩

You can save up to 20 callers in Accept calls.

1 In the stand-by, press ● to select 🔧, press ● 6ᴹᴺᴼ 4ᴳᴴᴵ, and then enter your terminal security code (4 digits).

- Each entered digit is displayed as "✱".

> **64 Accept/Reject**
> Disable
> 1 Accept calls
> 2 Reject calls
> 3 Reject unknown
> 4 Reject user unset
> 5 Reject payphone
> 6 Reject not support
>
> ☐OK☐

2 Press 1.₀ (Accept calls).

- The accept calls screen is displayed.
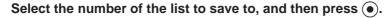
When "Disable reject calls settings" is displayed

- Reject calls, Reject unknown, Reject user unset, Reject payphone, or Reject not support is set. Disable the setting and try again.

3 Press 3ᴅᴱꜰ (Save list).

- If another party has already been saved, their name or phone number is displayed.

4 Select the number of the list to save to, and then press ●.

- The phonebook list is displayed.

5 Select the phone number of the person to save from the phonebook list.

- Only the selected phone number is saved.

Answering Calls

6 **Press ⦿.**

● The phone number displayed in the phonebook list is saved for Accept calls. (The name registered in the phonebook is registered in the saved list.)
● To specify other phone numbers, repeat steps 4 to 6 on P.57 and P.58.

To use Accept calls
● After this, set Accept calls.

Saved list

Note	● When a phonebook entry for a caller in Accept calls list is edited or deleted, the contents saved in the list are also edited or deleted. However, if Accept calls is set, you cannot edit or delete the phonebook entry (except when performing Delete all in group and Delete all).
	● Refer to P.433 for information on the Caller ID Display Request Service.
	● When still pictures are displayed in the phonebook list, only the first 16 digits of the phone number are displayed. Change the display of the Phonebook in the submenu, display all phone numbers, and then perform this operation (☞P.90).
	● Remote keypad lock can be performed from numbers rejected with Accept calls. When the set number of calls is reached and Remote keypad lock is set, the Keypad lock tone is heard.

To delete a caller
❶ In step 4, select the caller to delete, and then press ⦿.
❷ Press ②ₐ₆ᴄ, select "Yes", and then press ⦿.
● If phonebook entries saved in the Accept calls list are deleted after setting Accept calls, the setting is disabled.

To change the caller
❶ In step 4, select the caller to change, and then press ⦿.
❷ Press ①, select the phone number to change, and then press ⦿.

Saving to Accept Calls from Phonebook

〈⦿〉

● You can save phone numbers to Accepts calls from the phonebook list.

1 **In the stand-by, press ⦿ to select [PHONEBOOK], and then press ⦿.**

2 **Select the phone number of the person to save from the Phonebook list.**

3 **Press ⦿⑧ₜᵤᵥ, and then enter your terminal security code (4 digits).**

● Each entered digit is displayed as "✳".

4 **Select the list number to save, and then press ⦿.**

● Only the selected phone number is saved.

Setting/Disabling Accept Calls

〈(●)(6 ㍽)(4 ㍿)〉

● The default setting is "Disable".

1 **In the stand-by, press (●) and select [⚙], press (●)(6 ㍽)(4 ㍿), enter your terminal security code (4 digits), and then press (1.๋).**

● The accept calls screen is displayed.
When "Disable reject calls" is displayed
● Reject calls, Reject unknown, Reject number unset, Reject payphone, or Reject not support is set. Disable the setting and try again.

2 **Press (1.๋) (Set).**

● If Accept calls list is empty, the save list screen is displayed. Register before setting (☞P.57).

To disable
● Press (2 ㍊).

Reject Calls

Rejecting Calls from Specified Phone Numbers

You can set your mova to reject calls from specified callers in your phonebook. Calls from other numbers (including those where the caller does not send their number) are connected. To set Reject calls, register the phone numbers of all members registered in the phonebook whom you wish to reject to the list and set collectively later.

● When a call is received from a caller who is set in Reject calls without sending their number, the call is connected. It is recommended that services such as the "Caller ID Display Request Service", in which a guidance informs the caller to send their number, and rejecting by reason also be set.
● When Accept calls is set, Reject calls cannot be set.
● Callers set to be rejected hear a busy signal. In such cases, "* missed calls" is displayed and information such as the name is recorded in the received calls history.
● Short mail and i-mode mail are received regardless of this function.

Saving a Caller in Reject Calls

〈(●)(6 ㍽)(4 ㍿)〉

You can save up to 20 callers in Reject calls.

1 **In the stand-by, press (●) to select [⚙], press (●)(6 ㍽)(4 ㍿), and then enter your terminal security code (4 digits).**

● Each entered digit is displayed as "✳".

Answering Calls

2 **Press ②ABC (Reject calls).**

● The reject calls screen is displayed.
When "Disable accept calls" is displayed
● Accept calls is set. Disable the setting and try again (☞P.59).

3 **Press ③DEF (Save list).**

● If another party has already been saved, their name or phone number is displayed.

4 **Select the number of the list to save, and then press ●.**

● The phonebook list is displayed.

5 **Select the phone number of the person to save from the phonebook list.**

● Only the selected phone number is saved.

6 **Press ●.**

Save list screen

● The phone number displayed in the phonebook list is saved for Reject calls. (The name registered in the phonebook is registered in the saved list.)
● To specify other phone numbers, repeat steps 4 to 6.
To use Reject calls
● After this, set Reject calls.

Note	● When a phonebook entry for a caller in the Reject calls list is edited or deleted, the contents saved in the list are also edited or deleted. However, if Reject calls is set, you cannot edit or delete the phonebook entry (Except when performing Delete all in group and Delete all). ● Refer to P.433 for information on the Caller ID Display Request Service. ● Refer to P.61 for information on rejecting by reason of non-disclosure. ● When still pictures are displayed in the phonebook list, only the first 16 digits of the phone number are displayed. Change the display of the phonebook in the submenu, display all phone numbers, and then perform this operation (☞P.90). ● Remote keypad lock can be performed from numbers rejected with Reject calls. When the set number of calls is reached and Keypad lock is set, the Keypad lock tone is heard. **To delete a caller** ❶ In step 4, select the caller to delete, and then press ●. ❷ Press ②ABC, select "Yes", and then press ●. ● If phonebook entries saved in the Reject calls list are deleted after setting Reject calls, the setting is disabled. **To change the caller** ❶ In step 4, select the caller to change, and then press ●. ❷ Press ①, select the phone number to change, and then press ●.

Saving to Reject Calls from Phonebook

〈⊡〉

● You can save phone numbers to Reject calls from the phonebook list.

1 **In the stand-by, press ● to select [PHONEBOOK], and then press ●.**

Answering Calls

2 Select the phone number of the person to save from the Phonebook list.

3 Press ⓒ⑨ⁿⁿ, and then enter your terminal security code (4 digits).

● Each entered digit is displayed as "✳".

4 Select the number of the list to save, and then press ⦿.

● Only the selected phone number is saved.

Setting/Disabling Reject Calls

⟨⦿⑥⧽④⧽⟩

● The default setting is "Disable".

1 In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select 🗙, press ⦿⑥⧽④⧽, enter your terminal security code (4 digits), and then press ②.

● The reject calls screen is displayed.
When "Disable accept calls" is displayed
● Accept calls is set. Disable the setting and try again (☞P.59).

2 Press ①. (Set).

● If Reject calls list is empty, the save list screen is displayed. Register before setting (☞P.59 and P.60).
To disable
● Press ②.

Rejecting by Reasons for Non-disclosure

Rejecting Calls with No Caller ID

⟨⦿⑥⧽④⧽⟩

If an anonymous call is received, the reason for caller ID non-disclosure is displayed. You can set so that specific anonymous calls are not accepted.

● If an anonymous call is received from a caller whose reason for non-disclosure matches the one you have set, the call will not be connected. Other calls will be connected. Caller's who are rejected will hear a busy signal. "* missed calls" is displayed and the non-disclosure reason and other information are saved in the received calls history.
● It is recommended that the Caller ID Display Request Service, which informs the caller of a "Caller ID Display Request" by guidance, also be set.
● When Accept calls is set, rejecting by reason of non-disclosure cannot be set.
● Short mail and i-mode mail are received regardless of this function.

■ Reasons for non-disclosure

User unset	Caller wishes to withhold caller ID.
Payphone	Calls from NTT payphones and DoCoMo car payphones.
Not support	Call from a network not enabled for caller ID. This is displayed for calls received from overseas, or calls from regular (landline) telephones via various transfer services. However, the caller ID may still be displayed, depending on the telephone company involved.

Answering Calls

1 **In the stand-by, press ● to select [icon], press ●$6_{MNO}$$4_{GHI}$, and then enter your terminal security code (4 digits).**

● Each entered digit is displayed as "✳".

2 **Select the type of reason for non-disclosure (Reject user unset, payphone, or not support), and then press ●.**

When "Disable accept calls" is displayed
● Accept calls is set. Disable the setting and try again (☞P.59).

3 **Press $1._{@}$ (Set).**

To disable
● Press 2_{ABC}.

Note	● The default setting for rejecting by reasons of non-disclosure is "Disable".

Set Mute Seconds

Silencing the Ring Tone for Calls from Unregistered Callers

⟨●$1._{@}$$8_{TUV}$⟩
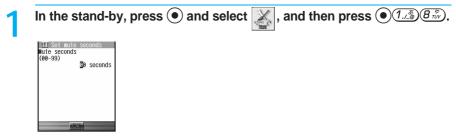
You can set the ring tone to sound with a delay of a certain number of seconds when calls are received from callers not registered in the phonebook. (Can also be set for numbers set to not send caller ID.)
● When the mute seconds are set, you can set whether calls that are disconnected before the ring tone sounds are displayed in the received calls history.
● This is one way to prevent nuisance calls.
● The default setting is "00 seconds" (sound ring tone immediately).

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select [icon], and then press ●$1._{@}$$8_{TUV}$.**

2 **Enter the mute seconds (2 digits: 00 to 99 seconds), and then press ●.**

● The missed calls history screen is displayed.

Answering Calls

62

3 Press $(1._{\textcircled{a}})$ (ON: Display in received calls history).

To not display in the received calls history
● Press $(2._{ABC}^{\textit{D}})$.

Note	● Calls that are disconnected within the mute seconds when Set mute seconds is set to not display in the received calls history (OFF) can be displayed by selecting "**9**Display all" in the received calls history submenu. In this case, the submenu changes to "**9**Limit display". By selecting this, you can set to not display the history again.
	● When Record message or Voice Mail Service is set, for the set mute seconds to take precedence, set the ring duration longer for Record message and Voice Mail Service.
	● When Phonebook lock is "ON", the time set for mute seconds applies for calls from callers registered in the phonebook.

Reject Unknown

Rejecting Calls from Numbers Not in Phonebook

$\langle (\bullet) (6_{MNO}^{ら}) (4_{GHI}^{た}) \rangle$

You can set the mova to not connect incoming calls from callers that are not in your phonebook.

● When a call is received from a caller who is set in Reject calls without sending their number, the call is connected. It is recommended that the Caller ID Display Request Service, which informs the caller of a "Caller ID Display Request" by guidance, and the function to Reject by reason of non-disclosure also be set.

● The caller hears a busy signal. "* missed call" is displayed in the stand-by display. The phone number, etc. is saved in the received calls history.

● Short mail and i-mode mail are received regardless of this function.

● The default setting is "Disable".

1 In the stand-by, press $(\bullet)$ to select $\boxed{\text{SETTINGS}}$, press $(\bullet)(6_{MNO}^{ら})(4_{GHI}^{た})$, and then enter your terminal security code (4 digits).

● Each entered digit is displayed as "*".

2 Press $(3_{DEF}^{さ})$ (Reject unknown).

● The reject unknown screen is displayed.
When "Disable accept calls" is displayed
● Accept calls is set. Disable the setting and try again (☞P.59).

3 Press $(1._{\textcircled{a}})$ (Set).

To disable
● Press $(2._{ABC}^{\textit{D}})$.

Note	● Remote keypad lock can be set from numbers rejected with Reject unknown. When the set number of calls is reached and Remote keypad lock is set, the Keypad lock tone is heard.
	● When mute seconds and Reject unknown are set simultaneously, Reject unknown is prioritized.

Answering Calls

63

►MEMO◄

64

4

Setting the Response When You Cannot Take a Call

Putting on Hold When You Cannot Answer Immediately

If you are unable to answer the call right away, you can put the call on hold and have the caller wait.

● The caller is charged for the call while the call is on hold.

1 Press (🔘 PWR/HLD) while the ring tone is heard.

On hold

0M 01S

UedaMikio

090XXXXXXXX

● You will hear a series of beeps, and the call is put on hold.

What the caller hears

● A guidance informs the caller that you are unable to answer the call, and the connection is maintained.

To disconnect the call while on hold

● Press (🔘 PWR/HLD). (The call is saved in the received calls history.)

If the caller disconnects while on hold

● The call is ended. (The call is saved in the received calls history.)

2 When you are ready to answer the call, press (🔘 AF).

● You can now speak to the caller.

You can answer the call with keys other than (🔘 AF).

● You can also answer a call using (0), (1) to (9) or (*) on the keypad when Any key answer is "ON" (☞P.486).

Note	● The call remains on hold even if you close your mova. In this case, "On hold" is displayed in the sub display.
	● When the mova is closed, press 🔘 for at least 1 second while ringing to place the call on hold.
	● When in Viewer position, press 🔘 (right guidance key) to place the call on hold while the mova is ringing.
	● The series of beeps does not sound in Manner mode.
	● You can place a call on hold even when Keypad lock is set.

Preventing Incoming Calls While Driving

"Drive mode" is a service that automatically answers calls so that you can concentrate on driving. When "Drive mode" is set, a guidance, which informs callers that you are driving and unable to answer, is played and the call is disconnected.

● You can only set/disable Drive mode during stand-by.
  (It can still be set or disabled when out of the service area.)
● Outgoing calls can be made as usual in Drive mode.

1 In the stand-by, press (*) for at least 1 second.

Drive mode

Set

● "Set" is displayed and Drive mode is set.
  ("🚗" lights)

Setting the Response When You Cannot Take a Call

Disabling Drive Mode

1 **In the stand-by while Drive mode is set, press $\circledast$ for at least 1 second.**

  ● "Disabled" is displayed and Drive mode is disabled. ("🚗" disappears)

When Drive mode is set

The ring tone will not sound even when your mova receives a call. "* missed calls" is displayed, and the call is saved in the received calls history.
● A guidance informs callers that you are driving, and then the call is disconnected. If the mova is turned off or is out of the reach of signals, the same guidance as when you are out of the service area is played.
● i-mode mail and i-mode messages are received automatically and "✉" is displayed.

When you set Voice Mail Service to "Start" while Drive mode is set

When a call is received, the ring tone does not sound, and the call is connected to the Voice Mail Service Center. These calls are saved in the received calls history.
● A guidance informs callers that you are driving and the call is being connected to the Voice Mail Service Center. The call is automatically forwarded to the Voice Mail Service Center.

When you set Call Forwarding Service to "Start" while Drive mode is set

The call is not connected to the mova but is forwarded to the set forwarding destination instead. These calls are saved in the received calls history.
● To set whether to play a guidance to callers, use $\textcircled{1}\textcircled{4}\textcircled{2}\textcircled{9}$ in the Call Forwarding Service settings. When the Call Forwarding Service is set to "Play", a guidance informing that you are driving and that the call is being forwarded is played. When "Do not play guidance" is set, the guidance is not played.

When you set Call Waiting Service to "Start" while Drive mode is set

An incoming call to your mova during a call will not activate the ring tone.
● A guidance informs callers that you are driving, and the call is disconnected.

When you set Caller ID Display Request Service to "Start" while Drive mode is set

When a "User unset" call is received, a guidance requesting notification of caller ID is played. A guidance stating that you are driving and therefore cannot answer is not played.

Setting the Response When You Cannot Take a Call

When a call is received during i-mode while Drive mode is set

If Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service are set to ①④⑤⓪ while in i-mode stand-by ("🚗" flashing), a guidance will be played according to "Set i-mode rcv" settings.

i-mode answer	A guidance informs callers that you are driving and the call is disconnected. (Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service will not operate even when set to "Start".)
Voice mail	A guidance informs callers that you are driving and that the call is being connected to the Voice Mail Service center. The call is then forwarded to the Voice Mail Service center.
Forward	When Forward with message (☞P.281) of Set i-mode receive is set, a guidance informs callers that you are driving and then the call is forwarded to a specified destination. When set to Forward without message is set, the call is forwarded without playing the guidance.
Notification	A guidance informs callers that you are driving and the call is disconnected. (Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service will not operate even when set to "Start".)

● When Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service are set to ①④⑤①, ①④⑤②, ①④⑤⑨, the settings above are invalid.

Note	● Remote keypad lock can be set while in Drive mode. Disconnect after the Drive mode guidance is played. After you have called the set number of times and Keypad lock is set, the Drive mode guidance is not played. Instead, a beep tone sounds to signify that Keypad lock is set.
	● Called LED, Vibrator, Alarm, as well as other warning sounds will not function.
	● On your mova, press (#=) for at least 1 second to set Drive mode. Do not set Drive mode by pressing "①④①⑤①(☎) (ON)" or "①④①⑤⓪(☎) (OFF)", because this will activate Drive mode only when the mova is turned off or is out of the service area, and not while the mova is turned on. If you have set Drive mode using "①④①⑤①(☎) (ON)", disable by pressing "①④①⑤⓪(☎) (OFF)".
	● This function cannot be used while using data transmissions or fax.
	● Refer to P.414 for information on the Voice Mail Service, P.423 for information on the Call Forwarding Service, P.420 for information on the Call Waiting Service, and P.433 for information on the Caller ID Display Request Service.

Verifying Missed Calls

If you do not answer an incoming call, the mova notes that a call was missed. If you did not answer the call, "* missed calls" and the number of missed calls are displayed in the stand-by display or the sub display. (Missed call display)

● "* missed calls" disappears when missed calls are viewed.

1 **Press ⦿ while "* missed calls" is displayed.**

● "☎" is displayed for missed calls.

When in Viewer position

● Press ⦿.

2 **Select the phone number you wish to view, and then press ⦿.**

● The details of the Missed call are displayed.
● Using the same operations in the received calls history, you can make calls and view other received calls history.
When in Viewer position
● Press ⓪.

Note	● When a call from someone using Dial-in is received, a number different from the caller's Dial-in number may be displayed.
	● When Keypad lock (☞P.207) is set, Missed calls cannot be checked.
	To verify missed calls with the Vibrator
	● You can check whether you have any missed calls, recorded messages, or new mail using Vibrator mode by pressing the shutter in the stand-by display with the mova closed. If there are missed calls, recorded messages, or unread mail, "Pattern 1" will activate twice. If none are found, "Pattern 2" will activate twice. Refer to P.98 for vibration patterns.

Record Message

Recording a Message When You Cannot Take a Call

〈⦿ 5ⱼₖₗ 6ₘₙₒ 1.〉

The Record message function plays a message when you are unable to take a call, and records the caller's message.

● Record message cannot be used when the mova is turned off or is out of the reach of signals. This function is useful when used in combination with Voice Mail Service.
● You can record up to 3 messages (about 12 seconds per message). Including Voice memos during call/stand-by, 3 messages can be recorded.

Setting/Disabling Record Message

1 **In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select [icon], and then press ⦿ 5ⱼₖₗ 6ₘₙₒ.**

2 **Press 1. (Set record msg).**

● The screen to set Record message is displayed.

To check (play) the outgoing message
● Press 3ᵈᵉf.

69

3 **Press $(1.^{\boxed{?}})$ (ON: Set record message).**

Record message display

- Record message is set.
  Press $(\bullet^{\text{書}})$ to return to the stand-by display. ("📨" lights.)
- When there is a message, "📨₁" (1 message) or "📨₂" (2 messages) is displayed. After the third message is recorded, "📨" disappears automatically.

To disable Record message

- Press $(2.^{\boxed{?}})$. ("📨" disappears.)
- To set and disable Record message while Manner mode is set, use the Manner mode settings (☞P.97).

When "Unable to record anymore" is displayed

- Delete any unnecessary recorded messages, and try again (☞P.72).

Note	● Refer to P.414 for information on the Voice Mail Service, and P.487 for information on Voice memos.
	● Set the response time for Record message from 00 to 59 seconds. (☞P.71)

When the Record Message is Set

1 **When you receive a call, Record message answers after about 10 seconds.**

- The caller hears the answering message.

To answer a call while the message is playing

- While the answering message is playing, press $(\bullet^{\text{斤}})$.

2 **The caller's message is automatically recorded.**

Indicator

Scale

- During recording, the caller's voice is heard from the earpiece. (When in Manner mode, the other party's voice is not heard from the earpiece.)
- A beep tone is heard at the beginning and ending of the recording.
- Indicator and scale are estimates.

To answer a call during recording

- Press $(\bullet^{\text{斤}})$ during recording. The message is recorded until $(\bullet^{\text{斤}})$ is pressed.

3 **When the message has been recorded, the mova returns to the stand-by display.**

- When the number of recorded messages reaches 3 messages, "📨" automatically disappears and no further recorded messages are accepted. To use Record message again, delete unnecessary messages and set Record message again.
- When Record message is set in the Manner mode settings, Record message is automatically enabled after deleting unnecessary messages.

Setting the Response When You Cannot Take a Call

Note	● Record message may not be recorded if it is shorter than 3 seconds.
	● Recorded content may be lost due to mova damage, repairs, or handling. DoCoMo cannot be held responsible for these losses. As a precaution, please write down recorded message contents and other important data in a notebook or other safe place.
	● The recorded content may be cut off, depending on signal strength.
	● Recorded messages are not deleted when the power is turned off.
	● You cannot receive a call from a third party while a message is being recorded. The third party hears a busy signal.
	● Messages stating you are out of the service area or have changed numbers cannot be recorded.
	● If "Voice Mail Service" (☞P.414) is set, messages are held at the Voice Mail Service Center even after 3 Voice mail messages are recorded.
	● Even if Record message is not set, you can set and record messages with a single key operation while receiving a call (☞P.72).
	● Record message will not operate while in Drive mode (☞P.66).

Setting the Delay Until the Answering Message Starts <Start Time>

〈 ● 5 ᴶᴷᴸ 6 ᴹᴺᴼ 2 ᴬᴮᶜ 〉

You can set the length of time before Record message responds when a call is received. (0 to 59 seconds)

● The default setting is "10 seconds".

1 In the stand-by, press ● and select [SETTINGS icon] , and then press ● 5 ᴶᴷᴸ 6 ᴹᴺᴼ .

● The screen to set Record message is displayed.

2 Press 2 ᴬᴮᶜ (Start time).

[Screen image: 662 Start time (00-59) 10 seconds OK]

3 Enter the start time (2 digits: 00 to 59 seconds), and then press ●.

To enable Record message to respond without a ring tone
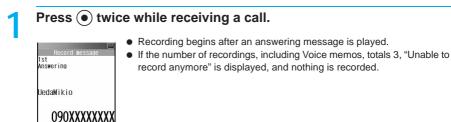● Set the start time to "00 seconds".

Note	● If "Voice Mail Service" (☞P.414) or "Call Forwarding Service" (☞P.423) is set simultaneously with Record message, the priority differs according to the set ring time for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service.
	● For Record message to take priority, set the Record message response time to be shorter than the set ring time for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service.

Setting the Response When You Cannot Take a Call

71

Recording a Message When You Cannot Answer a Call

Even if Record message is not set, you can record a message for a specific call.

1 **Press ⦿ twice while receiving a call.**

- Recording begins after an answering message is played.
- If the number of recordings, including Voice memos, totals 3, "Unable to record anymore" is displayed, and nothing is recorded.

Note	● If the mova is closed, press ● to answer with Record message.
	● When in Viewer position, press ● twice to answer with Record message.
	● Recorded content may be lost due to mova damage, repairs, or handling. DoCoMo cannot be held responsible for these losses. As a precaution, please write down recorded message contents and other important data in a notebook or other safe place.

Playing/Deleting Recorded Messages and Voice Memos

You can play or delete recorded messages and voice memos recorded during calls and stand-by voice memos.

1 **In the stand-by, press ⌃ (▣).**

- If a calendar is displayed, press ⊛⊂ᴸᴿ, and then press ⌃ (▣).
- When in Viewer position, press ●.

When "* record msg" is displayed
- Press ⦿ to play Record message.

2 Press ② (Play).

Indicator

```
Play memo
1st message
20/ 7(Tue) 10:08

UedaMikio

090XXXXXXXX
Delete
```

Scale

- Voice memos during call and stand-by (☞P.487) are played starting with the oldest. (First　Second　Third)
- If there are no messages recorded, "No voice memos" is displayed and the mova returns to the memo screen.
- Indicator and scale are estimates.
- When in Viewer position, select Play with ◓, and then press ◉.

To stop playback
- Press ☎ during playback.

To delete a recorded message
- While playing the recorded message you wish to delete, press ⓘ or ⓐ, select "Yes", and then press ◉.
- When in Viewer position, after pressing ▭ (left guidance key) or ⓒ while playing the recorded message to delete, select "Yes", and then press ◉.

■ Hearing the message again from the beginning

Press ◠ during playback.

First message	Second message	Third message	

Play →

■ Playing the previous message during playback

Press ◠ twice during playback.

First message	Second message	Third message	

Play →　　　Play →

■ Playing the next message during playback

Press ◡ during playback.

First message	Second message	Third message	

Play →　　　Play →

Note	● If a call is received during playback, playback is automatically stopped.
	● If the set alarm time arrives during playback, playback is automatically stopped and the alarm sounds.
	● When the date and time are not set on the mova, the recording date and time are not displayed.
	● Refer to P.487 for information on Voice memos.
	When the Security setting (☞P.202) for "Received calls" or "Voice memo" are ☑ (Set)
	● The screen to enter your terminal security code is displayed. After you enter your terminal security code (4 digits), the message is played.
	To check recorded messages with the Vibrator
	● You can check whether you have any missed calls, recorded messages, or new mail using Vibrator mode by pressing the shutter in the stand-by display with the mova closed or in Viewer position. If there are missed calls, recorded messages, or unread mail, "Pattern 1" will activate twice. If none are found, "Pattern 2" will activate twice. Refer to P.98 for vibration patterns.

Setting the Response When You Cannot Take a Call

73

5

Using the Phonebook

Adding Data to the Phonebook

〈⊕〉

Registering the names, numbers, and mail addresses of people you frequently call makes it easy to call or mail them.

- You can register up to 750 records, 000 to 749, in the Phonebook.
- Each phonebook entry can hold 3 phone numbers and 3 mail addresses.
- You can register still pictures taken with the camera to the phonebook. When you receive a call from a person with a still picture registered, their name, phone number and the registered still picture are displayed alternately. (You can register 1 still picture per phonebook entry.)
- Refer to P.511 to P.520 for instructions on character input.

■ **What you can register**

Phonebook entry
screen

Icon	Category	Details
👤	Name	Enter their name. You can enter up to 16 full-pitch characters (32 half-pitch characters) for their first and last names together.
R	Reading	The readings are automatically entered. You can edit the entered readings. You can enter up to 32 half-pitch characters for "First name" and "Last name" combined.
👥	Group	You can save your phonebook in groups. You can sort them into groups 0 to 19, and you can change the group names for groups 1 to 19.
☎	Phone number	You can register 3 phone numbers. Each phone number can be categorized using 5 icons.
✉	Mail address	You can register 3 mail addresses. Each mail address can be categorized using 4 icons.
📇	Personal data	You can register the other party's personal information such as address and birthday. You can enter up to 30 full-pitch (60 half-pitch) characters.
🔒	Set secret	You can set the phonebook entry to not display. Set this when you wish your phonebook to remain private.
📧	Secret code	If the other party has set a Secret code, enter the Secret code specified by them. This is needed when sending mail. Refer to P.347 for information on the Secret code.
♪	Select ring tone	The set ring tone sounds when a call is received.
✉♪	Mail ring tone	The set mail ring tone sounds when mail is received.
🔔	Called LED	The set LED color lights when a call is received.
✉🔔	Mail/ Message LED	The set LED color lights when mail is received.
🖼	Picture call set	You can register still pictures taken with the camera. When you make or receive a call from someone who has a still picture registered, their name, phone number and picture can be displayed alternately, or the picture can be displayed in the phonebook list.

| Note | ● When you upgrade to a new model at a DoCoMo retailer, you can copy "First phone number", "Kana/Kanji name", "Group settings", "First mail address", "Bookmarks", and "Secret Settings". Please note that depending on the specifications of new models, some data registered on your mova may not be copied.
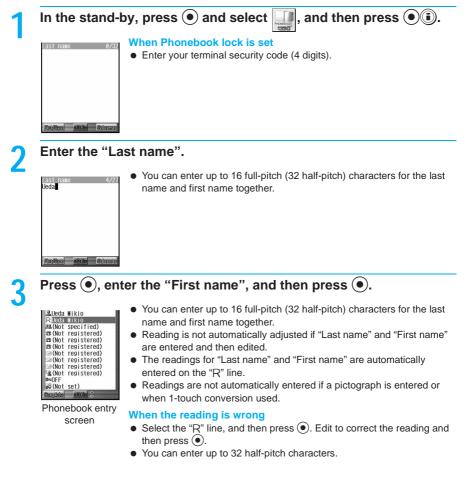**It is recommended to keep the contents of phonebook entries on a paper memo or on a miniSD memory card (☞P.444). You can also use Data Link software (☞P.553) and a USB cable (sold separately) to save entries on your PC.**
● Malfunction, repairs, or other handling of the mova may cause loss of registered contents. DoCoMo cannot be held responsible in any way for the loss of data registered in the phonebook. |
|---|---|

Basic Registration Method

⟨ 🔒ⓘ or 🔒 for at least 1 second⟩

Here, a basic phonebook registration method for registering a full name, phone number, and mail address is explained.

1 **In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select [PHONEBOOK icon], and then press ⦿ⓘ.**

When Phonebook lock is set
● Enter your terminal security code (4 digits).

2 **Enter the "Last name".**

● You can enter up to 16 full-pitch (32 half-pitch) characters for the last name and first name together.

3 **Press ⦿, enter the "First name", and then press ⦿.**

Phonebook entry screen

● You can enter up to 16 full-pitch (32 half-pitch) characters for the last name and first name together.
● Reading is not automatically adjusted if "Last name" and "First name" are entered and then edited.
● The readings for "Last name" and "First name" are automatically entered on the "ℝ" line.
● Readings are not automatically entered if a pictograph is entered or when 1-touch conversion used.

When the reading is wrong
● Select the "ℝ" line, and then press ⦿. Edit to correct the reading and then press ⦿.
● You can enter up to 32 half-pitch characters.

Using the Phonebook

77

4 **Select the "☎" line, press ⦿, and then enter the phone number.**

- Always include the area code, even when the number is for a regular telephone.
- You can enter up to 24 digits for the phone number. After 13 digits, the phone number is displayed on 2 lines.
- You can enter "✳" or "　" in a phone number but it may not call correctly every time.
- When sending to recipients who have phone number set as mail address, if you register a phone number starting with "184" or "186", i-mode mail is not sent properly if these phone numbers are selected as the address from the phonebook.

If you make a mistake
- Press ⓪ to delete the last digit. To delete a digit in the middle of a number, press ⦿ to move the cursor "▌" to the digit you wish to delete, and then press ⓪. Press ⓪ for at least 1 second to delete the entire phone number. Enter the correct number.

To enter a pause
- Press ⌒ where you wish to insert a pause. "P" is displayed. ("P" is also counted as 1 digit.)

5 **Press ⦿, and then select the icon to display.**

Icons you can set

☎	Telephone	📱	Work phone
🖊	Mobile phone	🖨	Fax
📞	Home phone		

6 **Press ⦿.**

To register multiple phone numbers
- Repeat steps 4 to 6.

7 **Select the "✉" line, press ⦿, and then enter the mail address.**

- You can enter up to 50 half-pitch alphanumeric characters or certain symbols.

To enter "@" and "." (period)
- Press ① repeatedly.
  In addition, press ⓑ for at least 1 second to easily enter portions of addresses (☞P.517).

8 **Press ⦿, and then select the icon to display.**

Icons you can set

✉	Mail address	📧	Home mail address
📨	Mobile mail address	📩	Work mail address

Using the Phonebook

9 Press ⦿.

To register multiple mail addresses
● Repeat steps 7 to 9.

To continue to set/save other items
● You can continue with group settings, personal data registration, secret registration, i-mode secret code settings, Picture call settings, ring tone (mail/message ring tone) settings, and called (mail/message) LED. Refer to P.80 to P.83 and P.92 for details.

10 Press ⓘ (Complete), and then enter the specific memory number (3 digits: 000 to 749).


```
    Memory number?

  Add to phonebook
    Ueda Mikio
  Saved to memory
    number 0 0 5
```

● When ⓘ (Complete) is pressed while nothing is entered, "Input required items" is displayed.
Enter Last name, First name, phone number, or mail address to end.

To not specify a memory number
● Without entering a memory number, press ⦿. This registers the information to the smallest open memory number from "010" to "749". If "010" through "749" are all registered, then the information is registered to the smallest open memory number from "000" to "009".

Note	● Phonebook memory numbers that have secret data registered cannot be overwritten unless Secret mode is ON.

Memory numbers
● The memory number is a unique number for each phonebook entry. You can specify memory numbers on the mova from 000 to 749.
● When creating a new Phonebook entry while 750 entries are already saved, enter a memory number to overwrite an existing entry.

Other ways to specify the number
● Enter a single number for the hundreds digit, and then press ⦿.
The information is registered to the smallest open memory number in the range of the entered digit (100 to 199 if ①⑤ is entered).
● Enter 2 digits for the hundreds and tens digits, and then press ⦿.
The information is registered to the smallest open memory number in the range of the entered digit (120 to 129 if ①⑤②⑥ is entered).

When you receive mail or messages while editing
● Press ⓒⓛⓡ in the message received results screen to return to the previous screen and resume editing. (This applies even when the receive results display disappears after a certain period of time.)

Copying to a miniSD memory card
● You can copy phonebook entries registered on the mova onto a miniSD memory card (☞P.447), and display phonebook entries registered on a miniSD memory card (☞P.450) .
● You can copy phonebook entries from a miniSD memory card to the mova. (☞P.452)
● When an entire phonebook is copied to a miniSD memory card, entries are listed in reading order. When group transfer is performed, entries are in order of memory number. When copied individually, entries are displayed by the copy date, starting with the oldest.

Ir exchange
● You can send phonebook entries registered on the mova using Ir exchange (☞P.438), or receive phonebook entries via Ir exchange (☞P.439).

Using the Phonebook

Setting a Group

1 **Select the "👥" line in the phonebook entry screen (☞P.77), and then press ⦿.**

● The screen to select the group is displayed.

2 **Select a group to set, and then press ⦿.**

● The group is set.
● To end phonebook registration, press ⓘ (Complete) to display the memory number specification screen. Enter the memory number (☞P.79).

Note	● Registered to "🔟 (Not set)" if group is not set.
	● You can change the group name or set ring tones and Called LED colors for each group. You can also register a still picture for each group (☞P.84).

Registering Personal Data

1 **Select the "🔲" line in the phonebook entry screen (☞P.77), and then press ⦿.**

● The screen to enter personal information is displayed.

2 **Enter their personal information (such as their address or birthday), and then press ⦿.**

● You can enter up to 30 full-pitch (60 half-pitch) characters.
● The Personal data is registered.
● To end phonebook registration, press ⓘ (Complete) to display the memory number specification screen. Enter the memory number (☞P.79).

Setting a Secret Code for i-mode

If the other party has set a secret code, set the secret code to "🔐". The secret code is automatically added when sending mail. The secret code can only be used when the mail address format is "phone number@docomo.ne.jp". Refer to P.347 for details on secret codes.

1 **Select the "🔐" line in the phonebook entry screen (☞P.77), press ⦿, and then enter your terminal security code (4 digits).**

When no mail address is registered
● "Address not saved" is displayed.

2 **Press ① (Set).**

● The screen to select the mail address is displayed.

3 **Select the i-mode mail address to register a secret code, and then press ●.**

● The screen to set the code is displayed.

4 **Enter the other party's secret code (4 digits).**

5 **Select "Yes", and then press ●.**

● The secret code is set, and the mail address is displayed.
● To end phonebook registration, press ⓘ (Complete) to display the memory number specification screen. Enter the memory number (☞P.79).

To not set a secret code
● Select "No", and then press ●.

Note	● The secret code cannot be set to "0000".
	● The secret code can only be set for 1 mail address.
	● Refer to P.347 to register your own secret code.
	● If the Mail address is registered in the phonebook as "phone number + secret code @docomo.ne.jp", mail may not be sent or replied to properly. Change to "phone number @docomo.ne.jp", and then register the secret code.

To verify a set secret code
● In step 2, press ②. The set secret code is displayed.
To clear a set secret code
● In step 2, press ③.

Setting a Still Picture <Picture Call Set>

● Still pictures are displayed in the following priority.

	Priority ranking (High → Low)
Still picture	Picture call set → Group Picture call set (☞P.85)

1 **Select the "🖼" line in the phonebook entry screen (☞P.77), and then press ●.**

2 **Press ① (My picture), select a folder, and then press ●.**

To take a picture with the camera
● Press ②, and then take a picture.
● Refer to P.127 for information on taking pictures with the camera.

To clear still picture settings
● Press ③.

Using the Phonebook

3 Select a still picture to set, and then press ⬤.

- The still picture is registered.
- To end phonebook registration, press 🔘 (Complete) to display the memory number specification screen. Enter the memory number (☞P.79).

Note	● Still pictures that cannot be set for Picture call are crossed out and cannot be selected.

- In the preview screen after taking a picture, press ⓐ③ (New Entry) or ⓐ④ (Add to Phonebook) to set the image as a picture call.

To set the display time for still pictures

1 In the stand-by, press ⬤②①④.

2 Set the display time, and then press ⬤.

- The default setting is "1 second".
- The still picture is not displayed when this setting is "OFF".
- Still pictures set for Picture call may take time to open the first time depending on the size of the data.

Setting the Ring Tone <Select Ring Tone/Mail Ring Tone>

- The ring tone priority will be in the following order.

	Priority ranking (High ⟶ Low)
Ring tone	Number Plus ring tone ⟶ Phonebook ring tone ⟶ Group ring tone ⟶ i-mode ring tone ⟶ Ring tone
Mail ring tone	Selected mail tone ⟶ Group mail ring tone ⟶ Mail ring tone

1 Select the " ♪" (Select ring tone) line in the phonebook entry screen (☞P.77), and then press ⬤.

To set the mail ring tone

- Select the "✉" line, and then press ⬤.

2 Select the ring tone.

- Press 🔘 (Play) to play the ring tone. Press 🔘 (Stop) again to stop playback and return to the original screen.

To disable the set ring tone/mail ring tone

- Select "⑩ (Not set)", and then press ⬤.

3 Press ⬤.

- The ring tone is registered.
- To end phonebook registration, press 🔘 (Complete) to display the memory number specification screen. Enter the memory number (☞P.79).

Using the Phonebook

Note	● The normal ring tone will sound when someone registered as secret calls or sends mail. To enable Select ring tone/Mail ring tone, set Secret mode "ON" (☞P.92).
	● When Keypad lock or Phonebook lock is set, the normal ring tone will sound when a call or mail is received.
	● If an open i-melody saving area is selected in step 2, melody does not play when ⓘ (Play) is pressed.

Setting the Called LED Color <Called LED/Mail/Message LED>

	Priority ranking (High　　　Low)
Called LED	Phonebook Called LED　　Group Called LED　　Called LED
Mail/Message LED	Mail/Message LED　　Group mail/message LED　　Mail/Message LED

1 Select the " 👤 " (Called LED) line in the phonebook entry screen (☞P.77), and then press ⦿.

To set the Mail/Message LED
● Select the "✉" line, and then press ⦿.

2 Select the Called LED/Mail/Msg LED color.

● The Picture light/Called LED color changes each time you select a color.

To disable Called LED/Mail/Message LED
● Press ⓘ (Not set).

3 Press ⦿.

● The Called LED color is set.
● To end phonebook registration, press ⓘ (Complete) to display the memory number specification screen. Enter the memory number (☞P.79).

Note	● "Random" flashes in random colors, depending on the caller's phone number and the date. "Rainbow" lights in a gradation of each color. "Aurora" has a white base and lights in 3 different patterns of gradated light repeatedly. "Prism" has a white base and lights consecutively in red, blue and green. "Mixed colors" lights in each color consecutively.
	● When selecting the Mail/Message LED, "▣ Random" is grayed out and cannot be selected.
	● The normal Called LED will notify you when someone registered as secret calls or sends mail. To enable Called LED/Mail LED, set Secret mode to "ON" (☞P.92).
	● When Keypad lock or Phonebook lock is set, the normal Called LED will notify you when a call or mail is received.

Using the Phonebook

Setting Group Names, Ring Tones, Called LED, and Still Pictures

Registering/Changing a Group Name

You can register or change the group names used in the mova phonebook.
- The default setting is "🔲 (Group) 1" to "🔲 (Group) 19".
- You cannot change the group name for "🔲 Not specified".

1 In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select 📱, and then press ⦿⦿.

When Phonebook search method is set to "Group Search"
- In the stand-by, press ⦿ to select 📱, and then select a group. Press ⦿②, and then proceed to step 4.

2 Press ⑥ (Group settings).

- The current group name is displayed.

3 Select a group name to register/change, and then press ⦿.

4 Press ① (Edit group name), and then enter/edit the group name.

- Up to 8 full-pitch (16 half-pitch) characters can be entered for the group name.

5 Press ⦿.
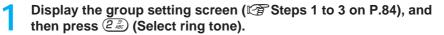
- The group name is changed.
- Press ⓘ (Complete) when you have finished editing.

Note	**To restore the original group names**
	• After deleting all group names in step 4, press ⦿ⓘ (Complete). The group names return to their default setting.

Using the Phonebook

Setting the Ring Tone for Each Group

You can set the mova to notify you with a selected ring tone when you receive a call or mail from someone in a certain group.

● Refer to P.82 for the priority ranking of ring tones and mail ring tones.

1 Display the group setting screen (☞ Steps 1 to 3 on P.84), and then press ②ᴬᴮᶜ (Select ring tone).

To select the mail ring tone
● Press ③ᴰᴱᶠ.

2 Select the ring tone, and then press ⏺.

● The ring tone is set.
● Select the ring tone, and then press ⓘ (Play) to play the ring tone. Press ⓘ (Stop) again to stop playback and return to the original screen.
● When settings are complete, press ⓘ (Complete).

Setting the Called LED Color for Each Group

You can set the mova to notify you by flashing a selected LED color when you receive a call or mail from someone in a certain group.

● Refer to P.83 for the priority ranking of Called LED and Mail/Message LED.

1 Display the group setting screen (☞ Steps 1 to 3 on P.84), and then press ④ᴳᴴᴵ (Called LED).

To select the Mail/Message LED Color
● Press ⑤ᴶᴷᴸ.

2 Select the LED color, and then press ⏺.
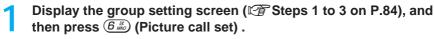
● The Picture light/Called LED color changes each time you select a color.
● The Called LED color is set.
● When settings are complete, press ⓘ (Complete).

Note	● When selecting the Mail/Message LED, "🎲 Random" is grayed out and cannot be selected.

Setting a Still Picture for Each Group

You can set the mova to notify you with a selected still picture when you receive a call or mail from someone in a certain group.

● Refer to P.81 for details on the priority ranking of still pictures.

1 Display the group setting screen (☞ Steps 1 to 3 on P.84), and then press ⑥ᴹᴺᴼ (Picture call set) .

● The screen to set Picture calls is displayed.

Using the Phonebook

2 Press $\textcircled{1.\ }$ (My picture), select a folder, and then press $\textcircled{\bullet}$.

To take a picture with the camera
- Press $\textcircled{2.\ }$, and then take a picture.
- Refer to P.127 for information on taking pictures with the camera.
To clear still picture settings
- Press $\textcircled{3.\ }$.

3 Select a still picture to set, and then press $\textcircled{\bullet}$.

- Still picture is set.
- When settings are complete, press $\textcircled{i}$ (Complete).
- "🖼" is displayed next to the group name in the group selection screen.

Note	● Still pictures that cannot be set are crossed out.

Search Phonebook

Making a Call from the Phonebook

This section describes how to retrieve data from the Phonebook to make a phone call.
You can search the Phonebook by the reading, group or memory number.
- The default setting is to display the Phonebook list by "reading".
- Press $\textcircled{🖳}$ in the stand-by to display the phonebook list using the last retrieval method selected.
- If Phonebook lock is set, enter your terminal security code (4 digits) to call using the phonebook.

Changing the Phonebook Retrieval Method (Search Method)

1 In the stand-by, press $\textcircled{\bullet}$ and select 🖳, and then press $\textcircled{\bullet}$.

- The phonebook list is displayed. The mova returns to group selection display if set to group search.

2 Press $\textcircled{📷}\textcircled{1.\ }$ (Search by).

3 Select the search method to use, and then press $\textcircled{\bullet}$.

- The phonebook is retrieved using the selected search method.

Note	● Press $\textcircled{🖳}$ to recall and display the Phonebook.
	To use Assistant view
	● Press $\textcircled{view}$ during a call to recall and display or copy from the Phonebook. (☞P.478)
	To display Phonebook entries registered on a miniSD memory card
	● Press $\textcircled{📷}\textcircled{\#}$ in the Phonebook list.
	● The search method for Phonebook data stored in a miniSD memory card cannot be selected.

Using the Phonebook

Calling from Phonebook in Viewer Position

1 **In the stand-by in Viewer position, press ◉.**

- ● TOP menu is displayed.
- ● If Zoom menu or Shortcut menu is displayed, press ⌷ (left guidance key) to return to the TOP menu.

2 **Select 📖 with ◉, and then press ◉.**

```
        Other
004 Inoue Kaori
005 Ueda Mikio


        090XXXXXXXX
New   OK   Submenu
```
Phonebook list

3 **Select the other party using ◉, and then press ◉.**

When using Group Search
- ● Select group with ◉, press ◉, and then select the other party.

4 **Press ◉.**

- ● The displayed phone number is dialed.
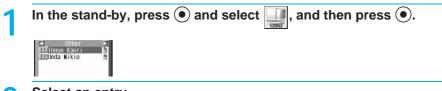
Note	● In the Phonebook list, press ⌷ (left guidance key) for at least 1 second to scroll up a page at a time or press ⌷ (right guidance key) for at least 1 second to scroll down a page at a time. However, this will only scroll within the group when searching a group.
	To use Assistant view
	● Press shutter during a call to recall phonebook from Assistant view and display or copy from the Phonebook (☞P.478).

Searching by Reading

1 **In the stand-by, press ◉ and select 📖, and then press ◉.**

```
        Other
004 Inoue Kaori
005 Ueda Mikio
```

2 **Select an entry.**

- ● Press ◉ to display the previous or next entry.
- ● Press ◉ to select one item at a time.

To select an entry by entering the reading
- ● As you enter each character of the reading, similar phonebook entries are shown sequentially.

Using the Phonebook

87

3 Press ⬤.

Phonebook
details screen

● Select an icon with 🔘, and then press ⬤ to perform the following operations.

☎ ▯ 🐾 🗂 🖨	The registered phone number is dialed.
✉ 🗂 🐾 🗂	The screen to compose a message is displayed, addressed to the registered mail address.
♪ 🎵	The set ring tone is played.
🔔 🔔	The set Called LED flashes.
🖼	The set still picture is displayed.

4 Press 📞 or ⬤.

● The displayed phone number is dialed.

Note	● In the Phonebook list, press 🔘 to scroll up a page at a time and 🔘 to scroll down a page at a time. However, this will only scroll within the group when searching a group. ● The search order for the "reading" is as follows. Katakana (Japanese syllabary order Dakuten/Handakuten) symbols alphabet numbers no "reading"

Searching by Memory Number

1 In the stand-by, press ⬤ and select 📇, and then press ⬤.

● The phonebook list is displayed.

2 Enter the memory number.

● Press 🔘 to display the 10 phonebook entries nearest to the displayed entry.
● Press 🔘 to select one item at a time.

To select an entry by entering the memory number
● As you enter each digit of the desired memory number, similar phonebook entries are shown sequentially. For example, entering "185" will do the following.
  ■ Enter first digit ("1")
    Phonebook entries for memory numbers "100" to "109" are displayed.
  ■ Enter second digit ("8")
    Phonebook entries for memory numbers "180" to "189" are displayed.
  ■ Enter third digit ("5")
    Phonebook entry for memory number "185" is displayed.

3 Press ⬤.

● Refer to step 3 of "Searching by Reading" (☞P.88) for the operations performed when selecting each icon and pressing ⬤.

4 **Press ⊡ or ⊙.**

● The displayed phone number is dialed.

Searching by Group

1 **In the stand-by, press ⊙ and select [icon], and then press ⊙.**

● The screen to select the group is displayed.

2 **Select a group and then press ⊙.**

● The phonebook list for the specified group is displayed.
● This is displayed in "reading" order (Katakana   symbols   alphabet   numbers   no "reading").

3 **Select an entry.**

● Press ⊙ to display the previous or next group which has phonebook entries registered.
● Press ⊙ to select one item at a time.
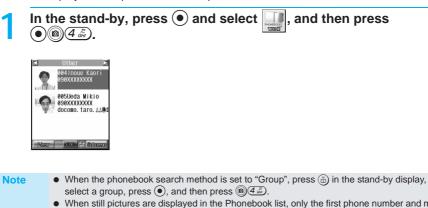
To select an entry by entering the reading
● As each character of the reading for the other party's name is entered, phonebook entries in the group with similar reading are shown sequentially.

4 **Press ⊙.**

● Refer to step 3 of "Searching by Reading" (☞P.88) for the operations performed when selecting each icon and pressing ⊙.

5 **Press ⊡ or ⊙.**

● The displayed phone number is dialed.

Using the Phonebook

89

Changing Phonebook List Display <Switch View Mode>

You can display the still picture set in the phonebook in the Phonebook list.

1 **In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select [📖], and then press ⦿⦿(📷)④ᴳᴴᴵ.**

Note	● When the phonebook search method is set to "Group", press (🔘) in the stand-by display, select a group, press ⦿, and then press (📷)④た.
	● When still pictures are displayed in the Phonebook list, only the first phone number and mail address can be displayed/selected. To select other registered phone numbers and mail address, display the phonebook details screen, and then select.

To Switch still pictures in the Phonebook Display Screen
● Press (📷)⑧ᵀᵁⱽ in the phonebook display screen.
● The display cannot be switched while displaying data contained in a miniSD memory card.

Edit Phonebook

Editing Phonebook Entries

You can edit each item that is registered/set in the Phonebook.
● You can also newly register/set items.

1 **In the stand-by, press ⦿ to select [📖], press ⦿, select a phonebook entry, and then press (📷)②ᴬᴮᶜ.**

Phonebook entry
screen

2 **Select an item to edit, press ⦿, and then edit the item.**

- Refer to "Adding Data to the Phonebook" on P.76 to P.83 for details on editing methods.
- Press ⓘ (Complete) when you have finished editing. To register to the same memory number, press ⦿, select "Yes", and then press ⦿. To register to a different memory number, enter the memory number to register.
- When there are 750 entries registered in the Phonebook, you cannot register to a new memory number.
- In the screen to enter the memory number, press ⓒ for at least 1 second to delete the memory number, and then press ⦿ to register to an empty memory number (☞P.79).

Note
- You can also edit by pressing ⓒ①ⓐ in the phonebook details screen.
- Numbers in the phonebook set as the Remote keypad lock (☞P.208) license number and those set for Accept/Reject calls cannot be edited. Entries also cannot be edited during Keypad dial lock.

Delete Phonebook

Deleting Phonebook Entries

1 **In the stand-by, press ⦿ to select [], press ⦿, select a phonebook entry, and then press ⓒ③ⓓ.**

2 **Press ①ⓐ (Delete one).**

To delete all phonebook entries in a selected group
- Press ②ⓐ, select the group to delete, and then press ⦿. Enter your terminal security code (4 digits).

To delete all phonebook entries
- Press ③ⓓ, and then enter your terminal security code (4 digits).

To delete multiple phonebook entries
- Press ④ⓖ, select the phonebook entry to delete, and then press ⦿. (The mark changes to "☑". To clear selections, select a phonebook entry that has "☑" displayed, and then press ⦿.) Select all phonebook entries you wish to delete and then press ⓘ (Complete).
- Up to 50 items can be selected.

3 **Select "Yes" and then press ⦿.**

To not delete
- Select "No", and then press ⦿.

Note
- When in Viewer position, select a phonebook entry, press ⌐ (right guidance key), select "❸ Delete" with ▐, press ▐, select "❶ Delete one" with ▐, and then press ▐. To delete multiple entries collectively, select "❹ Delete selected" with ▐, select all the entries to delete, and then press ⌐ (left guidance key) (Complete).
- Numbers in the phonebook set as the Remote keypad lock (☞P.208) license number and those set for Accept/Reject calls cannot be deleted. (All in group/Delete all can be used.) Entries also cannot be deleted during Keypad dial lock.

To operate from the phonebook display screen
❶ Select a phonebook entry you wish to delete, and then press ⓒ②ⓐ.
❷ Select "Yes", and then press ⦿.

Using the Phonebook

91

Protecting Private Phonebook Entries

Phonebook entries set as secret data cannot be retrieved unless the terminal security code (☞P.200) is entered and the mova is set to Secret mode. This protects entries you wish to keep private.

Registering as Secret Data

1 **Select the "◉⌐" line in the phonebook entry screen (☞P.77), and then press ◉.**

2 **Press ①. (ON: Set secret data).**

To return to a normal phonebook entry
● Press ②.

3 **Press ⓘ (Complete).**

● Then, to save to the same memory number, press ◉, select "Yes", and then press ◉. To save to a different memory number, enter the memory number to save and complete phonebook entry registration (☞P.79).

Note	● When memory numbers 000-999 are registered in the phonebook as secret data, "2-touch dialing" is not available unless Secret mode is activated.
	● Mail addresses set as secret data in phonebook entries also cannot be retrieved unless the mova is in Secret mode.
	● Secret data set in the schedule and ToDo list are handled in the same manner as secret data for the phonebook.
	To retrieve secret data
	● With the mova set to Secret mode (☞P.93), retrieve the phonebook entry using the same procedure as regular phonebook entries. ("◉⌐" flashes when secret data is selected in the phonebook list.)
	● After retrieval, procedures such as calling and editing can be used as regular phonebook entry.
	To display in Redial, Received calls, Sent address, Received address, and Schedule
	● Phone numbers and mail addresses set as secret data in your phonebook are displayed, but not the name. To display the name, set your mova to Secret mode.

Using the Phonebook

Setting/Disabling Secret Mode

⟨●⟩ ⟨6 MNO⟩ ⟨1./@⟩

When Secret mode is set, you can retrieve secret data and normal phonebook entries.
When Secret mode is set, "🔑" lights.

● When Secret mode is disabled, you can only retrieve normal phonebook entries.
● Secret mode is disabled when the power is turned off.
● The default setting is "OFF" (Disable).

1 **In the stand-by, press ● to select** [icon] **, press ●⟨6 MNO⟩⟨1./@⟩, and then enter your terminal security code (4 digits).**

● Each entered digit is displayed as "✳".

2 **Press ⟨1./@⟩ (ON: Set Secret mode).**

To disable Secret mode
● Press ⟨2 ABC⟩. "🔑" disappears.

3 **Press ⟨1./@⟩ (No auto disable).**

To automatically disable Secret mode
● Press ⟨2 ABC⟩. When the stand-by goes into Power saver mode, Secret mode will automatically be disabled.

Checking the Registration Status

Checking the Registration Status of the Phonebook

⟨●⟩ ⟨3 DEF⟩ ⟨1./@⟩

You can check the number of entries registered in the phonebook and the number of secret data items.

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select** [icon] **, and then press ●⟨3 DEF⟩⟨1./@⟩ (Check memory).**

● The current status of memory usage is displayed.
● Press ◯ to confirm the status of memory usage for other functions. Refer to P.491 for details.
● Press ◉ to check the registration status of the miniSD memory card.

Using the Phonebook

| Note | ● Secret mode must be set in order to check how many secret data records there are. |

93

Making a Call with a Few Keystrokes

You can easily call numbers you have registered in memory numbers 000 to 099.

- If there are multiple phone numbers registered for 1 phonebook entry, the first phone number registered is dialed.
- Operations from the phonebook detail screen are not available, such as adding "184", "186", or an international prefix.

1 **In the stand-by, press the last digit of the memory number (0 to 9), or the last 2 digits of the memory number (10 to 99).**

Example: When memory number "5" is entered

2 **Press (📞).**

- The phone number registered in the phonebook entry with the specified memory number is dialed.

Note	• This function cannot be used when the phonebook lock is "☑" (☞P.202).
	• When entries registered to memory numbers 000 to 099 are set as secret data, you cannot use "2-touch dialing" to make calls unless you are in Secret mode (☞P.92, P.93).
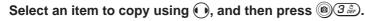
Copying Phonebook Items

You can copy a phone number or mail address in a registered phonebook entry and paste it onto another screen.

- Items that can be copied are Name, Phone numbers 1 to 3, and Mail addresses 1 to 3.

1 **In the stand-by, press (●) and select , press (●), select a phonebook entry containing the item to copy, and then press (●).**

- The phonebook details screen is displayed.

2 **Select an item to copy using ( ), and then press (📷)(3).**

- The selected item is copied.

6

Setting Manner Mode

Silencing the Phone

In public places, you can use Manner mode to silence the phone and avoid annoying the people around you. You can silence your mova with just 1 key.

● The shutter sound and the Start sound/Stop sound for movie recording will be heard even in Manner mode.
● You can change the functions that are set automatically in Manner mode (☞P.97).

Setting Manner Mode

1 **In the stand-by, during a call, or while the phone is ringing, press (#⃝) for at least 1 second.**

● "Set Manner mode" is displayed and Manner mode is set. ("🖐" lights.)
● When performed while a call is being received, ring tone stops and Manner mode is set. This setting stays set. If you do not answer the call, a message is recorded. However, Record message is not set if 3 messages are already recorded.
Press (📞) to answer the call.
During stand-by or ringing, while Manner mode is set (default settings)
● The following sounds are silenced.
Keypad sound, error sounds (beeps), warning tones, melody playback sounds, i-αppli melodies/sound effects, open sound, rotation sound, close sound, charge start sound/charge end sound, battery level sound, hold tone, auto focus sound, on hold tone, bar code recognition sound, etc.
● The following sounds will be switched to "Vibrator".
Various ring tones, alarms, timer sounds, limit alarms etc.
● Record message is set automatically. Record message cannot be set or disabled by menu operations (☞P.69).

| Note | ● When in Viewer position, press ● for at least 1 second in stand-by, during a call, or while receiving a call to set Manner mode. |

Disabling Manner Mode

1 **In the stand-by, during a call, or while the phone is ringing, press (#⃝) for at least 1 second.**

● "Disabled Manner mode" is displayed, and Manner mode is disabled. ("🖐" disappears.)
To disable Manner mode automatically at a specified time
● In the stand-by, enter the time to disable in 24-hour format (4 digits), and then press (#⃝) for at least 1 second. The Manner mode disable time is set.
● To change the disable time, enter the new time in the stand-by, and then press (#⃝) for at least 1 second.
● When a screen other than the stand-by is displayed at the disable time, Manner mode is disabled when you return to the stand-by display.
● After setting Manner mode that has release time set, setting is canceled if Manner mode is manually disabled or date/time is reset.

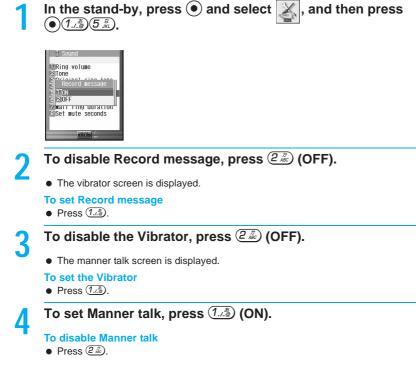| Note | **To silence the ring tone of an incoming call when Manner mode is not set (Quick silent)** |
| | ● Press (#⃝) (: Manner mode) or (●) for at least 1 second while the phone is ringing. The ring tone is silenced for that call only. |
| | ● Press ● for at least 1 second when the mova is closed or in Viewer position. |

Changing Manner Mode

⟨●①⑤⟩

You can set (ON) or disable (OFF) the functions that are automatically set (Record message, Vibrator, Manner talk mode) when Manner mode is set.

● The default setting for Record message and Vibrator is "ON", and Manner talk is "OFF".

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select [icon], and then press ● ① ⑤ .**

2 **To disable Record message, press ② (OFF).**

● The vibrator screen is displayed.

To set Record message
● Press ①.

3 **To disable the Vibrator, press ② (OFF).**

● The manner talk screen is displayed.

To set the Vibrator
● Press ①.

4 **To set Manner talk, press ① (ON).**

To disable Manner talk
● Press ②.

Note	● You can make changes to Original manner mode while Manner mode is set. Even after setting Record message in Original manner mode to "OFF", when Record message (☞P.69) is set to "ON" it will activate. **When Manner talk is set** ● If you set Manner talk mode, the sensitivity of the microphone is enhanced during a call, enabling you to speak in a low voice.

Setting Manner Mode

Notifying Incoming Calls and Alarms by Vibration

⟨●①④①/●①④②⟩

When you do not wish to sound the ring tone or alarm, set the Vibrator. Select from 3 vibration patterns, or use a melody-interlocked vibration pattern to notify you of an incoming call or an alarm.

● You can set it to distinguish incoming calls from mail.
● Vibrator action for manner mode will follow Vibrator settings.
● Vibrator mode and volume settings are not interlocked. You can set the volume to "Silent" to silence the ring tone or alarm. You can change the volume while Vibrator mode is set (☞P.56, P.108, P.220).
● You can also use the Vibrator with your melody settings. (With melody)
● The default setting for both phone and mail is "OFF".

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select 🗒, and then press ●①④.**

2 **Press ① (Vibrator).**

● The vibrator screen is displayed.

To set mail vibrator
● Press ②.

3 **Select the type of vibration, and then press ●.**

● When Vibrator mode is set, "🕱" is displayed in the stand-by display.
● You can sample the vibration patterns by using 🔘 to select from patterns 1 to 3. (When sampling, the Picture light/Called LED flashes.)
● The patterns you can set are described below.

OFF	Vibrator does not operate.
Pattern 1	Repetition of 0.8 seconds vibration 0.8 seconds pause
Pattern 2	Repetition of 0.3 seconds vibration 0.3 seconds pause 0.3 seconds vibration 1 second pause
Pattern 3	Continuous vibration
With melody	● When a melody that is composed with Vibrator operations is set as the ring tone, the mova vibrates in accordance with melody settings. ● When the ring tone is a melody not composed with Vibrator operations, then the vibration follows "Pattern 1".

Note	● If the phone is placed on a desktop when the Vibrator mode is set, and you receive a call, the phone may fall. Please be careful. ● When Vibrator mode is set, it does not vibrate when Flash movie (☞P.277) sound effects are heard. ● If Vibrator is set to "With melody" and the volume is set to "Silent", the mova vibrates in "Pattern 1".

Setting Manner Mode

Silencing the Sounds of the Keys

⟨●1./@ 1./@ 4GHI 1./@⟩

You can silence the sound when a key on the mova is pressed (Keypad sound).
● Setting "Silent" silences the battery level sound, beeping error tones, and the sound when a key is pressed.
● Keypad sound is silenced while Manner mode is set, regardless of settings made with this function.
● The default setting is "Volume 3".

1 In the stand-by, press ● and select [icon], and then press ●1./@ 1./@ 4GHI.

```
114 Setting sound vol
Volume 3
1 Keypad sound
2 Open sound
3 Rotation sound
4 Close sound
5 Charge start sound
6 Charge end sound
7 Timer sound

     OK
```

2 Press 1./@ (Keypad sound).

● The keypad sound screen is displayed.

3 Refer to the screen to select the volume (☞P.56), select "Silent", and then press ●.

To change the Keypad sound volume
● Select from "Volume 1" to "Volume 5", and then press ●.

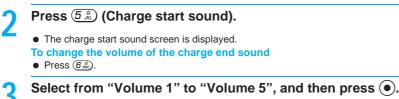| Note	● Refer to P.107 for details on changing the Keypad sound volume.

Setting the Charging Confirmation Sound

⟨●1./@ 1./@ 4GHI 5JKL / ●1./@ 1./@ 4GHI 6MNO⟩

● The Charge start/end sounds are silenced regardless of settings for this function, if Manner mode or Drive mode is set or the mova is in i-mode stand-by ("⬚" flashing).
● The default setting for both is "Volume 3".

1 In the stand-by, press ● and select [icon], and then press ●1./@ 1./@ 4GHI.

● The screen to select sound volume is displayed.

2 Press 5JKL (Charge start sound).

● The charge start sound screen is displayed.
To change the volume of the charge end sound
● Press 6MNO.

3 Select from "Volume 1" to "Volume 5", and then press ●.

To silence Charge start/end sounds
● Select "Silent", and then press ●.

Setting Manner Mode

99

7

Changing the Ring Tone and Other Sounds

Changing the Various Sounds

Setting the Ring Tone <Select Ring Tone>

⟨●1₁2₂1₁⟩

You can change the ring tone of your mova. Moreover, you can set a melody to notify you of an incoming call.

● i-melody downloaded using i-mode (☞P.278), melodies received by mail (☞P.322), recorded audio (☞P.109), and melodies read from miniSD memory cards (☞P.109) can be set as the ring tone.
● The default setting is " 1".

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select 🗒️, and then press ●1₁2₂1₁.**

2 **Select the ring tone you wish to use.**

● Press 🔘 (Play) to play the ring tone. The ring tone is played back in "Volume 1" if "Phone ring volume" is set to "Silent". Press 🔘 (Stop) again to stop playback and return to the previous screen.

To silence the ring tone
● Select "81 (Silent)".

3 **Press ●.**

Note	● When multiple ring tones are set, the priority order is as follows.

	Priority ranking (High Low)
Ring tone	Number Plus ring tone Phonebook ring tone Group ring tone i-mode ring tone Ring tone

■ Preset Ring Tones

	Display	Song title	Composer
01	1	—	—
02	2	—	—
03		—	—
04		—	—
05		—	—
06	you've got a call	—	—
07	you've got mail	—	—
08		—	—
09		—	—
10		—	—
11	Oriental Energy	Oriental Energy	—
12	Better Days	Better Days	—
13			MATOS RODRIGUEZ GERARDO H
14			—
15			—
16	Beat On Motion	Beat On Motion	—
17			—
18	The Valley	The Valley	—
19			ELGAR EDWARD
20	Silver Bow	Silver Bow	—

Note	● While in i-mode stand-by ("🔲" flashes), the ring tone set in "Set i-mode rcv" of i-mode menu sounds (☞P.283). **It is recommended that saved i-melodies be saved to a miniSD memory cards. (☞P.444). You can also use Data Link software (☞P.553) and a USB cable (sold separately) to save them on your PC. (Non-pastable melodies cannot be transferred.)** ● Malfunctions, repairs, or other handling of the mova may cause loss of registered contents. DoCoMo cannot be held responsible in any way for the loss of registered data.

Setting the Mail and Message Ring Tone <Select Mail Tone>

〈 ◉ 1./@ 2 ABC 2 ABC 〉

You can change Mail and Message Request/Message Free ring tones.
● i-melody downloaded using i-mode (☞P.278), melodies received by mail (☞P.322), recorded audio (☞P.109), and melodies read from miniSD memory cards (☞P.109) can be set as the ring tone.
● The default settings for all ring tones are "   2".

1 **In the stand-by, press ◉ and select [icon], and then press ◉ 1./@ 2 ABC 2 ABC.**

```
122 Select mail tone
着信音2
1Mail ring tone
2Message R ring tone
3Message F ring tone



      ＯＫ
```

2 **Press 1./@ (Mail ring tone).**

● The mail ring tone screen is displayed.

To change the Message Request ring tone
● Press 2 ABC.

To change the Message Free ring tone
● Press 3 DEF.

3 **Select the ring tone you wish to use.**

● Press 🎵 (Play) to play the ring tone. The ring tone is played back in "Volume 1" if "Mail ring volume" is set to "Silent". Press 🎵 (Stop) again to stop playback and return to the previous screen.

To silence the ring tone
● Select "81 (Silent)".

4 **Press ◉.**

Note	● Refer to P.108 for details on changing the mail and message ring tone volumes.
	● When multiple mail/message ring tones are set, the mail/message ring tone priority will be in the following order.

	Priority ranking (High Low)		
Mail ring tone	Select mail tone	Group mail ring tone	Mail ring tone

Setting the Mail Ring Tone for Chat Mail <Chat Mail Tone>

〈●1.／@2ABC3DEF〉

You can change the Chat mail ring tone.
- You can set melodies downloaded using i-mode, i-melodies received by mail, recorded audio, and melodies read from miniSD memory cards as the ring tone.
- The default setting is "   ".

1 In the stand-by, press ● and select 🔧, and then press ●1.／@2ABC3DEF.

2 Select the ring tone you wish to use.

- Press 🔘 (Play) to play the ring tone. The ring tone is played back in "Volume 1" if "Chat mail ring volume" is set to "Silent". Press 🔘 (Stop) again to stop playback and return to the previous screen.

   To silence the ring tone
- Select "81 (Silent)".

3 Press ●.

Setting Sound Effects <Setting Sounds>

〈●1.／@2ABC4GHI〉

You can change the sound that is emitted when a key is pressed, shooting still pictures and movies, when the mova is opened or closed, or when the display is rotated.
- The error sound is fixed and cannot be changed with this function.
- The default setting for Keypad sound, shutter sound, open sound, close sound, rotation sound, and timer sound is "   ".

1 In the stand-by, press ● and select 🔧, and then press ●1.／@2ABC4GHI.

Changing the Ring Tone and Other Sounds

2 Press ⌜1.⌐⌐ (Keypad sound).

● The Keypad sound screen is displayed.

To change the shutter sound
● Press ⌜2⌐⌐.

To change the open sound
● Press ⌜3⌐⌐.

To change the sound emitted when the display is rotated
● Press ⌜4⌐⌐.

To change the close sound
● Press ⌜5⌐⌐.

To change the alert sounds for the Timer
● Press ⌜6⌐⌐.

3 Select the Keypad sound you wish to use.

● Press ⓘ (Play) to play the sound effect. The ring tone is played back in "Volume 1" if volume setting for "Keypad sound" is set to "Silent". Press ⓘ (Stop) again to stop playback and return to the previous screen.

To silence the Keypad sound
● Select "Silent".

4 Press ⏺.

When the screen to set the ring duration for Keypad sound are displayed
● Select the ring duration (0.1 seconds, 0.5 seconds, 1 second), and then press ⏺.

When the screen to set the ring duration for open sound/rotation sound/close sound/timer sound is displayed
● Enter the ring duration (2 digits: 00 to 99 seconds), and then press ⏺.

Note	● Refer to P.107 and P.108 for details on changing the volume of Keypad sound, open sound, rotation sound, close sound, or timer sound.
	● Refer to P.145 for changing the shutter sound.
	● Setting sounds that can be set differ for shutter sound, Keypad sound, open sound, rotation sound, close sound, and timer sound.

Changing the Volume of Sounds Emitted by the Phone

Changing the Keypad Volume <Keypad Sound>

⟨●⟩ 1.⅍@ 1.⅍@ 4 ᵍₕᵢ 1.⅍@ ⟩

You can silence or change the volume of the sound when a key on the mova is pressed (Keypad sound).

● Selecting "Silent" silences the battery level sound, error tones, and the sound when a key is pressed.
● Keypad volume is silenced while Manner mode is set, regardless of settings made with this function.
● The default setting is "Volume 3".

1 In the stand-by, press ● and select 🗡, and then press
● 1.⅍@ 1.⅍@ 4 ᵍₕᵢ.

2 Press 1.⅍@ (Keypad sound).

3 Select from "Volume 1" to "Volume 5", and then press ●.

To silence the Keypad sound
● Select "Silent", and then press ●.

Note	● Refer to P.99 for how to silence the Keypad sound.

Changing the Volume of the Sound Emitted when Opening and Closing/Rotating the mova <Open Sound/Rotation Sound/Close Sound>

⟨● 1.⅍@ 1.⅍@ 4 ᵍₕᵢ 2 ₐᵦc ⟩ / ⟨● 1.⅍@ 1.⅍@ 4 ᵍₕᵢ 3 ᵈₑբ ⟩ / ⟨● 1.⅍@ 1.⅍@ 4 ᵍₕᵢ 4 ᵍₕᵢ ⟩

● The default setting for both is "Volume 3".

1 In the stand-by, press ● and select 🗡, and then press
● 1.⅍@ 1.⅍@ 4 ᵍₕᵢ.

● The screen to set the setting sound volume is displayed.

2 Press 2 ₐᵦc (Open sound).

● The open sound screen is displayed.
To change the volume of the sound emitted when the display is rotated
● Press 3 ᵈₑբ.
To change the close sound volume
● Press 4 ᵍₕᵢ.

3 Select from "Volume 1" to "Volume 5", and then press ●.

To silence the open sound, rotation sound and close sound
● Select "Silent", and then press ●.

Changing the Volume of Alerts for the Timer <Timer Sound>

⟨●1./.@ 1./.@ 4 GHI 7 PQRS⟩

● The default setting is "Volume 3".

1 In the stand-by, press ● and select [⚒], and then press ●1./.@ 1./.@ 4 GHI.

● The screen to set the setting sound volume is displayed.

2 Press 7 PQRS (Timer sound).

● The timer sound screen is displayed.

3 Select from "Volume 1" to "Volume 5" or "Step", and then press ●.

To silence the timer sound
● Select "Silent", and then press ●.

Setting the Mail and Message Ring Volume <Mail Ring Volume>

⟨●1./.@ 1./.@ 2 ABC 1./.@ / ●1./.@ 1./.@ 2 ABC 2 ABC / ●1./.@ 1./.@ 2 ABC 3 DEF⟩

● The default setting for both is "Volume 3".

1 In the stand-by, press ● and select [⚒], and then press ●1./.@ 1./.@ 2 ABC.

● The screen to select the mail ring tone volume is displayed.

2 Press 1./.@ (Mail ring tone).

● The mail ring tone screen is displayed.

To change Message Request ring tone volume
● Press 2 ABC.

To change Message Free ring tone volume
● Press 3 DEF.

3 Select from "Volume 1" to "Volume 5" or "Step", and then press ●.

To silence the ring tone
● Select "Silent", and then press ●.

Setting the Mail Ring Volume for Chat Mail <Chat Mail Ring Volume>

⟨●1./.@ 1./.@ 3 DEF⟩

● The default setting is "Volume 3".

1 In the stand-by, press ● and select [⚒], and then press ●1./.@ 1./.@ 3 DEF.

● The screen to set the Chat mail ring volume is displayed.

2 Select from "Volume 1" to "Volume 5" or "Step", and then press ●.

To silence the ring tone
● Select "Silent", and then press ●.

Recording Voice Melodies and Setting Them as the Ring Tone

〈●1.,ぁ 3 ₫〉

You can record audio and set it as the ring tone. Along with melodies downloaded with i-mode and original melodies, up to 60 tunes can be saved.
- Recorded audio is saved in melody saving areas "i   1" to "i   60".
- Up to approximately 6 seconds can be recorded per message.

1 In the stand-by, press ● and select 🎵, and then press ●①.,ぁ③ƒ.

13 Original ring tone
01 i メロディ1
02 i メロディ2
03 i メロディ3
04 i メロディ4
05 i メロディ5
06 i メロディ6
07 i メロディ7
08 i メロディ8
09 i メロディ9
10 i メロディ10
11 i メロディ11
Favorite Play Submenu

- In the stand-by, press ● and select 🎵, and then press ●③ƒ①.,ぁ to display the melody/voice screen. The subsequent steps are the same.

2 Select the i-melody to register, and then press 📷②ᴬᴮᶜ (New recording).

- "Overwrite?" is displayed.

3 Select "Yes", and then press ●.

Indicator

New recording

Recording

Scale

- Recording begins.
- If the recording time exceeds approximately 6 seconds, recording automatically ends.
- Indicator and scale are estimates.

To change the location where the i-melody is saved
- Select "No", press ●📷ᶜᴸᴿ, and then select the melody to save again.

To end in the middle of recording
- Press ●.

Titles for saved audio
- Will be named from "   1" to "   60" in accordance with the location in which they are saved and "🎵" is displayed.

Note	● A Voice melody may not be recorded if it is shorter than 1 second.

When a call is received while recording a voice melody
- Recording is canceled. Press 📞 to answer the call. (Content until recording was stopped is recorded.) After the call is finished, the mova returns to the stand-by display.

To read melodies from miniSD memory cards to original ring tones
1 In the screen of step 1, select the i-melody to register, and then press 📷#✲.
2 Select the melody to read.
3 Press 📷⑥ᴹᴺᴼ.
4 Select "Yes", and then press ●.

Changing the Ring Tone and Other Sounds

109

Playing a Melody

〈 ⦿ ⑦ₚₒᵣₛ ③ᴅᴇꜰ ①ᵢ.ₐ / ⦿ ⑦ₚₒᵣₛ ③ᴅᴇꜰ ②ₐʙᴄ 〉
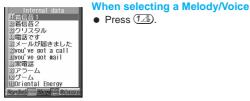
Melodies/Voices registered in My melody can be played.

1 In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select 🎵, and then press ⦿ ③ᴅᴇꜰ.

● The My melody screen is displayed.

2 Press ②ₐʙᴄ (Internal data).

Melody selection screen

When selecting a Melody/Voice

● Press ①ᵢ.ₐ.

3 Select the melody to play, and then press ⦿ (Play).

● The selected melody is played. The ring tone is played back in "Volume 1" if "Phone ring volume" is set to "Silent".
● Press ⦿ while the melody is playing to stop playback.
● If Manner mode is set, melody is not played.

Note	● In the stand-by, press ⦿①ᵢ.ₐ③ᴅᴇꜰ to display the screen for Original ring tones. Melodies downloaded with i-mode and recorded voices can be played. ● Malfunctions, repairs, or other handling of the mova may cause loss of registered contents. DoCoMo cannot be held responsible in any way for the loss of melodies/voices stored in the library. **To delete a melody/voice** **1** After performing step 1 on P.109, select the melody to delete, and then press ⑧⑥ₘₙₒ. **2** Press ①ᵢ.ₐ (Delete one). 　● To delete all Melodies/Voices, press ②ₐʙᴄ, and then enter your terminal security code (4 digits). 　● To delete a selected Melody/Voice, press ③ᴅᴇꜰ, select a Melody/Voice to delete, and then press ⦿. ("☑" is displayed. To cancel a selection, select a Melody/Voice with "☑" displayed, and then press ⦿.) Select all Melodies/Voices to delete, and then press ⓘ (Complete). **3** Select "Yes", and then press ⦿. **To change only the title** **1** After performing step 1 on P.109, select the melody to edit, and then press ⑧③ᴅᴇꜰ. **2** Edit the title, and then press ⦿. ● If the edited name for non-pastable melodies ("📱" is displayed) is entirely deleted and saved, the name returns to the predetermined name or the name from when the melody was downloaded. ● Titles for melodies saved on a miniSD memory card cannot be edited. In addition, melody titles edited on another manufacturer's mova may not be able to be edited. **To copy a downloaded melody to a miniSD memory card** ● Downloaded pastable melodies "🎵" may be saved on a miniSD memory card. **1** After performing step 1 on P.109, select the melody to copy, and then press ⑧⑧ₜᵤᵥ. **2** Select "Yes", and then press ⦿.

▊ Changing the volume and sound quality during playback

Change volume	The playback volume can be set between "Volume 1" to "Volume 5".
Equalizer	You can emulate desired music genres by adding emphasis to specific acoustic ranges. Select from "Normal", "Rock" (low range emphasis), "Pops" (mid range emphasis), and "Classic" (high range emphasis).

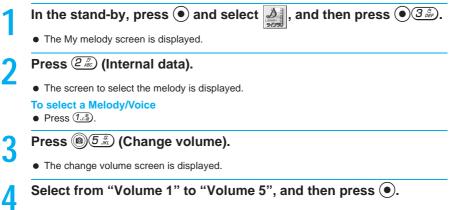**1 During melody playback, press 📷.**

2 Press 1 (Change volume).

To set the Equalizer
● Press 2.

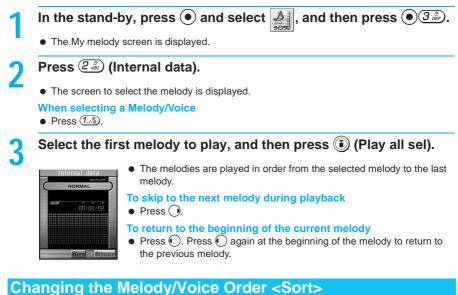**3 Select the item to set, and then press ●.**

Changing the Volume

Set the My melody playback volume between "Volume 1" and "Volume 5".

1 In the stand-by, press ● and select 🎵 , and then press ● 3.

● The My melody screen is displayed.

2 Press 2 (Internal data).

● The screen to select the melody is displayed.

To select a Melody/Voice
● Press 1.

3 Press 📷 5 (Change volume).

● The change volume screen is displayed.

4 Select from "Volume 1" to "Volume 5", and then press ●.

Playing Back Continuously

Continuously play back melodies in Melody/Voice or Internal data, starting with the melody that is selected.

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select 🎵, and then press ● ③.**

● The My melody screen is displayed.

2 **Press ② (Internal data).**

● The screen to select the melody is displayed.

When selecting a Melody/Voice
● Press ①.

3 **Select the first melody to play, and then press ⓘ (Play all sel).**

● The melodies are played in order from the selected melody to the last melody.

To skip to the next melody during playback
● Press ○.

To return to the beginning of the current melody
● Press ○. Press ○ again at the beginning of the melody to return to the previous melody.

Changing the Melody/Voice Order <Sort>

The order in which melodies/voices are displayed in the melody selection screen (step 1 on P.109) can be changed to: "By date: new   old", "By date: old   new", "By title" (in Japanese syllabary order), or "By number" (melody number).

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select 🎵, press ● ③ ①, and then press 📷 ⑦.**

2 **Select the display order, and then press ●.**

Specifying the Part of a Melody to Play

You can play just the part of the melody that is used as the ring tone for melodies downloaded with i-mode or received by mail.
● The parts of the melody you can specify are predetermined and may not be changed.
● Some melodies do not have this option.

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select 📳, press ● ① ③, and then select the melody to specify.**

● Downloaded or received melodies are indicated by "🎵" (pastable melody) or "🎵" (non-pastable melody).

2 **Press ⊙(4ₘₘ) (Start position).**

● The screen to select the starting position is displayed.
● For melodies that you cannot specify the portion to play, "4Start position" is displayed in gray.

3 **Press (1./@) (Play all).**
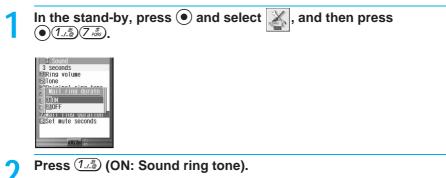
To play a portion
● Press (2ₐₘ).

Mail Ring Duration

Changing the Mail Ring Tone Duration

〈⊙(1./@)(7ₚₒₘₛ)(1./@)〉

You can silence or change the duration (1 to 30 seconds) of the mail ring tone.
● The default setting is "3 seconds".

1 **In the stand-by, press ⊙ and select [icon], and then press ⊙(1./@)(7ₚₒₘₛ).**

2 **Press (1./@) (ON: Sound ring tone).**

To not sound the ring tone
● Press (2ₐₘ).

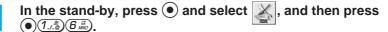**3** **Enter the ring duration (2 digits: 01 to 30 seconds), and then press ⊙.**

Note	● The mova displays a message received results screen and returns to the previous screen after approximately 2 seconds in the following circumstances.

■ When using the camera
■ When editing still pictures and movies
■ When accessing the miniSD memory card
In such cases, the ring tone will only ring for 2 seconds even if the duration is set for more than 3 seconds.

Receiving the Ring Tone through the Earphone Only <Option>

〈(●)(1.,:゙@)(6,゙ヾ)〉

The ring tone can be made to only sound through connected accessories such as the flat switch-equipped earphone (sold separately).

● When the flat switch-equipped earphone (sold separately) is not connected to the terminal, the ring tone sounds from the speaker even if the phone has been set to "Earphone only".
● The default setting is "Earp.+speaker".

1 In the stand-by, press (●) and select 📱, and then press (●)(1.,:゙@)(6,゙ヾ).

2 Press (1.,:゙@) (Earphone only).

To ring from earphone and speaker
● Press (2,゙ǎ).

Note	● Earphone ring tone volume is set in the ring tone volume setting (☞P.56). If the ring tone volume is set to "Silent", the ring tone does not sound from the earphone.
	● When the earphone is connected, the keypad sound, open sound, rotate sound, and close sound can only be heard through the earphone.
	● Do not wrap the earphone cord around the mova. This may interfere with the performance of the antenna.
	● The following occurrences are not malfunctions:
	■ If the earphone microphone plug is not plugged in correctly during a call, the sound may cut off or there may be interference.
	■ A "click" is heard when the power is turned on.
	● Insert the earphone plug properly. If insertion is incomplete, the sound may be cut off, or you may get interference or loud sounds.

Changing the Ring Tone and Other Sounds

114

8

Using the Camera

Before You Use the Camera

Camera Functions

The mova features a camera. You can use the camera to shoot still pictures and movies.
● Images shot with the camera may differ from the actual image of the subject in color and brightness.

You can shoot still pictures and movies

You can shoot still pictures at a maximum size of 1224× 1632 pixels or movies at a maximum size of 240× 176 pixels. You can also scan characters (OCR) and bar codes (JAN codes/QR codes).

You can use the images you shoot in a variety of ways

Shot images can be sent to others using i-shot, saved in the phonebook or schedule or set as the mova stand-by display.

You can shoot using a mode best suited to your location or subject

Use the Picture light indoors or in places with little light. You also can switch between camera settings based on brightness or scene, and shoot images using the Auto timer.

Shoot in Viewer position

Rotate the display and use as the viewfinder.

You can shoot using Switch AF mode or focus lock

Features an auto focus function that enables automatic adjustment of the focus. The camera accommodates various shooting scenes including focus lock by half-pressing the shutter key, Closeup, Portrait, and Landscape by switching AF mode. You can switch to Manual focus, and adjust the focus manually.

You can set image quality and size, paste a frame, and also shoot in Continuous mode

You can set image quality and size based on the subject and intended use of the image. In addition, you can add frames, use Continuous mode or adjust the brightness, change the color in 9 picture bracket multishot, combine 5 still pictures shot in Continuous mode and the 5 still pictures in overlap multishot, or shoot 4 still pictures consecutively and show them in a framed picture, etc.

You can consecutively edit still pictures while comparing the before and after images

You can change an image's coloring or touch, insert a frame, or join 2 still pictures into 1 panorama image.
● You can have fun with images of people by using Face effects to alter facial features.
● You can change the size of image data and send an image using i-shot.

Note	● When attaching frames and marker stamps to camera images, image quality may deteriorate if the image is saved and edited again.

Notes on the Use of Your Camera

[Clean the camera lens before shooting an image]
● The camera will not focus properly if the lens is covered with oil or fingerprints.
Wipe with a soft cloth before shooting.

Lens

Picture light

[Do not use the camera while the mova is charging]
● The red Picture light may appear in the image if taken while the mova is charging.
● Images may appear dark or distorted when they are taken when the battery level is low, even if the mova is charging.

[The mova uses a CCD camera]
● The camera is made using high-precision technology, but there may be certain pixels or lines that will always appear light or dark. Also, please note that white lines and other interference will increase when images are shot in places with little light.
● Image quality may deteriorate when an image is shot or registered after the mova has been in a warm place for a long period of time.
● If the camera is exposed to direct sunlight for long periods of time, the color of the internal color filter may change, which may cause changes in colors of shot images.
● Also note that images may appear dark or out of focus when you shoot directly toward the sun, a lamp, or any strong light source.

[Set image quality based on intended use]
● Set image settings to "SUPER FINE" when you wish to shoot a high-quality image. Data volume will increase (you will be able to save fewer pictures and i-shot transmission time will increase.) but the image quality will be better. Base the settings on the intended use of the image (☞P.141).
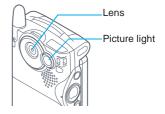
[Notes on copyright/rights of the images]
● Copyright laws prohibit the use of images shot with your mova camera without the permission of the owner, except for personal enjoyment. In addition, refrain from using and altering someone else's image or name without permission, as this may constitute a violation of the right to their image. Keep in mind issues concerning copyrights and image rights when posting shot images in places such as an Internet website.
Also, please note that photography may be restricted at performances and exhibits, even when images shot are intended for personal use only.
● Transmission of copyrighted images is not allowed outside the scope outlined by copyright laws.

> **Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.**
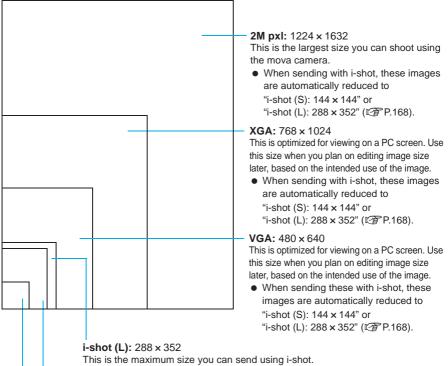
Note	● The mova may become warm with continuous use. This is not a malfunction.
	● Display may darken or distort if battery level is low.

Using the Camera

117

■ Image shot size

[Still picture mode]

The size of still pictures that can be shot (saved) using your mova is as follows. (Will differ from the actual size.)

2M pxl: 1224× 1632
This is the largest size you can shoot using the mova camera.
● When sending with i-shot, these images are automatically reduced to
"i-shot (S): 144× 144" or
"i-shot (L): 288× 352" (☞P.168).

XGA: 768× 1024
This is optimized for viewing on a PC screen. Use this size when you plan on editing image size later, based on the intended use of the image.
● When sending with i-shot, these images are automatically reduced to
"i-shot (S): 144× 144" or
"i-shot (L): 288× 352" (☞P.168).

VGA: 480× 640
This is optimized for viewing on a PC screen. Use this size when you plan on editing image size later, based on the intended use of the image.
● When sending these with i-shot, these images are automatically reduced to
"i-shot (S): 144× 144" or
"i-shot (L): 288× 352" (☞P.168).

i-shot (L): 288× 352
This is the maximum size you can send using i-shot.
This is suited for sending images to other devices such as a PC.

Stand-by: 240× 320
This is the same size as the mova display. Use this size to shoot images that you wish to set as the stand-by display.
● When sending with i-shot, images are reduced to "i-shot (S): 144× 144" or are automatically converted to "i-shot (L): 288× 352" with margins added (☞P.168).

i-shot (S): 144× 144
This is the standard i-mode screen size. Use this setting to shoot images that you wish to send to someone using i-shot.

Using the Camera

118

■ Number of images that can be shot/saved

[Still picture mode]

● These figures are estimates for when pictures of the same shot size and quality are saved (on your mova). The number of still pictures you can shoot will decrease when images downloaded using i-mode have been saved in My picture.
The following are estimates for the number of shots by quality.

Compression mode / Shot size	NORMAL		FINE		SUPER FINE	
	Main memory	miniSD memory card	Main memory	miniSD memory card	Main memory	miniSD memory card
i-shot(S): 144× 144	Approx. 670 (Approx. 700)	Approx. 800	Approx. 470 (Approx. 540)	Approx. 400	Approx. 270 (Approx. 320)	Approx. 400
i-shot(L): 288× 352	Approx. 210 (Approx. 240)	Approx. 400	Approx. 170 (Approx. 200)	Approx. 400	Approx. 140 (Approx. 170)	Approx. 260
Stand-by: 240× 320	Approx. 270 (Approx. 320)	Approx. 400	Approx. 210 (Approx. 240)	Approx. 400	Approx. 140 (Approx.170)	Approx. 260
VGA: 480× 640	Approx. 110 (Approx. 130)	Approx. 260	Approx. 65 (Approx. 75)	Approx. 150	Approx. 45 (Approx. 50)	Approx. 120
XGA: 768× 1024	Approx. 30 (Approx. 35)	Approx. 85	Approx. 20 (Approx. 25)	Approx. 65	Approx. 18 (Approx. 20)	Approx. 55
2M pxl: 1224× 1632	Approx. 15 (Approx. 18)	Approx. 50	Approx. 11 (Approx. 13)	Approx. 35	Approx. 9 (Approx. 10)	Approx. 30

The numbers in parentheses are estimates for the number of images that can be saved on the mova when pre-installed i-αppli software is deleted.

Numbers under miniSD memory card are when still pictures are recorded on a 16MB miniSD memory card.

Note	● Refer to P.140 for details on setting still picture shot size.

● Refer to P.168 for details on editing still pictures taken with the mova.
● The default setting is "Stand-by: 240× 320".
● It is recommended that still pictures saved on the mova be saved on miniSD memory cards (☞P.444). You can also use Data Link software (☞P.553) and a USB cable (sold separately) to save to your PC.

About titles
● Still pictures you shoot (save) are automatically given a title based on the date taken. Example: Image shot at 1:05 PM on November 16, 2004 → "041116_1305"
● When you take consecutive shots, a serial number is added to the end of the title. ("~01", "~02", etc.)
● Refer to P.155 for details on editing titles.

About the memory area
● Memory area is shared with My picture and i-αppli. Depending on the amount of i-αppli software data saved, My picture data may not be saved.

[Movie mode]

The size of movies that can be shot (saved) using your mova is as follows.

● Movies taken with the camera are saved on a miniSD memory card.
● Recording times are for when shooting (saved to a 16MB miniSD memory card) in default settings. Recording time will be reduced when other data is saved on the miniSD memory card.
The following are estimates for recording time by quality.

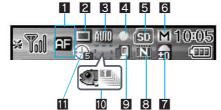| Movie compression mode / Shot size	NORMAL	FINE
Large: 240× 176	Approx. 15 minutes	Approx. 10 minutes
Default: 160× 120	Approx. 18 minutes	Approx. 14 minutes
Small: 120× 88	Approx. 25 minutes	Approx. 16 minutes

Note	● Refer to P.140 for details on setting movie shot size.

● You can store saved movies to your PC by using a miniSD memory card or Data Link software (☞P.444, P.553).

Using the Camera

Icons Displayed During Camera Mode

[Still picture mode]

The following icons are displayed in the main display and sub display when the mova is in Camera mode.

1 Picture light/AF mode (☞P.125, P.146)

- 🔦 : Displayed when Picture light is lit.
- 🔦 : Displayed when Picture light is set to "Auto".
- 🅰🄵 : Displayed when shooting in "Standard" mode.
- 🌷 : Displayed when shooting in "Closeup" mode.
- 👤 : Displayed when shooting in "Portrait" mode.
- 🏔 : Displayed when shooting in "Landscape" mode.
- 🅼🄵 : Displayed when shooting in "Manual focus" mode.

2 Mode (☞P.125)

- ▭ : Displayed when in Still picture mode.

3 Shoot by scene (☞P.142)

- 🄰🅄🅃🄾 Displayed when set to "Auto".
- 👤 Displayed when set to "Portrait".
- 🌃 Displayed when set to "Night scene".
- 👤🌟 Displayed when set to "Night + Portrait".
- 🏔 Displayed when set to "Landscape".
- 🌅 Displayed when set to "Sunset".
- 🏃 Displayed when set to "Sports".
- 🄰🅰 Displayed when set to "Character".
- 🌞 Displayed when set to "Into the sun".
- 🐾 Displayed when set to "Pet".

4 Focus lock (☞P.146)

- ●(Green) : Displayed when focus is locked.
- ●(Red) : Displayed when focusing.

5 miniSD memory card

- 🆂🅳 (Gray) : Displayed when a miniSD memory card is inserted.
- 🆂🅳 (Pink) : Displayed when miniSD memory card is being viewed.
- 🆂🅳 flashing : Displayed when the miniSD memory card is being accessed.

6 Memory warning

- 🅼 (Yellow) : Displayed when memory for still pictures becomes low.
- 🅼 (Red) : Displayed when there is no memory for still pictures.

7 Image brightness (☞P.125)

🔅 🔅 🔅 🔅 🔅
Dark   Normal   Bright

8 Image quality (☞P.141)

- 🆂🅵 : Displayed when set to "**SUPER FINE**" mode.
- 🅵 : Displayed when set to "**FINE**" mode.
- 🅽 : Displayed when set to "**NORMAL**" mode.

9 Image size (☞P.140)

- 🆂 : Displayed when in "i-shot (S): 144× 144" mode.
- 🅻 : Displayed when in "i-shot (L): 288× 352" mode.
- 🄪 : Displayed when in "Stand-by: 240× 320" mode.
- 🄫 : Displayed when in "VGA: 480× 640" mode.
- 🄬 : Displayed when in "XGA: 768× 1024" mode.
- 2🄼 : Displayed when in "2M pxl: 1224× 1632" mode.

10 Continuous shooting (☞P.131)

- 🄜 to 🄜 : Displayed when in 6 Multishot mode. (Image size: VGA)
- 🄜 to 🄜 : Displayed when in 9 Multishot mode. (Image size: i-shot (L))
- 🄜 to 🄜 : Displayed when in 18 Multishot mode. (Image size: i-shot (S), Stand-by)
- 🄜 to 🄜 : Displayed when in bracket Multishot mode.
- 🄜 to 🄜 : Displayed when in overlap Multishot mode.
- 🄜 to 🄜 : Displayed when in 4 stills shot mode.

Image effect (☞P.135)

- 🄑 : Displayed when set to "Black & white".
- ▨ : Displayed when set to "Sepia".
- ✨ : Displayed when set to "Sparkling".
- ▦ : Displayed when set to "Tiles".
- ◉ : Displayed when set to "Faded edges".
- 🌀 : Displayed when set to "Ripple".
- ❋ : Displayed when set to "Kaleidoscope (L)".
- ❋ : Displayed when set to "Kaleidoscope (S)".
- 🐟 : Displayed when set to "Fish-eye".

11 Auto timer (☞P.136)

- ⏱ : Displayed when the 2 second Auto timer is set.
- ⏱ : Displayed when the 5 second Auto timer is set.
- ⏱ : Displayed when the 10 second Auto timer is set.

[When using Zoom]

In Camera mode, press ⊙. The screen on the right is displayed and Zoom can be used (☞P.126).

Actual size   Maximum magnification

Current zoom position

[When using Manual Focus]

Press ⓒ③ in the shooting screen to display the screen to switch AF mode. Select Manual focus to display the screen on the right, and then you can adjust the focus using ⊙.

Focus bar

Focus adjustment bar (Color becomes darker as image focuses.)

[Movie mode]

1 Picture light/AF mode (☞P.125, P.146)
- ⚡ : Displayed when Picture light is lit.
- ⏏ : Displayed when in "Standard".
- ⏏ : Displayed when shooting in "Closeup" mode.
- ⏏ : Displayed when shooting in "Portrait" mode.
- ⏏ : Displayed when shooting in "Landscape" mode.
- ⏏ : Displayed when shooting in "Manual focus" mode.

2 Mode (☞P.125)
- ⏏ : Displayed when in Movie mode.

3 Focus lock (☞P.146)
- ⬤ (Green) : Displayed when focus is locked.
- ⬤ (Red) : Displayed when focusing.

4 miniSD memory card
- ⏏ (Pink) : Displayed when miniSD memory card is being viewed.
- ⏏ flashing : Displayed when the miniSD memory card is being accessed.

5 Image brightness (☞P.125)

Dark   Normal   Bright

6 Image quality (☞P.141)
- ⏏ : Displayed when set to "**FINE**".
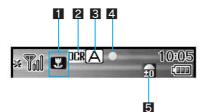- ⏏ : Displayed when set to "**NORMAL**".

7 Image size display (☞P.140)
- ⏏ : Displayed when in "Small: 120× 88" mode.
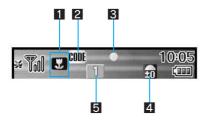- ⏏ : Displayed when in "Default: 160× 120" mode.
- ⏏ : Displayed when in "Large: 240× 176" mode.

8 Auto timer (☞P.136)
- ⏏ : Displayed when the 2 second Auto timer is set.
- ⏏ : Displayed when the 5 second Auto timer is set.
- ⏏ : Displayed when the 10 second Auto timer is set.

Using the Camera

121

[Character reader mode]

1 **Picture light/AF mode (☞P.125, P.146)**
- ⚡ : Displayed when Picture light is lit.
- 🄰🄵 : Displayed when in AF mode.
- 🔽 : Displayed when shooting in "Closeup" mode.

2 **Mode (☞P.125)**
- OCR : Displayed in Character reader mode.

3 **Character reader (OCR) (☞P.172)**
- 🄰 : Displayed in "Normal" mode.
- 🄰 : Displayed in "Reverse text" mode.
- No display: Nothing is displayed when in "Automatic".

4 **Focus lock (☞P.146)**
- ● (Green) : Displayed when focus is locked.
- ● (Red) : Displayed when focusing

5 **Image brightness (☞P.125)**

⊟2	⊟1	⊡0	⊞1	⊞2
Dark		Normal		Bright

[Bar code reader mode]

1 **Picture light (☞P.125)**
- ⚡ : Displayed when Picture light is lit.
- 🄰🄵 : Displayed when in AF mode.
- 🔽 : Displayed when shooting in "Closeup" mode.

2 **Mode (☞P.125)**
- CODE : Displayed in Bar code reader mode.

3 **Focus lock (☞P.146)**
- ● (Green) : Displayed when focus is locked.
- ● (Red) : Displayed when focusing.

4 **Image brightness (☞P.125)**

⊟2	⊟1	⊡0	⊞1	⊞2
Dark		Normal		Bright

5 **Code combination number (☞P.180)**
- **1** to **16** : Displays the number of the combination QR code that is being read.

Camera Mode

Use the mova Camera mode to shoot still pictures, movies, and read characters and bar codes.

What Camera Mode Can Do

◼ Displaying the Key list and performing 1-touch operations

In each Camera mode screen, press ⊙, select "◼Key list" using ◯, and then press ⊙ to display the list of operations that can be performed.

In each Camera mode, 1-touch operations can be performed by pressing the key that is allocated to each operation.

● The display may vary when in Viewer position.

[Still picture mode]

Key list
▶Zoom in
◀Zoom out
Instant zoom in
Instant zoom out
Brightness up
Brightness down
Focus lock
Camera settings
Switch main⇔SD
Full-screen
1————————
2Movie
3Character reader
4Bar code reader
5Select size
6Image quality
7Shot mode
8Original mode
9Switch AF mode
0————————

Key	Operation	Reference
◗	Zoom in	P.126
◖	Zoom out	P.126
⌂	Instant zoom in	P.126
⌂	Instant zoom out	P.126
◖	Brightness up	P.125
◗	Brightness down	P.125
✉ AF	Focus lock	P.146
#✉	Camera settings	P.136, P.142 to P.145, P.148
# TV	Switch main SD	P.144
view	Full-screen	P.143
2 ABC	Movie	P.137
3 DEF	Character reader	P.171
4 GHI	Bar code reader	P.179
5 JKL	Select size	P.140
6 MNO	Image quality	P.141
7 PQRS	Shot mode	P.133 to P.135, P.142
8 TUV	Original mode	P.147
9 WXYZ	Switch AF mode	P.146

Using the Camera

[Movie mode]

Key	Operation	Reference
◗	Zoom in	P.126
◖	Zoom out	P.126
ⓐ	Instant zoom in	P.126
ⓐ	Instant zoom out	P.126
◠	Brightness up	P.125
◡	Brightness down	P.125
⊛ᴬᶠ	Focus lock	P.146
1	Still picture	P.127
3ᴰᴱᶠ	Character reader	P.171
4ᴳᴴᴵ	Bar code reader	P.179
5ᴶᴷᴸ	Select size	P.140
6ᴹᴺᴼ	Image quality	P.141
9ᵂˣʸ�z	Switch AF mode	P.146

[Character reader mode]

Key	Operation	Reference
◠	Brightness up	P.125
◡	Brightness down	P.125
⊛ᴬᶠ	Focus lock	P.146
1	Still picture	P.127
2ᴬᴮᶜ	Movie	P.137
4ᴳᴴᴵ	Bar code reader	P.179
9ᵂˣʸᶻ	Switch AF mode	P.146

[Bar code reader mode]

Key	Operation	Reference
◠	Brightness up	P.125
◡	Brightness down	P.125
⊛ᴬᶠ	Focus lock	P.146
1	Still picture	P.127
2ᴬᴮᶜ	Movie	P.137
3ᴰᴱᶠ	Character reader	P.171
9ᵂˣʸᶻ	Switch AF mode	P.146

Change operations allocated to keys

● You can change operations allocated to keys ⒈ to ⓪. In the Key list, select the key to set with ⓒ, press ⓘ (Custom), select the function to set from the submenu, and then press ⓘ (save) ("Custom" is not displayed when key allocations cannot be changed).
● Operations allocated to various keys may be reset. In the Key list, press ⓒ (Reset), select "Yes", and then press ⓔ. To cancel resetting, select "No", and then press ⓔ.

Switching between different Camera modes

To switch between different Camera modes, select the Camera mode you wish to use by pressing the following key while in Camera mode.

● When in Normal position, press the following keys.

⒈	Still picture mode	③	Character reader mode
②	Movie mode	④	Bar code reader mode

● When in Viewer position, press ▭ (right guidance key), select "❶ Switch 📷 mode" with ◖, and then press ◖. Select the mode to use, and then press ◖.
● If you try to switch to Movie mode when the battery level is low, "Low battery level" is displayed. Press ⓔ to return to the stand-by display. Fully charge the battery, and try again.
● If you try to switch to Movie mode without inserting a miniSD memory card, "No miniSD" is displayed. Press ⓔ to return to the stand-by display. Insert a miniSD memory card, and try again.
● If you try to switch to Movie mode when there is no memory area in the miniSD memory card, "miniSD memory is full" is displayed. Press ⓔ to return to the stand-by display. Delete unnecessary data on the miniSD memory card (☞P.157), and try again.

Note	**To switch between different Camera modes by performing operations using the menu** **❶** Press ⓒ⒈ in Camera mode. **❷** Select the mode to use, and then press ⓔ.

Adjusting brightness (5 levels)

● When in Normal position, press ⓒ (Brightness up)/ ⓠ (Brightness down).
When in Viewer position, press ◗ (Brightness up) /◖ (Brightness down).
(Confirm using displayed icons ☞P.120 to P.122).
● The setting returns to "🔳" (Standard) when you end Camera mode.

Using the Picture light

● When in Normal position, press ⓘ (Light) to switch the Picture light setting to "ON" "AUTO" (Still picture mode only)   "OFF"   "ON".
When in Viewer position, press ▭ (left guidance key) (Light) to switch.
(Confirm using displayed icons ☞P.120 to P.122).
● "AUTO" can be used only in Still picture mode.
● When "AUTO" is selected, the Picture light brightness automatically adjusts the surrounding light conditions when shooting a picture. Press ⓘ (Light) to turn off the Picture light.
● You can also set the Picture light color beforehand (☞P.142).
● The Picture light turns off when Camera mode is ended. Picture light color is based on the settings of Save camera set. (Setting details are saved when Save camera set is "ON". ☞P.144)
● The Picture light illuminates brighter (flashes) when shooting. However, the brightness of the Picture light does not change when shooting "Closeup" in AF mode

▌ Using Zoom (Only in Still picture mode and Movie mode)

● When in Normal position, press ◖◗ to zoom in (the subject becomes larger). Press ◖◗ to zoom out (the subject becomes smaller). The zoom will keep changing while you hold down the key.
Also, press ⊞ for maximum zoom. In this case, if you press ⊞ or ◖◗, the size will double (Still picture mode only). Press ⊠ to return to the actual (original) size.

● When in Viewer position, press ◖ to zoom in and ◗ to zoom out. The zoom will keep changing while you hold down the key. In addition, press ◯ (right guidance key) for at least 1 second to go to maximum zoom. In this case, press ◯ (right guidance key) again for at least 1 second or ◖ to double the size (for Still pictures only). Press ◯ (left guidance key) for at least 1 second to return to actual size (the original size).

● The zoom range (magnification) will vary depending on the shot size.

Camera mode	Shot size	Zoom level (Maximum)
Still picture	i-shot (S): 144× 144	23 levels (17×)
	i-shot (L): 288× 352	16 levels (8.5×)
	Stand-by: 240× 320	18 levels (10×)
	VGA: 480× 640	11 levels (5×)
	XGA: 768× 1024	6 levels (3×)
	2M pxl: 1224× 1632	1 level (Actual size)
Movie	Large: 240× 176	24 levels (5.1×)
	Default: 160× 120	24 levels (7.65×)
	Small: 120× 88	24 levels (10.2×)

● Zoom returns to actual size when you switch shot sizes or exit Camera modes.

Note	Notes on shooting images

● Do not take pictures while charging the mova (☞P.117).
● Do not use the camera with the Picture light close to the eye.
● Try to prevent your hands from shaking. The larger the shot size and higher the image quality, the more likely the image will be affected by the shaking of the hand. An image may appear out of focus if the mova moves while shooting a picture. Shoot with the mova held firmly, or use the Auto timer (☞P.136).
● Adjust the brightness settings according to your location (☞P.125).
 Also, use the Picture light as an additional light source when you are in a dark location (☞P.125, P.142).

Before shooting or editing

● If the memory alert lights ("Ⓜ" lights yellow when memory is low, and "Ⓜ" lights red when there is no available memory), delete images from My picture to secure memory space before shooting or editing an image.
● The conditions in which "Ⓜ" is displayed:
  ■ "Ⓜ" Yellow : Displayed when the saving area for My picture or i-αppli is less than 600KB or more than 630 files are saved.
  ■ "Ⓜ" Red : Displayed if shooting with current settings may exceed the saving area, or may exceed the maximum number of files that can be saved (700).
● When the available memory space in the miniSD memory card is low, "miniSD is full. Unable to save" is displayed. Delete data in the miniSD memory card and secure memory space before shooting or editing an image.

About the memory area

● Memory area is shared with My picture and i-αppli. Depending on the amount of i-αppli software data saved, My picture data may not be saved.

Shooting Still Pictures

Shooting Pictures in Normal Position

⟨◎⟩

1 **In the stand-by, press ⊙ and select [📷] , and then press ⊙ and activate camera.**

Still picture
shooting screen

● The mova enters Camera mode. The image from the camera is displayed in the display.
● You can perform the following actions prior to shooting, based on the subject and the intended use of the image.
  ■ Changing the shot size (☞P.140)
  ■ Adjusting brightness (☞P.125)
  ■ Using the Picture light (☞P.125)
  ■ Using zoom (☞P.126)
  ■ Viewing key operations such as zoom and switch Camera mode (☞P.123)
  ■ Switching save location to miniSD memory card (☞P.144)
  ■ Changing image quality (☞P.141)
  ■ Switching AF mode settings (☞P.146)
  ■ Setting Continuous mode (☞P.133)

2 **Press ⊙ or the shutter.**

● To shoot using Auto focus, press the shutter. It may take a little while before the picture is taken. If ⊙ is pressed, pictures are shot immediately.
● The camera shutter sound is heard, and the preview screen to check the still picture you took is displayed.
● The camera shutter sound is heard even when the mova is in Manner mode.
● You can change the shutter sound (☞P.145).
● You can send the still picture you took using i-shot by pressing ⓘ in the preview screen (☞P.380). You can also immediately send it to a person registered beforehand (Quick i-shot ☞P.382).

To shoot using Focus lock (☞P.146)
● Press (◀), and then press ⊙ to shoot. Or, press the shutter half-way, lock the focus, and then press the shutter all the way to shoot.

When Auto save mode (☞P.148) is set to "ON"
● The shot still picture is automatically saved. (The preview screen is not displayed.)

To erase the still pictures you took and retake
● Press (CLR) in the Preview screen

Using the Camera

127

3 Press ⦿ (Save).

● The shot still picture is saved in camera image folder in My picture in the Library. (Saving still pictures may take some time.)
● Saving process will continue even if you open or close the mova while saving.
● To end Camera mode, press ⬛PWR/HLD.

When there is no memory area or the maximum number of saves (☞P.119) is exceeded

● When the confirmation screen is displayed, select "YES", and then press ⦿. The screen to select data to delete is displayed. Select still pictures and i-αppli to delete until the bar below reaches 100% to save the shot still picture.

To edit or use still pictures before saving

● Press ⬛.
● You can edit the still picture you shot, set it as the stand-by display, register it in the Phonebook or schedule, or display it full-screen. Refer to P.158 for image editing, P.184 for stand-by settings, P.77 for Phonebook registration, P.228 for Schedule registration, and P.143 for Full-screen display.

When the save location is set

● Images are saved to the set folder (☞P.143).

To save onto a miniSD memory card

● Switch the save location before shooting (☞P.144).

Note

● The switch can be used to release the shutter if a switch-equipped earphone/microphone (sold separately) is being used (☞P.145).

When a call or mail is received while in Camera mode

● When a call is received, Camera mode is discontinued and you can answer the call. After the call is finished, the mova returns to Camera mode.
● When mail is received, the receive mail screen is displayed. Then, the mova returns to Camera mode.

When you receive a call or mail while saving a still picture

● Saving process will be suspended so that you can answer the phone or receive mail. When this happens, the still picture being saved is protected. The confirmation screen at right is displayed after a call or reception is completed.
● If "Yes" is selected with ⊙ and then ⦿ is pressed, the mova returns to the screen of step 2 on P.127.
● If "No" is selected with ⊙ and then ⦿ is pressed, the protected still picture is deleted and the mova returns to the stand-by display.

Auto end

● When no operation is performed in Camera mode for about 2 minutes, Camera mode will automatically end and the mova returns to the stand-by display. The confirmation screen at right is displayed when there are unsaved still pictures.

Using the Camera

128

Shooting in Viewer Position

Hold the mova as shown below to shoot in Viewer position.

1 **In the stand-by, press the shutter all the way for at least 1 second to activate camera when in Viewer position.**

- Hold the mova sideways.
- The mova enters Camera mode. Camera image is displayed in the display.
- You can use the zoom or move to the menu (☞P.126).
- Still picture shooting screen is also displayed by pressing ⬚ (right guidance key) in the stand-by display.

2 **Press the shutter or ◉ (Shoot).**

- To shoot using Auto focus, press the shutter. It may take a little while before the picture is taken. If ◉ is pressed, pictures are shot immediately.
- The camera shutter sound is heard, and then the shot still picture is displayed.
- The camera shutter sound is heard even when the mova is in Manner mode.
- You can change the camera shutter sound (☞P.145).
- Press ⬚ (left guidance key) to immediately send the still picture to a preset person. (Quick i-shot ☞P.382)

To shoot using Focus lock (☞P.146)
- Press the shutter half-way, lock the focus, and then press the shutter all the way to shoot.

When Auto save mode (☞P.148) is set to "ON"
- The shot still picture is automatically saved. (The preview screen is not displayed.)

To erase the still pictures you took and retake
- Press ◉ in the preview screen.

3 **Press ◉ (Save).**

- The shot still picture is saved in camera image folder in My picture of the Library. (Saving still pictures may take some time.)
- Saving process will continue even if you open or close the mova while saving.
- To exit Camera mode, press ◉.

When there is no memory area or the maximum number of saves (☞P.119) is exceeded
- A confirmation screen is displayed. Select "Yes" with ◉, and then press ◉. The screen to select data to delete is displayed. Select still pictures and i-αppli to delete until the bar below reaches 100% to save the shot still picture.

When the destination folder is set
- Images are saved to the set folder (☞P.143).

To save onto a miniSD memory card
- Switch the destination before shooting (☞P.144).

Using the Camera

▋ **Taking pictures of yourself**

You can rotate the display when the mova is open and take a picture of yourself. When taking a picture of yourself, hold the mova as shown below.

1 **Open the mova backwards, and then press the shutter all the way for at least 1 second in the stand-by to activate camera.**

● The display becomes a viewfinder.

2 **Turn the camera towards yourself.**

● An inverted image is displayed. The display returns to normal when the picture is taken.

3 **Press the shutter or ◉ (Shoot).**

● The preview screen is displayed upside down. The still picture is saved in the correct direction.

4 **Press ◉ (Save).**

● Refer to step 3 of "Shooting in Viewer position" on ☞P.129 to save.

Using the Camera

Continuous Mode <Continuous Mode>

You can shoot multiple still pictures consecutively. Continuous mode options are:
"Multishot" which saves each image shot consecutively as an individual still picture,
"Bracket" which consecutively takes 9 types of pictures by changing the brightness and
Picture light color, "Overlap multishot" which overlaps 5 images shot consecutively into 1
composite picture, and "4 stills" which positions 4 consecutively shot images as sections
within a single still picture.
"Fast", "Standard", or "Manual" can be selected for "Multishot". Up to 18 consecutive still
pictures can be taken, depending on the shot size.

Multishot	Fast	Automatically shoots still pictures at 0.1 second intervals.
	Standard	Automatically shoots still pictures at 0.2 second intervals.
	Manual	You operate the shutter to shoot consecutive still pictures.
Bracket multishot	Bracket	Consecutively shoots 9 still pictures with varied brightness and Picture light color settings.
Overlap multishot	Fast overlap	Shoots 5 consecutive still pictures at 0.1 second intervals, and automatically combines the 5 still pictures to create a sixth composite image.
	Standard overlap	Shoots 5 consecutive still pictures at 0.2 second intervals, and automatically combines the 5 still pictures to create a sixth composite image.
	Manual overlap	You operate the shutter to shoot 5 consecutive still pictures, and automatically combines the 5 still pictures to create a sixth composite image.
Framed multishot	4 stills	Shoots 4 consecutive still pictures at 2-second intervals, and arranges them as 4 sections of a single still picture.
	Manual 4 stills	You operate the shutter to shoot 4 consecutive still pictures and arrange them as 4 sections of a single still picture.

● Sizes that can be shot in Continuous mode are "i-shot (S): 144× 144", "i-shot (L): 288× 352",
  "Stand-by: 240× 320", and "VGA:480× 640".
● "Fast" and "Fast overlap" are unavailable if shot size is "i-shot(L): 288× 352".
● "Fast", "Bracket", and "Fast overlap" are unavailable if shot size is "VGA: 480× 640".

Using the Camera

131

■ Examples of bracket shots

Displayed in the following order.

Image brightness (-2)

Image brightness (-1)

Image brightness (±0)

Image brightness (+1)

Image brightness (+2)

Picture light color
(White)

Picture light color
(Yellow)

Picture light color
(Red)

Picture light color
(Purple)

■ Examples of overlap shots

● Overlap multishots cannot be shot properly if the camera is moved.
Hold the mova firmly with both hands to eliminate shaking when shooting.

Composite

Using the Camera

■ Setting Continuous mode

Depending on the shot size, "Continuous mode", "Fast", "Bracket", or "Fast overlap" may be displayed gray and may not be available, or the number of shots may be limited.

1 **In the still picture shooting screen (☞P.127), press ⓘ⑦⓵.**

2 **Select the type of Continuous mode, and then press ●.**

To cancel Continuous mode
● Press ⓪.

3 **Press ● or the shutter.**

● The first image is taken, and the remaining images are taken automatically.
● When all images are taken, the shooting image list screen is displayed.

To end shooting during Continuous mode
● Press ⓘ to display the images that have been taken. Press ⓘ, and then press ① (Save group) or ③ (Save one) to save them. (Images shot before interruption cannot be saved when fast/standard/manual overlap, 4 stills, or Manual 4 stills are being used.)

To retake during Continuous mode
● Press ⓒ to stop shooting. The shot portion of the image is not saved and the mova returns to the still picture shooting screen. (The last shot taken in Manual multishot or Manual overlap is deleted.)

When set to manual
● Press ● or shutter until the number of multishot images is reached.

4 **Press ⓘ① (Save group).**

● The camera remains in Continuous mode after shooting. To cancel Continuous mode, select ⓪ (OFF), and then press ● in step 2.

When Auto save mode (☞P.148) is set to "ON"
● Saved automatically as group. (The shooting image list screen is not displayed.)

To save 1 selected image from still pictures taken
● Select the still picture, and then press ⓘ③.
● To save additional pictures, select the still pictures with ⊙, press ● (OK), and then press ● (Save).
● After saving and deleting Continuous mode images, the mova returns to the still picture shooting screen.

To delete all still pictures taken
● Press ⓘ②.

To delete selected still pictures from the list
● Select the still picture, and then press ⓘ④.

To save shot 4 frame stills
● Press ● to save the image that was shot.

To change the type of Continuous mode
● Perform steps 1 and 2.
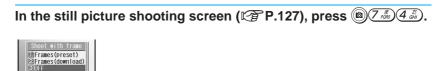
133

Using the Camera

Note	● While shooting in Continuous mode (Fast multishot, Standard multishot, 4 stills), slowly open and close the mova to display the shooting screen to restart from the first picture.
	● If shot size is changed or Effect shot is set while in Continuous mode, Continuous mode is canceled (OFF).
	● Continuous mode is disabled (OFF) when you end Camera mode.
	Notes on Continuous mode
	● You cannot press ⬤ to use the zoom or press ⬤ to adjust brightness during automatic consecutive shooting.
	● During overlap shooting, zoom operations cannot be performed, not even manual zooming.
	● If a call is received or the alarm operates while shooting in Continuous mode, the still picture being shot is protected and Continuous mode is canceled. (overlap, 4 stills, or Manual 4 stills are not protected.) In addition, when in Normal position, Continuous mode may be ended by pressing ⬤ᶜᴸᴿ. However, the still picture being shot is not protected.
	● If Picture light is set "ON" and still pictures are shot in Continuous mode while battery level is low, Picture light illumination may not change during shooting.
	● Display may darken or distort if battery level is low.

Shooting with a Frame <Shoot with Frame>

You can set a frame for the still picture you wish to shoot.
● You can also use this function in Continuous mode. (The frame is attached to every still picture.)
● "i-shot (S): 144× 144", "i-shot (L): 288× 352" and "Stand-by: 240× 320" are image sizes that can be shot with frames. These are the same sizes to those that can have frames added to them using the editing functions for images.

1 **In the still picture shooting screen (⟲P.127), press ⓐ⑦ₚₒₑₛ④ᴳₕᵢ.**

2 **Press ①./̊ (Frames (preset)).**

● The frame list is displayed.

To use images downloaded from websites
● Press ②ᴬᵇᶜ.

To disable a frame
● Press ③ᴰᵉᶠ.

3 **Select a frame, and then press ⬤.**

● The selected frame is displayed.

4 **Press ⬤ or press the shutter.**

● A still picture with the frame is taken.

Note	● If shot size (⟲P.140) is changed or Original mode (⟲P.147) is recalled while Shoot with Frame is set, Shoot with Frame is canceled.

Using the Camera

Shooting with Various Effects <Effect Shot>

Set effects when taking still pictures and change the coloring and touch.

● Sizes that can be shot with effects are "i-shot (S): 144× 144", "i-shot (L): 288× 352", and "Stand-by: 240× 320". These are the same sizes as those that can have effects added to them using the editing functions for images.

1 **In the still picture shooting screen (☞ P.127), press ⓞ 7₍ₚₒᵣₛ₎ 2₍ₐ�BC₎.**

Types of effects

Black & White	Presents light and dark colors in monotone
Sepia	Presents light and dark colors in sepia
Sparkling	Displays an effect of shining light in the form of a cross
Tiles	Displays tiles around the screen
Faded edges	Adds a faded effect around the screen
Ripple	Adds a ripple effect
Kaleidoscope (L)	Adds a kaleidoscope effect (large patterns)
Kaleidoscope (S)	Adds a kaleidoscope effect (small patterns)
Fish-eye	Presents an effect using a fish eye lens

2 **Select an effect type, and then press ⦿.**

● The selected effect is displayed.

To cancel settings
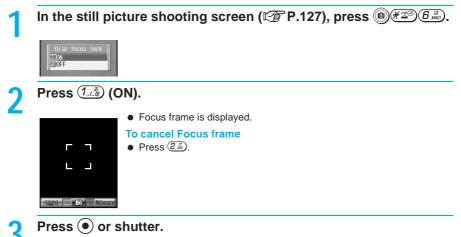
● Press 0₍ₙ₎.

3 **Press ⦿ or shutter.**

● A still picture with the effect is taken.

Note	● If shot size (☞ P.140) is changed or Continuous mode (☞ P.133) is set while Effect shot is set, Effect shot is canceled (OFF).

Using the Camera

135

Shooting with Focus Frame Displayed <Display Focus Lock>

When taking still pictures, you can display the Focus frame and shoot.
● The Focus frame will not appear in the preview screen or in saved images.
● When the focus is locked, the Focus frame will turn green.
● The default setting is "ON" (Display).

1 **In the still picture shooting screen (☞P.127), press ⓒ ✳ 6.**

```
Disp focus lock
1 ON
2 OFF
```

2 **Press 1 (ON).**

● Focus frame is displayed.

To cancel Focus frame
● Press 2.

3 **Press ● or shutter.**

Shooting Using the Auto Timer <Auto Timer>

You can use the Auto timer to shoot still pictures or record movies if you set it (ON) when shooting. Use this when you wish to be included in the images.
While Auto timer is set, press ● or the shutter to start the Auto timer. The Auto timer tone sounds and the Picture light flashes. The picture is taken approximately 10 seconds, 5 seconds, or 2 seconds after the Auto timer tone begins.
● The default setting is "10 seconds".

1 **In the still picture shooting screen (☞P.127), press ⓒ 4.**

```
Auto timer
1 ON
2 OFF
3 Set period
```

To record a movie using the Auto timer
● In the shoot movie screen (☞P.138), press ⓒ 4.

2 **Press 1 (Auto timer).**

● " ", " " or " " lights.
To disable the Auto timer
● Press 2. (" ", " ", or " " disappears.)
To change the time
● Press 3, select "1 2 seconds", "2 5 seconds" or "3 10 seconds", and then press ●.

Using the Camera

3 Press ⊙ or press the shutter.

- The timer tone sounds and the Auto timer is activated.
(The Picture light and "🔆", "🔆", or "🔆" flashes.)

While the Timer is activating

- When set to 10 seconds
The countdown tone sounds at 0, 2, 4, 6, 7, 8, and 9 seconds.
- When set to 5 seconds
The countdown tone sounds at 0, 2, 3, and 4 seconds.
- When set to 2 seconds
The countdown tone sounds at 0 and 1.

To cancel a shot

- Press ⓐ. The Auto timer is still set when the shot is canceled.

4 Shooting or recording automatically occurs approximately 10 seconds, 5 seconds or 2 seconds later.

- The camera shutter sound is heard.
- The Auto timer stays engaged after shooting. To cancel Auto timer, press ②ₐᵦ꜀ (OFF) at step 2.

Note	● Auto timer is disabled (OFF) when Camera mode is ended if Save camera set (☞P.144) is set to "OFF". Settings are kept if Save camera set is "ON".

While the Auto timer is activating
- Press ⊙ or the shutter while Auto timer is set to shoot immediately.
- Shooting will be canceled when a call is received, an alarm sounds, or if ⓐ꜀ˡʳ is pressed.
- You cannot press ⬌ to use the zoom or press ⬍ to adjust brightness while the Auto timer is running.
- If you open and close the mova or switch to Viewer/Normal position while the Auto timer is activated, the Auto timer is interrupted but settings are saved.

Shooting Movies

You can shoot (record) movies with your mova.
- Movies are saved on a miniSD memory card. Insert a miniSD memory card in advance (☞P.445).
- Cannot be performed when battery level is low. Check battery level before operating.
- Movies recorded with the mova cannot be sent with i-shot. However, if one scene of a recorded movie is saved as a still picture (☞P.177), you can send it with i-shot.

Shooting in Normal position

1 In the still picture shooting screen (☞P.127), press ⓐ①ₐₑ.

Using the Camera

2 Press 2ABC (Movie).

The shoot movie screen

- The mova enters Movie mode.
- You can perform the following actions prior to shooting, based on the subject, surroundings, and intended use of the image.
  - ■ Selecting the size of image (☞P.140)
  - ■ Selecting the image quality (☞P.141)
  - ■ Adjusting the brightness (☞P.125)
  - ■ Using the Picture light (☞P.125)
  - ■ Using the zoom (☞P.126)
  - ■ Confirming key operations (☞P.124)
  - ■ Switching the AF mode (☞P.146)

3 Press ● or press the shutter all the way.

- You can set Focus lock in advance by pressing ⚫AF.
- You can half-press the shutter, set Focus lock, and shoot by pressing the shutter all the way. You can set Focus lock during recording.
- The Camera recording start sound is heard, and recording starts.
- The Camera recording start sound is heard even when the mova is in Manner mode.
- The Picture light lights automatically once the recording begins. This light is automatically turned off once the recording is finished. (Cannot be turned off while recording.)

4 Press ● or shutter to stop recording.

- Recording may not be stopped if the recording time is short. In such cases, record for a while, and then press ● or the shutter.

When the memory area runs out during recording
- "Memory is full. Unable to record" is displayed. If you press ●, the confirmation screen to save is displayed.

5 Press 1.゜ (Save).

- Movies are saved in My movie on a miniSD memory card.
- To end Camera mode, press ☎PWR/HLD.

To continue shooting
- Press 2ABC ●.

To play recorded movies
- Press 3DEF.
- You cannot pause, fast-forward, or rewind while playing.

To delete recorded movies
- Press 4GHI, select "Yes", and then press ●.

Note	● If the mova is closed, the display is rotated, or is changed to Viewer position while shooting, the recording stops automatically and the save confirmation screen is displayed. Perform step 5 to save/play/cancel the recorded movie, or resume shooting. ● When a call is received during recording or when saving, the recording stops automatically and you can answer the call. When mail is received, shooting automatically stops. After call or after mail is received, the confirmation screen to save is displayed. Perform step 5, save/play/cancel the recorded movie, or resume shooting. ● It is recommended that the mova be set to Self mode if you do not wish to receive calls while shooting a movie. ● If the mova is opened or closed while the Auto timer is activated, the Auto timer will stop but the settings will remain. ● Operation sounds may be recorded if key operations are performed while recording.

Shooting in Viewer Position

Hold the mova as shown below to shoot in Viewer position.

1 **In the stand-by, press the shutter for at least 1 second and activate the camera.**

- Hold the mova sideways.
- The mova enters Camera mode. The camera image is displayed in the display.
- In the stand-by, press ⬡ (right guidance key) to also display the still picture shooting screen.

2 **Press ⬡ (right guidance key), select "**1**Switch ⬢ mode" with ⬤, and then press ⬤.**

- The Switch ⬢ mode menu is displayed.

3 **Select "**2**Movie" with ⬤, and then press ⬤.**

- The mova enters Movie mode.
- You can use the Picture light (☞P.125) and Zoom functions (☞P.126).

4 **Press ⬤ or the shutter.**

- You can half-press the shutter, set Focus lock, and then shoot by pressing the shutter all the way.
- The Camera recording start sound is heard, and the recording starts.
- The Camera recording start sound is heard even when the mova is in Manner mode.
- The Picture light lights automatically once the recording begins. This light automatically turns off once the recording is finished. (Cannot be turned off while recording.)

To bring the subject into focus while shooting

- Half-press the shutter for at least 1 second.

5 **Press ⬤ or the shutter to stop recording.**

- Recording may not stop if the duration is short. In such cases, record for a while, and then press ⬤ or the shutter.

When the memory area runs out during recording

- "Memory is full. Unable to record" is displayed. Press ⬤ to display the confirmation screen.

Using the Camera

139

6 **Select "❶Save" with 🔘, and then press 🔘.**

● Movies are saved on a miniSD memory card as My movie.
● To end Camera mode, press 🔘.

To continue shooting
● Select "❷Resume" with 🔘, press 🔘, and then press the shutter all the way.

To play recorded movies
● Select "❸Play" with 🔘, and then press 🔘.

To delete recorded movies
● Select "❹Cancel" with 🔘, press 🔘, select "Yes", and then press 🔘.

Note	● If the mova is opened, or the display is rotated and changed to Normal position while shooting, the recording stops automatically and the save confirmation screen is displayed. Use key operation in Normal position to save/play/delete the movie recorded, or restart recording. (Step 5 on P.138) ● When a call is received during recording or when saving, recording stops automatically, and you can answer the call. When mail is received, shooting automatically stops. After call or after mail is received, the confirmation screen to save is displayed. Perform step 6, save/play/cancel the recorded movie, or resume shooting. ● It is recommended that the mova be set to Self mode if you do not wish to receive calls while shooting a movie. ● If you open and close the mova while the Auto timer is activated, the Auto timer is interrupted but settings are saved. ● Operation sounds may be recorded if key operations are performed while recording.

Changing Settings for Shooting

Selecting the Size of Images <Select Size>

You can set the shot sizes of still pictures and movies.
● Refer to P.118 and P.119 for details on each size.
● The default settings are "Stand-by: 240× 320" for still pictures, "Default: 160× 120" for movies.

1 **In the still picture shooting screen (☞P.127) or movie shooting screen (☞P.138), press 📷5_JKL.**

Select size
❶i-shot(S)144x144
❷i-shot(L)288x352
❸Stand-by:240x320
❹VGA:480x640
❺XGA:768x1024
❻2M pxl 1224x1632

Still picture
shooting screen

● This can also be operated by pressing 5_JKL in the still picture shooting screen (1-touch operation ☞P.123).
● In the movie shooting screen, press 5_JKL to operate. (1-touch operation ☞P.124)
● Keys for 1-touch operations may be changed (☞P.125).

Select size
❶Small:120x88
❷Default:160x120
❸Large:240x176

Movie shooting
screen

Using the Camera

140

2 **Select the shot size, and then press ⊙.**

● The mark corresponding to the size setting is displayed (☞P.120, P.121).

Note	● If Save camera set (☞P.144) is "OFF", the shot size returns to "Stand-by: 240× 320" for still pictures and "Default: 160× 120" for movies when shooting is ended. If Save camera set is "ON", settings set here are preserved.

Setting the Image Quality <Image Quality>

You can set the qualities of the still pictures and movies.
You can set "NORMAL", "FINE", or "SUPER FINE" for still pictures. You can set "NORMAL" or "FINE" for movies.

Image quality increases with "NORMAL"　"FINE"　"SUPER FINE" respectively, but data volume increases resulting with fewer images you can save and less shooting time available.

● The default setting is "NORMAL".
● Refer to P.119 for estimates on the possible number of shots and shooting time for a given image quality.
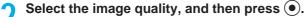
1 **In the still picture shooting screen (☞P.127) or the Shoot movie screen (☞P.138), press 🔘 6 MNO.**

Still picture shooting screen

● This can also be operated by pressing 6 MNO (1-touch operation ☞P.123 and P.124).

Movie shooting screen

2 **Select the image quality, and then press ⊙.**

● The mark corresponding to the image quality setting is displayed (☞P.120, P.121).

Note	● The image quality returns to "NORMAL" when Camera mode is ended, if Save camera set (☞P.144) is "OFF". Settings remain as set here when Save camera set is "ON".
	● Set image quality to "FINE" or "SUPER FINE" to shoot with the settings giving priority to the image quality.
	● Sending still pictures shot in "FINE" or "SUPER FINE" takes longer. Connection charges vary depending on the time required to send the image. When shooting a still picture to send using i-shot, it is recommended that you leave Save camera set "OFF" as a way to avoid accidentally sending large data files (☞P.144).

Using the Camera

Choosing Settings According to Environment and Subject <Shoot by Scene>

To shoot pictures that are natural in color and in focus, you can set the mode in accordance with the environment and subject.

1 In the still picture shooting screen (☞P.127), press ⓒ⑦₇₇ₛ③ᵈₑf.

Auto	Optimized for general shooting.
Portrait	Optimized for shooting portraits.
Night scene	Optimized for shooting darker scenes such as at night.
Night + Portrait	Optimized for shooting portraits with backgrounds such as night scenes. Picture light is automatically turned "ON". Shoot from a distance of approximately 50cm away.
Landscape	Optimized for shooting detailed subjects such as natural landscapes or cityscapes.
Sunset	Optimized for shooting twilight scenes more impressively.
Sports	Optimized for shooting subjects at outdoor sporting events.
Character	Optimized for shooting contrasting subjects such as black and white objects.
Into the sun	Optimized for shooting subjects in front of a light source.
Pet	Optimized for shooting moving subjects clearly such as pets.

2 Select a scene, and then press ●.

● The mark corresponding to the set scene is displayed (☞P.120).

Note	● The mova returns to "Auto" when you end Camera mode.
	● Be careful not to move the camera when shooting in dark places, such as night scenes.
	● Depending on shooting environment, adequate image quality may not be attained and image quality may deteriorate.

Setting the Picture Light Color <Pic Light Color>

You can set the Picture light color when taking still pictures or movies.
● Refer to P.125 for details on turning on the Picture light.
● The default setting is "White".

1 In the still picture shooting screen (☞P.127), press ⓒ✳★₋⊡④ₘₕᵢ.

To set the Picture light color when recording movies
● In the Shoot movie screen (☞P.138), press ⓒ✳★₋⊡②ₐbc.

2 Select the Picture light color, and then press ●.

● The Picture light turns on with the chosen color.

Note	● The Picture light color setting will return to "White" when Camera mode is ended, if Save camera set (☞P.144) is "ON". Settings remain as set here.
	● Note that the Picture light is meant to assist shooting in dark places but it is not as bright as a normal camera strobe light.
	● Picture light colors may vary slightly from phone to phone but this is not a defect. Use the Picture light as an auxiliary light.

Specifying the Folder to Save <Save Location>

You can specify the folder to save shot still pictures when saving them on your mova.
● The default setting for shot still pictures and multishot is "Camera image".
● To specify a save folder other than "Download", create one in advance (☞P.154).

1 **In the still picture shooting screen (☞P.127), press ⓒ ✳️ 2ᴬᴮᶜ.**

2 **Press 1.**

● Select the folder to save to, and then press ●.

To change the folder to save Multishot to
● Press 2ᴬᴮᶜ, and then press 1. (Select folder) or 2ᴬᴮᶜ (Auto new folder).
● When "Select folder" is selected, select the folder to save to, and then press ●.
● When "Auto new folder" is selected, a new folder is created each time multishot shooting is performed, and the images are saved there. If 20 folders have already been created, images shot are saved to the Camera image folder.

Note	● You cannot set the folder to save to when saving images on a miniSD memory card.

Displaying an Image Over the Entire Screen <Full-Screen>

You can turn off the marks being displayed in Camera mode and display a still picture over the entire display.

1 **In the still picture shooting screen (☞P.127), press ⓒ view.**

● Full-screen display cannot be used when the shot size is "i-shot(s):144× 144".
● You can also change by simply pressing view (1-touch operations P.123).

To disable
● Press view to disable.

Note	● Full-screen is disabled when you end Camera mode.

Using the Camera

143

Saving on a miniSD Memory Card <Switch Main　SD>

You can save the still picture you took on a miniSD memory card.
● Insert a miniSD memory card in advance (☞P.445).
● The default setting is "Main memory" (mova).

1 **Insert a miniSD memory card, press ⓐ(#➾) in the still picture shooting screen (☞P.127).**

● You can also operate by pressing (#➾). (1-touch operation ☞P.123)
● If "🔳Switch main　SD" is displayed in gray, a miniSD is not present in your mova.
● Save location is changed, and the mova returns to the still picture shooting screen.
Depending on the setting, the color of the indicator for the miniSD memory card changes.
■ 🆂🅳 (Gray) …… when save location is your mova
■ 🆂🅳 (Pink) …… when the save location is a miniSD memory card
To save on your mova
● Perform step 1 when the setting is to save on a miniSD memory card.

Note	● Movies are saved on a miniSD memory card regardless of the settings.
	● Refer to P.149 to check still pictures saved on a miniSD memory card.
	● If the number of still pictures in the destination folder exceeds 400, a new folder is automatically created, and new still pictures will be saved in the new folder.
	● When the destination folder is set to a miniSD memory card, images are saved in "Camera folder xxx". (If there are multiple folders, images are saved in the folder with the largest number xxx).
	● When saving images on a miniSD memory card, images are saved as DCF1.0 data (ExifVer.2.2, JPEG data) PRINT Image Matching II compliant format. However, 4 stills, etc. may be saved to miniSD memory cards without PIM data.
	● "DCF", the abbreviated name for "Design rule for Camera File system", is the standardized image format for equipment, such as digital cameras and was developed mainly by the Japan Electronics and Information Technology Industries Association (JEITA). However, the "DCF standard" does not ensure compatibility with all devices.
	● "Exif" is a file format for still pictures constituted by the Japan Electronics and Information Technology Industries Association (JEITA) that enables the adding of supplementary information, such as the shooting information.
	● "PRINT Image Matching II" is a technology developed by EPSON to match colors between digital cameras and printers. The camera's color characteristics, shooting mode, and other information are saved with the image data and can be faithfully reproduced when using a printer that is compatible with PRINT Image Matching II.

Setting the mova so that Shoot Settings Do Not Return to Default Settings <Save Camera Set>

When Save camera set is "ON", settings of still picture and movie shooting will be kept as when Camera mode was ended. The same settings will be retrieved the next time you activate the camera. Following are items of the settings you can save.
● Shooting still pictures
Shot size, Image quality, Auto timer ON/OFF and period, Release settings, Disp focus lock, Picture light color settings, Auto save mode, Save location, Switch main　SD setting.
● Shooting movies
Shot size, Image quality, Auto timer ON/OFF and period, ON time, and Picture light color settings
● The default setting is "ON".

1 **In the still picture shooting screen (☞P.127), press ⓐ(＊➚)(3ᴅᴇꜰ).**

To set in the movie shooting screen
● In the Shoot movie screen (☞P.138), press ⓐ(＊➚)(1ₐ).

Using the Camera

144

2 **Press (1.₀̃) (Save camera settings) .**

To reset to default settings
● Press (2₄̃B̃C̃).

Shooting Using the Switch-equipped Earphone/Microphone <Release Settings>

Set Release settings "ON" and use the switch on the switch-equipped earphone/
microphone (sold separately) (☞P.502) in place of the shutter. Press the switch for at
least 1 second to shoot.
● The default setting is "OFF".

1 **In the still picture shooting screen (☞P.127), press ⓞ(✱≋)(5 ᴶᴷᴸ).**

```
Release settings
Release shutter w/
switch-equipped
earphone/mic?
1 ON
2 OFF
```

2 **Press (1.₀̃) (Release settings) .**

To cancel Release settings
● Press (2₄̃B̃C̃).

Note ● Image may not be shot depending on the timing that the switch is pressed.
● If Release settings is "OFF", Earphone settings (☞P.502) is followed.

Changing Camera Shutter Sound <Shutter Sound>

⟨(●)(1.₀̃)(2₄̃B̃C̃)(4ɢ̃H̃ɪ̃)(2₄̃B̃C̃)⟩

You can choose the sound emitted when taking pictures in Camera mode from 5 different patterns.
● Even if the shutter sound is changed, the preset shutter sound (   ) is emitted when
shooting in Continuous mode (fast, standard, bracket, or fast/standard overlap).
● The default setting is "   ".

1 **In the stand-by, press (●) and select 🖾 , and then press
(●)(1.₀̃)(2₄̃B̃C̃)(4ɢ̃H̃ɪ̃).**

```
124 Setting sounds
標準音
1 Keypad sound
2 Shutter sound
3 Open sound
4 Rotation sound
5 Close sound
6 Timer sound

         OK
```

2 **Press (2₄̃B̃C̃) (Shutter sound).**

● The shutter sound setting screen is displayed.

3 **Select the shutter sound, and then press (●).**

● Press (ⓘ) (Play) to play the shutter sound. Press (ⓘ) (Stop) to stop playback and return to
the shutter sound setting screen.

Note ● You cannot mute or change the camera shutter sound. (It will sound even when the mova is
in Manner mode.)

Using the Camera

145

Shooting Using Focus Lock <Focus Lock>

Set Focus lock when the image is in focus, and arrange the layout of the shot image.

1 **In the still picture shooting screen (☞P.127) or movie shooting screen (☞P.138), change the layout while half-pressing the shutter.**

- ● Focus is locked.
  - ■ ● (Red) …… When focusing
  - ■ ● (Green) … When focus is locked
  - ■ When the focus frame is displayed in the still picture shooting screen, the focus frame also turns green.
- ● When shooting still pictures, a sound is emitted when focus is locked. Sound is not emitted when shooting videos.
- ● Press 🔛 when in Character reader or Bar code reader.

  When in Normal position
- ● Bring the subject into focus and press 🔛 (1-touch operation ☞P.123 and P.124).
- ● Focus lock is canceled if the mova is opened, closed, or the display is rotated.

  To reset Focus lock
- ● If 🔛 is pressed, press 🔛 to disable Focus lock. Press 🔛 again.
- ● If you pressed the shutter half-way, remove your finger from the shutter, and then half-press the shutter again.

2 **Press ● or press the shutter all the way.**

- ● When focus lock is set with 🔛, press ● to shoot. When the focus lock is set by half-pressing the shutter, press the shutter all the way to shoot.
- ● Do not change the distance between the camera and the subject.

Note	● Settings for shooting cannot be changed after shutter is half pressed to lock focus.

Setting AF Mode <Switch AF Mode>

You can switch AF mode according to the subject.
- ● The AF mode setting remains the same until the shooting is completed.
- ● The default settings for still pictures and movies are "Standard". The default setting for Character reader/Bar code reader is "Closeup".

Standard	The subject in the center is automatically focused
Closeup	Mode optimized for shooting nearby subjects (approx. 10cm to 20cm away)
Portrait	Mode optimized for portraits
Landscape	Mode optimized for scenery
Manual focus	You can bring the subject into focus manually

1 **In the still picture shooting screen (☞P.127) or movie shooting screen (☞P.138), press 📷 3.**

- ● The screen to switch AF mode is displayed.
- ● Press 📷 3 in Character reader and Bar code reader to switch in order of Standard Closeup Default.

2 **Select AF mode, and then press ⊙.**

To set Manual focus

● Bring the subject into focus using ⟨⟩, and then press ⊙.
● The Focus bar (border on either side of the word "FOCUS" at the bottom of the screen) becomes darker as the subject is focused.
● The focus bar may not change colors, depending on shooting conditions or the subject.
● To focus using Manual focus after pressing ⊙, select Manual focus again in the Switch AF mode screen.

| Note | ● If camera is ended, still picture and movie is set to "Standard" and Character reader/Bar code reader is set to "Closeup". |

Saving Original Mode <Original Mode>

When shooting still pictures, you can save up to 2 types of settings. You can switch to your choice of setting by retrieving the saved Original mode.

● Items you can save in Original mode are Shot size, Image quality, AF mode, Continuous mode, Effect shot, Shoot by scene, Release settings, Disp focus lock, Auto timer (ON/OFF), Auto timer (Set period), Picture light, Picture light color, save location (including the mova), and Full-screen.

1 **Press ⓐ⑧ after switching to the setting you wish to save.**

● The original mode screen is displayed.

2 **Press ③ (Save setting 1).**

To save as setting 2
● Press ④.
To retrieve settings
● Press ① (Load setting 1) or ② (Load setting 2).
To check saved data
● Press ⑤ (Confirm settings).
● The details of Setting 1 are displayed.
● Press ⓘ (Switch) to switch to Setting 2.
● Below is the default setting.

	Setting 1	Setting 2
Shot size	2M pxl: 1224× 1632	Stand-by: 240× 320
Image quality	SUPER FINE	NORMAL
AF mode	Standard	Portrait
Continuous mode	OFF	OFF
Effect shot	OFF	OFF
Shoot by scene	Auto	Auto
Release settings	OFF	OFF
Disp focus lock	ON	ON
Auto timer	OFF (10 seconds)	OFF (10 seconds)
Picture light	OFF	OFF
Pic light color	White	White
Save location	miniSD memory card	Main memory ● Still picture: Camera image ● Multishot: Camera image
Full-screen	ON	OFF

Setting Auto Save Mode <Auto Save Mode>

You can set your mova so that still pictures taken are automatically saved.
● The setting is maintained even after Camera mode is ended.
● The default setting is "OFF".

1 **In the still picture shooting screen (☞ P.127), press ⓞ (✳) (1.).**

2 **Press (1.) (Auto save mode).**

To not save automatically
● Press (2).

Note	● The preview screen after taking pictures is not displayed when Auto save mode is set to "ON". Also, you cannot edit still pictures before they are saved.

Setting the Backlights Set ON Time for Shooting <Set ON Time>

When recording movies, you can set the Set ON time of the backlights.
● The default setting is "Always ON".

1 **In the Shoot movie screen (☞ P.138), press ⓞ (✳) (3).**

● The set ON time setting screen is displayed.

2 **Press (1.) (As light setting).**

● Backlight will light as set in Display light time (☞ P.189).

To set to always be ON
● Press (2).

Using the Camera

Viewing Saved Still Pictures

Selecting Still Pictures to View

⟨●⟩⟨7⟩⟨1⟩ or ⟨📷⟩ for at least 1 second⟩

1 **In the stand-by, press ⟨●⟩ and select 📚, and then press ⟨●⟩⟨1⟩.**

- The previously displayed mova or miniSD memory card My picture folder is displayed. (My picture screen)
- You can also display by pressing ⟨📷⟩ for at least 1 second in the stand-by.

To display My movie
- Press ⟨🏠⟩.

To switch between still pictures in the mova and miniSD memory card
- Press ⟨📷⟩⟨#⟩.

2 **Select a folder, and then press ⟨●⟩.**

- You can also display them by pressing ⟨📷⟩⟨2⟩ in the still picture shooting screen (☞P.127).
- An image list for still pictures saved in the folder is displayed. (My picture list screen)
- Press ⟨⤒⟩ to scroll up a page at a time. Press ⟨⤓⟩ to scroll down a page at a time.

To view information about still pictures (Properties)
- Press ⟨📷⟩⟨6⟩. Press ⟨●⟩ to return to the original screen.

When the "Camera image" folder is selected

3 **Select a still picture, and then press ⟨●⟩.**

To fit the image to the size of the display
- When the still picture or other JPEG image is larger or smaller than 240 pixels, press ⟨●⟩ to switch the display among "1/1" (Actual size), "Zoom　", and "Zoom　". (The actual size of the still picture is not changed.)
- Settings for "1/1" (Actual size), "Zoom　", and "Zoom　" are retained when the power is turned off.

Displaying other images
- Press ⟨◉⟩ to display the previous or next image. When displaying enlarged or reduced images, the next image displayed will be enlarged if that image is small (and reduced if that image is large).

To display a still picture full screen
- Press *view* or ⟨📷⟩⟨2⟩.
- To cancel full-screen display, press a key other than ⟨☎⟩ and ⟨◉⟩.

Note	● JPEG, GIF, FLASH, and GIF animation may be displayed in My picture.
	● The same My picture screen is displayed only from TOP menu, Shortcut menu, My movie when ⟨🏠⟩ is pressed, when ⟨📷⟩ is pressed for at least 1 second, or when ⟨◻⟩ (right guidance key) is pressed for at least 1 second in Viewer position.

Using the Camera

149

Displaying in Viewer position

1 **In stand-by, press ⬛ (right guidance key) for at least 1 second.**

2 **Select a folder with ●, and then press ◉.**

● Press ⬛ (left guidance key) for at least 1 second to scroll up a page at a time or press ⬛ (right guidance key) for at least 1 second to scroll down a page at a time.

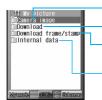**3** **Select a still picture with ●, and then press ◉.**

● Press the shutter all the way for Full-screen display.
● To cancel full-screen display, press a key other than the shutter or ●.

Note	● When images are selected from the image list, "▨" is displayed when the image is set for Picture call, "▨" is displayed when the image cannot be sent with i-shot, and "▨" when the image is set for a schedule. **It is recommended that still pictures saved in My picture be saved on miniSD memory cards (☞ P.444). You can also use Data Link software (☞ P.553) and a USB cable (sold separately) to save to your PC.** ● Malfunction, repairs, or other handling of the mova may cause loss of registered contents. DoCoMo cannot be held responsible in any way for the loss of still pictures saved in My picture.

▌ Viewing My picture

[mova]

Folder for still pictures shot with mova.

Folder for still pictures from websites or received with i-shot.

Folder for images shot with frames or image stamps downloaded from websites or received by i-shot.

Preset mova still pictures folder.

[miniSD memory card]

If you press ◉ # in the My picture screen when a miniSD memory card is inserted, the folders saved on the miniSD memory card are displayed.

Lights pink when the data saved on the miniSD memory card is displayed. Flashes while accessed to the memory card.

Folder for images shot with mova. A folder named Camerafolder× × × is automatically created.

Folder for GIF animation copied from the mova.

▌ Still picture information marks

	JPEG	GIF image	Flash movie
Protected	🔒JPG	🔒GIF	🔒
Not protected	JPG	GIF	⬜

● " " (MAIN STAND-BY), " " (i-shot (S)), or " " (i-shot (L)) is displayed for downloaded frames.
● " " is displayed for image stamps.
● Refer to P.118 and P.119 for information on sizes and number of images that can be shot on this mova.
● "i-shot (S):120× 120" images sent from other phones are displayed as "Other" in properties. However, i-shot receive, still picture display and still picture save are not affected.
● Protection settings for still pictures can be changed. (☞P.157)

Using zoom

When " Zoom" is displayed in gray, zoom cannot be used.

1 Display the still picture (☞Steps 1 to 3 on P.149), and then press ⓒ①.

● The zoom screen is displayed.

2 Press ⓒ (Zoom).

● The image is enlarged (zoomed in).
● Change the area to display with ○.
● Press ● to return to the original screen.

To shrink (zoom out) an enlarged (zoomed) still picture

● Press ⓘ (Zoom).

Viewing Still Pictures with Slideshow <Slideshow>

You can view all of the still pictures in a selected folder as a slideshow that displays them in turn.

1 In the stand-by, press ● and select , press ●①, select a folder, and then press ⓒ⑤.

● After "Opening image" is displayed, the slideshow starts.
● To cancel playback, press ⓒ.

Adding background music to a slideshow

You can play background music while a slideshow is running. You can set the tone and volume of the background music.

● The default settings are "Oriental Energy" for the tone and "Silent" for the volume.

1 In the stand-by, press ● and select , press ●①, and then press ⓒ④.

```
Set slideshow
1 Select BGM sound
2 BGM volume
3 Play interval
4 Slide effects
5 Image effects
```

2 Press ①, select a tone, and then press ●.

To change the volume of the background music

● Press ②, select the volume, and then press ●.

Using the Camera

151

■ To change the play interval and effects of slideshow

The slideshow play interval (speed) and effects can be set.
● The default setting is "Normal" for the play interval and "OFF" for effects.

1 In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select 📷, press ⦿①, and then press ⧆④.

● The slideshow setting screen is displayed.

2 Press ③, select a play interval, and then press ⦿.

Fastest	The next still picture is displayed immediately.
Fast	Changes the displayed image at approximately 1 second intervals.
Normal	Changes the displayed image at approximately 5 second intervals.
Slow	Changes the displayed image at approximately 10 second intervals.

● Depending on the size of the still pictures being displayed, the display interval for the slideshow may differ from the play interval setting.

3 Press ④, select the type of Slide effects, and then press ⦿.

Wipe	Still pictures are consecutively displayed from the top to bottom.
Wipe	Still pictures are consecutively displayed from the bottom to top.
Wipe	Still pictures are consecutively displayed from the left to right.
Wipe	Still pictures are consecutively displayed from the right to left.
Mixed wipe	Still pictures are consecutively displayed randomly from the right, left, top, and bottom.

To not set an effect
● Press ①.

4 Press ⑤, select the type of image effect, and then press ⦿.

● Image effects can only be set for JPEG images.

Sparkling	Displays an affect of shining light.
Sepia	Presents light and dark colors in sepia.
Monotone	Presents light and dark colors in monotone.
Emboss	Creates a 3-dimensional effect using a metallic silver color.
Oil painting	Touches up images to appear like an oil painting.
Shading	Shades an image.
Ripple	Adds a ripple effect.
Fish-eye	Presents an effect using a fish eye lens.
Mixed effects	One of the above effects is applied at random to the image.

To not set an effect
● Press ①.

Using the Camera

Changing the List Display Method <Switch View Mode>

You can set the display method for the My picture list and My movie list to either "9 Picture viewer", "16 Picture viewer" or "Title list".
● The default setting is "9 Picture viewer".

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select 🖼️, press ●①, select a folder, and then press ●.**

● The still picture list is displayed.
To change the display method of the My movie list
● In the stand-by, press ● and select 🖼️, press ●②, select a folder, and then press ●.

2 **Press 📷⑧ (Switch view mode).**

● The screen to switch view mode is displayed.
When in the My movie list
● Press 📷⑥.

3 **Select the display method, and then press ●.**

● The display method changes.

9 Picture viewer   16 Picture viewer   Title list

Note	● Enter up to 12 full-pitch (24 half-pitch) characters for the title. However, only up to 10 full-pitch (20 half-pitch) characters are displayed in various title displays.

Rearranging Titles <Sort>

You can sort (rearrange) the order of the data displayed in the My picture list, My movie list and designated print screen. The order can be chosen from the following.

By title	Sorted by title in the following order: half-pitch characters (symbols ➤numbers ➤upper case alphabet ➤lower case alphabet ➤Katakana) ➤full-pitch characters (symbols ➤numbers ➤upper case alphabet ➤lower case alphabet ➤Hiragana ➤Katakana ➤Kanji ➤pictographs) (In order of character code within each character type)
By date (new　old)	From newest date
By date (old　new)	From oldest date
By size (large　small)	In size order, from the largest
By size (small　large)	In size order, from the smallest

● The default setting is "Clear sort".

153

Using the Camera

1 **In the stand-by, press ⊙ and select 🅰️, press ⊙①, select a folder, and then press ⊙.**

● The still picture list is displayed.

To reorder the My movie list

● In the stand-by, press ⊙ and select 🅰️, press ⊙②, select a folder, and then press ⊙.

To reorder the print specification screen

● In the stand-by, press ⊙ and select 🅰️, press ⊙④, select a folder, and then press ⊙.

2 **Press 📷⑦ (Sort).**

● The screen to sort is displayed.

When in the My movie list

● Press 📷⑤.

When in the designated print screen

● Press 📷②.

3 **Select the type of sort, and then press ⊙.**

Creating/Editing/Deleting Folders

You can add/edit/delete folders for managing still pictures and movies in the My picture screen or in the My movie screen. (You can create up to 20 folders in the mova from the My picture screen.) Refer to P.156 for details on moving to folders.

● Folder names for "Camera image", "Download", "Download frame/stamp", and "Internal data" in the My picture screen, and for "Camera video" in the My movie screen cannot be edited or deleted.

Creating a folder

1 **In the stand-by, press ⊙ and select 🅰️, press ⊙①, and then press 📷①.**

● The screen to create new folder name is displayed.
● To delete "New folder", press 🔙 for at least 1 second.

To create a folder name in the My movie screen

● In the stand-by, press ⊙ and select 🅰️, press ⊙②, and then press 📷①.

2 **Enter a folder name.**

● You can enter up to 10 full-pitch (20 half-pitch) characters.

3 **Press ⊙.**

● The set folder is displayed.

Using the Camera

Editing folder names

1 **In the stand-by, press ⏺ and select 🗂, press ⏺①, select a created folder, and then press 📷②.**

- The screen to edit the folder name is displayed.

To edit names of folders in the My movie screen

- In the stand-by, press ⏺ and select 🎬, press ⏺②, select a created folder, and then press 📷②.

2 **Change the name of the folder as needed.**

- You can enter up to 10 full-pitch (20 half-pitch) characters.

3 **Press ⏺.**

- The edited folder is displayed.

Deleting created folders

1 **In the stand-by, press ⏺ and select 🗂, press ⏺①, select a folder, and then press 📷③.**

- The screen to delete folders is displayed.

To delete folders in the My movie screen

- In the stand-by, press ⏺ and select 🎬, press ⏺②, select a folder, and then press 📷③.

2 **Press ② (Delete folder), and then enter your terminal security code (4 digits).**

To delete all the still pictures and movies in the Library

- Press ①, and then enter your terminal security code (4 digits).

3 **Select "Yes", and then press ⏺.**

- Still pictures/movies contained in the folder are also deleted.
- If the folder contains protected still pictures, the folder is not deleted.

Changing the Title of an Image <Edit Title>

1 **In the stand-by, press ⏺ and select 🗂, press ⏺①, select a folder, and then press ⏺.**

- The still picture list is displayed.

To change the title of a movie

- In the stand-by, press ⏺ and select 🎬, press ⏺②, select a folder, and then press ⏺.

2 **Select a still picture, and then press 📷① (Edit title).**

- The current title is displayed.

155

Using the Camera

3 **Enter or edit title.**

● You can enter up to 12 full-pitch (24 half-pitch) characters.
To delete the current title
● Press ⊗ to delete 1 character at a time. Press ⊗ for at least 1 second to delete all.

4 **Press ⦿.**

Note	● If you try to register the title with all the characters deleted, the title reverts to the previous name.
	● A "Title" and "File name" are automatically added to images taken with the mova camera. The "Title" is the name displayed in the My picture list. Change the name to one of your own choosing using "Edit title". The "File name" is used as the name of a file when you send a still picture by i-shot. You cannot change the file name.

Moving Still Pictures to Another Folder

You can move still pictures using the following methods.

Move one	Moves selected still pictures one at a time.
All in folder	Moves all the still pictures in a folder.
Move selected	Moves multiple selected still pictures.

1 **In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select 📷, press ⦿①, select a folder, and then press ⦿.**

● The still picture list is displayed.

To move a movie to another folder
● In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select 📷, press ⦿②, select a folder, and then press ⦿.

2 **Select a still picture and then press 📷④ (Move).**

● The screen to move still pictures is displayed.

For a movie
● Press 📷③.

3 **Press ① (Move one).**

To move all the still pictures contained in the folder
● Press ②, and then enter your terminal security code (4 digits).

To move all selected still pictures
● Press ③, select the still pictures to move, and then press ⦿. ("☑" is displayed. To delete selections, select still pictures while "☑" is displayed, and then press ⦿.) Select all still pictures to move, and then press ⓘ (Complete).
● Up to 50 items may be selected.

4 **Select the save location, and then press ⦿.**

● The still pictures are moved.

Note	● Still pictures cannot be moved among folders in a miniSD if the miniSD memory card is full.

Using the Camera

Protecting Still Pictures

You can protect still pictures so that they will not be accidentally deleted.
● If you delete all still pictures or all still pictures in a folder, protected still pictures are not deleted.
● To delete protected still pictures, use Delete one or Delete selected.
● You can set protection only for the still pictures saved on the mova.

1 In the stand-by, press ⬤ and select ▦, press ⬤①.▨, select a folder, and then press ⬤.

● The still picture list is displayed.

2 Select a still picture, and then press ▣③ (Protect set).

● The screen to set protection is displayed.

3 Press ①.▨ (ON: Protect still picture).

To cancel protection
● Press ②.

Deleting Still Pictures

You can delete images in My picture by one of the following methods.

Delete one	Deletes selected still pictures one at a time.
All in folder	Deletes all the still pictures in a folder.
Delete Selected	Deletes multiple selected still pictures.

1 In the stand-by, press ⬤ and select ▦, press ⬤①.▨, select a folder, and then press ⬤.

● The still picture list is displayed.

To delete images in a miniSD memory card
● In the stand-by, press ⬤ and select ▦, press ⬤①.▨, select a folder, and then press ▣#.
● Select a folder, and then press ⬤.

To delete a movie
● In the stand-by, press ⬤ and select ▦, press ⬤②, select the folder, and then press ⬤.

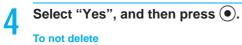**2** Select a still picture, and then press ▣② (Delete).

● The screen to delete still pictures is displayed.

3 Press ①.▨ (Delete one).

To delete all the still pictures contained in a folder
● Press ②, and then enter your terminal security code (4 digits).

To delete all selected still pictures
● Press ③, select the still pictures to delete, and then press ⬤. ("☑" is displayed. To cancel selections, select still pictures while "☑" is displayed, and then press ⬤.) Select all still pictures to delete, and then press ⓘ (Complete).
● Up to 50 items may be selected.

Using the Camera

157

4 Select "Yes", and then press ●.

To not delete

● Select "No", and then press ●.

Note	● Refer to "Deleting created folders" on P.155 for information on deleting all images and their folder.

Edit Images

Editing Still Pictures

Images can be consecutively edited while comparing the before and after still pictures.

● When attaching frames or marker stamps to images, image quality may deteriorate if the image is saved and edited again.

● The size of an image may increase after editing.

■ Displaying the editing screen

Press ⊚⊚ (Edit image) in the My picture list or still picture screen (☞P.149). With the still picture you shot with the camera displayed, press ⊚①.⅝ (Edit image).

● The image editing screen is displayed.

● You cannot use this function when "Edit image" is displayed in gray.

Original still picture

Edited still picture (When an effect is selected, the edited is automatically displayed.)

Image editing keys

Effect name

■ Image editing keys

By using the image editing keys, you can directly retrieve the editing menu.

rotate	**resize**	**correct**
Rotate image	Resize/Cut	Correct image
effect	**effects**	**stamp**
Image effect	Face effects	Face stamp
stamp	**stamp**	**panorama**
Image stamp	Character stamp	Combine panorama
1-scr	**save**	**cancel**
1-screen display	Save	Cancel

● Image editing keys vary depending on functions and the screen.

Key operations when editing images

The following 3 methods can be used to edit images.

1. Press ⊚ (Submenu), and then select the type of editing effect.
2. Select the image editing key with ⊙.
3. Select by directly pressing the dial keys (⓪ᵖ̂ₙ to ⑨ᵂ́ₓ₂, ✱ᵃᵒᵔ, #ᵗᵣ²).
   (The order of the image editing keys corresponds to the dial keys.)

● The image after editing is displayed on the right side when effects are selected. After ending editing, first check the edit results in one screen display (☞P.159), press ⓘ (End), and then save.

● If you select another effect type after you have finished editing, you can add more effects to the same still picture.

● You cannot use this feature when effects are displayed in gray.

To undo the last operation

Press ⊚#ᵗᵣ² (Cancel), select "Yes", and then press ● to revert the most recently edited image to the original.

● You can only undo 1 operation. If you continue to undo, the original image is displayed.

To display using 1 screen

Press ⊚ 0 (1-screen) to display the image being edited in 1 screen.
- You can scroll the screen using ⊙.

Note	- In the "Face stamp", "Image stamp", "Image effect", and "Face effects" editing screens, press ⊚ 0 0 to view the picture in 1 screen. - If edited still pictures are saved, they are compressed and saved again. When the still picture is redisplayed, the appearance may differ from that during editing.

Pasting an Image Stamp <Image Stamp>

You can paste stars, flowers, kiss marks, and other preset image stamps and downloaded image stamps to still pictures.
- You cannot paste image stamps to still pictures that are larger than i-shot (L). You can edit images after resizing still pictures to an appropriate size (☞P.168).

1 **Display the editing screen (☞P.158 "Displaying the editing screen").**

2 **Press ⊚ 7 (Image stamp).**

Types of image stamps

Small flower	Heart (small)
Footprints	Clover
Star	Kiss mark
Crystal	Note
Hibiscus	Pass
Rose	Rainbow
Balloon	Shooting star
Heart (big)	Stamps (download)

3 **Select a type of image stamp, and then press ⊙.**

- The image stamp is displayed.
- Press ⊙ to adjust the location where the image stamp is to be pasted.

To select a downloaded image stamp
- Select "Stamp (download)", and then press ⊙. The downloaded stamps are displayed. Select a stamp with ⊙, and then press ⊙.

To re-select an image stamp
- Press ⊚. The stamp selected before ⊚ was pressed is deleted.

4 **Adjust the location to paste, and then press ⊙.**

Using the Camera

5 Press ⊙ (Agree).

6 Press ⓘ (End).

To add a different image stamp without saving
● Repeat steps 2 to 5.
To perform more editing without saving
● Press ⓒ, and then select the number of a different effect name.
To save and continue editing
● Press ⓒ(*⚏)(1.⅔).

7 Select "Yes", and then press ⊙.

To not save still picture
● **Select "No", and then press ⊙.**

8 Press (1.⅔) (OK).

● The still picture is saved.
To change title
● Press (2.⅔), enter the title, and then press ⊙.
● You can enter up to 12 full-pitch (24 half-pitch) characters.
● Press (1.⅔) to save.
To change the folder to save to
● Press (3.⅔), select a folder to save to, and then press ⊙.
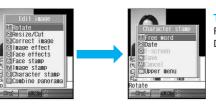● Press (1.⅔) to save.

Pasting a Character Stamp <Character Stamp>

You can paste the date or text you input onto still pictures.
● You cannot paste character stamps to still picutres that are larger than i-shot (L). You can edit images after resizing still pictures to an appropriate size (☞P.168).

1 Display the editing screen (☞P.158 "Displaying the editing screen").

2 Press ⓒ(8.ⁿₜᵤᵥ) (Character stamp).

Types of character stamps
Free word
Date

3 Press (1.⅔), and then enter the text you wish to paste.

● You can enter up to 11 full-pitch (22 half-pitch) characters.
● Line breaks may be entered in character strings.
To paste the date
● Press (2.⅔).

4 **Press ⦿.**

- Each entered character is displayed in orange.
- The entered characters or dates are displayed.
- Press ⬚ to adjust the location where the image stamp is to be pasted.

To change the font size
- Character size changes from 20 pixels   24 pixels   48 pixels   12 pixels   20 pixels each time you press ⓘ (Size).
- Depending on the size and number of the characters, all may not fit into a still picture.

To change the color of characters
- Press ⓒ①, select a color, and then press ⦿.
- Choose between "orange", "black", "white", "red", "yellow", "green", and "blue".

To select the outline of characters
- Press ⓒ②, and then press ① (ON).

To set balloons
- Press ⓒ③, select a balloon, and then press ⦿.
- Choose between "Balloon (top)", "Balloon (bottom)", "Balloon (left)", and "Balloon (right)".

5 **Press ⦿ (OK), and then press ⦿ (Agree).**

6 **Save the still picture (☞Steps 6 to 8 on P.160).**

Correcting Images <Correct Image>

You can correct still pictures by adding sharpness and softness.
- You cannot correct still pictures that are larger than i-shot (L). You can edit images after resizing still pictures to an appropriate size (☞P.168).

1 **Display the editing screen (☞P.158 "Displaying the editing screen").**
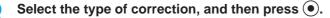
2 **Press ⓒ③ (Correct image).**

Types of corrections

Sharpness	Emphasize edges
Softness	Blur edges
Sensitivity up	Increase brightness and contrast
Vibrancy	Adjust colors

Using the Camera

3 Select the type of correction, and then press ⦿.

● "Processing FX" is displayed, and then the processed still picture is displayed on the right.

4 Save the still picture (☞ Steps 6 to 8 on P.160).

Note	● For some images, such as those with little color variations, corrections may not appear obvious.

Combining Two Still Pictures to Make One Composite Image <Combine Panorama>

You can combine 2 still pictures to make 1 panorama image.
● When 2 images of differing color tones are combined for a panorama image, the image may not be properly combined.
● Only "Stand-by: 240× 320" can be used to combine images. You can edit images after resizing still pictures to an appropriate size (☞ P.168).

1st still picture   **+**   2nd still picture   Panorama image

1 Display the editing screen for the first still picture (shown on the left) (☞ P.158 "Displaying the editing screen").
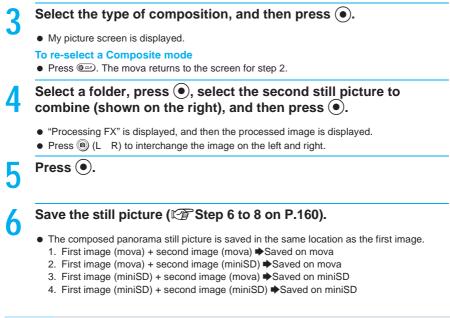
2 Press ⦿ 9ᵂˣʸᶻ (Combine panorama).

Types of composites

Standard	Standard mode for image composition. This is suitable for images shot up close or from afar.
Foreground	Fixes the parallax error that occurs when shooting up close. This is useful when composing images shot up close.
Document	This is useful for composing images that contain characters, such as signs and time tables.

Using the Camera

3 **Select the type of composition, and then press ⬤.**

● My picture screen is displayed.

To re-select a Composite mode

● Press ⊗. The mova returns to the screen for step 2.

4 **Select a folder, press ⬤, select the second still picture to combine (shown on the right), and then press ⬤.**

● "Processing FX" is displayed, and then the processed image is displayed.
● Press ⊚ (L　R) to interchange the image on the left and right.

5 **Press ⬤.**

6 **Save the still picture (☞Step 6 to 8 on P.160).**

● The composed panorama still picture is saved in the same location as the first image.
1. First image (mova) + second image (mova) ➡Saved on mova
2. First image (mova) + second image (miniSD) ➡Saved on mova
3. First image (miniSD) + second image (mova) ➡Saved on miniSD
4. First image (miniSD) + second image (miniSD) ➡Saved on miniSD

Note	● The image size of panorama composite images will differ depending on the images used to create the composite image. ● Editing of panorama composite images can only be performed in "Resize/Cut".

Applying Various Effects <Image Effect>

You can change the color or touch, or add a frame to a still picture.
● Image effects may not be used on some still pictures that were downloaded or obtained using Data Link software.
● Image effects cannot be applied to still pictures that are larger than i-shot (L). You can edit images after resizing still pictures to an appropriate size (☞P.168).

1 **Display the editing screen (☞P.158 "Displaying the editing screen").**

2 **Press ⓞ④GHI (Image effect).**

Types of effects

Frames (preset)	Preset frames
Frames (download)	Downloaded frames
Sparkling	Displays an effect of shining light in the form of a cross
Sepia	Presents light and dark colors in sepia
Monotone	Presents light and dark colors in monotone
Emboss	Creates a three-dimensional effect using a metallic silver color
Oil painting	Touches up images to appear like an oil painting
Shading	Shades an image
Ripple	Adds a ripple effect
Fish-eye	Presents an effect using a fish eye lens

3 **Select the effect type, and then press ⬤.**

● After "Processing FX" is displayed, the processed still picture is displayed to the right.

When you select "Frames (preset)" or "Frames (download)"

● The screen to select the frame is displayed. Select a frame, and then press ⬤.

4 **Save the still picture (☞Steps 6 to 8 on P.160).**

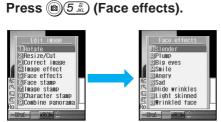| Note	● For some images, corrections may not appear obvious.

Decorating a Face <Face Effects>

You can add emotional expressions to a person's facial still picture.
● Face effects can only be used on still pictures taken with the mova camera.
● Make sure to respect personal rights and rights of portrait. Be careful not to harm others when you edit images using face effects, when you send such edited still pictures with i-shot, or set such edited still pictures as your stand-by display.
● Use still pictures of a person where the face is up close, centered and facing forward when applying face effects.
● Face effects automatically extract information about the contour of a person's face, and apply effects based on that information. As such, there are cases where effects cannot be applied properly due to the size and position of the person's face within a still picture. Specifically, effects may not work well on the following types of still pictures: Out of focus/bent neck/dark/eyes covered by hair/opened mouth/wearing glasses/has a beard, etc.
● Face effects cannot be applied to still pictures that are larger than i-shot (L). You can edit images after resizing still pictures to an appropriate size (☞P.168).

1 Display the editing screen (☞ P.158 "Displaying the editing screen").

2 Press Ⓒ⒌ (Face effects).

Types of effects

Slender	Plump
Big eyes	Smile
Angry	Sad
Hide wrinkles	Light skinned
Wrinkled face	Face symmetry (R)
Face symmetry (L)	Position

3 Select the effect type, and then press ●.

● Facial contour information is automatically extracted. After "Processing FX" is displayed, the processed still picture is displayed to the right.

To set the contour of each part manually

● Press ⒈⒉ (Position). Refer to " Setting the contour for each part manually" for details on operating procedures.

4 Save the still picture (☞ Steps 6 to 8 on P.160).

Note	● Contour information of some facial features may not be automatically extracted. Press Ⓒ# (Cancel), select "Yes" when the confirmation screen is displayed, and then press ●. Select Ⓒ⒌⒈⒉ (Position), and then set the contour information manually. Refer to " Setting the contour for each part manually" for details on operating procedures.

■ Setting the contour for each part manually

Set the contour of the face, the right eye, the left eye, and the mouth in order to apply face effects.

Press 🔘 and move the "+" cursor to set the contour for each part.

● The "+" cursor moves only within the image area.
● The contour of the face, right eye, left eye, and mouth are displayed respectively in red, blue, green, and yellow lines.

1 In step 3 on P.165, select "Position", press ●, and then specify the facial contour.

Press 🔘 to align the "+" cursor to the upper left, and then press ● (OK).

Press 🔘 to align the "+" cursor to the lower right, and then press ● (OK).

165

Using the Camera

2 **Specify right eye contour on the display.**

Press ⊙ to align the "+" cursor to the upper left, and then press ● (OK).

Press ⊙ to align the "+" cursor to the lower right, and then press ● (OK).

3 **Specify left eye contour on the display.**

Press ⊙ to align the "+" cursor to the upper left, and then press ● (OK).

Press ⊙ to align the "+" cursor to the lower right, and then press ● (OK).

4 **Specify contour of the mouth.**

Press ⊙ to align the "+" cursor to the upper left, and then press ● (OK).

Press ⊙ to align the "+" cursor to the lower right.

5 **Press ⊚ (Complete) when editing is finished.**

6 **Save the still picture (☞ Steps 6 to 8 on P.160).**

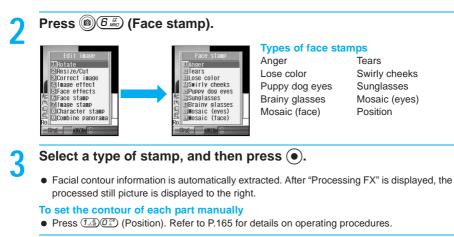| Note	● Hold down ⊙ continuously to move the "+" cursor.
	● The set contour information is saved when either ⊚ (Complete) is pressed, or the edited image is saved. When editing again, it is done based on this contour information.

Using the Camera

Pasting a Face Stamp <Face Stamp>

You can paste tears, sunglasses, swirly cheeks and other decorative still pictures on the face.

● Be sure to respect personal rights and rights of portrait. Be careful not to harm others when you edit images using face stamps, when you send such edited still pictures with i-shot, or set such edited still pictures as your stand-by display.
● Use still pictures of a person where the face is up close, centered and facing forward when applying face stamps.
● Face stamp extracts information about the contour of a person's face automatically and apply effects based on that information. As such, there are cases where effects cannot be applied properly due to the size and position of the person's face within a still picture. Specifically, effects may not work well on the following types of still pictures:
Out of focus/bent neck/dark/eyes covered by hair/opened mouth/wearing glasses/has a beard, etc.
● You cannot paste face stamps to still pictures that are larger than i-shot (L). You can edit images after resizing still pictures to an appropriate size (☞P.168).

1 Display the editing screen (☞P.158 "Displaying the editing screen").

2 Press ◎ 6🔤 (Face stamp).

Types of face stamps

Anger	Tears
Lose color	Swirly cheeks
Puppy dog eyes	Sunglasses
Brainy glasses	Mosaic (eyes)
Mosaic (face)	Position

3 Select a type of stamp, and then press ⦿.

● Facial contour information is automatically extracted. After "Processing FX" is displayed, the processed still picture is displayed to the right.

To set the contour of each part manually
● Press 1🔤 0🔤 (Position). Refer to P.165 for details on operating procedures.

4 Save the still picture (☞Steps 6 to 8 on P.160).

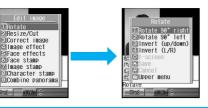| Note	● Contour information of some facial features may not be automatically extracted. Press ◎ #🔤 (Cancel), select "Yes" when the confirmation screen is displayed, and then press ⦿. Select ◎ 6🔤 1🔤 0🔤 (Position), and then set the contour information manually. Refer to P.165 for details on operating procedures.

Rotating Still Pictures <Rotate>

Images can be rotated 90° to the left/right or inverted vertically/horizontally.
● Still pictures that are larger than i-shot (L) cannot be rotated. You can edit images after resizing still pictures to an appropriate size (☞P.168).

1 Display the editing screen (☞P.158 "Displaying the editing screen").

2 Press ⓞ①.ँ (Rotate).

Types of image rotations

Rotate 90º right	Rotate 90º left
Invert (up/down)	Invert (L/R)

3 Select the type of rotation, and then press ●.

● "Rotating" is displayed, and then the corrected still picture is displayed.

4 Save the still picture (☞Steps 6 to 8 on P.160).

Resizing a Still Picture <Resize/Cut>

Still pictures can be resized according to purpose or use, such as for sending with i-shot or setting as the stand-by display.

Size of still picture before resizing	Size of still picture after resizing
Stand-by: 240× 320	i-shot (S), i-shot (L), Menu icons, 9 frame menu
i-shot (S): 144× 144	Stand-by, Menu icons
i-shot (L): 288× 352	i-shot (S), Stand-by, Menu icons
VGA: 480× 640 XGA*: 768× 1024 2M pxl*: 1224× 1632	i-shot (S), i-shot (L), Stand-by, Menu icons
Icon size: 76× 76	i-shot (S), Stand-by
Capture size (S): 120× 88	i-shot (S), Menu icons
Capture size (M): 160× 120	i-shot (S), Stand-by, Menu icons
Capture size (L): 240× 176	i-shot (S), Stand-by, Menu icons

● "Capture (S)", "Capture (M)", and "Capture (L)" are sizes of Still pictures that are captured from Movies.
● In addition to camera shot size, you can edit still pictures saved on a miniSD memory card or downloaded with Ir. However, certain still pictures cannot be edited depending on the size of the still picture.
* Shot images cannot be edited if they are unsaved.

Using the Camera

1 **Display the editing screen (☞P.158 "Displaying the editing screen").**

2 **Press ⊙②ᴬᴮᶜ (Resize/Cut).**

- Certain sizes cannot be resized depending on the size of the original still picture. Sizes that cannot be resized are displayed in gray.

3 **Select the new size, and then press ⊙.**

- "Opening image" is displayed, and the screen to change image size is displayed.
- The current width is converted to the width after conversion. If height is insufficient, place the still picture in the center. Margins are placed at the top and bottom.

4 **Select the portion to be cut using ⊙, and then press ⊙.**

- Enlarge or reduce the unedited image and cut.

5 **Press ⊙.**

6 **Save the still picture (☞Steps 6 to 8 on P.160).**

- If a still picture in Stand-by: 240× 320 is resized/cut to 9 frame menu, title cannot be changed with step 8 on P.160. To change the title, perform "Changing the Title of an Image" on P.155 after saving.

DPOF

Designating the Printing of Still Pictures

⟨⊙⑦ᴾ�Qᴿˢ④ᴳᴴᴵ⟩

DPOF (stands for "Digital Print Order Format") means the print designation of still pictures taken by the digital camera. If you specify the still pictures and the number of still pictures shot with mova and saved on a miniSD memory card which you wish to have printed, printing can be performed according to the information specified at a digital camera print shop or with a DPOF compatible printer.

- Still pictures downloaded from a site etc. cannot be printed out.
- For printing operations, read the User's Manual of the printing device for details.

1 **In the stand-by, press ⊙ and select 🗂, and then press ⊙④ᴳᴴᴵ.**

- The Folder list screen on the miniSD memory card is displayed.

Using the Camera

2 **Select a folder, and then press ⊙.**

- The DPOF screen is displayed.
- Press ⓐ to scroll up screen-by-screen. Press ⓑ to scroll down screen-by-screen.

To directly specify the number of images in the DPOF screen

- Select a Still picture, and then enter the number of prints (00 to 99) with the keypad. Next, proceed to step 5.

To make the same number of prints of each still picture

- Select the folder and press ⓒ(1), press (1) (All images), enter the number of prints you wish to make, and then press ⊙. Next, proceed to step 5.

To make the same number of prints of still pictures larger than the VGA size (640× 480)

- Select the folder and press ⓒ(1)(2), enter the number of prints you wish to make, and then press ⊙. Next, proceed to step 5.

To make the same number of prints of still pictures larger than the XGA size (1024× 768)

- Select the folder and press ⓒ(1)(3), enter the number of prints you wish to make, and then press ⊙. Next, proceed to step 5.

To add the date

- The Image data Properties date can be attached.
- Select the folder and press ⓒ(3), and then press (1) (ON).

When Index Print is necessary

- This is a function to print thumbnails to postcard and A4 size paper with file name attached.
- After setting the number of prints with Specify group, press ⓒ(4), and then press (1) (ON).

When confirming print designation

- Press ⓒ(5).

To Reset all

- After setting the number of prints with Specify group, press ⓒ(2), select "Yes", and then press ⊙.

3 **Select the still picture, and then press ⓒ(1) (Specify number).**

4 **Enter the number of prints (00 to 99) by pressing the keypad, and then press ⊙.**

To designate other still pictures

- Repeat steps 3 and 4.

5 **After specifying the number of still pictures to print, press ⓘ (Complete).**

6 **Select "Yes", and then press ⊙.**

To set print designations again

- Select "No", and then press ⊙.

Note	- Note that if DPOF settings are changed on another device after setting on the mova, all DPOF settings and index information may be canceled if My picture images or folders are deleted or moved. - Also note that if DPOF settings performed on another device and My picture images or folders are later moved or deleted from the miniSD memory card, all DPOF settings will be canceled. - Some still pictures saved on a miniSD memory card that do not conform to DCF standards may not be printed.

Scanning Characters

The mova can shoot URLs, mail addresses, and phone numbers printed on paper, and convert them into characters that can be used by the mova.

Using the read characters, you can connect to a site, send mail, search the dictionary, or make a call.

You can also save the information in the Phonebook or as a bookmark.

● Readable characters are as follows. Characters read from data types such as "URL", "Mail address", "Phone number" and "English word" may be automatically recognized. Full-pitch characters, such as Kanji and Hiragana, are not recognized.

URL	Half-pitch alphabet, half-pitch numbers, half-pitch symbols [. - _ : / ˜]
Mail address	Half-pitch alphabet, half-pitch numbers, half-pitch symbols [. @ - _ :]
Phone number	Half-pitch numbers, half-pitch symbols [- + P #]
English word	Half-pitch alphabet, half-pitch numbers, half-pitch symbols [- / ? ! @ + ' ( ) , . &]

● You may not be able to read characters due to scratches, dirt, tears, light reflection, or the size of characters.

Reading and Using Characters

The mova can automatically recognize data type ("URL", "Mail address", "Phone number", "English word") of the read characters and use them in Character reader, i-mode connections, mail composing, calling, or search them in the e-Dictionary&Book.

● When reading characters, AF mode is set to "Closeup" (☞P.146).

1 **In the still picture shooting screen (☞P.127), press ⊚ 1./.꜀.**

● The screen to switch Camera mode is displayed.

2 **Press 3ᴅᴇꜰ (Character reader).**

● The Character reader mode is activated.


```
    Character reader
①Characters in 〔 〕

〔          〕

②Shoot when bar
 color nearest blue

 Light    📷    Schmera
```

171

3 **Display the characters to read in the center of the display.**

- If the image is dark, press ⓘ (Light) and turn on the Picture light.
- The mova may have difficulty reading the bar code if it is on glossy paper. Adjust the shooting angle, so the lighting does not reflect.
- Correct the image so that it is placed in the center of [ ]. Characters placed close to each side of [ ] may be hard to scan.
- Characters may be easier to read if reading is done directly in front, at a distance of about 10cm, with the mova held still and horizontally. Characters displayed may be too small to read. In this case, adjust the distance to the subject by having the bar color at the bottom of the image display as blue as possible.
- The number of characters that can be scanned at one time is approximately 35 characters or less.

To read using Auto focus
- Press ⓘ(3̲) and switch to AF mode.
- This is used for reading large characters.
- When reading items with small characters, such as name cards, use "Closeup".

To scan reverse texts (white letters with background in black)
- Press ⓘ(2̲), and then press the number of the type of Reverse mode.
- The default setting is "Automatic". If scanning cannot be done properly, set to "Normal" or "Reverse text".

4 **Press ⏺.**

- Contents to be shot as a still picture or scanned are displayed.

When multiple lines are shot
- Select the line(s) to scan using ↕. (Character reading is done 1 line at a time.)

5 **Press ⏺ (Scan).**

- Character reading begins.
- When reading is completed, the scan results screen is displayed with the contents and the type of the read characters.

6 **Press ⏺ or (1̲) (OK).**

- The screen to select the character reading candidate is displayed.

To change the type of characters
- Press (2̲) (Change data type), choose the correct character type, press ⏺, and then press (1̲) (OK).

To edit scan results
- Candidates for correction are displayed one at a time at the bottom of the screen. Select the character to edit using ↔, and select the candidate using ↕. When there is no candidate for correction, enter characters using the keypad.
- Press @ to delete characters one by one.

To delete the read characters, and re-try reading them
1 Press ⓘ (Retry).
2 Select "Yes", and then press ⏺.

7 Press ⦿.

● The scan results screen for character reading is displayed.

To continue to read characters

● Press ⦿①(Serial scan). The character reader screen is displayed.

To do additional scan

● Press ⦿②(Additional scan). The character reader screen is displayed.

Read characters can be combined as follows.

Serial scan	Add to read characters and use as 1 complete sentence. Useful when reading a URL divided into a few lines or a mail address. Up to 256 characters can be read.
Additional scan	Characters read in a maximum of 3 steps can be combined together as 1 group. Useful when consecutively reading items from the Phonebook, and saving them altogether to the Phonebook. Up to 508 characters in a maximum of 3 steps can be read.

To edit read characters

● Press ⦿⑦.

To copy all read characters

● Press ⦿⑧.

● The image can be pasted on other screens and used.

To delete read characters

● Press ⦿⑨.

8 Press ⦿, select "Yes", and then press ⦿.

● An i-mode connection confirmation screen (when URL), the compose message screen (when mail address), keypad dial confirmation screen (when phone number), or the e-Dictionary&Book screen (when English words) is displayed depending on the type of characters read.

Note	● When the data type of the characters to read is "Phone number", ( ) is recognized as - (hyphen). Also, when registering in the Phonebook, or making a call, - (hyphen) is deleted.
	● You cannot make a call with a scanned phone number when the phonebook lock is "☑" (ON) or when Keypad dial lock is set.

Saving Read Characters to the Phonebook or as Bookmarks

The read characters can be registered to an item in the phonebook or the bookmark accordingly to the recognized data type.

● Saved to the items of the Phonebook, depending on the type of read characters.

Data type	Phonebook item
URL	Personal data
Mail address	Mail address
Phone number	Phone number
English word	"Last name" and "Last name reading" (the same contents are entered in both lines)

1 **Perform steps 1 to 7 on P.171 to P.173, and then press 📷 in the scan results screen.**

2 **Press ③₍DEF₎ (New entry).**

● Select "Yes", and then press ●. The screen to enter a new phonebook entry is displayed. (Read characters are entered into the appropriate categories.)
● Proceed with adding to phonebook operations (☞P.77).

To add a phonebook entry
● Press ④₍GHI₎.
● Select "Yes", and then press ●. The screen to search phonebook is displayed.
● Select the entry to add an address or phone number to, and then proceed with editing Phonebook operations (☞P.90).
● "Unable to add to phonebook" is displayed when you cannot add read characters to the selected phonebook entry (when "Last name" (including the reading) has already been saved, etc.).

To register a Bookmark
● Press ⑤₍JKL₎.
● The bookmark saving screen is displayed (☞P.268).
● Next, select "Yes", and then press ●.

To search the dictionary
● Press ⑥₍MNO₎.
● The e-Dictionary&Book screen is displayed (☞P.460).
● After search is complete, the mova returns to the character reader screen.

Using the Camera

Playing Movies

⟨◉ 7₅₆₇ 2ₐᵦc⟩

You can play recorded movies.

1 **In the stand-by, press ◉ and select ▒▒, and then press ◉ 2ₐᵦc.**

● The folders in My Movie are displayed. (My movie screen)
● You can also display them by pressing ◎ 2ₐᵦc in the shoot movie screen (☞P.138).

2 **Select a folder, and then press ◉.**

● The image list for movies saved in the folder is displayed. (My movie screen)
● Press ⓘ to scroll down screen-by-screen and press ⓐ to scroll up screen-by-screen.
● When in Viewer position, press ▭ (left guidance key) for at least 1 second to scroll up a page at a time or press ▭ (right guidance key) for at least 1 second to scroll down a page at a time.

To view information about movies (Properties)
● Press ◎ 4ₓₕₗ.

To set the display light to follow Display light time
● Press ◎ 7₅₆₇, and then press 1.₷ (As light setting) (☞P.189).

3 **Select a movie, and then press ◉.**

● The movie will be played. (Movie play screen)
● The movie stops when all of it has been played.

Things you can do while playing

Adjust the volume	Press ◡ (Quieter) or ◠ (Louder). The default setting is "Volume 3".
Fast forward	Press and hold ◔. Pauses when you let go of the key. Press ◉ (Play).
Rewind	Press and hold ◖. Pauses when you let go of the key. Press ◉ (Play).
Pause	Press ◉. Press ◉ again and the rest is played. Press ⓘ (Head) while paused to pause the movie at the beginning. Press ◔ to move forward or press ◖ to move backwards frame by frame.
Play the next movie	Press ⓘ.
Play the previous movie	Press ⓐ.

To switch the Play size of a movie
● Press ◎ 1.₷ while pausing, and then press 1.₷ (Actual size) or 2ₐᵦc (Zoom).
● The default setting is "Zoom".
● Settings of play size is valid until My movie is ended.

To playback in Full-screen display
● Press *view* while paused. Press *view* again to return to the original screen.
● Settings of full screen size are valid until My movie is ended.

Note	● Movies are paused if the mova is opened/closed or is rotated during playback.
	● If a movie is played but the mova is opened and closed before the movie starts, the mova returns to the My movie list.
	● Movies can also be played in i-mode stand-by ("☐" flashes).
	● When a call is received, movie playback is interrupted, allowing you to answer the call. After the call, the mova returns to the stand-by display.
	● If a call is received from an unset user during playback while Reject user unset (☞P.62) is set, "* missed calls" is displayed and movie playback is interrupted.

Using the Camera

▌ Viewing My movie list

Selected movie

Folder name

Movie list

Title

▌ Viewing the play movie screen

Displayed when play size is changed

Displayed when the display light is set to "Always ON"

Current volume level (◯: Louder, ◡: Quieter)

Note	● When the memory is full, you cannot save any more data to My movie. In this case, data is not overwritten. When shooting pictures or editing movies, check the status of memory in use.

● You can set the lighting method for playback in advance. The default setting is "**2**Always ON".

● You can switch the display method for the My movie list to display by title of the movie (☞P.153).

Movies saved in the Library are stored on miniSD memory cards (☞P.444). You can also use Data Link software (☞P.553) and a USB cable (sold separately) to save to your PC.

Movies transferred to a PC can be played on the PC using movie playback software (☞P.554).

● Malfunctions, repairs, or other handling of the mova may cause loss of registered contents. DoCoMo cannot be held responsible in any way for the loss of images stored in the library.

Editing Movies

When editing a movie, a new file for the edited movie will be created. For this reason, if there is not enough memory space in the miniSD memory card, editing cannot be performed.

Saving as a Still Picture <Still Capture>

One scene of a movie recorded by the mova can be saved as a still picture. The saved still picture can be handled in the same way as a still picture taken with the mova. Also, it can be sent with i-shot.

1 **During playback of the movie (☞Steps 1 to 3 on P.175), press ⦿ at the point where you wish to save as still picture.**

● The movie is paused. Press 🔘 while paused to forward/reverse. Adjust the image.
● The movie is also paused when the key is let go when fast forwarding/rewinding.

2 **Press ⓞⓞ (Edit movie).**

● The screen to edit movie is displayed.

3 **Press ①. (Still capture).**

● The confirmation screen to save to the Camera image folder in My picture is displayed.

4 **Press ①. (ON: Register still picture).**

● The still picture is registered.
● The title will be the date of registration.

To change title and save
● Press ②, enter the title, and then press ⦿.
● You can enter up to 12 full-pitch (24 half-pitch) characters.

To send with i-shot
● Press 🔳, enter recipient's address, subject and message text, and send with i-shot.

Using the Camera

177

Setting the Starting Point and Ending Point, and Cut <Movie Cutter>

Cut a part of a movie recorded with the mova by marking the starting point and ending point and save as a new movie.
● In this case, the original movie will not be changed and remains the same.
● Segments that are 2 seconds or shorter cannot be cut.

1 **During playback (☞Steps 1 to 3 on P.175) of a movie, press ⊙ at the point where you wish to start cutting.**

● The movie is paused. Press ⟨⟩ while paused to forward/reverse.
Adjust the image.

2 **Press ⊚⊚②ᴬᴮᶜ (Movie cut (strt)).**

● This point will be the starting point.

3 **Press ⊙.**

● Playback starts and the Play key for the segment that is about to be cut changes color.

4 **Press ⊙ at the desired ending point.**

● The movie is paused. Press ⟨⟩ while paused to forward/reverse by frame.
Adjust the image.

5 **Press ⊚⊚③ᴰᴱᶠ (Movie cut (end)).**

● This point will be the ending point.

6 **Select "Yes", and then press ⊙.**

● The selected range is saved as a new movie.
To not save
● Select "No", and then press ⊙.

Erase the First Half or Last Half <Erase Prev Part/Erase All After>

You can erase the first or last half and save the rest as a new movie.
● In this case, the original movie will not be changed and remains the same.
● When erasing, the remaining part cannot be shorter than 2 seconds.

1 **During playback of a movie (☞Steps 1 to 3 on P.175), press ⊙ at the point where you wish to erase as the starting point.**

● The movie is paused. Press ⟨⟩ while paused to forward/reverse by frame.
Adjust the image.

2 **Press ⊚⊚④ᴳᴴᴵ (Erase prev part).**

● Segments up to this point will be erased.
To erase the last half
● Press ⊚⊚⑤ᴶᴷᴸ.

3 **Select "Yes", and then press ⊙.**

● The remaining part is saved as a new movie.
To not save
● Select "No", and then press ⊙.

Using Bar Code Reader

Scan bar codes (JAN code/QR code) using the camera.
Perform Phone To, Mail To, Web To, i-αppli To, save
bookmarks, phonebook entries, display characters, and
copy/paste characters using read text information. In
addition, scan melodies and images and playback
melodies, display/save images.

● You cannot read bar codes or 2-dimensional codes other
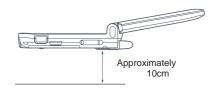than JAN and QR codes.
● Divided QR code data is also supported.

■ Reading and Using Characters from Bar Codes (JAN codes, QR codes)

You can use characters read from bar codes (JAN codes, QR codes) to connect to i-mode,
compose message, make a phone call, activate i-αppli, etc.
● AF mode is set to "Closeup" when using Bar code reader. (☞P.146)
● You can use Bar code reader while viewing a site to read JAN codes and QR codes and
enter the information in text boxes (☞P.257) .
● Depending on their type or size, you may not be able to read some bar codes.
● You may not be able to read characters due to scratches, dirt, tears, light reflections, or the
version of QR code.

1 **In the still picture shooting screen (☞P.127), press ⓒ①.**

● The screen to switch Camera modes is displayed.

2 **Press ④ (Bar code reader).**

● The mova switches to Bar code reader.
● Bar codes (JAN codes, QR codes) may be
easier to read if reading is done directly in
front, at a distance of about 10cm, with the
mova held still.

Approximately
10cm

3 **Display the bar code (JAN codes, QR codes) to read in the center of the display.**

● The mova will determine automatically whether the read subject is a
JAN code or a QR code.
● If the image is dark, press ⓘ (Light) to turn on the Picture light.
● The mova may have difficulty reading the bar code if it is on glossy
paper. Adjust the shooting angle so the lighting does not reflect.

To view previously scanned text
● Press ⓒ② in the character scanning screen.

Bar code reader
①Center the bar code

4 942857 111699

②Press "Scan"
Light   Scan   Storati

Using the Camera

179

4 # Press ⊙ (Scan).

- You can set Focus lock by pressing (⏵ᴬᶠ).
- The bar code (JAN codes, QR codes) reading starts. When scanning is completed, the completion tone sounds and the scan results are displayed.
- If 1 minute passes after scanning has started and is not successful, an error tone sounds (beeps) and "Could not scan" is displayed, and the mova returns to the screen of step 3.

5 # Select the read characters, and then press ⊙.

- An i-mode connection confirmation screen (when a URL), compose message screen (when a mail address) or dial number screen (when a phone number) is displayed depending on the type of read characters.
- For Phonebook data, mail data, Bookmark data, or i-αppli data, the confirmation screen to add to the Phonebook, composing messages, adding Bookmarks, i-αppli start-up is displayed.
- Depending on the contents that are read, pressing ⊙ may not change the display.

To copy read characters
- Press (📳) (Copy all).
- When 513 or more characters are scanned, they are not displayed. Up to 512 characters can be copied, but if there are 513 or more characters, copy all is not possible, and none of the characters are copied.

To copy a portion of read characters
- Press (📷)(4 ᵗ) in the message received results screen.
- Press ⊙ at the beginning and end of the character string to copy.

To save scanned characters
- Press (📷)(5 ᵏ) in the scan results screen.
- Save up to 5 scanned texts.

Note	
	- While in manner mode, the Focus lock sound, the scanning completion sound, and error sounds (beeps) are silenced.
	- If the mova is closed while reading or connecting bar codes (JAN codes and QR codes), reading and connecting is canceled.

About JAN codes

- JAN codes are vertical lines (bars) of numbers of various widths that represent numbers.
- When this code is scanned, "4942857111699" is displayed.

About QR codes

- QR codes are 2-dimensional codes that represent data with vertical and horizontal lines. Data refers to alphanumeric characters, character strings (Kanji, kana, pictograph), images and melodies.
- When this code is scanned, " SH506iC" is displayed.

About divided data

- Some QR codes are divided (up to 16) and represent one data item after reading. When divided data is read, the screen at left is displayed after step 4. Press ⊙ to return to the screen from step 3. Repeat the operations until all divided data is read. When all data is read, the read results are displayed.

Using the Camera

Reading and Playing Images and Melodies Read from QR Codes

1 **Read the QR code (☞ Steps 1 to 4 on P.179 and P.180).**

2 **Press ⦿ (OK).**

3 **Press ⟨1.⟩ (Display).**

● An image is displayed.

To play a melody
● Press ⟨1.⟩ (Playback), and then press ⟨1.⟩ (Play all). Press ⟨2⟩ (Play portion) to play a pre-set portion.

To save a melody or image
● Press ⟨2⟩.

To not save a melody or image
● Press ⟨3⟩.

■ Saving read characters to the Phonebook or Bookmarks

You can save read phone numbers or mail addresses in the Phonebook.
You can also save the URL as a bookmark.

1 **In the scan results screen, press ⓞ (☞ Steps 1 to 4 on P.179 and P.180).**

● The submenu is displayed.

2 **Press ⟨1.⟩ (New entry).**

To add a phonebook entry
● Press ⟨2⟩.

To register a Bookmark
● Press ⟨3⟩.

3 **Select "Yes", and then press ⦿.**

● The screen to enter a new phonebook is displayed. (Read characters are entered into the appropriate categories.)
● Proceed with adding to phonebook operations (☞ P.77).

To add a phonebook entry (When ⟨2⟩ is pressed in step 2)
● The screen to search phonebook is displayed.
● Select the entry to add an address or phone number to, press ⦿, and then proceed with editing Phonebook operations (☞ P.90).

To register a bookmark (When ⟨3⟩ is pressed in step 2)
● The bookmark saving screen is displayed (☞ P.268).

►MEMO◄

9

Changing Display and Key Settings

Changing the Stand-by Display

Setting an Image as the Stand-by Display <Stand-by Display>

⟨⦿②ᴬᴮᶜ①.₋@①.₋@①.₋@⟩

Pre-registered still pictures, still pictures shot using the camera, still pictures and Flash movies downloaded from sites, still pictures received via i-mode mail, and other images saved in My picture in the Library can be displayed as the stand-by display.
● JPEG images, GIF images, GIF animations, or Flash movies can be used.
● The default setting is "Stand-by dsp1".

1 **In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select 🔧 , and then press ⦿②ᴬᴮᶜ①.₋@①.₋@①.₋@.**

● The My picture screen is displayed.

2 **Select a folder, and then press ⦿.**

● The wallpaper images in the folder are displayed.

To preview the image
● Select an image, and then press 🛈 (Preview).

3 **Select an image, and then press ⦿.**

● The image is set as the stand-by display.

When the Still picture is smaller than the stand-by size (240× 320)
● "Set to zoom?" is displayed. Select "Yes", and then press ⦿ to enlarge the still picture to fill the display. If you select "No" and then press ⦿, the image is displayed in the original size.

Note	● Saved Flash movies may differ in appearance from when they are displayed on a site.
	● Returns to "Stand-by disp1" if the original still picture from the stand-by is deleted.
	● If an i-αppli stand-by is set, the image set as the stand-by is not displayed. The image will be displayed when i-αppli stand-by is disabled.
	● Images stored in a miniSD memory card cannot be directly set as the stand-by display. Copy onto your mova, and then set.
	● If GIF animation or Flash movie is set as the stand-by display, the image is displayed paused once animation ends.
	● The following icons are not displayed until animations are completed when GIF animations (Stand-by disp5 when using internal) or Flash movies (Stand-by disp4 when using internal) are set as the stand-by display.

■ Vibrator (☞P.98)   ■ Silent (☞P.56)
■ New voice mail (☞P.418)
■ i-navi link/"PlayStation" connection (☞P.506)
■ Memory status   ■ Schedule/Alarm (☞P.228)
■ Drive mode (☞P.66)   ■ Record message (☞P.69)

Displaying the Clock <Clock Display>

⟨◉ 2ABC 1./@ 2ABC ⟩

You can display the clock on top of the stand-by image on the main display.
● When clock display is "ON", the time is not displayed at the top of the stand-by.
(The time is displayed in other screens.)
● The default setting is "OFF" (do not display).

1 **In the stand-by, press ◉ and select 🗡, and then press**
◉ 2ABC 1./@ 2ABC.

● The clock display settings screen is displayed.

2 **Press 1./@ (ON: Clock display).**

To not display the clock
● Press 2ABC.

Displaying the Calendar <Calendar Display>

⟨◉ 2ABC 1./@ 3DEF ⟩

You can display the calendar for only the current month, or for 2 months or 6 months, on top of the stand-by image on the main display.
● When no date or time is set, "Time is not set" is displayed, and the calendar is not displayed.
● The default setting is "OFF".

1 **In the stand-by, press ◉ and select 🗡, and then press**
◉ 2ABC 1./@ 3DEF.

● The calendar display settings screen is displayed.

2 **Select the display method, and then press ◉.**

To display 1 month (Large)
● Press 1./@.

To display 1 month
● Press 2ABC, and then press the display position number (1./@ to 4GHI).

To display 2 months
● Press 3DEF.

To display 6 months
● Press 4GHI.

To not display the calendar
● Press 5JKL.

1 month (Large) display

1 month display

2 month display

6 month display

Changing Display and Key Settings

185

● When set to 2 months, the calendar for the current and next month is displayed. When set to 6 months, calendars for 6 months are displayed in pairs with odd number months on the left, starting with the pair including the current month. Press 🔘 to display the previous and next months. When displaying 6 months, the previous and following 2 months are displayed.

● The calendar cannot be displayed on top of an i-αppli stand-by.

● If a GIF animation or Flash movie is set for the stand-by, the image is stopped when the display is switched to the calendar.

● When set to "1 month (Large)", an icon is displayed on dates with schedule entries.

Switching Between the Display Screens

When the Calendar display is set, press ⓒ CLR in the stand-by to switch between "Stand-by image display" and "Calendar display".

Stand-by image
display

Calendar display
(2 months)

Displaying an i-αppli Image

⟨●② ①①②⟩

● Only 1 i-αppli compatible with the Stand-by display can be set.

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select [icon], and then press ●②①①② (i-αppli).**

● The screen to set the stand-by is displayed.

2 **Press ① (Set).**

To end an i-αppli that is set
● Press ②①.
● The i-αppli stand-by settings are not changed.

To disable an i-αppli that is set
● Press ②②.
● The i-αppli stand-by settings are disabled.

3 **Select an i-αppli, and then press ●.**
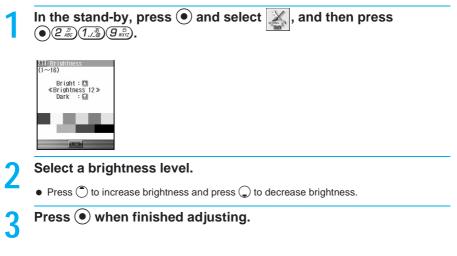
● The i-αppli is set as the stand-by.
● Press ☎ to return to the stand-by, and then run the i-αppli.

Note	● Press ⓒ to activate the i-αppli set as the stand-by. Refer to P.401 for details on i-αppli operation. ● You can also set this from the i-αppli software list.

Brightness

Adjusting the Display Brightness

⟨●②ABC①.,'–@⑨WXYZ⟩

The main display brightness can be set to 16 different levels.
● The default setting is "Brightness 12".

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select 🔅, and then press ●②ABC①.,'–@⑨WXYZ.**

```
21.9 Brightness
(1~16)

    Bright : ▲
  《Brightness 12》
    Dark  : ▼



        OK
```

2 **Select a brightness level.**

● Press ⌃ to increase brightness and press ⌄ to decrease brightness.

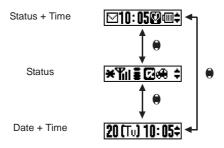**3** **Press ● when finished adjusting.**

Note	● Brightening the display will result in shortened continuous stand-by time.

Switch Sub Display

Switching the Sub Display

Press ⬤ while the mova is closed to switch the Sub display in the following order.
● Switches to "Status + Time" after approximately 10 seconds.

Status + Time ☑10:05⚙⌱⇕

Status ＊📶🔋📷🚗 ⇕

Date + Time 20 [Tu] 10:05⇕

Changing Display and Key Settings

187

Displaying Caller Information When a Call is Received <Caller ID Display>

⟨ ● 2ABC 2ABC 1 ⟩

A caller's name and phone number can be displayed in the sub display when a call is received.
● The default setting is "ON" (display).

1
In the stand-by, press ● and select 🗓, and then press ● 2ABC 2ABC 1.

● The caller ID display screen is displayed.

2
Press 1 (ON: Set Caller ID display) .

To not display the caller's name or still picture
● Press 2ABC.

Adjusting the Sub display Contrast <Contrast>

⟨ ● 2ABC 2ABC 2ABC ⟩

The sub display contrast can be adjusted to 5 different levels.
● The default setting is "Contrast 3".

1
In the stand-by, press ● and select 🗓, and then press ● 2ABC 2ABC 2ABC.

```
222 Contrast
(1~5)

    Dark : ▲
  《Contrast 3》
    Light : ▽
```

● The current contrast is displayed.

2
Select a contrast level.

● Press ◠ to increase brightness and press ◡ to decrease brightness.

3
Press ● when finished adjusting.

● The screen is displayed with the set brightness when the mova is closed.

Using Vibrator Mode to Confirm Incoming Calls and Mail

Pressing the shutter with the mova closed activates the Vibrator (☞P.98) and allows you to check missed calls (☞P.68), recorded messages and new mail.

1
Press the shutter.

● When there are missed calls, recorded messages, or unread mail, "Pattern 1" will activate twice.
● When there are no missed calls, recorded messages, or unread mail, "Pattern 2" will activate twice.
● Keep in mind that the Vibrator will not function with the shutter half-pressed.

Note	● Received calls and mail cannot be confirmed when not in the stand-by display.
	● For vibration pattern, refer to P.98.

Changing Display and Key Settings

Setting Power Saver Mode

⟨●②ABC①./@0わ⟩

When the mova is not in use, the main display will turn OFF after a set period of time to preserve power.

The amount of time that elapses before Power saver mode is activated can be selected from 2 minutes, 3 minutes, 5 minutes, 10 minutes, and 20 minutes.

● The default setting is "5 minutes, LED display off".
● When in Power saver mode in normal or Viewer position, the Picture light may be flashed (yellow).

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select [icon], and then press ●②ABC①./@0わ.**

● The screen to set Power saver mode is displayed.

2 **Select the display time, and then press ●.**

3 **Press ①./@ (LED display on: Picture light flashes).**

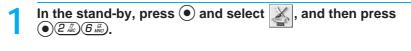**To not flash Picture light**
● Press ②ABC.

Note	● Continuous stand-by time is shortened if the Picture light is flashed while in Power saver mode.
	● In Power saver mode, the display will turn on when a key is pressed, or a call is received.
	● When the mova is set to "LED display off", confirm that the mova is turned on by pressing a key.
	● While in the sub display, LED is not displayed even if "LED display on" is set.

Setting Display and Key Lights

⟨●②ABC⑥MNO⟩

The display and key backlights turn on when the mova is powered on, opened or closed, a key is pressed, or a call is received. You can select the length of time this light is turned on, from 0 seconds, 15 seconds, 30 seconds, 60 seconds, and 90 seconds.

● The default setting is "15 seconds".

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select [icon], and then press ●②ABC⑥MNO.**

2 **Select the illumination time, and then press ●.**

Changing Display and Key Settings

Note	● This setting also applies to the sub-display.
	● During a call, the backlight turns off completely and the display goes dark.
	● Increasing the Set ON time results in shortened continuous stand-by time.
	● When playing Flash movies and movies in My picture, the Playback light settings are followed during playback (☞P.176).
	● Regardless of these settings, the backlight stays on in Slideshow and Camera modes.

Called LED

Setting the Illumination (Called LED) Color

Setting the Called LED Color

⟨ ● ②ABC ⑤JKL ①.,⓪ / ● ②ABC ⑤JKL ②ABC ⟩

You can set the LED color used to indicate incoming calls or mail.
● The default setting is "Green" for incoming phone calls and "Blue" for incoming mail.

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select 🖊️, and then press ● ②ABC ⑤JKL.**

```
25 Called LED
Green
1 Called LED color
2 Mail/Msg LED color
3 Called LED ON
4 Mail/Msg LED set
```

2 **Press ①.,⓪ (Called LED color).**

● The screen to set the Called LED color is displayed.
To set the LED color for mail (Mail LED color)
● Press ②ABC.

3 **Select the Called LED color, and then press ●.**

● The Called LED color is set.
● When set to random, the LED flashes in random colors, depending on the caller's phone number and date.

Note	● When selecting the Mail/Message LED, "🔲Random" is displayed gray and cannot be selected.
	● The Called LED and Mail/Message LED priority rankings are as follows.

	Priority ranking (High Low)		
Called LED	Phonebook Called LED Group called LED Normal Called LED		
Mail/Message LED	Specified Mail/Message LED Group mail/message LED Mail/Message LED		

Changing Display and Key Settings

Setting Called LED Operation

⟨●②⑤③ / ●②⑤④⟩

You can set the LED operation for incoming calls or mail.
● The default setting is "Without melody".

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select 🗙 , and then press
● ② ⑤ .**

● The called LED ON screen is displayed.

2 **Press ③ (Called LED ON).**

● The called LED ON screen is displayed.

To set LED operation for incoming mail (Mail/Msg LED set)
● Press ④ .

3 **Press ① (Melody ON).**

● The Called LED operation is set.

To set to "Without melody"
● Press ② .

Note	**What is "With melody"?**
	● When a melody set to flash the Called LED is set as the ring tone, the LED operates by following those melody settings.
	● When a melody that does not have Called LED operations is set as the ring tone, the Called LED does not operate with the melody.

Changing Display and Key Settings

191

Customizing the Display

Changing the Menu Screen Background <Background>

〈●②₄₈ɢₕᵢ③ᵈₑғ〉

You can change the menu screen background (still picture).

● JPEG and GIF images sized up to 240× 320 pixels can be used. (You cannot use Flash movies or GIF animation.) Images downloaded from sites can also be used.
● The default setting is "Background1".

1 In the stand-by, press ● and select [icon], and then press ●②₄₈ɢₕᵢ③ᵈₑғ.

● The My picture screen is displayed.

2 Select a folder, and then press ●.

To preview still pictures
● Select a still picture, and then press ⓘ (Preview).

3 Select a still picture, and then press ●.

● The background is set.

Note	● A diagonal line appears across still pictures that cannot be used as the Background, and these cannot be selected.
	● When a still picture from My picture is set as the Background pattern, the image remains set until the Background settings are changed, even if the original still picture is deleted.
	● Still pictures on a miniSD memory card cannot be set as the Background directly. Copy them to the mova before setting.

Displaying Picture Call <Picture Call Set>

〈●②ₐʙ꜀①₄₈ɢₕᵢ〉

Set the time for Picture call display when a call is received from a number saved with Picture call set to 1 second, 3 seconds, 5 seconds, 10 seconds, or OFF.

● This is not displayed if "Picture call set" is not set (☞P.81).
● The default setting is "1 second".

1 In the stand-by, press ● and select [icon], and then press ●②ₐʙ꜀①₄₈ɢₕᵢ.

```
214 Picture call set
11 second
23 seconds
35 seconds
410 seconds
5OFF


        OK
```

2 Select the time, and then press ●.

To not display picture calls
● Press ⑤ⱼₖₗ.

Changing the Popup Window Color and Frame <Popup Window>

〈●(2ABC)(4GHI)(1.,/@)〉

You can change the background color and frame shape of the Pop-up windows in the submenu, etc.
- GIF images sized 201× 62 pixels can be used. (Flash movies, GIF animations, and JPEG images cannot be used.) Images downloaded from sites can also be used.
- Images taken with the camera cannot be used.
- The default setting is "Popup window1".

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select 🗙, and then press ●(2ABC)(4GHI)(1.,/@).**
- The My picture screen is displayed.

2 **Select a folder, and then press ●.**

To preview still pictures
- Select a still picture, and then press (ⓘ) (Preview).

3 **Select a still picture, and then press ●.**
- The Popup window is set.

Note	• A diagonal line appears across still pictures that cannot be used for Popup windows. These still pictures cannot be selected.
	• When still pictures from My picture are set as popup windows, the image remains set until the popup window settings are changed, even if the original image is deleted.
	• Still pictures on a miniSD memory card cannot be set as the popup window directly. Copy them to the mova before setting.

Changing the Notice Window Color and Frame <Notice Window>

〈●(2ABC)(4GHI)(2ABC)〉

You can change the background color and frame shape of notice windows displaying confirmation and error messages.
- GIF images sized 201× 182 pixels can be used. (Flash movies, GIF animations, and JPEG images cannot be used.) Images downloaded from sites can also be used.
- Images taken with the camera cannot be used.
- The default setting is "Notice window1".

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select 🗙, and then press ●(2ABC)(4GHI)(2ABC).**
- The My picture screen is displayed.

2 **Select a folder, and then press ●.**
- When set as the Notice window, 4 frames within the image are displayed as an animation.
- Animation stops if 15 seconds passes in the stand-by display without key operations.

To preview still pictures
- Select a still picture, and then press (ⓘ) (Preview).

3 **Select a still picture, and then press ●.**
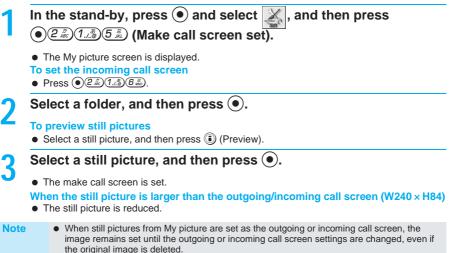- The notice window is set.

Note	• A diagonal line appears across still pictures that cannot be used nor selected for the Notice window.
	• When images from My picture are set as the notice window, the image remains set until the notice window settings are changed, even when the original image is deleted.
	• Still pictures on a miniSD memory card cannot be set as the notice window directly. Copy them to the mova before setting.

Changing Display and Key Settings

193

Changing Settings for Outgoing Call and Incoming Call Screens

⟨●②(1.@)⑤ / ●②(1.@)⑥⟩

You can change the still picture displayed for outgoing calls and for incoming calls.
- GIF images, GIF animations, and JPEG images can be used. (You cannot display Flash movies.) Images downloaded from sites can also be used.
- The default setting is "Make call 1" for the outgoing call screen and "Rcv call 1" for the incoming call screen.

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select [⚙], and then press ●②(1.@)⑤ (Make call screen set).**

- The My picture screen is displayed.
To set the incoming call screen
- Press ●②(1.@)⑥.

2 **Select a folder, and then press ●.**

To preview still pictures
- Select a still picture, and then press ⓘ (Preview).

3 **Select a still picture, and then press ●.**

- The make call screen is set.
When the still picture is larger than the outgoing/incoming call screen (W240× H84)
- The still picture is reduced.

Note	- When still pictures from My picture are set as the outgoing or incoming call screen, the image remains set until the outgoing or incoming call screen settings are changed, even if the original image is deleted.
	- Images that cannot be used nor selected for incoming or outgoing call screens have diagonal lines through them.
	- Still pictures on a miniSD memory card cannot be set as the outgoing/incoming call screen directly. Copy them to the mova before setting.

Changing the Sending Mail Screen or Receiving Mail Screen

⟨●②(1.@)⑦ / ●②(1.@)⑧⟩

You can change the still picture displayed for outgoing mail and for incoming mail.
- GIF images, GIF animations, and JPEG images can be used. (You cannot display Flash images.) Images downloaded from sites can also be used.
- The default setting is "Send mail 1" for the outgoing mail screen and "Rcv mail 1" for the incoming mail screen.

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select [⚙], and then press ●②(1.@)⑦ (Send mail screen set).**

- The My picture screen is displayed.
To set the incoming mail screen
- Press ●②(1.@)⑧.

2 **Select a folder, and then press ●.**

To preview still pictures
- Select a still picture, and then press ⓘ (Preview).

3 **Select a still picture, and then press ●.**

- The Send message screen is set.
When the still picture is larger than the outgoing/incoming mail screen (W240× H168)
- The still picture is reduced.

Changing Display and Key Settings

Note	●	Still pictures that cannot be used for the incoming or send mail screens have diagonal lines through them and cannot be selected.
	●	When still pictures from My picture are set as outgoing or incoming mail screens, the image remains set until the outgoing or incoming mail screen settings are changed, even if the original still picture is deleted.
	●	Still pictures on a miniSD memory card cannot be set as the sending/receiving mail screen directly. Copy them to the mova before setting.

Selecting Title and Status Colors <Title and Status Color Settings>

〈●②₄₈₄₄〉

You can change the colors of the title and status characters on the menu display.
● The default setting is "Pattern 1".

1 In the stand-by, press ● and select 🗒️, and then press
●②₄₈₄₄.

2 Select a pattern, and then press ●.

● The pattern is set.
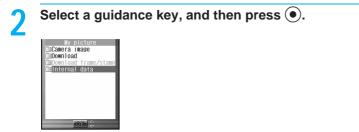
Setting the Guidance Key Background <Guidance keys>

〈●②₄₈₅₅〉

A background image can be set for each of the 3 guidance keys.
● GIF images sized 46× 24 pixels can be used for the Guidance key (center). (JPEG images, Flash movies, and GIF animations cannot be used.) Images downloaded from sites can also be used.
● GIF images sized 66× 24 pixels can be used for the Guidance keys (left and right). (JPEG images, Flash movies, and GIF animations cannot be used.) Images downloaded from sites can also be used.
● The default setting is "Guidance L/R 1" for the left key and right key and "Guidance center 1" for the center key.

1 In the stand-by, press ● and select 🗒️, and then press
●②₄₈₅₅.

● The guidance keys screen is displayed.

2 Select a guidance key, and then press ●.

195

Changing Display and Key Settings

3 **Select a folder, and then press ●.**

To preview still pictures
● Select a still picture, and then press ⓘ (Preview).

4 **Select a still picture, and then press ●.**

● The guidance key background is set.

Note	● Still pictures that cannot be used nor selected as a guidance key are crossed out.
	● When a My picture still picture is set as a guidance key, even when the original still picture is deleted, the guidance key will remain until its setting is changed.
	● Still pictures stored in a miniSD memory card cannot be directly set as a guidance key. Copy them to the mova before setting.

Customizing the TOP Menu

You can set the TOP menu icons, order, background image, and title display.

Setting the TOP Menu Icons <Icon settings>

You can change the TOP menu icons.
● JPEG and GIF images and GIF animations sized to 76× 76 pixels can be used. Images downloaded from sites can also be used.
● Set a selected and unselected version for each icon.
● Use up to 3 scenes for GIF animations. An image for when selected cannot be set.

1 **In the stand-by, press ●, select the icon to change, and then press ⓒ.**

● When the Zoom menu or Shortcut menu is displayed, press ⓘ (Switch) to switch to the TOP menu.

2 **Press 1 (Icon settings).**

3 **Select a folder, and then press ●.**

● The icon images in the folder are displayed.

To preview still pictures
● Select a still picture, and then press ⓘ (Preview).

4 **Select an image for the "Unselected" icon, and then press ●.**

● The Unselected icon is set.

When a GIF animation is selected,
● The mova returns to the TOP menu.

5 Select "No", and then press ⦿.

To set a separate image for "Selected"
● Select "Yes", and then press ⦿. Perform steps 3 and 4 to set the image.

Note	● Still pictures that cannot be used as a menu icon are crossed out, and cannot be used.
	● When a My picture still picture is set as a menu icon, even when the original still picture is deleted, the menu icon will remain until its setting is changed.
	● Still pictures stored in a miniSD memory card cannot be directly set as a menu icon. Copy them to the mova before setting.

Moving the TOP Menu Icons <Move Icon>

You can rearrange the order of TOP menu icons.

1 In the TOP menu, select the icon to move, and then press ⓐ②ᴬᴮᶜ (Move icon).

2 Select the destination position, and then press ⦿.

Setting the TOP Menu Background <Set Background>

You can set the TOP menu background image.
● JPEG and GIF images can be used (You cannot use Flash movies or GIF animation.). Images downloaded from sites can also be used.

1 Press ⓐ③ᴰᴱꜰ in the TOP menu (Set background).

● The My picture screen is displayed.

2 Select a folder, and then press ⦿.

● The background images in the folder are displayed.
To preview still pictures
● Select a still picture, and then press ⓘ (Preview).

3 Select a still picture, and then press ⦿.

● The background image is set.

When the still picture is smaller than the TOP menu (240× 320)
● "Set to zoom?" is displayed. Select "Yes" and then press ⦿ to enlarge the still picture to full TOP menu screen width. If you select "No" and then press ⦿, the image is displayed in the original size.

Note	● Still pictures that cannot be set as the background image are crossed out and cannot be selected.
	● When still pictures from My picture are set as background images, the image remains set until the background image settings are changed, even if the original image is deleted.
	● Still pictures stored on a miniSD memory card cannot be set as the background image directly. Copy them to the mova before setting.

Changing Display and Key Settings

Enabling or Disabling Title Display <Dsp Icon Name>

You can set whether or not to display the title beneath the TOP menu icon.
● The default setting is "OFF" (do not display).

1 **Press (⌾)(4 ᴳʰᴵ) in the TOP menu (Dsp icon name).**

2 **Press (1.₀) (ON: Set display icon name).**

To not display a title
● Press (2 ᴬᴮᶜ).

Resetting the TOP Menu <Reset>

You can restore the default settings of the TOP menu display.

1 **Press (⌾)(5 ᴶᴷᴸ) in the TOP menu.**

2 **Select "Yes", and then press (●).**

To not reset
● Select "No", and then press (●).

Changing Display and Key Settings

198

10

Restricting Mobile Phone Operations

Changing the Terminal Security Code

To allow for the secure and convenient use of your mobile phone, certain mova features require a security code. In addition to the terminal security code, three separate security codes are required for specific subscription-based services. Choose these security codes carefully in order to enjoy secure and convenient use of your mobile phone.

● Change the terminal security codes for your mobile phone after purchase to prevent unwanted tampering (☞P.201).
Write down the new terminal security codes and store them in a secure place in case you forget them.

● Please note that in order to prevent unauthorized changes to your mobile phone, in the event that the security codes are forgotten, you must take your mova and personal identification (driver's license, etc.) to your nearest authorized DoCoMo retailer.

■ Terminal security code for mobile phone functions

Some of the various functions of your mova require the terminal security code. The default setting for the terminal security code is "0000". You can use the mova to change this to a new terminal security code of your choosing.

● The terminal security code is required for the following functions.

Set/Disable Send own number	P.38	Reconnect	P.488
Save/Set/Disable Accept calls	P.57, P.59	Reset total call duration and cost	P.491
Save/Set/Disable Reject calls	P.59, P.61	Reset settings	P.505
Set/Disable rejection of calls with no caller ID	P.61	Set/Disable Show received calls, Show redials	P.204
Set/Disable rejection of calls from numbers not registered	P.63	Set/Disable Show address history	P.204
Edit i-mode secret code saved in phonebook	P.80	Set/Disable Mail security	P.204
Set/Disable Secret mode	P.93	Change security code	P.201
Delete all secret data	P.211	Set/Disable various Security settings	P.204
Set/Disable Phonebook lock	P.204	Update software	P.564
Set/Disable Keypad dial lock	P.205	Display Own number	P.39
Set/Disable Keypad lock	P.207	Delete all data from My picture, Mail, Screen memo, Phonebook, Schedule, etc.	
Set/Disable Remote keypad lock	P.208	Clear memory terms	P.531
Set/Disable i-mode lock	P.290	Copy all from miniSD memory card	P.452
Change i-mode host	P.285	Format miniSD memory card	P.458
Reset i-mode	P.289	Back up miniSD memory card	P.453
i-shot host selection	P.386	Send/Receive all Ir data	P.440
Limit settings	P.210		

Restricting Mobile Phone Operations

■ **Network security code for services that require subscriptions**

This security code is determined when you sign up for the "Voice Mail Service"
(☞P.414) and "Call Forwarding Service" (☞P.423).
● You cannot change this security code using the mova or another telephone.

■ **i-mode password**

This "password" is required to save/delete items in My menu, message services, and to
subscribe to or cancel i-mode charged services.
The default setting for the security code is "0000". You can use the mova to change this to
a new password of your choosing (☞P.265).
● There are cases where the specific information service provider (IP) may require the use of
a password independent of this password.

Saving Your Own Terminal Security Code

〈 ● 6 7 〉

The default setting for the terminal security code for mobile phone functions is "0000".
Make sure to enter your new terminal security code (4 digits).
● The same operation is performed when you wish to change the terminal security code.

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select 🔧 , and then press
● 6 7 .**

● The screen to enter your current security code is displayed.

2 **Enter your current terminal security code (4 digits).**

● Each entered digit is displayed as "✱".

3 **Enter your new terminal security code (4 digits).**

● Each entered digit is displayed as "✱".

4 **Enter your new terminal security code again.**

● The terminal security code is changed.

Restricting Mobile Phone Operations

201

Setting the Security

You can set your mova so that no one else can display or use Received calls, Redial, Sent/Received address history, Mail, Phonebook, Schedule, ToDo, Money Calculator, Record message, Voice memo, or My picture.
● The terminal security code is needed to set/disable the Security.
● The following details can be set.

Category	Operation/Security details
Received calls	● You can set your mova to not display the Received calls history to prevent unwanted viewing by another person. ● When Security settings for Received calls are ON (☑), Record message and Voice memo functions are limited. ● Even if you set Security settings for Received calls to ☑, Received calls are recorded. ● Enter terminal security code when security is set to temporarily disable security.
Redial	● You can set your mova to not display the redial to prevent unwanted viewing by another person. ● Even if you set Security settings for Redial to ☑, redials are recorded. ● Enter terminal security code when security is set to temporarily disable security.
Sent address	● You can set your mova to not display the Sent address history (☞P.341) to prevent unwanted viewing by another person. ● Even if you set Security settings for Sent address history to ☑, sent addresses are recorded. ● Enter terminal security code when security is set to temporarily disable security.
Received address	● You can set your mova to not display the received address history (☞P.341) to prevent unwanted viewing by another person. ● Even if you set Security settings for Received address history to ☑, received addresses are recorded. ● Enter terminal security code when security is set to temporarily disable security.
Mail security	● You can set your mova so that it becomes necessary to enter your terminal security code when you wish to verify received messages, sent messages, the Unsent messages folder and chat mail. ● When you set Security settings for Mail security to ☑, the Mail security icon "▥" is displayed.
Phonebook lock	● You can set your mova so that no one else can use your Phonebook, Redial and Received calls. ● If you set Phonebook lock ☑, redial records are deleted. However, numbers dialed after this is set will be saved in the redial and can be used to make calls. ● The following functions are also disabled when Phonebook lock is set to ☑. 　■ 2-touch Dialing 　■ Displaying a name registered in the Phonebook or Picture call when making a call 　■ Phonebook registered name display, ring tones, mail ring tones, Called LED, Mail/Message LED, and Picture call upon receiving a call or message 　■ Using the Phonebook to input address when sending i-mode mail, i-shot or short mail 　■ Phone To function 　■ License number to allow access to the Phonebook for saving in the Accept/Reject calls list and Remote keypad lock

Restricting Mobile Phone Operations

Category	Operation/Security details
Phonebook lock (Continued)	■ Calling from the Bar code reader ■ Phone number registration that uses the Alarm, Schedule and ToDo alarm Phonebook ■ Mail lists, mail text, names in Received/Sent address history for persons registered in the Phonebook, Picture call ■ Using the Phonebook to input addresses when sending i-mode mail, i-shot, short mail, Chat mail member settings, and Quick i-shot ■ Display schedule by contacts ■ Receiving Phonebook data via Ir
Schedule	● You can set to make it necessary to enter your security code to start the Schedule. ● Even if you set Security settings for Schedule to ☑, the alarm will function. In addition, new registration can be done from mail, history, memo, and still picture shooting screen.
ToDo	● You can set your mova so it becomes necessary to enter your terminal security code to activate ToDo. ● Even if you set Security settings for ToDo to ☑, the alarm will function.
Money Calculator	● Set to require terminal security code when activating Money calculator.
Voice memo	● You can set your mova so it becomes necessary to enter your terminal security code to start the play back of Voice memos. ● Even when security for Record message and Voice memo is set to ☑, Record message and Voice memo can still be set or recorded. ● Even if security for Voice memo is not set to ☑, play back of Record message and Voice memo will require you to enter your terminal security code if security for Received calls is set to ☑.
My picture	● You can set your mova so that it becomes necessary to enter your terminal security code to display My picture. ● When security for My picture is set to ☑, still pictures registered for the Phonebook, Chat mail members, and Schedule will not be displayed. ● If "Send" or "Edit" is selected after saving a message with an image attached, "My picture security on. Unable to send attached picture" is displayed. In addition, if "Edit" is selected, after the error message is displayed the attached image disappears.
My picture folder	● You can set your mova so it becomes necessary to enter your terminal security code to display the My picture folder list. ● When Security settings are ON for the entire My picture, you will not be asked for your terminal security code when the folder file list is displayed. ● Folder Security settings for My picture are performed from the My picture screen (☞P.204).

Restricting Mobile Phone Operations

Setting the Security Collectively

⟨●⟩ 6 2 1

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select [⚙], press ● 6 2 1 , and then enter your terminal security code (4 digits).**

- Each entered digit is displayed as "⁕".

2 **Select the function you wish to lock, and then press ●.**

621 Security
☐Received calls
☐Redial
☐Sent address
☐Received address
☐Mail security
☐Phonebook lock
☐Schedule
☐ToDo
☐Money Calc
☐Voice Memo
☐My Picture
Complete Select Reset

- "☐" changes to "☑" and is set.
- **To disable the Security**
- Select a function with "☑" displayed, and then press ●.
- Press ⑩ (Reset) to cancel all selections.

3 **Press ⓘ (Complete).**

- Operations are limited for the selected functions.

Note	• Security setting for My pictures cannot be performed from the Security setting screen. Refer to "Setting Security for Each Function" on P.204.
	• When Mail security is set, Mail-linked i-αppli cannot be downloaded. In addition, Mail-linked i-αppli that creates a new folder cannot be downloaded again.
	• When Mail security is set, Mail-linked i-αppli that changes mail folder names cannot be upgraded.

Setting Security for Each Function

Here, Security settings will be described, using My picture as an example.

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select [📚], and then press ● 1 .**

- The My picture folder list is displayed.

2 **Press ⑩, and then press ⁕ for at least 1 second (Security setting).**

- The screen to enter your terminal security code is displayed.
- **To set folder security for My picture ON**
- Select the folder for which to set the Security, press ⑩, and then press # for at least 1 second.

3 **Enter your terminal security code (4 digits).**

- Each entered digit is displayed as "⁕".

4 **Press 1 (ON).**

- **To disable security**
- After step 1, enter your terminal security code (4 digits), perform steps 2 and 3, and then press 2 .

Restricting Mobile Phone Operations

To set security functions for various functions "ON", perform the following in step 1, and then perform the same operations as above for steps 2 onward.

To set security for Received calls ON
● In the stand-by, press ◯ (➔⧉) to display the Received calls history.

To set security for Redials ON
● In the stand-by, press ◯ (⧉) to display the Redials list.

To set security for Sent address history ON
● In the stand-by, press ◯ (⧉) (ⓘ) to display the Sent address history.

To set security for Received address history ON
● In the stand-by, press ◯ (➔⧉) (ⓘ) to display the Received address history.

To set security for Mail ON
● In the stand-by, press (ⓐ)(9) to display the Mail/Message settings screen. Press (✻) for at least 1 second in step 2.

To set Phonebook lock ON
● In the stand-by, press (⧉) to display the Phonebook list.

To set security for Schedule ON
● In the stand-by, press (●)(8)(1) to display the calendar of the schedule.

To set security for ToDo ON
● In the stand-by, press (●)(8)(2) to display the ToDo list.

To set security for Money calculator ON
● In the stand-by, press (●)(8)(4) to display the Money calculator.

To set security for Voice memo ON
● In the stand-by, press ◯ (⦿) to display the Voice memo screen.
● For voice memos, press (✻) for at least 1 second in step 2.

Keypad Dial Lock

Prohibiting Calls Made Using the Keypad

⟨(●)(6)(3)⟩

You can set your mova so that calls can only be made from the Phonebook and redial.
● When someone tries to use the keypad to dial a number while Keypad dial lock is ON, a beeping alert sounds, "Keypad dial lock" is displayed and the mova returns to the stand-by display.
● You can still dial 110, 119 and 118 even if Keypad dial lock is set.
● The terminal security code is required to set/disable Keypad dial lock.
● The redial memory disappears when Keypad dial lock is set. However, numbers dialed after this are saved in the redial memory and the memory can be used to make calls.

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select 🔧, press (●)(6)(3), and then enter your terminal security code (4 digits).**

● Each entered digit is displayed as "✻".

2 **Press (1) (ON: Enable Keypad dial lock).**

To disable
● Press (2).

Note	● The following functions are also disabled when Keypad dial lock is turned ON.

■ Send i-shot and send short mail
■ Save/edit/delete phonebook entries
■ Making calls from Received calls history
■ Making calls from the alarm
■ International call settings
■ Transferring Phonebook data between mova and miniSD

■ Making calls using short dialing
■ Phone To function
■ Making calls using Bar code reader and Character reader
■ Receiving Phonebook data by Ir

Key Guard

Preventing Shutter and Side Key Errors

Disable the guidance keys (left/right guidance keys) and side keys when the mova is closed or in Viewer position to prevent key errors.
● Only unlocking Key guard using ◙ can be performed when Key guard is set.

1 **With the mova closed or in Viewer position, press ◙ for at least 1 second in the stand-by display.**

● "Keyguard" and "⊡" (blue background) are displayed in the stand-by display.

To disable
● Press ◙ for at least 1 second.

Note	● Key guard can be activated/deactivated only in the stand-by. Key guard cannot be set in other menus.

● When in Normal position, press ⊙ for at least 1 second to activate Key guard. Press ⊙ for at least 1 second to cancel.
● Calls cannot be answered when the mova is in Viewer position and Key guard is activated. However, when receiving a call, press ◙ for at least 1 second to cancel Key guard.

Restricting Mobile Phone Operations

Preventing Use by Another Person

Once Keypad lock is set, you cannot make a call unless you enter the terminal security code and disable the function.

You cannot perform the following operations while Keypad lock is set.

- Use the keypad to make a call
- Received calls history
- Save/Delete/Edit Phonebook entries
- Use Camera mode
- Set/Disable/Play Voice memo
- Functions using ⊙
- Display i-mode menu
- Display i-αppli menu
- Display My picture

- Redials
- Retrieve data from Phonebook to make a call
- Set/Disable Manner mode
- Set/Disable Drive mode
- Record/Play recorded message
- Display mail menu
- Display shortcuts
- Display Zoom menu

- You can do the following even if Keypad lock is set.
  - You can receive calls. Even if the caller's information is saved in the Phonebook, "Receiving call" is displayed instead of the caller's name. The set ring tone sounds (☞P.102) and the Called LED lights in the set color (☞P.190).
  The ring tone set in Set ring tone for the Phonebook (☞P.82) does not sound.
  - You can make calls to emergency services (110, 119, 118).
  - You can receive mail and messages. However, you cannot verify the contents of those messages.
  - You can turn the power on and off. However, Keypad lock is not disabled when the phone is powered on again.
  - Auto power OFF will work.
  - Key guard can be set.

- You can also set Keypad lock remotely from a different telephone or a payphone (☞P.208).

Note	● To disable Keypad lock, use the mova security code. If you forget your security code, bring a form of identification, such as a driver's license, that proves that you are the owner to your nearest authorized DoCoMo retailer to prevent the security code from being changed by another person.
	● Make sure to record the security code and store it in a safe place in case you forget it. If you forget the terminal security code, you will not be able to disable Keypad lock.

Setting Keypad Lock

⟨ ⊙ 6 2 2 or ⊙ # for at least 1 second ⟩

1 **In the stand-by, press ⊙ and select 🗑, press ⊙ 6 2 2, and then enter your terminal security code (4 digits).**

- Each entered digit is displayed as "✳".
- "Keypad lock" and "🗑" (red background) are displayed in the stand-by display.
- "Keypad lock" may not display when the stand-by display image is set, or during calendar display.

To disable the setting
- Enter your terminal security code (4 digits) and then press ⌧. "Keypad lock" and "🗑" (red background) disappear.
- A series of beeps (error sound) sounds when an incorrect terminal security code is entered. The power turns off automatically when entered incorrectly 3 times consecutively. Turn the power ON again and enter the correct password.
- A warning message will not display when an incorrect security code is entered. Press ⌧ and enter the correct security code.

207

Note	**While Keypad lock is set...**
	● You can do the following when receiving a call.
	■ Answer a call using (🔲) or Any key answer
	■ Set Quick silent using (#⏨)
	■ Recorded message answering (when this is already set)
	■ Missed call display
	● You cannot do the following when receiving a call.
	■ Manual call transfer using (●)(#⏨) or (●)(✱🔲)
	■ Recorded message answering using (●)(●)
	● You can do the following during a call.
	■ End a call by pressing (📞)
	■ Adjust earpiece volume using (🔘)
	■ Send push signals via keypad

Setting Keypad Lock Remotely <Remote Keypad Lock>

You can set the mova Keypad dial lock function by calling your mova from a pre-registered telephone or payphone a specific number of times within a specific amount of time (for example, 3 times in less than 5 minutes).

● Remote keypad lock only sets when a call fulfilling all of the following pre-registered and preset requirements have been met.

Category	Saved/Set contents
License number	You can save up to 3 phone numbers to be used for remote operation. You can also set your mova to allow this operation to take place from a payphone.
# of rcvd calls	Set the number of Received calls (3 to 10 times) within the monitoring time that will enable Remote keypad lock. The default setting is "5 times".
Monitoring	Set the time (1 to 10 minutes) during which the call number count occurs after a call has been received from a license number. The default setting is "3 minutes".

● Operations are performed in the same way even when Keypad lock is already set.
● You cannot use a remote operation to disable Keypad lock. To disable Remote keypad lock, refer to "To disable" of "Setting Keypad Lock" on ☞P.207.
● Depending on the type of image, "Keypad lock" may not display when the stand-by display image is set or during calendar display.
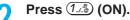
▌ Setting Remote keypad lock

〈(●)(6ₘₙₒ)(2ₐᵦᵧ)(4ₘₕᵢ)〉

● The default setting is "Disable" (OFF), number of Received calls "5 times", and monitoring time "3 minutes".

1 **In the stand-by, press (●) and select 🛠️ , press (●)(6ₘₙₒ)(2ₐᵦᵧ)(4ₘₕᵢ), and then enter your terminal security code (4 digits).**

● Each entered digit is displayed as "✳".
● The Remote keypad lock screen is displayed.

2 **Press (1.ₐ) (ON).**

624 Remote keypad lock
①License number
②# of rcvd calls
③Monitoring

To disable
● Press (2ₐᵦᵧ).

3 Press ①.⅔ (License number), select the number to register, and then press ●.

- To register a new number, select a number with "--------------------" displayed.
- You can save up to 3 license numbers.
- Settings can be saved from the same phone number. However, License number 1 is prioritized if saved items are saved.

To delete a license number
- Select the number you wish to delete and then press ●②ᵇₐᵇ. Select "Yes", and then press ●. Proceed to step 5.

To change a license number
- Select the number you wish to change, and then press ●①.⅔.

4 Select the input method, press ●, and then enter or select the phone number.

To select from the phonebook
- Press ①.⅔, select an phonebook entry with a license number registered, and then press ●.

To directly enter a phone number
- Press ②ᵇₐᵇ, enter the license number, and then press ●.

To allow operation from a payphone
- Press ③ᵈₑⁱ.

5 Press ⊛ CLR.

- The mova returns to the screen to set Remote keypad lock.

6 Press ②ᵇₐᵇ (# of rcvd calls), select the number of Received calls to set, and then press ●.

- The number of Received calls is set.
- The mova returns to the screen to set Remote keypad lock.

7 Press ③ᵈₑⁱ (Monitoring), select the monitoring time to set, and then press ●.

- The monitoring time is set.
- The mova returns to the screen to set Remote keypad lock.

8 Press ⓘ (Complete).

- Remote keypad lock is set.

■ Performing Remote keypad lock operations

When Remote keypad lock is set, Keypad lock for the mova can be set by operations from other phones.
- Use a phone that has a number registered as the license number for Remote keypad lock to perform this operation. In addition, have send Caller ID settings for that phone set to "ON".
- When operations are allowed from payphones, operation can be performed from them.
- The same operations mentioned above can be carried out even if keypad lock settings are already set on the mova.

1 Call the mova using a payphone or a phone registered with the license number for Remote keypad lock registered.

Restricting Mobile Phone Operations

2 **Allow the phone to ring a few times and then disconnect.**

● The call is Recorded in the Received calls history on the mova.

3 **Repeat steps 1 and 2 on P.209 and P.210 within the specified time.**

● You can set the time to count the number of calls (set call start) and the number of times called within the specified time.

When the Keypad lock is set

● A beep tone sounds to signify that Keypad lock is set. (The phone used for the operation is charged.)

● Pre-recorded messages indicating Remote keypad lock are not played when the mova is called.

Note	● When the Remote keypad lock license number is set to reject calls, such as Reject calls, Accept calls, User unset, etc., Remote keypad lock operates.
	● Remote keypad lock can be set while in Drive mode. Disconnect after the Drive mode announcement is played. After you have called the set number of times and Keypad lock is set, the Drive mode announcement is not played. Instead, a beep tone sounds to signify that Keypad lock is set.
	● Even if a call is made from a phone which the Remote keypad lock license number is set to a mova, it is not counted as a received call in the following situations.
	  ■ i-mode is operating (when "Set i-mode rcv" is set to other than "i-mode answer")
	  ■ "Voice Mail Service" and "Call Forwarding Service" are set to "ON", and the ring time is set to 0
	  ■ More than two license numbers are registered, and while the first license number is counted, a call is received from a number other than the first license number
	● When the following operations are performed, the number of times to call is reset.
	  ■ The mova is turned off
	  ■ A call received from a counted license number is answered
	  ■ A call is received automatically with Quick Record Message or Earphone/Microphone

Limit Settings

Setting to Notify You When the Call Cost Limit is Reached

〈 ● 6 6 〉

Set the limit for call costs to display a message and sound an alarm when that amount is exceeded.

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select ⚙, and then press ● 6 6.**

● The Call details are displayed.

2 **Press 📷 1 (Limit settings).**

● The screen to enter your security code is displayed.

To make the notification display disappear

● Press 📷 2.

3 **Enter your terminal security code (4 digits), and then press 1 (Able).**

To disable the setting

● Press 2.

4 **Enter the cutoff amount, and then press ⬤.**

> Set rate limit
> (¥10~¥100,000)
> ¥003000

- Enter the amount using the ⓪ to ⑨ keys.
- Amounts between 10 yen and 100,000 yen may be entered.

5 **Press ② (Stand-by).**

To notify with an alarm
- Press ①. Set the alarm tone, alarm volume, and alarm duration, and then press ⓘ (Complete) (☞ P.219 and P.220).

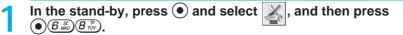**6** **Press ② (OFF: Automatic reset).**

To reset automatically
- Press ①. Call times and call costs are reset on the 1st of every month at 0 o'clock or when the Date/time settings (☞ P.36) are changed to the next month.

Delete All Secret

Deleting All Secret Data

⟨⬤ ⑥ ⑧⟩

You can delete all secret data from the phonebook, schedules, and ToDo lists.
- All secret data can be deleted when Secret mode is "ON" or "OFF".

1 **In the stand-by, press ⬤ and select 🗙, and then press ⬤⑥⑧.**

- The screen to enter your terminal security code is displayed.

2 **Enter your terminal security code (4-digits), and then select "Yes".**

- All secret data is deleted.
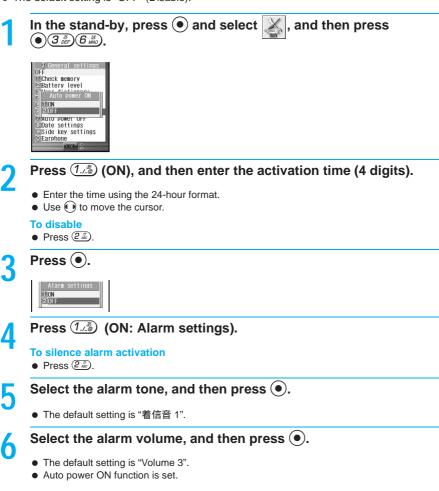**To not delete**
- Select "No", and then press ⬤.

►MEMO◄

11

Using Timer and Schedule Functions

Turning the Power ON Automatically

⟨●3₆₆⟩

You can set your mova to automatically turn on at a specified time.

● Once this function is set, it activates at the same time everyday until it is disabled (OFF).
● Set the date and time beforehand (☞P.37).
● Make sure to disable the Auto power ON function and turn off your mova when you are near electronic instruments that use high precision controls or weak signals, as well as when mobile phone use is prohibited, such as on an airplane or in a hospital.
● The default setting is "OFF" (Disable).

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select 🗙, and then press ●3₆₆.**

2 **Press 1 (ON), and then enter the activation time (4 digits).**

● Enter the time using the 24-hour format.
● Use ⬤ to move the cursor.

To disable
● Press 2.

3 **Press ●.**

4 **Press 1 (ON: Alarm settings).**

To silence alarm activation
● Press 2.

5 **Select the alarm tone, and then press ●.**

● The default setting is "   1".

6 **Select the alarm volume, and then press ●.**

● The default setting is "Volume 3".
● Auto power ON function is set.

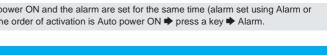**Using Timer and Schedule Functions**

▎ At the specified time

The power automatically turns on and the screen on the right is displayed. (When the alarm is set to sound, the alarm sounds for approximately 30 seconds and the screen to the right is displayed. Press a key to stop the alarm.)

```
20/ 7/2004    10:33



Auto power ON
Time has passed
```

● When the power turns on at the designated time the same actions as those described above occur.

● If you are on a call, after the call is ended, the mova returns to the stand-by display and the alarm sounds. However, if a function such as the Phonebook was being used when the call is received, the alarm sounds when the mova returns to the stand-by display after exiting the function.

Note	● When Auto power ON and the alarm are set for the same time (alarm set using Alarm or Schedule), the order of activation is Auto power ON ➡ press a key ➡ Alarm.

Auto Power OFF

Turning the Power OFF Automatically

《●③④⑦⑦》

You can set your mova to automatically turn off at a specified time.

● Once this function is set, it activates at the same time everyday until it is disabled.

● Set the date and time beforehand (☞ P.37).

● The default setting is "OFF" (Disable).

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select 🖾, and then press ● ③ᴅᴇᶠ ⑦ᴘǫʀs.**

```
3 General settings
OFF
1 Check memory
2 Battery level
3 User dictionary
    Auto power OFF
4 1 ON
5 2 OFF
6 Auto power off
7 Auto power OFF
8 Date settings
9 Side key settings
0 Earphone
        OK
```

2 **Press ①.。 (ON), and then enter the activation time (4 digits).**

● Enter the time using the 24-hour format.
● Use 🔘 to move the cursor.
To disable
● Press ②ₐᵦ꜀.

3 **Press ●.**

● Auto power OFF function is set.

If operations (a display other than stand-by is displayed, i.e. using Alarm (ringing), Calculator, Timer, etc.) are performed at the set time, the confirmation shown at right is displayed. Select "Yes", and then press ● or do nothing for approximately 1 minute to turn the power off. If you select "No" and press ●, you can continue the operation. (The mova returns to the stand-by display when the TOP menu list or Mail menu list is displayed.)

```
End confirmation
Auto power OFF
Set time has
arrived.
End?
        Yes
        No
        OK
```

215

Using Timer and Schedule Functions

Sounding an Alarm After a Specified Time

● If the mova is closed and in the aforementioned status, "Auto power OFF➡" is displayed in the sub display. Press ● to scroll the message.
● If you are on another call, the confirmation screen from step 3 on the previous page is displayed when the mova returns to the stand-by display after the call is ended.
● If you are updating software (☞P.564), the confirmation screen from step 3 on the previous page is displayed when the mova returns to the stand-by display after the update is finished.

Note	● When Auto power OFF and the alarm are set for the same time (alarm set using Alarm or Schedule), the power is turned off by the Auto power OFF function and the alarm does not sound. (Select "No", and then press ● in the confirmation displayed on the previous page to return to the stand-by display and sound the alarm.) If power is turned on at the set time, the alarm sounds.
	● Also, the mova does not turn off while an i-αppli is operating, even when the time set for this function comes. The Auto power OFF confirmation screen is displayed when the mova returns to the stand-by display or i-αppli is ended.
	● The power does not turn off while your mova is connected to a car navigation system or "PlayStation".
	● If the time set for this function comes while the Ir exchange function is operating, this function will be disabled. (However, the Auto power OFF screen is displayed when the mova returns to the stand-by display.)

Timer

Sounding an Alarm After a Specified Time

⟨●⟩⟨8 TUV⟩⟨5 JKL⟩

When a specified amount of time has passed, an alarm will sound.
● The alarm sounds for approximately 3 seconds (For "   "). Press a key to stop the alarm.
● You can set the length of time between 1 minute and 99 minutes.
● When the Vibrator (☞P.98) is set, the Vibrator also operates when the alarm activates.

1 **In the stand-by, enter the time (1 to 99).**

● Press ● and select [icon], and then press ●⟨5 JKL⟩ to also set the Timer.
The default setting is "3 minutes", but when you enter a time and press ●, the Timer starts.
You can set the length of time between 1 second and 99 minutes 59 seconds when selecting the timer with this procedure.

2 **Press ⟨📷⟩⟨6 MNO⟩.**

When 10 minutes (10) is entered

● The Timer starts.
● Press ● (Stop) to stop the Timer. Press ● again to start the Timer.

Note	● You can change the notification tone (☞P.105) and its volume (☞P.108) for the Timer.
	● The Timer ends if a call or mail is received while the Timer is being used.(Self mode is excluded.)

Sounding an Alarm at a Specified Time

〈●⑧⑧⑥⑥⑥〉

An alarm tone will sound at a specified time on a specified day of the week.
● Set the date and time beforehand (☞P.37).
● Up to 10 alarms can be set. If Set repeat is set to "Daily" or "Set day of week", the alarm will remain set until disabled.
● Alarm tone and Vibrator notifies alarms if Vibrator actions for alarm (☞P.220) are set.

Setting an Alarm

The basic alarm setting method is explained here using an example where the alarm activation time and day of the week are set.
● You can also set conditions for the alarm by changing the alarm tone and volume, or by displaying a message or phone number (☞P.218).

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select [TOOLS icon], press ●⑥, select setting number, and then press ●.**

Alarm setting screen

2 **Press ① (Enter time), and then enter the operation time (4 digits).**

● Enter the time using the 24-hour format.
● Use 🔘 to move the cursor.

3 **Press ●, and then press ② (Set repeat).**
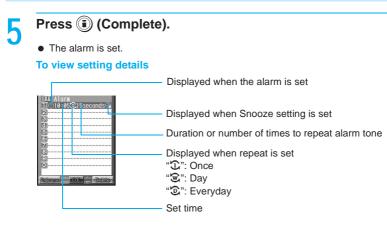
4 **Press ③ (Daily).**

To specify the day of the week to sound the alarm
● Press ②, select the day to operate the alarm, and then press ●. "□" will change to "☑". Then press ⓘ (Complete).
● Select a day with "☑" displayed, and then press ●. The displayed "☑" changes to "□", canceling the selection.
● Select "Exclude holidays" and select ☑ to not activate alarm on the set days (☞P.226).

To sound alarm once
● Press ①. After alarm activates, registered alarm settings are automatically disabled.

217

5 Press ⓘ (Complete).

● The alarm is set.

To view setting details

Displayed when the alarm is set

Displayed when Snooze setting is set

Duration or number of times to repeat alarm tone

Displayed when repeat is set
" ": Once
" ": Day
" ": Everyday

Set time

6 Press ☎ PWR/HLD when finished registering.

● "🔔" lights.

| Note | ● When an alarm and a schedule alarm are set for same time, the order of activation is Alarm ➔ Schedule Alarm. |
| | ● You can set the alarm to ring only once (the next day if the time has passed). (Quick alarm) (☞P.236). |

Setting Alarm Activation Conditions

You can set the following alarm activation conditions.

Ring duration	You can change the length and the number of times the alarm sounds. The default setting for Ring duration is "15 seconds" and will play once and is set by time.
Snooze setting	You can set the alarm interval and number of times the alarm sounds. The default setting is "OFF".
Alarm tone	You can change the alarm tone. The default setting is " 1".
Alarm volume	You can change the alarm volume. The default setting is "Volume 3".
Vibrator	Set Vibrator to activate when the alarm activates. The default setting is "OFF".
LED	Set Picture light/Called LED to flash when alarm activates. The default setting is "Green".
Message	You can display a message at alarm activation.
Contact	You can display a phonebook entry at alarm activation.

● The settings above are performed in the alarm setting screen (☞P.217).

▋ Changing the duration of the alarm

1 **Press ③ᴅᴇꜰ in the alarm setting screen (☞P.217).**

```
          Alarm1
15seconds
 1 Enter time
 2 Set repeat
 3 Ring duration
 4  Ring duration
 5  1 Set duration
 6  2 Melody rplay no.
 7 Vibrator
 8 LED
 9 Message
 0 Contacts
          OK
```

2 **Press ①.,@ (Set duration).**

To set the number of times to play melody
● Press ②ᴀʙᴄ, enter the number of times to play melody (1 to 9), and then press ●.

3 **Enter the ring duration (2 digits: 02 to 99 seconds), and then press ●.**

To end alarm settings
● Press ⓘ (Complete).

▋ Setting alarm sound cycles and intervals

1 **Press ④ɢʜɪ in the alarm setting screen (☞P.217).**

● The screen to set the snooze is displayed.

2 **Press ①.,@ (ON).**

```
          Alarm1
Snooze setting
Alarm interval
in minutes
(02-15)    05 minutes




          OK
```

To disable
● Press ②ᴀʙᴄ.

3 **Enter the alarm interval (2 digits: 02 to 15 minutes), and then press ●.**

```
          Alarm1
Snooze setting
Number of times
to sound alarm
(2-6)      5 times




          OK
```

4 **Enter the number of times to sound the alarm (2 to 6), and then press ●.**

To end alarm settings
● Press ⓘ (Complete).

219

Using Timer and Schedule Functions

Note	Snooze interval
	● If a call or mail is received while in snooze, the alarm will ring after the call is ended even if the call was before the set interval time. The next alarm will ring after the set time passes from the last alarm.

■ Changing the alarm tone

1 **Press 5ⱼₖₗ in the alarm setting screen (☞ P.217).**

2 **Select the alarm tone, and then press ●.**

● Press (Play) to play the alarm. Even if the "Alarm volume" is set to silent, it plays at "Volume 1". Press (Stop) again to stop playback and return to the previous screen.

To end alarm settings
● Press (Complete).

■ Changing the alarm volume

1 **Press 6ₘₙₒ in the alarm setting screen (☞ P.217).**
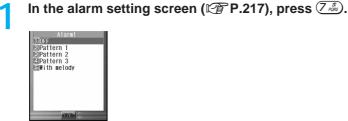
2 **Select the alarm volume, and then press ●.**

To end alarm settings
● Press (Complete).

■ Setting Vibrator for Alarm

1 **In the alarm setting screen (☞ P.217), press 7ₚQᵣₛ.**

2 **Select a pattern, and then press ●.**

To end setting the alarm
● Press (Complete).

Setting the Color of the LED During Alarm

1 In the alarm setting screen (☞P.217), press (8_{TUV}°).

```
        Alarm1
 1Rainbow
 2Aurora
 3Prism
 4Mixed colors
 5White
 6Red
 7Green
 8Blue
 9Yellow
 0Purple
 ✕Light blue
        OK
```

2 Select a color, and then press $\odot$.

To end setting the alarm
● Press (i) (Complete).

Displaying a message when the alarm activates

1 Press (9_{WXYZ}°) in the alarm setting screen (☞P.217).

```
Alarm       0/60
Message?
■
```

● Up to 30 full-pitch (60 half-pitch) characters of text can be entered.

```
Pev/Sym    OK    Submen
```

2 Enter the message, and then press $\odot$.

To end alarm settings
● Press (i) (Complete).

Displaying a contact at alarm activation

1 Press (0_{h}°) in the alarm setting screen (☞P.217).

```
        Alarm1
 1Enter time
 2Set repeat
 3Ring duration
      Input method
 5 1Search phonebook
 6 2Direct input
 7Vibrator
 8LED
 9Message
 0Contacts
        OK
```

2 Press the number for the input method, enter or select the phone number, and then press $\odot$.

● Directly input the phone number, or select it from the Phonebook. When selected from the Phonebook, the selected name and number is entered as the contact. If a phone number is not registered, it cannot be selected as a contact.

To end alarm settings
● Press (i) (Complete).

Using Timer and Schedule Functions

Note	● You cannot enter a contact while the Keypad dial lock (☞P.205) is set (ON).
	● You cannot use the phonebook while the Phonebook lock (☞P.202) is set to (ON).
	● You can make a call with a few keystrokes when a phone number is displayed at alarm activation (☞P.223).

Releasing an Alarm

You can set/release/delete each individual alarm. Registered details are not deleted even if an alarm is released. You can set an alarm based on the same details by resetting the alarm.

1 **In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select [TOOLS], press ⦿⑥ᴹᴺᴼ, and then select the number of the alarm to release.**

● Select a number displaying "⏱".

2 **Press ⓘ (Release).**

● "⏱" on the alarm list disappears.

To reset
● Select the alarm to set, and then press ⓘ (Set). "⏱" is displayed on the alarm list.

To delete
● Press ⓒ, select "Yes", and then press ⦿. The set details are deleted and "-----------------" is displayed.

3 **Press ⬛ᴾᵂᴿ/ᴴᴸᴰ when finished with the operation.**

● When reset, "🔔" lights.

To set/release/delete other alarms
● In the alarm list, press the number of the alarm, and then perform step 2.

When the Set Alarm Time Arrives

1 **The alarm tone sounds ("🔔" flashes).**

● The alarm is activated based on the alarm tone, volume, ring duration, etc. set in the alarm options. (The saved message is displayed.)
● If Vibrator operations (☞P.220) are set for alarm, Vibrator activates along with the alarm tone.
● If Vibrator is set to "With Melody" and the volume is set to "Silent" or if Manner mode is set, the mova vibrates in "Pattern 1".
● "Alarm" is displayed in the sub display.

2 **Press a key to stop the alarm.**

● Press ⬛ to delete the message display.
● If the mova is closed, press any side key. (The alarm cannot be stopped if Key guard (☞P.206) is activated.)

When Snooze is set
● The alarm sounds multiple times at the preset interval when any key other than ⬛ is pressed to stop the alarm.
● The snooze function does not operate thereafter if ⬛ is pressed to stop the alarm.

When a phone number is registered
● The phone number is displayed when you stop the alarm. Press 🔘 or ⬤ to dial the number being displayed.

Note	● If the selected Alarm or Schedule time arrives during Infrared data exchange, data transmissions, Software Update, or Infrared remote control, transmission is ended and alarm sounds after returning to the stand-by display.
	● You are notified of alarms (displays) for approximately 15 seconds if Manner mode or Drive mode is set, Alarm volume is "Silent", and Alarm tone is "🔇 (Silent)" even if Melody replay number of ring duration is set.

When nothing is done in step 2 and the ring duration passes
● The alarm tone stops, and a message is displayed saying that the alarm time has passed. (The alarm set time is displayed.)
● "Alarm ON" is displayed in the sub display if the mova is closed. Press ⬤ for at least 1 second to erase the message.

When the alarm time arrives with the power turned off
● The alarm does not operate.

When the alarm time arrives during a call
● It is activated when you end the phone call and return to the stand-by display.

When the alarm time arrives with Manner mode set
● The alarm tone does not sound.

When the alarm time arrives while Drive mode is set
● The alarm tone does not sound. Also, the Picture light and Vibrator do not operate.

Using Timer and Schedule Functions

223

Using the Calendar

〈●8TUV1.〉

You can check the calendar using the display. You can also check schedules registered using the Schedule function.

● Set the date and time beforehand (☞P.37).
● You can also register your own vacation days and new events and display them in the calendar.
● Even if the calendar display setting is set to display 1 month or 2 months, the setting is not reflected in the calendar display for the stand-by display. (Set schedules and holidays are reflected.) Refer to P.185 and perform operations for the stand-by calendar display.
● The default setting is "2-month display". Holidays are not initially set in the calendar.

Displaying the Calendar

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select 🕐, and then press ●1.**

● The calendar for the current month is displayed.

To display the calendar for the previous or following month
● Press (ⓐ) to display the calendar for the previous month, and then press (ⓑ) to display the calendar for the following month.

To specify a date and display the calendar
● Press (⊙), select "■Set date", and then press ●. Enter the date, and then press ●.

2 **Press 🔴PWR/HLD to hide the calendar.**

◼ Entering the date and displaying the calendar

Enter the date in the stand-by and then press ● to display the calendar for the current month.

Display the current month's calendar	Enter a date that falls within the current month.
Display the current year's day/month calendar	Enter 0101 - 1231 (January 1 - December 31).
Display a specified date's calendar	Enter 20000101 - 20991231 (January 1, 2000 - December 31, 2099).

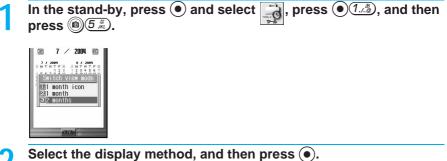● When the date is a single digit, enter "01 - 09".

To select the 15th of the Month, enter "15"

⊙ →

The calendar for the current month is displayed, with the 15th selected

Using Timer and Schedule Functions

Switching the Calendar Display

● The default setting is "2-month display".
● Even if the calendar display setting is set to display 1 month or 2 months, the setting is not reflected in the calendar display for the stand-by display. (Set schedules and holidays are reflected.) Refer to P.185 and perform operations for the stand-by calendar display.

1 **In the stand-by, press ⊙ and select [icon], press ⊙①, and then press ⓒ⑤.**

2 **Select the display method, and then press ⊙.**

● The calendar screen display changes.
● Next, select a schedule entry to confirm, and then press ⊙. Schedule entry contents for the selected day are displayed in a list. (☞P.237).

When selecting "1-month display"

■ Viewing the calendar screen

Today (Highlighted in the color of the day)
Selected day (Displayed in a black box)
Registered schedules (Displayed as icons in categories)
Day set as holiday (Displayed in red)
Days of the week with day color set (Displayed in set colors)
● 2 or more consecutive days with a schedule registered (underlined)

1-month icon display

Days of the week with day color set (Displayed in set colors)
Today (Highlighted in the color of the day)
Selected day (Displayed in green)
Day set as holiday (Displayed in red)
Day with a schedule registered (Underlined)
Schedule registered for the selected day
● 2 or more consecutive days with a schedule registered (underlined)

1-month display

● View the calendar in the same manner as in "1-month display".

2-month display

225

Setting/Disabling Holidays

You can set holidays on the calendar on a day-to-day basis or on a weekly basis. You can clear all the holidays you have set, or clear all past holidays (excluding holidays set using the Set day function).

● Holidays set for specific days can be disabled by disabling all.

1 **In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select 🗓️, press ⦿①.₂, and then select the date to set as a holiday (date to disable the holiday).**

● To set a weekly holiday or to disable all holidays, the dates to set/disable do not need to be selected.

2 **Press ◉⑥ᴹᴺᴼ (Set holidays).**

3 **Press ①.₂ (Set today).**

● The holiday is displayed in red.

To clear a set holiday

● Press ①.₂.

To set a weekly holiday

● Press ②ᴬᴮᶜ, select the day of the week to set, and then press ⦿. "☐" changes to "☑" and the holiday is set.
To cancel holiday, select a day with "☑" displayed, and then press ⦿. "☑" changes to "☐", and the holiday is canceled.

● Press ⓘ (Complete).

To clear all previous holidays
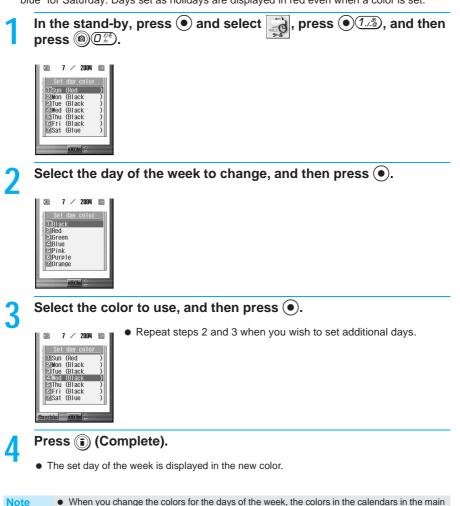
● Press ③ᴰᴱᶠ, select "Yes", and then press ⦿.

To clear all set holidays

● Press ④ᴳᴴᴵ, select "Yes", and then press ⦿.

Using Timer and Schedule Functions

Changing the Colors of the Days of the Week

● You can change the colors for the days of the week displayed in the calendar screen.
● The default setting is "red" (Set holiday) for Sundays, "black" for Monday through Friday, and "blue" for Saturday. Days set as holidays are displayed in red even when a color is set.

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select [icon], press ●①, and then press ⑥⓪.**

```
☐  7 / 2004  ⊡
    Set day color
1 Sun (Red      )
2 Mon (Black    )
3 Tue (Black    )
4 Wed (Black    )
5 Thu (Black    )
6 Fri (Black    )
7 Sat (Blue     )

         OK
```

2 **Select the day of the week to change, and then press ●.**

```
☐  7 / 2004  ⊡
    Set day color
1 Black
2 Red
3 Green
4 Blue
5 Pink
6 Purple
7 Orange

         OK
```

3 **Select the color to use, and then press ●.**

```
☐  7 / 2004  ⊡
    Set day color
1 Sun (Red      )
2 Mon (Black    )
3 Tue (Black    )
4 Wed (Black    )
5 Thu (Black    )
6 Fri (Black    )
7 Sat (Blue     )

Sample   OK
```

● Repeat steps 2 and 3 when you wish to set additional days.

4 **Press ⓘ (Complete).**

● The set day of the week is displayed in the new color.

Note	● When you change the colors for the days of the week, the colors in the calendars in the main and sub display stand-by are also changed (☞P.185).
	● The colors of days set as holidays are changed to the new color setting, with the date still displayed in red.

Saving Your Schedule

⟨●⟩⟨8⟩⟨1⟩⟩

You can manage your schedule by saving start date/time, end date/time, an agenda, contact information (phone number), and other information. You can also set an alarm to sound prior to the start time, or display a message or phone number. You can search schedules by contact information, make calls from the Phonebook, or compose messages.
● Set the date and time beforehand (☞P.37).
● You can save up to 300 schedules.
● You can save from January 1, 2000 to December 31, 2099.

Saving Schedules

Here, an example of procedures for saving a schedule date, agenda, category, and contact are used to explain basic schedule save methods.
● Make sure to set the date/time and agenda.
● You can set an alarm to sound prior to the schedule start time, or save the schedule as secret data (☞P.235, P.236).
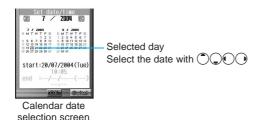
1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select [icon], press ● ⟨1⟩, select the day for which to register a schedule entry, and then press (ⓘ) (New) or press (�llⓞⓒ) ⟨1⟩.**

● The currently set calendar is displayed (☞P.225).
● In the 1 month icon display, press (llⓞⓒ) ⟨1⟩.

Schedule saving screen

2 **Select "Date", and then press ●. To select a date on the calendar, repeatedly press (llⓞⓒ) (Switch).**

Selected day
Select the date with ⟨⟩⟨⟩⟨⟩⟨⟩

Calendar date selection screen

3 **Enter the schedule start day, or select from the calendar and press ●, enter the time, and press ●.**

● Enter the time using 24-hour format.
● When entering the end time, only "Once only" can be selected for step 4.

To reset the end time
● Press (ⓘ).

4 **Press $(2\overset{7}{ABC})$ (Daily).**

● When end time is entered, only "**1**Once only" can be selected.
To save a Once only schedule
● Press $(1\overset{3}{\cdot/@})$. Proceed to step 6.
To save a weekly schedule
● Press $(3\overset{5}{DEF})$.
To save a monthly schedule
● Press $(4\overset{5}{GHI})$.
To save a yearly schedule
● Press $(5\overset{5}{JKL})$.

5 **Enter the number of times to repeat (00 to 99), and then press $(●)$.**

● The schedule is saved as an unlimited repeating schedule when "00" is entered.

6 **Select "Ctgry", and then press $(●)$.**

● Refer to P.230 for information on types of categories.

Set category
01 No category
02 Personal
03 Holiday
04 Travel
05 Business
06 Meeting
07 Meals
08 Drive
09 Exercise
10 Anniversary
11 Birthday
OK

7 **Select the schedule category, and then press $(●)$.**

● The selected category name is displayed.
● When a category is set, the next time you select a category, the previously selected category is displayed at the top.

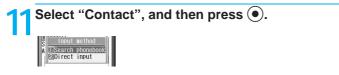**8** **Select "Image", and then press $(●)$.**

Image
1 My picture
2 Not set

9 **Press $(1\overset{3}{\cdot/@})$ (My picture).**

● The screen to select folders in My picture is displayed.
To not set an image
● Press $(2\overset{7}{ABC})$.

10 **Select a folder, press $(●)$, select a still picture, and then press $(●)$ (OK).**

● The title of the selected still picture is displayed.

11 **Select "Contact", and then press $(●)$.**

Input method
1 Search phonebook
2 Direct input

229

12 **Press the number for the input method, enter or select the phone number, and then press ⬤.**

● Directly input the phone number or select it from the Phonebook. When selected from the Phonebook, the selected number is entered as the contact. If a phone number is not registered, it cannot be selected as a contact.

13 **Select "Agenda", and then press ⬤.**

14 **Enter the agenda, and then press ⬤.**

Date: [Daily 10:00]
Ctgry: [Business   ]
Alarm: [OFF   ]
Image: [040713_1513]
Cntcts:[090XXXXXXXX]
Secret:[OFF   ]
Agenda
Meeting

Complete OK

● You can enter up to 100 full-pitch (200 half-pitch) characters.

15 **Press ⓘ (Complete).**

16 **Select "Yes", and then press ⬤.**

To not save

● Select "No", and then press ⬤.

■ Types of categories

Icon	Category	Icon	Category	Icon	Category	Icon	Category
	No category		Meeting		Birthday		Shopping
	Personal		Meals		Hobby		School
	Holiday		Drive		Date		Business trip
	Travel		Exercise		Karaoke		Appreciation
	Business		Anniversary		Party		Hospital

Note	**To copy to a miniSD memory card**
	● You can copy schedules registered on your mova onto a miniSD memory card (☞P.449) and display schedules registered on a miniSD memory card (☞P.450).
	● You can copy schedule entries from a miniSD memory card to the mova. (☞P.452)
	Ir exchange
	● You can send schedules saved on your mova using Ir (☞P.438) or receive schedules using Ir (☞P.439)
	It is recommended that contents of saved schedules be saved on a memo or on a miniSD memory card (☞P.444). You can also use Data Link software (☞P.553) and a USB cable (sold separately) to save to your PC.
	● Malfunctions, repairs, or other handling of the mova may cause loss of registered contents. DoCoMo cannot be held responsible in any way for the loss of data registered in the phonebook.

Saving Your Schedule from Mail

● You can also save mail text in a received/sent/unsent message as a schedule agenda.

1 **Display the message you wish to save (☞ Steps 1 to 3 on P.325).**

2 **When it is a received message, press ⓒ, select "■Create schedule", and then press ●.**

● The schedule saving screen is displayed.

For sent mail
● Press ⓒ⑨.

For unsent mail
● Press ⓒ⑦.

■Details registered to a schedule

	Received mail	Sent mail	Unsent mail
Date	Received date	Sent date	Mail edit date
Category	No category		
Alarm	OFF		
Image	Downloaded i-shot still pictures (Cannot be registered if not downloaded)	Attached still pictures (Cannot be registered if not attached)	
Contact	Sender's number registered in the phonebook (Contact is not registered if phone number is not in the phonebook)	The receiver's number registered in the phonebook (Contact is not registered if phone number is not in the phonebook.)	
Secret	OFF		
Agenda	Mail title and message (up to 100 full-pitch (200 half-pitch) characters)		

3 **Add agenda to the schedule (☞ Steps 2 to 16 on P.228 to P.230).**

Saving a Schedule from Received Calls History, Redial, Received Address History, or Sent Address History

● You can save a phone number in the Received calls history as the contact for the schedule.

1 **Select the Received calls history entry you wish to save (☞ Steps 1 and 2 on P.54).**

To select a redial
● Refer to P.44.

To select a Received address history
● Refer to P.342.

To select a Sent address history
● Refer to P.343.

2 **Press ⓞ (8 ᴛᴜᴠ) (Create schedule).**

● The schedule saving screen is displayed.

To save a schedule from Received Address History/Sent Address History
● Press ⓞ (4 ɢʜɪ).

■Details registered to a schedule

	Received calls history	Redial	Received address history	Sent address history
Date	Received date	Call date	Received date	Sent date
Category	No category			
Alarm	OFF			
Image	–			
Contact	Other party's phone number		Sender's number registered in the phonebook (Contact is not registered if phone number is not in the phonebook)	The receiver's number registered in the phonebook (Contact is not registered if phone number is not in the phonebook)
Secret	OFF			
Agenda	No content			

3 **Add agenda to the schedule (☞ Steps 2 to 16 on P.228 to P.230).**

Saving Your Schedule from My Picture

● You can also save a still picture in My picture as a still picture for a schedule.

1 **Display the still picture you wish to save (☞ Steps 1 to 3 on P.149).**

2 **Press ⓐ⑦₍ₚQRS₎③₍DEF₎ (Schedule).**

● The schedule saving screen is displayed.

■**Details registered to a schedule**

Date	Saved date of still picture
Category	No category
Alarm	OFF
Image	Titles of still picture
Contact	–
Secret	OFF
Agenda	No content

3 **Add agenda to the schedule (☞ Steps 2 to 16 on P.228 to P.230).**

Note	● After taking a still picture, you can save the picture immediately by pressing ⓐ⑤₍JKL₎ in the preview display. However, shot still pictures cannot be immediately saved to the schedule if set to be saved on a miniSD memory card. Set the save location to the mova.
	● Schedules cannot be created directly from still pictures in a miniSD memory card. Copy them to the mova before setting.

Saving a Schedule from the Memo Pad

● You can save text from the Memo pad as a schedule.

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select 🔧, press ●⑦₍ₚQRS₎, and then select the Memo pad to register from the Memo folder or Security memo folder.**

● If Security memo folder is selected, enter your terminal security code (4 digits).

2 **Press ⓐ④₍GHI₎ (Create schedule).**

● The schedule saving screen is displayed.

■**Details registered to a schedule**

Date	– –/– –/– – – –
Category	Category saved in Memo pad
Alarm	OFF
Image	–
Contact	–
Secret	OFF
Agenda	Text saved in Memo pad

3 Add agenda to the schedule (☞ Steps 2 to 16 on P.228 to P.230).

Saving a Schedule from the 1 Month Icon Calendar

● In the 1 month icon calendar, with a few simple key operations, you can save a category icon as a schedule.

1 In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select 🔲, press ⦿①, and then press 📷⑤.

2 Press ①, and then move the cursor to the day to register using 🔘.

3 Press ⓘ (Icon), select a category, and then press ⦿.

4 Select "Yes", and then press ⦿.

● An icon for the selected category is displayed.

To add agenda to the schedule

● Press ⦿, and then press 📷②. Refer to "Saving Your Schedule" on P.228 to P.234 to save the schedule.

Using an Alarm to Signal an Upcoming Schedule Start Time

Use the alarm to notify yourself of an upcoming task. You can set the following alarm activation conditions.
● If Vibrator operations are set for alarm in step 3, Vibrator activates along with the alarm tone.
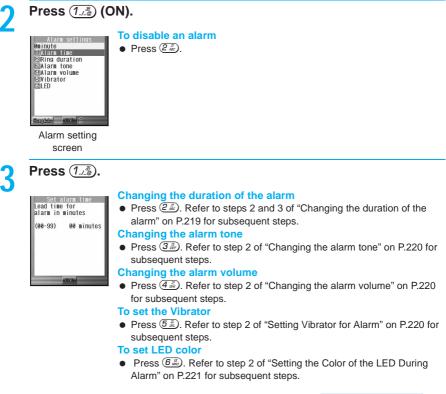
Alarm time	Set how many minutes before the task to ring the alarm.
Ring duration	Change the length of the alarm or the number of times the alarm sounds. The default setting is "15 seconds" for the ring duration and the replay time is "1 times". Ring duration is set by default.
Alarm tone	Change the alarm tone. The default setting is " 1".
Alarm volume	Adjust the volume of the alarm. The default setting is "Volume 3".
Vibrator	Set Vibrator to activate when the alarm activates. The default setting is "OFF".
LED	Set Picture light/Called LED to flash when alarm activates. The default setting is "Green".

● These settings are performed in the schedule saving screen (☞ P.228).

Setting the alarm

● The contact saved in the schedule is displayed when the alarm activates.

1 **Select "Alarm" in the schedule saving screen (☞ Steps 1 to 5 on P.228 and P.229), and then press ⏺.**

2 **Press ①,⅔ (ON).**

Alarm setting screen

To disable an alarm
● Press ②⅞.

3 **Press ①,⅔.**

Changing the duration of the alarm
● Press ②⅞. Refer to steps 2 and 3 of "Changing the duration of the alarm" on P.219 for subsequent steps.
Changing the alarm tone
● Press ③⅞. Refer to step 2 of "Changing the alarm tone" on P.220 for subsequent steps.
Changing the alarm volume
● Press ④⅞. Refer to step 2 of "Changing the alarm volume" on P.220 for subsequent steps.
To set the Vibrator
● Press ⑤⅞. Refer to step 2 of "Setting Vibrator for Alarm" on P.220 for subsequent steps.
To set LED color
● Press ⑥⅞. Refer to step 2 of "Setting the Color of the LED During Alarm" on P.221 for subsequent steps.

235

4 **Enter the time to sound the alarm (minutes prior to the schedule start time), and then press ⏺.**

● Press ⓘ (Complete) to return to the schedule saving screen.

Setting a Quick Alarm

1 **In the stand-by, enter the time to sound an alarm.**

● Enter the time using the 24-hour format.
Example 2:05 PM ➡ "1405"

2 **Press ⓐ⑦ (Quick alarm).**

3 **Select "Yes", and then press ⏺.**

● The entered time is set as the alarm start time.
● The date is set as today (next day if the time has passed), the category as "No category", and the agenda as "Quick Alarm".

To not save
● Select "No", and then press ⏺.

Setting a Schedule Entry as Secret Data

You can protect schedule entries you do not wish seen by others. Schedules set as secret data cannot be read unless the terminal security code (☞P.201) is entered and the mova is set to Secret mode.
● Refer to P.93 for details on Secret mode settings.
● Your mova must be set to Secret mode to clear secret data.

1 **Select "Secret" in the schedule saving screen (☞Steps 1 to 5 on P.228 and P.229), and then press ⏺.**

● The secret screen is displayed.

2 **Press ① (ON: Secret data settings).**

To disable
● Press ②.

When the Set Alarm Time Arrives

The alarm functions in accordance with the settings. Press a key to stop the alarm.
● For tasks set as secret data, the alarm sounds, but no phone number or message or saved image is displayed. (These are displayed when Secret mode is set.)

Schedule alarm 20/ 7/2004 12:00 lunch	Schedule alarm 20/ 7/2004 12:00
Normal schedule	Secret data

Confirming Schedule Entries

Specifying a schedule entry in the calendar screen and confirming

1 In the stand-by, press ⊙ and select [📅], press ⊙①/⃝ to display the calendar, select the day you wish to confirm, and then press ⊙.

● The schedule for the day specified in the calendar screen is displayed in a list (schedule list screen).
● Press ◐ to display the schedule for the previous day.
● Press ◑ to display the schedule for the following day.

To display entries registered on a miniSD memory card
● In the calendar screen, press 📷#⃝.

Viewing the schedule list

Date

Time bar (an estimate of the time between the start time and end time of an alarm is displayed in 30 minute intervals)

Alarm

Category icon

End schedule (If schedule spans longer than a day, "--:--" is displayed for the time)

Details

Start schedule (When a schedule is carried over from the previous day, "--:--" is displayed for the time)

Image (an image saved to the calendar or registered in the phonebook)

2 Select the schedule, and then press ⊙.

● When an image is saved, you can check the image by pressing 🔘.
● When a contact is saved, you can call the contact by pressing ⊙ (Phone) ⊙ (Call).
● When multiple schedules are registered, press ◐ to display previous schedules and ◑ to display upcoming schedules.

To copy
● Press 📷②⃝.

Schedule Details

To change the font size for the Agenda
● Press 📷⑤, select a font size, and then press ⊙.

3 Press ⊙⃝ when finished confirming.

Note	**To use Assistant View**
	● Press 🔘 during a call to recall and display or copy from a schedule. When in Viewer position, press the shutter. (☞P.478)

Confirming your entire schedule

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select [TOOLS], press ●①, and then press ②②.**

- All saved schedule entries are displayed in a list.
- Next, select a schedule entry to confirm, and then press ●. The schedule agenda is displayed.

To display entries registered on a miniSD memory card
- In the calendar screen, press ②#.

Making a call from a schedule

You can make calls from the schedule details screen if contact information is saved.

1 **Display the details of a Schedule (☞ P.237).**

2 **Press ● twice.**

Composing a message from a schedule

If the contact information in the phonebook has a mail address registered, you can recall the entry from the schedule details screen and compose a message.

1 **Display the details of a Schedule (☞ P.237).**

2 **Press ● (Phone), display the mail address using ○, and then press ●.**

- The screen to compose a message is displayed. The selected mail address is entered.

3 **Compose a message (☞ Steps 5 and 6 on P.308).**

Using Timer and Schedule Functions

Displaying by Category

You can display saved schedule entries by category.

1 **In the stand-by, press ⬤ and select 📅, press ⬤①, and then press 📷③.**

● Refer to P.230 for types of categories.

2 **Select a category, and then press ⬤.**

● Only the saved schedules with the selected category are displayed.
● Select a schedule entry to confirm, and then press ⬤. The schedule agenda is displayed.

Displaying by Contact Information

You can display saved schedule entries by phone numbers.

1 **In the stand-by, press ⬤ and select 📅, press ⬤①, and then press 📷④.**

● The phonebook list is displayed.

2 **Select the contact, and then press ⬤.**

● Only the saved schedules with the selected contact are displayed.
● Select a schedule entry to confirm, and then press ⬤. The schedule agenda is displayed.

Viewing Still Pictures Saved on a Specified Date

You can confirm still pictures saved on a date specified in the calendar screen.

1 **In the stand-by, press ⬤ and select 📅, press ⬤①, and then select the date for confirming still pictures.**

● In the calendar screen, you can search for still pictures on the date selected. (The date is highlighted in green for 1-month display and 2-month display, and is outlined in black for 1 month icon display.)

2 **Press 📷⑦ (Search My pic).**

● Images saved on the specified date are displayed as a list or as thumbnails.
● "No image from specified date" is displayed when no images have been saved on the specified date.

3 **Select an image to confirm, and then press ⬤ (OK).**

Displaying a ToDo List

Display a task saved in your ToDo list (☞ P.242 to P.244).

1 **In stand-by, press ⦿ and select 🔧, press ⦿①, and then select the day to view.**

● The calendar screen is displayed.

2 **Press ⓐ⑧ (Search ToDo), select the ToDo list, and press ⦿.**

● The task for the day to view is displayed.
● If no task is scheduled for the day, the cursor moves to the next day with a task scheduled.
To copy
● In the task details display, press ⓐ②.

Viewing the Money Calculator

View the contents of Money calculator (☞ P.496).

1 **In stand-by, press ⦿ and select 🔧, press ⦿①, and then select the day to view.**

● The calendar screen is displayed.

2 **Press ⓐ⑨ (View money calc).**

● The total saved on the day to view is displayed.
● "Money calc does not exist for specified date" is displayed when no data has been saved on the specified date.
To copy
● Press ⓘ (Copy). Move the cursor to the character you wish to copy, and then press ⦿ (Start).
  Select the range with ◌, and then press ⦿ (Copy).

Editing Schedule Entries

1 **In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select 🔧, press ⦿①, select the schedule to edit, and then press ⦿.**

● The schedule list screen is displayed.

2 **Select the schedule to edit, and then press ⓐ② (Edit).**

```
Date: [ 20/07/2004 ]
Ctgry: [Business    ]
Alarm: [ON          ]
Image: [            ]
Cntcts:[090XXXXXXX  ]
Secret:[OFF         ]
Agenda
 seminer
```

3 **Edit the schedule.**

● Editing operations are identical to saving operations (☞ P.228 to P.230).

4 **Press 📱 (Complete) when finished editing.**

```
Date: [ 20/07/2004 ]
Ctgry: [Business    ]
Alarm: [ON          ]
Image: [            ]
C     Complete
S  1Save new
A  2Overwrite
        OK
```

5 **Press ② (Overwrite).**

To save as a new schedule
● Press ①.

6 **Select "Yes", and then press ●.**

To not save
● Select "No", and then press ●.

Deleting Schedules

Schedules can be deleted using on of the following methods.

Delete one	Deletes one selected schedule.
Delete selected	Deletes multiple selected schedules.
Delete all past	Deletes all schedules up until the day prior to the specified date.
Delete all	Deletes all schedules.

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select [TOOLS icon], press ●①, and then press 📷②.**

● All schedule entries are displayed.

2 **Select a schedule you wish to delete (Delete one), or the starting point for deletion (Delete all past).**

● Perform step 4 on the following page to "Delete selected" schedules.

3 **Press 📷⑥ (Delete).**

```
Schedule        4/4
📄seminer
       Delete
1Delete one
2Delete all past
3Delete all
4Delete selected
EveryMon    13:00
        OK
```

4 Press ①.⑥ **(Delete one).**

To delete all previous schedules
● Press ②, and then enter your terminal security code (4 digits).
To delete all schedules
● Press ③, and then enter your terminal security code (4 digits).
To delete multiple selected schedules
● Press ④, select the task to delete, and then press ●. "☑" is displayed as the status icon. To cancel a selection, select a task with "☑" displayed, and then press ●. Select all tasks to delete, and then press ⓘ (Complete).
● Up to 50 items may be selected.

5 Select "Yes", and then press ●.

To not delete
● Select "No", and then press ●.

ToDo List
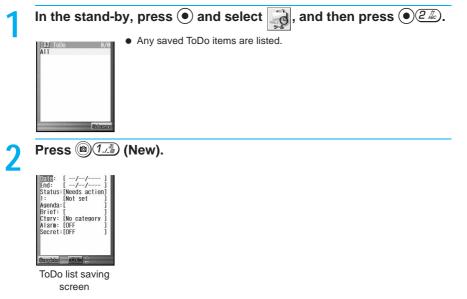
Saving Your ToDo List

⟨●⑧②⟩

You can manage your tasks by saving the dates, agendas and other information related to your activities. You can also set the level of priority, and set an alarm to sound prior to the date of the task.
● Set the date and time beforehand (☞P.37).
● The maximum number of ToDo list items that can be saved is 100 items.
● You can save items between January 1, 2000 and December 31, 2099.

Saving a Task

Here, basic task saving methods are explained using an example of procedures for saving task dates, agendas, priorities, categories, and other information.

1 In the stand-by, press ● and select 🛠, and then press ●②.

● Any saved ToDo items are listed.

2 Press 📷①.⑥ **(New).**

ToDo list saving
screen

3 Select "Date", and then press ⦿.

```
Date/time limit
Year  2004
Date  20/07
Time  10:05


        OK
```

4 Enter the date (time) for your task, and then press ⦿.

To set completion date
● Next, select "End", and then press ⦿. Enter the date (time) for completion of your task, and then press ⦿.
To set status and priority
● Next, select "Status" or "!", and then press ⦿. Status or priority settings items are displayed. Select an item, and then press ⦿.

5 Select "Agenda", and then press ⦿.

6 Enter the task agenda, and then press ⦿.

● You can enter up to 100 full-pitch (200 half-pitch) characters for the agenda.
● In the ToDo list screen, the first 9 full-pitch characters of a brief are displayed if a brief is saved. If a brief is not saved, the first 9 full-pitch characters of the agenda are displayed.
To enter a brief
● Next, select "Brief", and then press ⦿. Enter the brief, and then press ⦿.
● You can enter up to 10 full-pitch (20 half-pitch) characters.

7 Select "Ctgry", and then press ⦿.

```
Set category
01 ⊞No category
02 ⚘Personal
03 ▶Holiday
04 ✈Travel
05 ▣Business
06 👥Meeting
07 🍴Meals
08 🚗Drive
09 🏃Exercise
10 ◈Anniversary
11 🎂Birthday
        OK
```

● Refer to P.230 for information on types of categories.
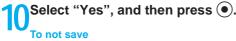
8 Select the task category, and then press ⦿.

● Once a category is set, the next time you select a category, the previously selected category is displayed at the top.

9 Press ⓘ (Complete).

● Refer to P.244 and P.245 for information on Alarm settings and Secret settings.

10 Select "Yes", and then press ⦿.

To not save
● Select "No", and then press ⦿.

Using Timer and Schedule Functions

Note	**Copying to a miniSD memory card**
	● You can copy ToDo lists registered on your mova to a miniSD memory card (☞P.449), or display ToDo lists registered on a miniSD memory card (☞P.450).
	● You can copy ToDo list entries from a miniSD memory card to the mova (☞P.452).
	Ir exchange
	● You can send ToDo lists registered on your mova with Ir (☞P.438) or receive ToDo lists with Ir (☞P.439).
	It is recommended that contents of saved ToDo list entries be saved on a memo or on a miniSD memory card (☞P.444). You can also use Data Link software (☞P.553) and a USB cable (sold separately) to save to your PC.
	● Malfunctions, repairs, or other handling of the mova may cause loss of registered contents. DoCoMo cannot be held responsible in any way for the loss of data registered in the ToDo list.

Notifying an Upcoming Task Start Time Using the Alarm

Use the alarm to notify yourself of an upcoming task. You can set the following alarm activation conditions.

● Alarm tone and Vibrator notifies alarms if Vibrator actions for alarm (☞P.245) are set.

Alarm time	Set how many minutes before the task to ring the alarm.
Ring duration	Change the length of the alarm or the number of times the alarm sounds. The default setting for Ring duration is "15 seconds" and replay is set to "1 times". Ring duration is set by default.
Alarm tone	Change the alarm tone. The default setting is " 1".
Alarm volume	Adjust the volume of the alarm. The default setting is "Volume 3".
Vibrator	Set Vibrator to activate when the alarm activates. The default setting is "OFF".
LED	Set Picture light/Called LED to flash when alarm activates. The default setting is "Green".
Contact	Set to display a contact when alarm activates.

● The above settings are performed in the ToDo list saving screen (☞P.242).

■ Setting the alarm

1 **Select "Alarm" in the task saving screen (☞Steps 1 to 5 on P.242 and P.243), and then press ●.**

● The screen to set the alarm is displayed.

2 **Press ①₊³ (ON: Alarm settings).**

To disable an alarm
● Press ②ₐ₆꜀.

3 Press $\boxed{1.}$.

To change the duration of the alarm
● Press $\boxed{2}$. Refer to steps 2 and 3 of "Changing the duration of the alarm" on P.219 for subsequent steps.

To change the alarm tone
● Press $\boxed{3}$. Refer to step 2 of "Changing the alarm tone" on P.220 for subsequent steps.

To change the alarm volume
● Press $\boxed{4}$. Refer to step 2 of "Changing the alarm volume" on P.220 for subsequent steps.

To set the Vibrator
● Press $\boxed{5}$. Refer to step 2 of "Setting Vibrator for Alarm" on P.220 for subsequent steps.

To set LED color
● Press $\boxed{6}$. Refer to step 2 of "Setting the Color of the LED During Alarm" on P.221 for subsequent steps.

To display a contact
● Press $\boxed{7}$. Refer to step 2 of "Displaying a contact at alarm activation" on P.221 for subsequent steps.

4 Enter the time to sound the alarm (minutes prior to the scheduled start time: 00 to 99 minutes), and then press ●.

● Press ⓘ (Complete) to return to the task saving screen.

Setting a Task as Secret Data

You can protect task entries you do not wish to be seen by others. Tasks set as secret data cannot be read unless the terminal security code (☞P.201) is entered and the mova is set to Secret mode.
● Secret data is set in the same manner as schedule settings. Refer to P.236.
● Refer to P.93 for details on Secret mode settings.

When the Set Alarm Time Arrives

The alarm functions in accordance with the settings.
Press a key to stop the alarm.
● For tasks set as secret data, the alarm sounds, but no phone number or message or saved image is displayed. (These are displayed when Secret mode is set.)
● If a still picture is set in the phonebook (☞P.81), an image can be displayed when alarm activates. To display a still picture, press $\boxed{7}$ (Contacts) in step 3 of "Setting the alarm" above, and then select a name from the phonebook that has a still picture set.

Normal schedule

Secret data

245

Confirming a Task

1 **In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select [icon], and then press ⦿②.**

● The registered tasks are displayed (ToDo list screen).

To display entries registered on a miniSD memory card

● Press (⬛)(#) in the ToDo list screen.

Viewing the ToDo list screen

[screen] — Brief or agenda*

— Date
Priority icon
Alarm
Status icon

* The first 9 full-pitch characters of the brief are displayed when a brief is saved.
  The first 9 full-pitch characters of the agenda are displayed when there is no brief saved.

2 **Select a task, and then press ⦿.**

● The agenda in the selected task is displayed (ToDo list details screen).

To copy

● Press (⬛)②.

To change the font size for the Agenda

● Press (⬛)④, select a font size, and then press ⦿.

To end confirmation

● Press (☎).

Viewing the ToDo list details

Date
Alarm
Priority
Set secret
[screen]
End date
Status
Category
Brief
Details

Note	**To use Assistant View**
	● Press (view) during a call to recall ToDo list and display, or copy a task. When in Viewer position, press the shutter.(☞P.478)

Checking Completed Tasks

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select ▢, press ●(2ᴬᴮᶜ), and then select the task you wish to check.**

2 **Press (ⓘ) (☑).**

● "▦" is displayed and the task is checked. (The date completed is automatically saved.)
● Select a task already displaying "▦" and press (ⓘ) (☑) to uncheck a task "▦". (The date completed is automatically deleted.)

Displaying Only Specified Tasks

You can display only tasks meeting specified requirements such as status or category.

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select ▢, press ●(2ᴬᴮᶜ), and then press (◙)(4ᴳᴴᴵ) (Show by status).**

● The show by status screen is displayed.

To show by category
● Press (◙)(5ᴶᴷᴸ).

2 **Select the item to specify, and then press ●.**

● Only tasks matching the specified parameters are displayed.

Editing Tasks

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select ▢, press ●(2ᴬᴮᶜ), and then select the task you wish to edit in the ToDo list screen.**

2 **Press (◙)(2ᴬᴮᶜ) (Edit).**

● The screen to save tasks is displayed.

3 **Edit the task.**

● Editing operations are identical to saving operations (☞P.242 and P.243).

To set completion date
● In the screen to save tasks, select "End", and then press ●. Enter the date (time) of completion for your task and then press ●.

4 **Press (ⓘ) (Complete) when finished editing.**

5 **Press ② (Overwrite).**

To save as a new task
● Press ①.

6 **Select "Yes", and then press ●.**

To not save
● Select "No", and then press ●.

Deleting a Task

Tasks can be deleted using one of the following methods.

Delete one	Deletes one selected task.
Delete completed	Deletes all completed tasks.
Delete all	Deletes all tasks.
Delete selected	Deletes multiple selected tasks.

● "Delete completed" or "Delete all" are not available while displaying by status or by category.

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select 🕐, press ●②, and then select the task you wish to delete.**

2 **Press 📷⑥ (Delete).**

3 **Press ① (Delete one).**

To delete all completed tasks
● Press ②, and then enter your terminal security code (4 digits).

To delete all tasks
● Press ③, and then enter your terminal security code (4 digits).

To delete multiple selected tasks
● Press ④, select the task to delete, and then press ●. "☑" is displayed as the status icon. To cancel a selection, select a task with "☑" displayed, and then press ●. Select all tasks to delete, and then press 🔊 (Complete).
● Up to 50 items may be selected.

4 **Select "Yes", and then press ●.**

To not delete
● Select "No", and then press ●.

12

Viewing Information Using i-mode

The screens shown in this manual may differ from the actual screens.

What is i-mode?

In i-mode, online services such as site (program) access, Internet access, and i-mode mail can be used from the display of your i-mode compatible mobile phone.

■ Accessing sites (programs)

This service enables you to take advantage of a variety of sites provided by IPs (information service providers) at the push of a key.
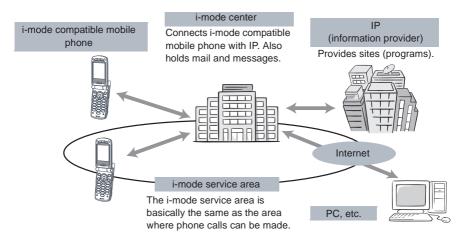
■ Internet Connection

This service enables you to connect to the Internet and access i-mode compatible websites from your i-mode compatible mobile phone.

■ i-mode mail

This service enables you to exchange mail with other i-mode compatible mobile phones as well as e-mail with PCs via the Internet.

How the Service Works

| i-mode compatible mobile phone | i-mode center
Connects i-mode compatible mobile phone with IP. Also holds mail and messages. | IP
(information provider)
Provides sites (programs). |

Internet

i-mode service area
The i-mode service area is basically the same as the area where phone calls can be made.

PC, etc.

i-mode is a charged service that requires a subscription.

For inquiries

When calling from an ordinary (landline) phone

0120-005-250 (toll free) (in English)

※You can also call this number from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHS phones.
※Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

General contact for the DoCoMo Information Center

When calling from DoCoMo mobile phones or PHS phones

151 (no area code) (toll free)
(in Japanese only)

※You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.

| Note | ● Charges for i-mode service are based on the amount of information (number of packets) sent and received. This manual does not contain information related to service charges. Refer to the "i-mode User's Manual" given to you when you subscribe to i-mode for details about service charges.
● The screen may be revised as the contents of the service and are changed. Refer to the latest "i-mode User's Manual". |

Viewing Information Using i-mode

Accessing Sites (Programs)

Simple key operations allow you to connect to i-mode compatible sites and use a variety of online services provided by IPs.
For instance, there are online services for checking your bank balance or transferring funds, reserving tickets, reading news, searching in dictionaries, and downloading ring tones, among others.

Displaying a site

The iMenu is the first page displayed when you connect to the i-mode center. From this page, various sites (programs) such as the "Weekly 🅘 Guide" can be accessed.

① (My Menu)	When you register the sites you visit often, connecting to them becomes easy (☞P.264). Paid sites are registered automatically. A combined total of 45 sites can be registered.
② 🅘 (Weekly 🅘 Guide)	Presents you with updated information Monday through Friday on all the newest and highly recommended sites.
③ (Menu list)	Offers you a list of all sites, sorted by category and region. You can select a site you wish to visit and connect to it from this list.
④ (Tokusuru Menu)	Information about exciting campaigns, giveaways, discount coupons and the like. Information is updated every week. (Presented by: D2 COMMUNICATIONS INC.)
⑤🅘 (🅘Area)	Gives you easy access to information about the town where you are and its environs.
⑥🅘 (🅘αppli search)	Introduces i-αppli software sorted into categories, such as those offered free of charge and those that let you play games.
⑥ (Useful Site Search)	Introduces sites that match the ways in which you use i-mode sites.
⑦ (My Box)	By registering at stores and sites that offer services, you can access those services here.
⑧ (Options)	You can make i-mode mail settings or change your i-mode password.
⑨ & (News & Help)	Presents news from DoCoMo, help and rules for using i-mode.
English	You can switch the iMenu to the English version.

- The shown screen is an image. The display may vary depending on settings.
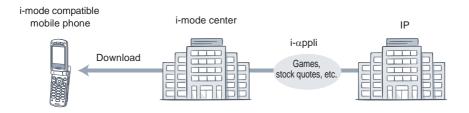- Displaying sites ☞P.257

Note	● Some sites require payment for information provided (charged i-mode sites). ● You must sign up separately for some of the services provided by your IP. ● Packet transmission charges will not be incurred even when the "🅘" is flashing, unless transmissions with the i-mode center are being conducted. ● If you have signed up for dual network service, a portion of the iMenu and other screens are different.

■ Some things you can do

i-αppli

Downloading i-αppli from sites makes your i-mode compatible mobile phone much more useful. For example, you can enjoy playing various games downloaded to your i-mode compatible mobile phone, or get the latest information on your stock portfolio with an i-αppli that automatically updates stock prices at regular intervals. An i-αppli map downloads only the necessary data to allow you to scroll smoothly. There are also i-αppli applications that allow you to register items directly to Phonebook or Schedule, those that link with My picture and allow you to save or retrieve images, or those that link with "FeliCa (Contactless IC Card)".

- What is i-αppli? ☞P.388
- What is i-αppli DX? ☞P.388
- Running i-αppli software ☞P.392
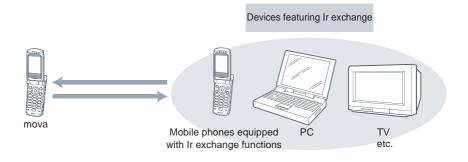
- What is the i-αppli stand-by display? ☞P.401
- Downloading i-αppli applications ☞P.390
- Running i-αppli automatically ☞P.397

i-mode compatible mobile phone

i-mode center

IP

i-αppli

Download

Games, stock quotes, etc.

Infrared (Ir) exchange function
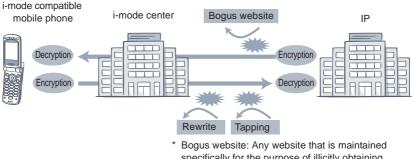
Phonebook, mail, bookmarks, and other information can be exchanged with other mobile phones and personal computers that have an Ir exchange function installed.*
There are even wider applications. Using Ir exchange with i-αppli, you can work with other devices that have Ir exchange functions installed. For example, your mova can serve multiple purposes, such as act as a membership card or remote control.
* Depending on the other party's device, there may be some data that cannot be transmitted even though there is an Ir exchange function installed.
- Using Infrared exchange mode ☞P.408, P.437

Devices featuring Ir exchange

mova

Mobile phones equipped with Ir exchange functions

PC

TV etc.

SSL communication

SSL sites (SSL pages) can be displayed without performing any special operations from the i-mode compatible mobile phone. Short for Secure Sockets Layer, SSL is a protocol that uses authentication/encryption technology to ensure safe data communications and protect your privacy. Data is encrypted before being transmitted on the SSL page to protect against tapping en route, delivery to a bogus website destination, and overwriting. SSL allows you to exchange private information such as your credit card number or address much more safely than through conventional means (☞P.258).

*   Bogus website: Any website that is maintained specifically for the purpose of illicitly obtaining personal information.

i-melody

The latest tunes and your favorite music can be downloaded to your i-mode compatible mobile phone and used as ring tones (☞P.278).

i-animation

Animations can be downloaded from sites to your i-mode compatible mobile phone, and displayed on your stand-by display or incoming calls screen (☞P.276).

Flash™

Flash is an animation technology that uses pictures and sounds.It is used for multicolored animations and richly expressive sites. Flash movies can also be downloaded using i-mode compatible mobile phones and set as the stand-by display. (☞P.277)

■ i-mode password

An "i-mode password" is required when you sign up for paid sites or register them to My menu, and when you make i-mode mail settings. "0000" is set for your i-mode phone when you sign up, but you can later change it to a unique 4-digit number (☞P.265). You should be careful not to let others know your i-mode password.

Accessing the Internet

You can access i-mode compatible web pages on the Internet by entering their addresses (URLs).
● How to display ☞P.266

Note	● Web pages that do not support i-mode may not display correctly. i-mode compatible websites are those created with i-mode tags. Refer to ☞P.266 for details.
	● The display on your i-mode phone may differ from the display on a PC.
	● If the URL of an Internet site exceeds 641 characters, that site cannot be displayed.

Viewing Information Using i-mode

Useful Functions

■ You can perform i-mode operations via car navigation systems (☞P.506)

- If you connect to an i-mode compatible car navigation system, you can view sites on the car navigation screen and exchange i-mode mail.
- There are many convenient ways in which you can use the car navigation function. Restaurants can be looked up in i-mode sites (programs that include location information), and their locations can be set as the destination in your car navigation system, or you can notify people of your present location in mail you send.

■ You can connect to a "PlayStation" (☞P.506)

- By connecting your mova with a "PlayStation", you can acquire or exchange the necessary data for games using i-mode compatible "PlayStation" software.

Note	In using i-mode
	● The contents of Internet sites (programs) and web pages are generally protected by copyright law. Data, including texts and movies, you have downloaded to your mova from these sites (programs) or web pages, cannot be modified and sold or redistributed in whole or in part without permission from the authors. It can only be used for your own personal entertainment.
	● Depending on the format of the file you have downloaded from sites or elsewhere, the maximum number of display colors possible with your mova may not be displayed.
	● Data may be lost through malfunctions, repairs, or other handling of the mova. It is recommended that you keep a separate note of any important registered content. Note that DoCoMo will not be held responsible for the loss of data and contents saved on the mova. If you own a PC (Windows 98 Second Edition, Windows Me, Windows 2000 Professional, Windows XP Home Edition, or Windows XP Professional), you can use Data Link software (☞P.553) to transfer mail, messages, bookmarks, and other content to your PC and store it there. You can download the Data Link software from http://k-tai.sharp.co.jp/soft/soft.html (☞P.553).

Displaying the i-mode Menu

⟨ⓘ⟩

1 In the stand-by, press ● and select 📱, and then press ●.

Menu	Function	Reference Page
①Menu	Connects to the i-mode center.	P.257
②Message	Displays received messages.	P.296
③Bookmark	Displays your favorite sites (programs) and Internet webpages.	P.268
④Check new message	Checks to see if mail or messages are being held at the i-mode center.	P.295 P.316
⑤Screen memo	Displays screens of sites and other files saved on your mova.	P.272
⑥Last URL	Displays the site or Internet website that you most recently visited.	P.259
⑦URL history	You can access an Internet website using the address (URL) you entered previously.	P.267
⑧Go to location	Accesses the Internet by entering address (URL).	P.266
⑨i-mode setting	Performs mova settings relating to i-mode.	P.281

■ Icons displayed in i-mode

📶 (lights)	Within the i-mode service area. (You can use i-mode.)
📶 (flashes)	In i-mode stand-by.
🔁	i-mode in use (flashes).
🔒	In i-mode lock (☞P.290).
SSL	Displaying an SSL page.
🖾	Displayed when images are being downloaded.
🖾	Displayed when image downloading has failed or image display (☞P.287) is set to "OFF".
⊠	When the image is in a format that cannot be displayed, this shows the image display location.

When out of the i-mode service area, "📶" disappears.

Viewing Information Using i-mode

255

▐ i-mode start and finish

Starting i-mode

In the stand-by, press ⓘ to display the i-mode menu (☞P.255).

Then, select "①βMenu", and then press ● to start i-mode.

● Even if you are out of the i-mode service area, the i-mode menu is displayed. However, if you are out of the i-mode service area, you cannot use sites, connect to the Internet, exchange mail, receive messages, or check for new messages at the center.

Ending i-mode

Press ⓔ while using i-mode services (site access or Internet access) to display an exit confirmation screen. Select "Yes", and then press ● or press ⓔ again to return to the stand-by display ("β" flashes: in i-mode stand-by).

Press ⓔ again while in i-mode stand-by. "Disconnecting" appears and the mova returns to the stand-by display. i-mode ends at this point ("β" lights).

While in i-mode stand-by mode ("β" flashes), even if you do not end by pressing ⓔ, i-mode ends automatically after a set period of time passes.

● When mail or messages are received or when checking for new messages, the mova goes into i-mode stand-by ("β" flashes).

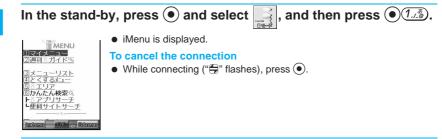| Note	● When in Viewer position, press ● in the stand-by display, select "i-mode" with ⑧, and then press ●. Use ⑧ or ● to select i-mode menu items or display sites. You can press ▭ (right guidance key) to operate the sub menu and ▭ (left guidance key) to perform i-mode menu operations.
	Things to check when using i-mode
	● When subscribing to i-mode service after using your mova for a time, "i-mode connection" must be set to "ON". If this setting is not made, you cannot use i-mode. Refer to P.286 for details on "i-mode connection".

Viewing Information Using i-mode

Displaying a Site

〈 ⓘ 1.ぁ 〉

You can use all sorts of services provided by IPs (information providers). (A separate sign up process may be required.)
You can check your bank balance or reserve many types of tickets from your mova display. (Services may vary depending on the site. A separate sign up process may also be required.)

1 **In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select [icon], and then press ⦿ 1.ぁ.**

● iMenu is displayed.

To cancel the connection

● While connecting ("📧" flashes), press ⦿.

2 **Select an item to display, and then press ⦿. Repeat the steps to display the site you wish to view.**

To scroll the screen

● Press 🔘.
● Press 🔘 to scroll downwards 1 screen at a time. Press 🔘 to scroll upward 1 screen at a time.
● Press #ᵢ for at least 1 second to scroll downward automatically. Press *ᵢ for at least 1 second to scroll upward automatically. While scrolling, press #ᵢ, *ᵢ or a dial key to stop automatic scrolling.

Note	● When in Viewer position, press ⬜ (left guidance key) in the stand-by display, select "①ⓘMenu" with 🔘, and then press ⦿.
	● Press ⬜ (right guidance key) for at least 1 second to scroll down 1 screen at a time. Press ⬜ (left guidance key) for at least 1 second to scroll up 1 screen at a time.
	● You can also set the mova to not load images when a site is being displayed (☞P.287).
	● Depending on the site, some characters may not display correctly.
	● Some sites may not look the same as the actual site's screen.
	● While a site is displayed, press ⓘ. After the end confirmation screen for i-mode, the i-mode menu is displayed.
	● While a site is displayed, activate the camera and you can enter JAN code or QR code information into the text box scanned from the Bar code reader (☞P.179).
	To convert character codes
	● While displaying a site, press ⓐ 8ₜᵤᵥ.
	To view a site's server certificate
	● When viewing an SSL page, you can see the certificate received from the server.
	● While displaying a site, press ⓐ, select "■View certificate", and then press ⦿.
	To set the volume of Flash movie sound effects and downloaded melodies
	1 Press ⓐ while a site is displayed, select "■Sound fx setting", and then press ⦿.
	2 Select from "Volume 1" to "Volume 5" or "Silent", and then press ⦿.
	To play Flash movies again
	● While displaying a site, press ⓐ, select "■Retry", and then press ⦿.

Viewing Information Using i-mode

Displaying pages with SSL

Your mova can display sites that support SSL and Internet webpages that start with "https://" (SSL pages). When you attempt to display pages with SSL, the screen shown at left is displayed.
To cancel the SSL session, press ⦿.
● While a page with SSL is displayed, "SSL" is displayed.

When switching to a normal page from an SSL page, a message to confirm exiting from SSL is displayed.

Note	● When "Don't send personal information if any doubt on the site's integrity. Do you connect?" is displayed, it means you are attempting to display a page where the SSL certificate is expired or different from the certificate employed by the mova. Exercise caution in this case since safe transmission of personal information such as your address or credit card number cannot be confirmed. To continue with displaying of pages, select "Yes", and then press ⦿. To cancel displaying of pages, select "No", and then press ⦿. "SSL session was terminated" is displayed. Press ⦿ to return to the original screen.

Mobile phone information

A terminal ID notification screen may be displayed while you are viewing a site or Internet webpage.
"Your terminal ID is requested. Send terminal ID?" is displayed. To send, select "Yes", and then press ⦿.
To not send, select "No", and then press ⦿.

Note	● "Your terminal ID is requested. Send terminal ID?" is always displayed before sending terminal ID information. This information is never sent automatically. ● The terminal ID that is sent consists of information such as the model of your mova and its serial number. ● Your terminal ID (model of your mova and its serial number) is transmitted to the IP (information provider) via the Internet. This may cause your information to be known by a third party. ● Services may not be available from some sites if your terminal ID is not sent.

Viewing Information Using i-mode

■ Displaying images in sites

Images are displayed in sites, web pages, and Image mail and message screens.

タマです。
ひなたぼっこしています。

Your mova can display GIF and JPEG format images, along with Flash movies. (However, some JPEG images cannot be displayed.)
While images are being received, "▨" is displayed and the image is displayed when reception is completed.
You can enable or disable image display by setting "Set image display" (☞P.287). If you set this to "OFF", images are indicated by "▨".

Note	● Saved Flash movies may differ in appearance from when they are displayed on a site.
	● JPEG image data or Flash movies can be viewed in Internet access. However, even though a URL for JPEG image data or Flash movies may be included in received mail, it cannot be viewed as image mail. In this case, select the URL to view the JPEG image or Flash movie using the "Web To function" (☞P.280).
	● When images other than GIF, JPEG, or Flash movies are received, "▨" is displayed in place of the image. Such images cannot be displayed.
	● If it is a JPEG image format that cannot be displayed, "▨" remains displayed. Even if you use "Reload" (☞P.262), the image is not be displayed.
	● When images could not be downloaded, "▨" is displayed. If you try to reload the image, it may be downloaded successfully.

Reconnecting to the Most Recently Displayed Page

⟨(i)(6 MNO)⟩

When you exit i-mode, the URL of the most recently displayed page is saved as the Last URL. By using the Last URL you can easily connect to the page you viewed most recently.
● Pages with URLs that exceed 641 characters or melody download completion screens may not be recorded as the Last URL.

1 In the stand-by, press ● and select [icon], and then press ●(6 MNO).

Last URL
http://www.xxx.△△.jp

● The URL of the most recently viewed page is displayed.

When no Last URL is saved
● "No last URL" is displayed.

2 Press ●.

● The most recently viewed page is displayed.

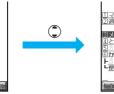| Note	**To delete the last URL**
	● In the screen of step 1, press (⦿)(1). Next, select "Yes", and then press ●.
	To register the last URL as a bookmark
	● In the screen of step 1, press (⦿)(2 ABC). For subsequent operations, refer to step 2 on P.268.
	To copy the last URL
	● In the screen of step 1, press (⦿)(3 DEF).
	● Up to 512 characters can be copied. If the URL exceeds 512 characters, "URL is too long to copy" is displayed.

Site Screen and Operations

Selecting Links and Items

In sites or webpages, you can often move from the displayed page to another page. This is called a "link". The linked text is generally displayed in blue. A selected link is highlighted.

● A link is sometimes set on an image. When selected, the image is enclosed in a solid line.

[Moving through screens by selecting links]

Move with
highlighted text

To the linked page

● Press ○ to highlight the next link. Press ○ to highlight the previous link.
● Display operations may not function properly or appear different for sites using Flash movies.

[Moving to a screen using the dial keys to specify a number]

Links you can select are sometimes preceded by a number, such as "1", "2", or "3". If you push the dial key (0 to 9, *, #) that corresponds to the number preceding the link, you can move directly to the linked page.

To the linked page

● This may not work on some sites.

■ Selecting items within the site or webpage, and entering text

Within some sites and webpages, you enter text and select items as follows.

| Name	Sample display	Details
Radio buttons	◎ : Not selected ◉ : Selected	Used to select items. Only one item can be selected at a time.
Check boxes	☐ : Not Selected ☑ : Selected	Used to select items. Multiple selections are possible.
Pull-down menu	▼	Used to select items. When you select a pull-down menu, a list of items you can select is displayed.
Text box		Used to enter text. In the text entry screen submenu, select "Character reader" to scan and enter alphanumeric characters or "Bar code reader" to enter text data from JAN codes and QR codes. (Melody and image data cannot be entered. They are displayed as text.)
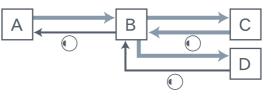
Returning to the Previous Page/Advancing to the Next Page

Your mova keeps a record of your path as you display sites and webpages, up to 30 screens. This is called a "cache".
Press ◯ to display the previous or next screen.

● Press ◯ to display the previous screen, and then press ◯ to display the next screen.
● When the cache is holding its maximum of 30 screens, the oldest screens are deleted in order as each new screen is displayed.
● Sometimes the display may be delayed when switching between screens that are saved in the cache. In such cases, characters are displayed first. Therefore, screens will not be laid out properly until images are displayed.
● The cache information is reset when "Yes" is selected in the end confirmation screen for i-mode is displayed.
● Repeatedly press ◯ to go back through the pages that were previously displayed. However, if you press ◯ to go back one page ("C" to "B") and then visit a different page ("D"), pressing ◯ twice in "D" does not take you back to "C". Previous pages are displayed in "B"　"A" order.

<When pages are displayed in the order "A"　"B"　"C"　"B"　"D">

────── … Order in which pages are displayed

────── … Order in which previous pages are displayed

Note	Flash movies
	● Flash is an animation technique that uses pictures and sounds. It is used for multicolored animations and richly expressive sites. Flash movies can also be downloaded and set as the stand-by display.
	● The basic operations are the same at sites that use Flash movies, but the display is sometimes different.
	● Even if "⬍" is not displayed, operations may be possible.
	● When you wish to see the Flash movie action again, press ⓘ while the site or screen memo is displayed, and then select "■Retry".
	● Some Flash movies also play sound effects. To set the volume, press ⓘ while a site or screen memo is displayed, select "■Sound fx setting", and then press ◉ (☞P.257).
	● Even when the Vibration mode is set for incoming calls, it will not vibrate for Flash movie sound effects.
	● When a Flash movie is not operated for 30 seconds or more during playback, the movie is paused. To resume, press ◉. (Can also be resumed with other keys.)

Viewing Information Using i-mode

261

Reloading Information

When information in a site or webpage could not be received correctly (when "🔳" is displayed), you can reconnect to that site and reload the information.
● Perform this operation only after the site information has completely finished downloading.

1 While a site or webpage is displayed (☞Steps 1 and 2 on P.257), press ⓞ①.

● The reloading will begin.

To cancel reloading
● While connecting ("🔁" flashes), press ⓞ (Cancel).

Note	● Even though reloading is performed, it may be impossible to reload some site or webpage information correctly.
	● Screen memos (☞P.273) cannot be reloaded.

Viewing URLs <URL>

You can check the URL of a displayed site or webpage.
The URL is the address displayed in a form something like "http://www.xxx.   .jp".
The URL can be displayed up to 641 half-pitch characters (including http://, etc.)
● The displayed URL cannot be edited.

1 While a site or webpage is displayed (☞Steps 1 and 2 on P.257), press ⓞ⑦.

● The URL for the site or webpage is displayed.
● If the URL cannot be displayed in a single screen, you can scroll by pressing 🔘.
To copy a URL
● Press ⓞ (Copy).
● You can copy up to 512 characters. If the URL exceeds 512 characters, "URL is too long to copy" is displayed.

Note	● URLs for screen memos (☞P.272) and Bookmarks (☞P.268) can also be displayed. In the various lists, press ⓞ④ (for Screen memos) or ⓞ③ (for Bookmarks).

Sending a URL by Mail <Send URL>

Send URLs saved on displayed sites, web pages, and screen memos by mail.

1 **While a site or web page is displayed (☞Steps 1 and 2 on P.257), press ◉.**

- The submenu screen is displayed.

When saved as screen memo
- Display the screen memo, and then press ◉⑦ (☞P.273).

2 **Select "■Send URL", and then press ●.**

- Mail with the title of the site, web page or screen saved to a screen memo is automatically entered in "Subject" and the URL is automatically entered in "Message".

3 **Compose and send the message.**

- Refer to steps 2 to 6 of "Composing/Sending i-mode Mail" on P.307 and P.308.

Note	● If a title is not set for a site or webpage, the URL is set as the "subject" of the mail.

Registering Phone Numbers and Mail Addresses to the Phonebook <Add to Phonebook>

Phone numbers and mail addresses highlighted in sites or webpages can be registered to the phonebook.

1 **While a site or webpage is displayed (☞Steps 1 and 2 on P.257), select a phone number or mail address, and then press ◉.**

- The submenu is displayed.

2 **Select "■Add to phonebook", and then press ●.**

- The selected telephone number or mail address is already entered in the phonebook input screen.

3 **Save to the phonebook (☞Steps 2 to 10 on P.77 to P.79).**

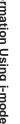| Note	● Phone numbers and mail addresses that are highlighted in screen memos can also be registered to the Phonebook (☞P.273).
	● It may not be possible to register some highlighted phone numbers and mail addresses to the Phonebook.

Registering to My Menu

By registering frequently used sites in My menu, you can easily connect to them in the future.

● You can register up to 45 sites in My menu.
● Internet web pages cannot be registered. In addition, some sites cannot be registered to My menu.
● Use Bookmarks (☞P.268) to make accessing Internet web pages more convenient.

Registering to My Menu

1 Display the site to register (☞Steps 1 and 2 on P.257), select the item for My menu registration (Example: "① My Menu Registration"), and then press ⦿.

2 Select the "Password input" field, and then press ⦿.

3 Enter your i-mode password (4 digits), and then press ⦿.

● The entered i-mode password is displayed as "✳".

4 Select "決定" (OK), and then press ⦿.

● Registration to My menu is completed.

Note	● The page structure may vary, depending on the site.
	● When you subscribe to a charged site, it is automatically added to My menu.

Displaying Sites Registered to My Menu

1 In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select 🔲, and then press ⦿①.

● iMenu is displayed.

2 Press ①, select a site, and then press ⦿.

● The site page is displayed.

Viewing Information Using i-mode

Changing Your i-mode Password

Your "i-mode password" (4 digit number) is needed when you register or delete from My menu, when you sign up or cancel message services or charged i-mode sites, or when you make mail settings.

● Until you change it, your i-mode password is "0000".

● You can change your i-mode password after you sign up for i-mode. You should be careful not to let others know your i-mode password.

● If you forget your i-mode password, visit a DoCoMo retailer. Bring identification, such as your driver's license, that shows you are the person who signed up for i-mode. Your password will be reset to "0000".

1 **In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select 📱, and then press ⦿ ①.₂.**

● iMenu is displayed.

2 **Press ⑧⟋⟍ ②ₐᵦᵩ (Change i-mode password).**

3 **Select the "   " (Current password) input field, and then press ⦿.**

● The screen to enter your current i-mode password is displayed.

4 **Enter your current i-mode password (4 digits), and then press ⦿.**

● Each entered digit is displayed as "＊".

5 **Select the "   " (New password) input field, and then press ⦿.**

● The screen to enter your new i-mode password is displayed.

6 **Enter your new i-mode password (4 digits), and then press ⦿.**

● Each entered digit is displayed as "＊".

7 **Select the "   " (Confirm new password) input field, and then press ⦿.**

● The screen to confirm your new i-mode password is displayed.

8 **Enter your new i-mode password (4 digits) again, and then press ⦿.**

● Each entered digit is displayed as "＊".

9 **Select "決定" (OK), and then press ⦿.**

● Your i-mode password is changed.

Displaying Internet Websites

〈（ⓘ）（8 ᵀᵁᵛ）〉

You can access the Internet by entering an address (beginning with http://, etc.) of an Internet website (hereafter called a "website").

● Websites that do not support i-mode, and those with large amounts of data may not display correctly.

1 **In the stand-by, press ⬤ and select [ ], and then press ⬤ (8 ᵀᵁᵛ).**

● The screen to enter the URL is displayed. ("http://" is already entered.)
● If you have previously entered a URL, that URL is displayed on the screen.

2 **Enter the URL, and then press ⬤.**

● Up to 512 half-pitch characters can be entered. (Including "http://" etc.)
● The page is displayed.
● Operations while the page is displayed are the same as for a site.

To cancel the connection
● While connecting ("📧" flashes), press ⬤.

To terminate the connection
● Press (☎ ᴾᵂᴿ) twice.

Note	● In the screen to enter the URL, press (⊛ ᶜᴸᴿ) for at least 1 second with the cursor positioned at the very end of the character string to delete all the entered text. Press (⊛ ᶜᴸᴿ) in this state to return to the i-mode menu.
	● If the amount of received data exceeds the maximum size for a single page, "Size of this page is not supported" is displayed, reading is interrupted, and data is displayed up to the point at which reception of the page was interrupted.
	To connect while a site or webpage is being displayed
	● Press (📷)(4 ᴳᴴᴵ) to display the screen to enter the URL. Subsequent operations are the same as step 2.

■ Redisplaying the webpage with the correct characters

When the characters on an Internet website are not displayed correctly, you can convert to the correct character set and redisplay the page.

1 **While a site or message is displayed (☞ Steps 1 and 2 on P.257), press (📷)(8 ᵀᵁᵛ).**

● The page is converted to the correct characters and redisplayed.
● If the page is still not displayed correctly, repeat these steps.

Note	● Some pages cannot be displayed correctly, even if the character codes are changed repeatedly.
	● After three attempts to change the character code, the mova returns to the original display.
	● If the character code is changed while displayed properly, the web page may not display properly.

Viewing Information Using i-mode

Displaying Pages Using the URL History

⟨ⓘ⑦⟩

The mova keeps a record of up to 10 webpages accessed from "Go to location" in the i-mode menu.
Use these records to reconnect to webpages.

1 **In the stand-by, press ⊙ and select [🔲], and then press ⊙⑦.**

● The URL history list is displayed.

2 **Select a URL, and then press ⊙.**

● After the connecting screen is displayed, the webpage is displayed.

Note	● When the URL history exceeds 10 webpages, previous pages are automatically overwritten, starting with the oldest.
	To connect while a site or webpage is being displayed
	● Press ⓐ⑤ to display the URL history list. Subsequent operations are the same as step 2.

Deleting URL History

1 **In the stand-by, press ⊙ and select [🔲], press ⊙⑦, and then select the URL to delete.**

2 **Press ⓐ② (Delete).**

● The screen to delete is displayed.

3 **Press ① (Delete one).**

To delete all
● Press ②, and then enter your terminal security code (4 digits).

4 **Select "Yes", and then press ⊙.**

To not delete
● Select "No", and then press ⊙.

Viewing Information Using i-mode

267

Using Bookmarks

By registering the URLs of sites and webpages you frequently visit to Bookmarks, you can quickly view those pages in the future.
● You can add folders and sort the Bookmarks into various types.
● When Bookmarks are registered for URLs of sites that have images or melodies saved in them, in some cases they may not display from bookmarks.

Registering Webpages and Sites to Bookmarks

You can register up to 50 Bookmarks.
● Up to 256 half-pitch characters can be registered to a Bookmark for each URL.

1 **While a site or message is displayed (☞ Steps 1 and 2 on P.257), press ⓒ② .**

● Up to 12 full-pitch (24 half-pitch) characters are registered from the beginning of the page title or the URL.

When 50 bookmarks are already registered
● "Bookmark is full. Unable to save anymore" is displayed. Delete unnecessary bookmarks and try again (☞ P.271).

When the URL is too long
● "URL is too long to register" is displayed.

2 **Press ① (OK).**

● Bookmarks are registered to the Bookmark folder.

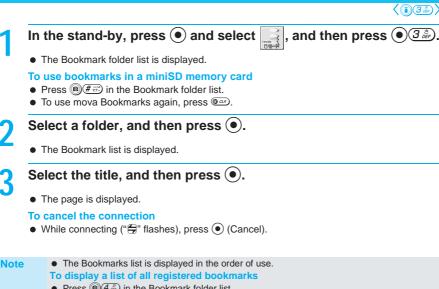| Note	● Some sites cannot be registered to Bookmarks.
	When the URL is already registered
	● "The same URL is saved. Overwrite?" is displayed.
	Select "Yes", and then press ⦿. The mova returns to the screen of step 1.
	If you select "No", and then press ⦿, the mova returns to the site or webpage.
	To edit titles
	❶ In step 2, press ② .
	❷ After editing the title, press ⦿.
	● Up to 12 full-pitch (24 half-pitch) characters can be entered.
	Copying to a miniSD memory card
	● You can copy Bookmarks registered on your mova to a miniSD memory card (☞ P.449), or display Bookmarks registered on a miniSD memory card (☞ P.450).
	● You can copy Bookmark entries from a miniSD memory card to the mova (☞ P.452).
	Ir exchange
	● You can send Bookmarks registered on your mova with Ir (☞ P.438) or receive Bookmarks with Ir (☞ P.439).
	It is recommended that bookmarks be saved on a memo or on a miniSD memory card (☞ P.444). You can also use Data Link software (☞ P.553) and a USB cable (sold separately) to save to your PC.
	● Malfunctions, repairs, or other handling of the mova may cause loss of registered contents. DoCoMo cannot be held responsible in any way for the loss of registered data.

Edit title   8/24
毎朝新聞

Displaying Webpages or Sites from Bookmarks

〈 ⓘ ③ 〉

1 **In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select ⬜, and then press ⦿ ③.**

● The Bookmark folder list is displayed.

To use bookmarks in a miniSD memory card
● Press ⦿ # in the Bookmark folder list.
● To use mova Bookmarks again, press ⦿.

2 **Select a folder, and then press ⦿.**

● The Bookmark list is displayed.

3 **Select the title, and then press ⦿.**

● The page is displayed.

To cancel the connection
● While connecting ("⬛" flashes), press ⦿ (Cancel).

Note	● The Bookmarks list is displayed in the order of use.
	To display a list of all registered bookmarks
	● Press ⦿ ④ in the Bookmark folder list.
	To use bookmarks while a site or webpage is being displayed
	● Press ⦿ ③. Subsequent operations are the same as step 2.
	To check/copy bookmark URLs
	● Perform steps 1 and 2, and then press ⦿ ③ to check the URL of the selected Bookmark. In the screen of step 2, press ⦿ ④ to copy the URL of the Bookmark. Copied URLs may be pasted to the text of messages and Memo pads. Refer to P.524 for information on pasting methods.

Creating a Folder

You can organize your Bookmarks by sorting them into up to 10 folders (including the "Bookmark" folder).
You can edit folder names and delete folders you create. (However, you cannot rename or delete the pre-registered "Bookmark" folder.)
● You can create, rename, and delete folders in the Bookmark folder list.

1 **In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select ⬜, and then press ⦿ ③.**

● The Bookmark folder list is displayed.

2 **Press ⦿ ① (New folder).**

● The screen to enter the folder name is displayed.

269

Viewing Information Using i-mode

3 **Enter the new folder name, and then press ⬤.**

When a folder entitled "sports" is created

● "New folder" is entered. These folder names can be changed.
● You can enter up to 10 full-pitch (20 half-pitch) characters.

Editing Folder Names

1 **In the stand-by, press ⬤ and select 📱, and then press ⬤③.**

● The Bookmark folder list is displayed.

2 **Select a folder, and then press 📷② (Edit folder name).**

● The screen to enter the folder name is displayed.

3 **Edit the folder name, and then press ⬤.**

● You can enter up to 10 full-pitch (20 half-pitch) characters.

Moving Bookmarks into Folders

You can move bookmarks to other folders and manage them by their types.
● Create these folders in advance (☞P.269 "Creating a Folder").

1 **In the stand-by, press ⬤ and select 📱, press ⬤③, select a folder, and then press ⬤.**

● The Bookmark list is displayed.

2 **Select a Bookmark, and then press 📷⑤ (Move).**

● The move screen is displayed.

3 **Press ① (Move one).**

To move all bookmarks contained in a folder
● Press ②.

To move multiple selected bookmarks
● Press ③, select the bookmark to move, and then press ⬤. (The number changes to "☑". To delete selections, select bookmarks with "☑" displayed, and then press ⬤.) Select all Bookmarks to move, and then press ⓘ (Complete).

4 **Select the folder to move to, and then press ⬤.**

Viewing Information Using i-mode

Editing Bookmarks

You can edit the titles of Bookmarks.

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select , press ● ③, select a folder, and then press ●.**

● The Bookmark list is displayed.

2 **Select a Bookmark, and then press ●① (Edit title).**

● The screen to edit the title is displayed.

3 **Enter the title, and then press ●.**

● You can enter up to 12 full-pitch (24 half-pitch) characters.

Deleting Bookmarks and Folders

■ Deleting Bookmarks

You can delete Bookmarks using any of the following methods:

Delete one	Deletes one selected Bookmark.
All in folder	Deletes all Bookmarks in a folder.
Delete Selected	Deletes all selected Bookmarks.

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select , press ● ③, select a folder, and then press ●.**

● The Bookmark list is displayed.

2 **Select a Bookmark, and then press ●② (Delete).**

● The screen to delete is displayed.

3 **Press ① (Delete one).**

To cancel all bookmarks contained in a folder
● Press ②, and then enter your terminal security code (4 digits).

To delete multiple selected bookmarks
● Press ③, select the Bookmarks to delete, and then press ●. (The number changes to "☑". To delete selections, select bookmarks with "☑" displayed, and then press ●.) Select all Bookmarks to delete, and then press ⓘ (Complete).
● Up to 50 items can be selected.

4 **Select "Yes", and then press ●.**

To not delete
● Select "No", and then press ●.

■ **Deleting folders**

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select** 📱 **, press ●③₍₎, select a folder, and then press ⓐ③₍₎.**

- The screen to delete is displayed.

2 **Press ②₍₎, and then enter your terminal security code (4 digits).**

- Each entered digit is displayed as "＊".
- **To delete all Bookmarks**
- Press ①₍₎, and then enter your terminal security code (4 digits).

3 **Select "Yes", and then press ●.**

To not delete
- Select "No", and then press ●.

Note	● If Delete all is performed in the bookmark folder list, folders are not deleted but all bookmarks saved in the folders are deleted.

Screen Memo

Saving Site Content

The screens from your favorite sites and web pages can be saved as screen memos.
- If you save images in screen memos to My picture again, they can be set as the stand-by display (☞P.276).
- 30 to 500 screen memos can be saved. When saving screen memos of the largest size (20KB), you can save 30 screen memos.
- You can set protection for up to half the capacity of the save area. Protected screen memos are not overwritten.

Saving Screen Memos

1 **While a site or web page is displayed (☞Steps 1 and 2 on P.257), press ⓐ⑥₍₎.**

- Up to 12 full-pitch (24 half-pitch) characters are displayed from the page title or the beginning of URL.

2 **Press ①₍₎ (OK).**

- The mova returns to the site or webpage.

Note	● If "Set image display" is set to "OFF", images cannot be saved to screen memos.
	When the memory for registering screen memos is full
	● After step 1, "No more space. Overwrite?" is displayed.
	● Select "Yes", press ●, select the screen memo to overwrite, and then press ● to display the screen of step 2. "Space is not enough. Continue to overwrite?" is displayed when the screen memo to save is larger than the specified screen memo. Select "Yes", press ●, select the screen memo to overwrite, and then press ●.
	● Select "No", and then press ●. The mova returns to the site or webpage.
	To edit titles
	● In step 2, press ②₍₎, edit title, and then press ●.
	● Up to 12 full-pitch (24 half-pitch) characters can be entered.

Displaying a Screen Memo

〈 ⓘ 5 〉

1 **In the stand-by, press ⏺ and select [icon], and then press ⏺ 5.**

● The screen memo list is displayed.

🗐 (Screen memo)	Normal status
🗐 (Screen memo)	Protected

2 **Select the screen memo, and then press ⏺.**

● The specified screen memo is displayed.

To scroll the screen
● Press 🔘.
● Press 🔘 to scroll downward 1 screen at a time. Press 🔘 to scroll upward 1 screen at a time.
● Press # for at least 1 second to scroll downward automatically. Press * for at least 1 second to scroll upward automatically. While scrolling, press #, * or a dial key to stop automatic scrolling.

To display another screen memo
● Press 🔘 to display the contents of the previous or next screen memo.

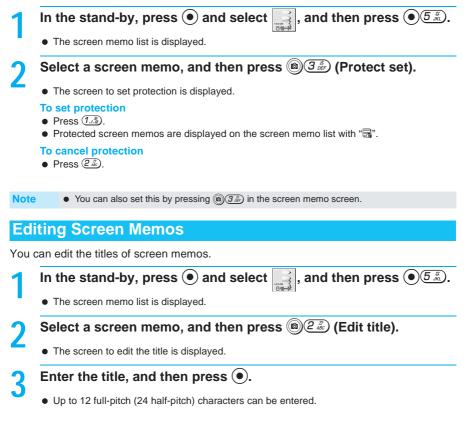| Note	● The information registered to the screen memo is current at the time the screen memo is registered. This may differ from the most recent information on the actual site. **To check screen memo URLs** ● In the screen of step 2, press 🔘 4. ● With the URL displayed, press 🔘 (Copy) to copy the URL. ● You can copy up to 512 characters, and if the URL exceeds 512 characters, "URL is too long to copy" is displayed. ● You can also check by selecting a screen memo you wish to check in the screen memo list, and then pressing 🔘 4. **To check detailed information about a screen memo (Properties)** ● In the screen of step 2, press 🔘 5. ● You can also check by selecting a screen memo you wish to check in the screen memo list, and then pressing 🔘 5. **To set images in screen memos to My picture** ● Refer to P.276. **To view a screen memo server certificate** ● When viewing an SSL page, you can see the certificate received from the server. ● In the screen of step 2, press 🔘 8. **To register phone numbers and mail addresses from screen memos to the Phonebook** ● In the screen of step 2, press 🔘 9. Refer to P.263 for subsequent operations. **To set the volume of Flash movie sound effects and downloaded melodies** ● In the screen of step 2, press 🔘 0, select from "Volume 1" to "Volume 5" or "Silent", and then press ⏺. **To replay Flash movies contained in screen memos** ● In the screen of step 2, press 🔘, select "■Retry", and then press ⏺. **To see key operations in screen memo display** ● In the screen of step 2, press 🔘, select "■Key list", and then press ⏺. The key list is displayed. Press CLR to return to the screen memo display.

Viewing Information Using i-mode

Protecting Screen Memos

You can protect screen memos or disable protection on protected screen memos.
If a message is protected, it cannot be overwritten.

1 **In the stand-by, press ⬤ and select [icon], and then press ⬤ 5 ᴶᴷᴸ.**

● The screen memo list is displayed.

2 **Select a screen memo, and then press [icon] 3 ᴰᴱᶠ (Protect set).**

● The screen to set protection is displayed.

To set protection
● Press 1.
● Protected screen memos are displayed on the screen memo list with "[icon]".

To cancel protection
● Press 2 ᴬᴮᶜ.

Note	● You can also set this by pressing [icon] 3 ᴰᴱᶠ in the screen memo screen.

Editing Screen Memos

You can edit the titles of screen memos.

1 **In the stand-by, press ⬤ and select [icon], and then press ⬤ 5 ᴶᴷᴸ.**

● The screen memo list is displayed.

2 **Select a screen memo, and then press [icon] 2 ᴬᴮᶜ (Edit title).**

● The screen to edit the title is displayed.

3 **Enter the title, and then press ⬤.**

● Up to 12 full-pitch (24 half-pitch) characters can be entered.

Note	● With the Screen memo displayed, press [icon] 2 ᴬᴮᶜ to edit.

Viewing Information Using i-mode

Deleting Screen Memos

You can delete screen memos by any of the following methods: Delete one, Delete all, Delete selected.

1 **In the stand-by, press ⏺ and select [icon], and then press ⏺⑤₅ₖₗ.**

● The screen memo list is displayed.

2 **Select the screen memo you wish to delete, press ⓒ①ₐ, and then press ①ₐ (Delete one).**

To delete all
● Press ②ₐᵦc, and then enter your terminal security code (4 digits).

To delete selected
● Press ③₅ₑf, select the screen memo to delete, and then press ⏺. (The number changes to "☑". To undo selections, select screen memos that have "☑" displayed, and then press ⏺. Select all screen memos to delete, and then press ⓘ (Complete).
● Select up to 50 memos.

3 **Select "Yes", and then press ⏺.**

To not delete
● Select "No", and then press ⏺.

Note	● When deleting all, only unprotected screen memos are deleted.
	● You can also delete one by pressing ⓒ①ₐ in the Screen memo screen.

Changing the Screen Memo List Display Method

You can change the screen memo display method (Sort).
The following display methods can be selected.

By date: new　old	In order saved, starting with the newest
By title	Arranged by title, as follows: half-pitch characters (symbols　numbers　upper case alphabet　lower case alphabet　Katakana)　full-pitch characters (symbols　numbers　upper case alphabet　lower case alphabet　Hiragana　Katakana　symbols/special characters　Kanji　pictographs)　　Character code order within each type
By size	In size order, from the largest
Protected first	Protected memos (by date)　normal (by date) (within each category, sorted by date from (new　old))

● The default setting is "By date (new　old)".

1 **In the stand-by, press ⏺ and select [icon], and then press ⏺⑤₅ₖₗ.**

● The screen memo list is displayed.

2 **Press ⓒ⑥ₘₙₒ (Sort).**

● The screen to sort is displayed.

3 **Select the display method, and then press ⏺.**

● The set display method remains effective until changed.

Note	● Even if a title is edited after the sorting operation, re-sorting is not automatically performed. Repeat steps 2 and 3 to re-sort.

Downloading Images from Sites and Messages

You can save images and Flash movies from sites and messages in My picture (☞P.149) and set them as the stand-by display (☞P.184).

● Images are saved in the My picture "Download" folder (☞P.150).
● Up to 700 images can be saved. This number may be reduced, depending on memory usage.

1 **While a site or message is displayed (☞ Steps 1 and 2 on P.257), press ⓒ 9⒲ⓧⓨⓩ.**

● Press ⓒ, select "■Save image", and then press ●.

2 **Select an image, and then press ●.**

● If there are multiple still pictures in a site or message, select the images you wish to save, and then press ●.

Save image
1 Save to My pic
2 Stand-by dsp
3 Background
4 Popup window
5 Notice window
6 Mail screen
7 Phone screen
8 Guidance key

OK

3 **Press 1⒜ (Save to My pic).**

● Saved to My picture.

To set directly to stand-by, etc.
● Press a key from 2⒜ⓑⓒ (Stand-by dsp) to 8ⓣⓤⓥ (Guidance key).
  Refer to P.184 for subsequent operations.
● File formats that cannot be set are displayed in gray.

Note	● Saved Flash movies may differ in appearance from when they are displayed on a site.
	● When saving an image from a site, check for the memory indicator. If an image is saved while the memory indicator is displayed, images may be overwritten. Before downloading images, delete unnecessary images in My picture, and turn off the memory indicator. (You can save screen memos.)

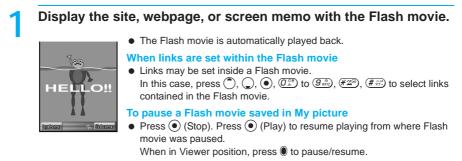| M (Yellow)	Displayed when available memory is low.
M (Red)	Displayed when there is no available memory.

Downloading Frames and Stamps from Sites

You can download and save frames and stamps from sites. Frames and stamps can be used when editing still pictures saved in My picture. (Frames can also be used when taking pictures using the camera.)

● Downloaded frames and stamps are saved to the Download frame/stamp folder in My picture.
● If the image file is deemed incorrectly processed during download, the download is canceled.
● Refer to P.163 for information on editing still pictures with frames.
● Refer to P.134 for information on shooting still pictures with frames.
● Refer to P.159 for information on editing still pictures with Image stamps.

1 **While displaying the site or webpage (☞Steps 1 and 2 on P.257), select the file, and then press ⦿.**

● When the download is finished, "Completed" is displayed.

To display an image
● Press ①.

2 **Press ②ABC (Save).**

To not save
● Press ③DEF.

Note	● When downloading frames and stamps from a site, check for the memory indicator. If a frame or stamp is saved while the memory indicator is displayed, the frame or stamp may overwrite existing data. Before downloading frames and stamps, delete unnecessary images in My picture, and turn off the memory indicator. (You can save screen memos.)

Ⓜ (Yellow)	Displayed when available memory is low.
Ⓜ (Red)	Displayed when there is no available memory.

Displaying Flash Movies

You can display Flash movies on your mova.
Flash movies can also be saved into My picture (☞P.149) and set as the stand-by display (☞P.184).

1 **Display the site, webpage, or screen memo with the Flash movie.**

● The Flash movie is automatically played back.

When links are set within the Flash movie
● Links may be set inside a Flash movie.
In this case, press ◠, ◡, ⦿, ⓪ to ⑨, ✳, ⌗ to select links contained in the Flash movie.

To pause a Flash movie saved in My picture
● Press ⦿ (Stop). Press ⦿ (Play) to resume playing from where Flash movie was paused.
When in Viewer position, press ◉ to pause/resume.

Note	● Saved Flash movies may differ in appearance from when they are displayed on a site.
	● Flash movies cannot be paused/replayed from sites and Screen memos.
	To save Flash movies
	● Refer to P.276.
	To play Flash movie sound effects
	● With the site, web page, or Screen memo displayed, press ⓑ, and then select "■Sound fx setting" (☞P.257).
	● Sound effects are not played when Manner mode is set.
	To play Flash movies again
	● With the Flash movie displayed, press ⓑ, and then select "■Retry".

i-melody

Downloading i-melodies from Sites

You can download melodies from sites and webpages (up to 60).
The saved melody can be set as a ring tone, or pasted to a mail message.
● Downloaded melodies are registered as "   1" to "   60".

1 **While displaying the site or webpage (☞Steps 1 and 2 on P.257), select the melody, and then press ⦿.**

● When the download is finished, "Completed" is displayed.
● During the download, animation may not display.

To cancel the download
● While downloading, press ⓒcLR.

To play the downloaded melody
● Press ①. Select ① (Play all) or ② (Play portion) to play the melody. To cancel playback, press ⦿ or ⓒcLR.
● If Manner mode is set, the confirmation screen is displayed. Select "Yes", and then press ⦿.

To change the volume
● Press ⓑ, select "■Sound fx setting", and then press ⦿ (☞P.257).

2 **Press ② (Save).**

● The screen to save melodies is displayed.

To not save
● Press ③.

3 **Press ① (Play all).**

● When set as the ring tone, the entire melody is played.

To play a portion
● Press ②. Preset portion is played.

When 60 melodies are already registered
● Select the number of the melody you wish to overwrite, and then press ⦿. Select "Yes", and then press ⦿.

To change the volume while playing a melody
● Press ⓑ① (Change volume) (☞P.111).

Note	**It is recommended that saved i-melodies be saved on miniSD memory cards (☞P.444). You can also use Data Link software (☞P.553) and a USB cable (sold separately) to save to your PC.**
	● Malfunctions, repairs, or other handling of the mova may cause loss of registered contents. DoCoMo cannot be held responsible in any way for the loss of registered data. (unpastable melodies cannot be forwarded.)

Importing Dictionaries Downloaded from Sites

You can obtain download dictionaries, save them to your mova, and use them in various situations.
- You can register up to 5 downloaded dictionary files. (However, up to 2 dictionaries can be used.)
- You can download dictionaries for use on your mova from the "SH-MODE" site, found in the iMenu.
  "iMenu"　"③　　　　　　　(Menu list)"　"　　　　　　　　　(Cell phone maker)"　"SH-MODE"

1 While displaying the site or webpage (☞ Steps 1 and 2 on P.257), select the file, and then press ⦿.

- When the download is finished, "Completed" is displayed.

To check the data
- Press ①.

To not save data
- Press ③.

2 Press ②, select the number to register, and then press ⦿.

When a number already registered is selected
- A message to confirm overwriting is displayed.
  Select "Yes", and then press ⦿.

When 2 dictionaries are already registered to be used
- The confirmation screen shown at left is not displayed. Release the dictionary that is currently set and try again (☞ P.529 for deleting methods).

3 Select "Yes", and then press ⦿.

To not use data files immediately
- Select "No", and then press ⦿.

Using the Phone To, Mail To, Web To Functions

You can easily make a call, send mail, or display Internet pages using highlighted information (such as phone numbers, mail addresses, and URLs) in mail and on site pages.

Using the Phone To Function

You can make a call to a number that is displayed within mail or a site.
- This feature may not be available on some sites.
- Phone calls cannot be made with Phone To when Phonebook lock or Keypad dial lock is on.

1 Select the phone number displayed in mail, site, or webpage, and then press ⦿.

- The phone number to call is displayed.
- If the phone number is registered in the Phonebook, the phone number and the name registered to it are displayed.

Viewing Information Using i-mode

2 Press 🕻 (Call) or 🕻⁴⁄₇.

● The displayed number is dialed.

Note	● If a call is made during i-mode stand-by ("🔆" flashes), i-mode ends ("🔆" lights). ● On a site or webpage, the phone number itself may not be displayed. Instead text such as "Our phone number" may be highlighted. ● You can register a phone number that is displayed within mail or a site to your Phonebook (☞P.263). ● A string of numbers displayed in the main body of a mail message, meeting the following conditions, is identified as a phone number, and the Phone To function can be used: 　■ A string of 9 to 24 digits that starts with "0" 　■ A string of 5 to 24 digits that starts with "#" or "✳" including "#" or "✳" 　The number string is also identified as a telephone number when hyphens or parentheses are included. (However, if these symbols appear in a series, it is not identified as a phone number.)

Using the Mail To Function

You can send mail to a mail address that is displayed within mail or a site.
● This feature may not be available on some sites.
● If 2 or more addresses are displayed in a series, the Mail To function may not be usable.
● Up to 50 characters can be used as a mail address. Mail addresses containing 51 characters or more are not recognized as addresses and are not highlighted.

1 Select the mail address displayed in mail, site, or webpage, and then press ●.

● The message composition screen is displayed.

2 Compose and send the mail.

● The "Receiver" input field is already filled in with the mail address selected.
● The subject and main body of the message may also already be filled in if you selected the address in a website.

Note	● On a site or webpage, the mail address itself may not be displayed. Instead, text such as "Our e-mail address" may be highlighted. ● You can register a mail address that is displayed within mail or a site to your Phonebook (☞P.263).

Using the Web To Function

You can display Internet sites from URLs within mail or a sites.
● This feature may not be available on some sites.

1 Select the address (URL) displayed in mail, site, or webpage, and then press ●.

● Connection starts.

2 The specified webpage is displayed.

3 Refer to step 2 on P.257 to operate.

Note	● On a site or webpage, the URL itself may not be displayed. Instead text such as the website's name may be highlighted.
	When the message text contains a still picture URL
	● The still picture can be downloaded and saved in My picture in the mova.
	1 Select the URL, and then press ⦿.
	● The still picture is displayed.
	2 Press ⓜ, select "Save Image", and then press ⦿.
	3 Select an image, and then press ⦿.
	4 Press 1️⃣ (Save to My pic).
	● The image is saved in the My picture "Download" folder.
	● When the still picture is saved using the Web To function from the mail screen, the saved still picture can also be displayed by pressing ⦿.

Setting i-mode

Selecting Receive Functions for Calls Received During i-mode

You can set receive options for calls received during i-mode stand-by ("📶" flashing).
The following settings can be made.
● The default setting is "i-mode answer".

Setting	Receive options during i-mode	Network services that must be subscribed to
i-mode answer	The set ring tone sounds and calls can be answered as usual (☞P.283).	–
Voice Mail	The set ring tone rings for the specified duration, "There was a call" is displayed, and the call is forwarded to the Voice Mail Service center. Calls cannot be answered.	Voice Mail Service
Forward w/ Msg.	The set ring tone rings for the specified duration, "There was a call" is displayed, and you are notified that a call has been forwarded to a specified location. In addition, the caller is notified that they are being forwarded. Calls cannot be answered.	Call Forwarding Service
Forward w/o Msg.	The set ring tone rings for the specified duration, "There was a call" is displayed, and you are notified that a call has been forwarded to a specified location. The caller is not notified that they are being forwarded. Calls cannot be answered.	Call Forwarding Service
Notification	The set ring tone rings for a specified duration, and "There was a call" is displayed. Calls cannot be answered.	–

Note	● If a caller whose ring tone is set calls, the specified ring tone will sound (☞P.82).
	● When reject call settings are set and a caller included in those settings calls, the ring tone does not sound, regardless of the call settings, and "There was a call" is displayed (☞P.61).
	In addition, when Accept calls is set and a call is received from a caller who is not accepted, the same actions as those described above occur (☞P.59).
	When called during i-mode stand-by while Drive mode is set
	● Operates according to Drive mode settings even when in i-mode stand-by ("📶" flashes). However, a different guidance is played to the caller, according to "Set i-mode rcv".
	● Even if "i-mode answer" is set, calls cannot be answered. Operations will follow "Notification" settings. (The ring tone does not sound.)
	When a phone call is received while FeliCa compatible i-αppli is activated
	● Set "i-mode Notification", "Voice mail", "Forward w/ Msg.", or "Forward w/o Msg." ring duration to 0 seconds. Reading and writing of an IC card (☞P.411) is prioritized, allowing you to continue. Incoming calls are recorded in the Received calls history. After reading/ writing of data completes and i-αppli ends, "missed calls" is displayed on the display. You can check missed calls (☞P.68).

⟨ (i) (9ⁱ_{WXYZ}) (1.) (1.) ⟩

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select [📧], press ● (9ᵂˣʸᶻ)(1.)(1.) (Set 📶-mode rcv).**

```
Set i-mode rcv
1 i-mode answer
2 Voice mail
3 Forward w/Msg.
4 Forward w/o Msg.
5 Notification
```

2 **Select the receiving method, and then press ●.**

● The screen to select the ring tone is displayed.

3 **Select the ring tone, and then press ●.**

● If you select (1.) (i-mode answer) in step 2, settings are complete.

4 **Enter the ring duration (00 to 60 seconds), and then press ●.**

● The default setting is "2 seconds".

When set to 0 seconds

● "There was a call" is not displayed if a call is received while in i-mode stand-by ("📶" fllashing).

Note	● If you are registered for Voice Mail Service (☞P.414), Call Waiting Service (☞P.420), or Call Forwarding Service (☞P.423), receive settings will be invalid if the following settings are applied.
	■ When set to automatically connect Received calls to the Voice Mail Service center (1451) (☞P.416).
	■ When set to automatically connect Received calls to the Forwarding destination (1452) (☞P.425).
	■ When set to not connect/forward/notify even if called during a call (1459) (☞P.416, P.420, and P.425).
	● Even if Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service is set on, calls during i-mode stand-by ("📶" flashes) confirm to the settings selected here.
	However, in the case of "i-mode answer", if the call is not answered within the time set for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service, those settings become active.

Receiving a Call During i-mode <Set i-mode Rcv>

When calls are received during i-mode, calls can be answered in the same way as during stand-by (i-mode answer).

● To answer calls during i-mode, set "Set i-mode rcv" (☞P.282) to "i-mode answer".

1 **When you receive a call while connected to i-mode.**

● The ring tone set in "Set i-mode rcv" sounds (☞P.282).

2 **Press (⌐ AF/⫶).**

● You can speak to the caller.
When in Viewer position
● Press ⬡ (left guidance key).

3 **After the call is finished, press (⌐ PWR/HLD).**

● The mova returns to i-mode stand-by ("⌂" flashes) and the screen returns to the previous display.
When in Viewer position
● Press ⬡ (right guidance key).

Note	● If a call is received during i-mode, there may be a time lag between the moment the other party calls and the moment the ring tone sounds. A guidance is played to the caller.

▐ Calls received during i-mode

If calls are received during i-mode, you can choose to save the received call in the Received calls history and use i-mode or resume using i-mode without saving the received call to the Received calls history.

[To continue using i-mode, after a call is received during i-mode and saved to the Received calls history]

In the settings for network services, use the manual switch setting (1./⬡)(4 GHI)(5 JKL)(0 ⬡): ☞P.416, P.420, and P.425), then set i-mode receive.

Network Service settings	i-mode Set i-mode rcv	Operations when a call is received	
(1./⬡)(4 GHI)(5 JKL)(0 ⬡) (Valid when subscribed to Voice Mail, Call Forwarding or Call Waiting) ◆ Manually switch operations when receiving call.	i-mode answer You can perform the operations on the right when receiving a call.	(⌐ AF/⫶) (Answers)	Answers the incoming call.
		(●)+(# ⬡) (to Voice Mail)	Incoming calls are connected to the Voice Mail Service center.
		(●)+(✱ ⬡) (to forwarding destination)	Connects incoming calls to the forwarding destination set using (1./⬡)(4 GHI)(2 ABC)(1./⬡) (start forwarding).
		(⌐ PWR/HLD) (On Hold)	Puts incoming calls on hold.
	Voice Mail	Notifies the mova of the call and always connects to the Voice Mail Service center.	
	Forward with Message/Forward without Message	Notifies the mova of the call and always connects to the forwarding destination that was set using (1./⬡)(4 GHI)(2 ABC)(1./⬡) (start forwarding).	
	Notification	Notifies the mova of the call and disconnects. A guidance stating that you are unable to answer the call is played.	

Actions marked with ◆ are available when you are not subscribed to Voice Mail Service, Call Forwarding Service, or Call Waiting Service.

[To continue using i-mode, without saving a call received during i-mode to the Received calls history]

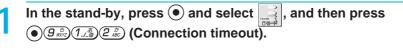This setting does not notify the mova of the call and only network service settings apply (☞P.416, P.420, and P.425).

● The mova receive settings become invalid with these settings.

Network service settings	Operations when a call is received
(1)(4)(5)(1) (Valid only when subscribed to Voice Mail Service)	Always connects to the Voice Mail Service center without notifying the mova of the call.
(1)(4)(5)(2) (Valid only when subscribed to Call Forwarding Service)	Always connects to the forwarding destination that was set using (1)(4)(2)(1) (start forwarding), without notifying the mova of the call. The options set with (1)(4)(2)(9) become effective for forwarding with or without a message.
(1)(4)(5)(9) (Valid when subscribed to Voice Mail, Call Forwarding or Call Waiting)	Does not notify the mova of the call and always disconnects. The caller hears a busy signal.

Setting Connection Timeout <Connection Timeout>

⟨(i)(9)(1)(2)⟩

You can set the time before timeout when sites are busy and data cannot be sent or received. Available settings are "90 seconds", "120 seconds", or "Unlimited".

● The default setting is "90 seconds".

1 In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select [icon], and then press ⦿(9)(1)(2) (Connection timeout).

● The screen to set the connection timeout time is displayed.

2 Select the connection timeout time, and then press ⦿.

Note	● If the connection timeout time expires, "Time out" is displayed, and the mova returns to the previous screen.
	When set to "3Unlimited"
	● Connection timeout time with the i-mode center is not set. (However, connection may be cut, depending on the signal status.)

Changing the Host from i-mode (ISP Connection Transmission) <i-mode Host>

Settings do not need to be changed if DoCoMo i-mode services are being used.

What is ISP connection transmission?

You can connect to various providers (ISP) by switching the host of DoCoMo i-mode compatible mobile phones. To use ISP connection transmission, you must be registered for packet transmission services. Note that packet transmission charges are incurred.

No additional registration is necessary if you are registered for i-mode.

Provider registration

● Using ISP connection transmission requires separate registration with a provider. Contact the provider for information on their services (site connection, internet connection, mail functions, etc.) and registration procedures.

● Separate information charges may be incurred for services offered by providers.

● Your phone number or present location may be sent to the site provider, depending on the site you are viewing.

● Up to 10 hosts can be registered to the mova. (not counting "   ")

● Cannot be set during i-mode stand-by ("   " flashes).

● i-mode is only accessible through "   ", and not through any other host.

Changing the host

⟨ (i) (9 WXYZ) (1./@) (3 DEF) ⟩

You must register the host beforehand (☞ P.285).

1 In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select 🖼, and then press ⦿ (9 WXYZ)(1./@)(3 DEF) (Host selection).

● The host selection screen is displayed.

2 Press the number of the host.
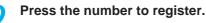
3 Press (1./@) (Set).
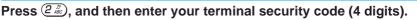
Registering a host

⟨ (i) (9 WXYZ) (1./@) (3 DEF) ⟩

Up to 10 hosts (not counting "   ") can be registered.

1 In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select 🖼, and then press ⦿ (9 WXYZ)(1./@)(3 DEF) (Host selection).

● The host selection screen is displayed.

2 Press the number to register.

3 Press (2 ABC), and then enter your terminal security code (4 digits).

● Each entered digit is displayed as "✳".

285

Viewing Information Using i-mode

4 **Enter the host name.**

- A new host registration is displayed as "Host   ".
- To delete the host name that is displayed, press ⓐ⁽ᶜˡʳ⁾ for at least 1 second.
- You can enter up to 8 full-pitch (16 half-pitch) characters.

5 **Press ⦿, and then enter the host number.**

- You can enter up to 11 digits.

6 **Press ⦿, enter the host address, and then press ⦿.**

- Only half-pitch alphanumeric characters and symbols can be entered.
- Up to 30 half-pitch characters can be entered.

Note	● Settings do not need to be changed if DoCoMo i-mode services are being used.

- " 🔘   " displayed in the host selection screen will differ as shown below, depending on the area where you are registered for i-mode.
  - "DoCoMo Hokkaido", "DoCoMo Tohoku", "DoCoMo", "DoCoMo Tokai", "DoCoMo Hokuriku", "DoCoMo Kansai", "DoCoMo Chugoku", "DoCoMo Shikoku", "DoCoMo Kyushu"
- The default connection information cannot be changed.

To reset registered information

1 Select the host for which you wish to reset registered information in step 2.
2 Press ⁽³ᵈᵉᶠ⁾ (Reset host).
3 Enter your terminal security code (4 digits).

- When the current set host is reset, the host returns to "   ".

Setting to Enable i-mode <i-mode Connection>

⟨ ⓘ ⁽⁹ʷˣʸᶻ⁾ ⁽¹⁾ ⁽⁴ᵍʰⁱ⁾ ⟩

You can enable i-mode service when you have registered for it separately.

- If you registered for i-mode service when you purchased your mova, these settings are not needed.

1 **In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select 🔲, press ⦿⁽⁹ʷˣʸᶻ⁾⁽¹⁾⁽⁴ᵍʰⁱ⁾ (-mode connection).**

- "i-mode connection" is set to "ON", and i-mode is enabled.

Note	● Even if you are not subscribed to the i-mode service, lights when "i-mode connection" is set to "ON". It will switch to "OFF" as you attempt to connect to i-mode.

Viewing Information Using i-mode

Setting to Not Display Images <Image Display>

〈 (i) (9ᵂˣʸᶻ) (3ᴰᴱꟳ) (1.) 〉

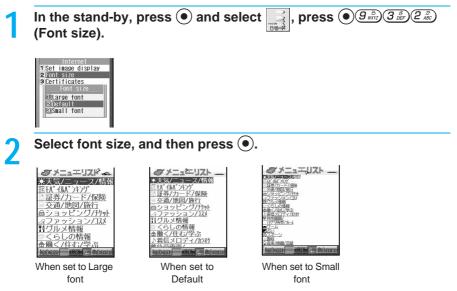You can set the mova to not display still pictures included in sites and webpages, messages, or screen memos.
● The default setting is "ON" (Display).

1 In the stand-by, press ● and select , press ● (9ᵂˣʸᶻ)(3ᴰᴱꟳ)(1.) (Set image display).

● The set image screen is displayed.

2 Press (2ᴬᴮᶜ) (OFF: Deactivate image display).

To display
● Press (1.).

Note	● If image display settings are set to "OFF", "▣" appears in place of the still picture. In this case, if the displayed screen is saved as a screen memo, still pictures are not saved (☞P.272). ● If image display settings are "OFF", Flash movies and images received with i-shot are not displayed.

Enlarging the Font Size for Sites, Web Pages, and Screen Memos <Font Size>

〈 (i) (9ᵂˣʸᶻ) (3ᴰᴱꟳ) (2ᴬᴮᶜ) 〉

Set fonts in sites, web pages, and screen memos to "Large font", "Default", or "Small font".
● The default setting is "Default".

1 In the stand-by, press ● and select , press ● (9ᵂˣʸᶻ)(3ᴰᴱꟳ)(2ᴬᴮᶜ) (Font size).

2 Select font size, and then press ●.

When set to Large font | When set to Default | When set to Small font

Note	● Some sites may not display properly when "Font size" is changed.

Setting the CA Certificate Able/Disable <CA Certificates>

⟨ⓘ 9ᵂˣʸᶻ 3ᴰᴱꟳ 3ᴰᴱꟳ⟩

The CA (Certification Authority) certificate is used to confirm the safety of sites when connecting to SSL supported sites (SSL webpage, ☞P.258). If problems with the safety of the CA certificate itself arises, the CA certificates may be disabled. Contents of the certificate can also be displayed.

● The default setting is "Able" for all certificates.
● If CA certificates are disabled, SSL webpages that use the CA certificate cannot be displayed.

1 **In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select ▦, press ⦿ 9ᵂˣʸᶻ 3ᴰᴱꟳ 3ᴰᴱꟳ, and then select the certificate to enable/disable.**

● Enabled certificates are indicated with a "☑" and disabled certificates are indicated with a "☐".

2 **Press ◉ (Able or Disable).**

● The CA certificates switch between able and disable.

Note	**To display the contents of certificates**
	● In the screen of step 2, select the certificate you wish to view, and then press ⦿.

Checking i-mode Setting Status <Check i-mode Settings>

⟨ⓘ 9ᵂˣʸᶻ 1.,＠⟩

You can check the status of various i-mode settings.

1 **In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select ▦, and then press ⦿ 9ᵂˣʸᶻ.**

● The screen to set i-mode is displayed.

2 **Press 1.,＠ (Shared).**

● The shared settings screen is displayed.

To check mail and message setting

● Press 2ᴬᴮᶜ.

3 **Select the settings to confirm.**

● Press ◌̇ to display the current settings in the second line.

Viewing Information Using i-mode

Resetting i-mode to Default Status <Reset i-mode Settings>

〈 ⓘ 9ᴡxʏᴢ 4ɢʜɪ 〉

You can reset i-mode related settings to default settings.
The settings that are reset and their default status are as follows.

Settings		Default setting
Shared	Set i-mode rcv	i-mode answer, Same as normal, Ring time 2 seconds
	Connection timeout	90 seconds
	Host selection	
	i-mode connection	ON
Mail/Message	Quick i-shot setting	OFF
	Melody mail	Play on Open
	Image mail	Manual download
	Paste data	Able
	Font size	Default
	Check new msgs	i-mode mail/Message Request/Message Free ON
	Auto message display	Msg R preferred
	Save signature*	OFF
	Rcv option setting	OFF
Internet	Set image display	ON
	Font size	Default
	Certificates	CA certificates 1 to 5 all enabled

* Reset i-mode sets the Save signature setting to "OFF", but does not reset the saved signature.
● Quick reply mail, Mailing list settings, i-shot connections and Mail security are not reset.

1 **In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select [icon], and then press ⦿9ᴡxʏᴢ.**

● The screen to set i-mode is displayed.

2 **Press 4ɢʜɪ, and then enter your terminal security code (4 digits).**

● Each entered digit is displayed as "✳".

3 **Select "Yes", and then press ⦿.**

● The settings are reset.

To not reset settings
● Select "No", and then press ⦿.

Note	● i-mode settings cannot be reset when in i-mode stand-by ("▯" flashes).
	● The default setting of " " for "Host selection" is displayed as shown below, depending on the area in which you registered for i-mode.
	■ "DoCoMo Hokkaido", "DoCoMo Tohoku", "DoCoMo", "DoCoMo Tokai", "DoCoMo Hokuriku", "DoCoMo Kansai", "DoCoMo Chugoku", "DoCoMo Shikoku", "DoCoMo Kyushu"

Disabling i-mode

〈 ⦿ 6ₘₙₒ 2ₐᵦᒼ 3ᴅᴇꜰ 〉

You can disable all i-mode settings. When i-mode lock is set, messages and mail cannot be sent or received.

● i-αppli (☞P.388) is also disabled.
● A portion of the Infrared exchange function (☞P.436) will also be disabled.
● i-mode lock cannot be set during i-mode stand-by ("⊟" flashes).
  Exit i-mode, and then perform i-mode lock settings.

1 **In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select [⚙️], press ⦿ 6ₘₙₒ 2ₐᵦᒼ 3ᴅᴇꜰ, and then enter your terminal security code (4 digits).**

● Each entered digit is displayed as "✱".
● "🔒" lights at the top of the display.

Note	● "i-mode is locked" is displayed when you try to access i-mode while i-mode is locked.
	● Messages and bookmarks cannot be sent or received using Infrared exchange function while i-mode is locked (☞P.439).
	● When Keypad lock (☞P.207) is set, release Keypad lock before releasing i-mode lock.
	● i-shot can be used in the following manner, even while i-mode is locked.
	■ While the image is displayed, press 🔘 (Mail).
	■ In the stand-by, press 🔘 for at least 1 second.
	To release i-mode lock
	● Perform step 1 while i-mode is locked ("🔒" lights). i-mode lock is disabled ("🔒" disappears).

13

Using the Message Services

The screens shown in this manual may differ from the actual screens.

What are Messages?

By registering at sites offering message services, you can have information of your choice delivered automatically as messages to your i-mode compatible mobile phone. There are two types of messages: Message R (Request) and Message F (Free).

Message Request (Message R)	By registering at sites that offer message services, information of your choice will be delivered automatically.
Message Free (Message F)	When you set receive settings in the option settings, messages are delivered free of packet communications charges.

● Refer to P.293 for methods of receiving messages.
● When your i-mode terminal cannot receive a message because it is busy with a phone call, turned off, or out of the i-mode service area, the message is held at the i-mode center.

■ Setting Message F

" Menu"   " 8 "   (Option settings)"   " 4 "   F   " (Message [F] settings)   select "   " (Receive), enter your i-mode password (4-digits), and the press " 決定 " (OK).

Note	●	The maximum number of messages that can be held at the i-mode center and the maximum period for storage are as follows: When the maximum number or maximum period of storage is exceeded, the messages are deleted in order from the oldest.

Type	Maximum number	Maximum period
Message R	50 messages	72 hours
Message F	20 messages	72 hours

● You can retrieve messages held at the i-mode center by using "Check new message" (☞P.295).

When a Message is Received

When the mova is within the i-mode service area, messages are received automatically from the i-mode center.

● Up to 20 messages for Message Request and 10 messages for Message Free can be saved on the mova.
● i-mode messages received in the following conditions are held at the i-mode center.
　　During call　　When i-mode is locked　　When using i-αppli　　During Ir exchange
　　Power is not ON　　In Self mode　　Out of the service area
　　Not available in the message list space due to protected and unread messages

Note	**Explanation of Marks**

Mark	Meaning
ℝ/𝔽	You have unread messages. Refer to P.296 for details on checking messages.
ℝ/𝔽	The mova memory is full. Check unread messages (☞P.296), disable protected messages (☞P.298), or delete unneeded messages (☞P.299).
ℝ/𝔽	Messages are held at the i-mode center. To receive the messages, perform "Check new message" (☞P.295).
ℝ/𝔽	The i-mode center inbox is full. Perform "Check new message" (☞P.295).

ℝℝℝℝ: Request. 𝔽𝔽𝔽𝔽: Free.

● When messages are received while "ℝ/𝔽" is displayed, already read unprotected messages are automatically overwritten, starting with the oldest. You can protect messages you do not wish overwritten (☞P.298).
● Even when messages are held at the i–mode center, "ℝ/𝔽" or "ℝ/𝔽" may not be displayed.
● Messages held at the i-mode center may be overwritten when "ℝ/𝔽" are displayed.

Displaying New Messages

When messages are delivered, the newest message is automatically displayed.
However, if "Auto message display" is set to "No auto display", received messages will not be displayed.

● You can set the type and priority of messages to be automatically displayed when different message types are received simultaneously (☞P.294).
● The default setting is "Msg R preferred".

1 **When a message arrives, it is automatically received. ("ℝ"/"𝔽" flashes.)**

● "ℝ" flashes when Message Request is being received. "𝔽" flashes when Message Free is being received.
● After reception is finished, the message received results are displayed, and the message ring tone sounds. ("ℝ"/"𝔽" lights)

To view the messages immediately
● In the message received results screen, select "Message Request" or "Message Free", press (●), select the message you wish to view, and then press (●).
● In the message received results screen, the mova may automatically return to the display from before reception after 2 seconds (☞P.113). In this case, the messages cannot be automatically displayed, and "Message Request" or "Message Free" cannot be selected.

293

2 **The received message is displayed for about 15 seconds, then the mova will automatically return to the stand-by display (When the mova is set for automatic display).**

● When this occurs, the mova remains in i-mode stand-by ("🗄" flashes).

To continue message display

● You can scroll and perform other operations by pressing 🔘 in the message display.

Note **To silence the ring tone**
● Press the following keys.
🔘, 🔘 . . . . The ring tone is silenced and the message received results screen disappears.
Other keys. . . . . . . The ring tone is silenced and the message received results screen remains displayed.
When messages are received while editing the phonebook, schedule, still pictures, various settings, etc.
● If message content is displayed from the message received results screen, press 🔘 3 times to return to the screen prior to reception. However, if a message is being composed, that message is saved as unsent mail.

Displaying Messages Automatically <Auto Message Display>

〈 🔘 9 2 8 〉

You can set the type and priority of messages to be automatically displayed.
The following settings can be made:

Msg R preferred	When unread Message Request and Message Free are received simultaneously, the Message Request is automatically displayed.
Msg F preferred	When unread Message Request and Message Free are received simultaneously, the Message Free is automatically displayed.
Message R only	Only unread Message Requests are automatically displayed.
Message F only	Only unread Message Free are automatically displayed.
No auto display	Auto display does not function.

● The default setting is "Msg R preferred".

1 **In the stand-by, press 🔘 and select ⬚, and then press 🔘 9 2.**

● The screen to set mail/message is displayed.

2 **Press 8 (Auto message display).**

● The Auto message display screen is displayed.

3 **Select the display method, and then press 🔘.**

Note ● When auto message display is set, the newest unread message is displayed for about 15 seconds under the following circumstances.
■ When returning from the message received results screen to the stand-by display
■ When returning to the stand-by display after finishing a call
● Auto display will not function in the following circumstance, regardless of the setting for this function.
■ When Keypad lock is set

Checking for Messages at the i-mode Center

〈(i)(4 ᵍʰⁱ)〉

Messages are held at the i-mode center if they arrive during a call or when the mova is outside the service area, turned off or in Self mode. (☞ P.293)
You can check for messages at the i-mode center, and retrieve any messages held there.
● You can set the type of check (i-mode mail, Message Request, Message Free) to be performed at the i-mode center during Check new message (☞P.360).
● Even when "Receive option setting" is "ON", mail and messages are received if you check for new messages.
● If you check for new messages and do so again while "🔲" is still flashing, the types that were inquired in the previous check are not checked.
● The default setting is to check for all types.

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select [i-mode icon], and then press ●(4 ᵍʰⁱ).**

● Check new message begins.
● Following the settings for Check new messages (☞P.360), messages are checked in the order of "i-mode mail" ➡, "Message Request" ➡ and "Message Free".
(Marks indicating checking ("✉", "**R**", "**F**") are displayed in order.)

To cancel reception
● While receiving, press ●.
● Messages that were canceled during reception are held at the i-mode center ("**R**/**F**" lights).
● Mail and messages may be received, depending on when you cancel.

2 **The results of Check new message are displayed. If there are new mail or messages, the mail/message ring tone sounds.**

● Check new message is completed.
● "0" is displayed as the number of messages when no mail or messages are held at the center.

3 **In the message received results screen, select "Message R" or "Message F", and then press ●.**

● The message list is displayed.

To not display the messages immediately
● If no operations are performed on the message received results screen, after about 30 seconds the mova returns to the i-mode menu.
● When this occurs, the mova remains in i-mode stand-by ("🔲" flashes).
● Return to the stand-by display, and then press (☎ᴾᵂᴿ) to exit i-mode.
● Messages received during Check new message are not displayed automatically.

4 **Select the message to display, and then press ●.**

● Refer to P.297 for details on how to view messages.

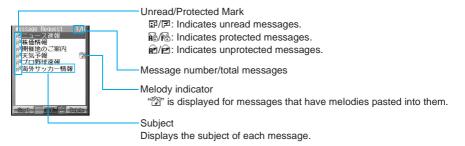| Note	● You can also check for new messages by pressing (⬆)(7 ᵖᑫ�ˢ) or (⬆)(⬆) in the stand-by.
	● When the mova is closed or in Viewer position, you can check for new messages by pressing ● for at least 1 second.

Using the Message Services

295

Displaying Messages in the Message Box

⟨ⓘ②⟩

1 In the stand-by, press ● and select [icon], and then press ●②.

```
        Message
1 Message Request
2 Message Free




        OK
```

2 Press ① (Message Request).

● The message list is displayed.

To display a Message Free
● Press ②.

3 Select the subject of the message to view, and then press ●.

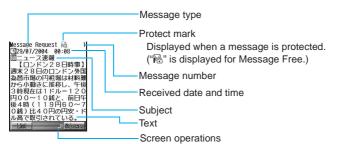● The message display screen is displayed (☞P.297).

Note	● When an image is not correctly loaded, you can have it reloaded (☞P.298).
	● You can also set the mova to not load images (☞P.287).

Viewing the Message List/Display Screen

Viewing the message list

Unread/Protected Mark
㋲/㋞: Indicates unread messages.
㋭/㋬: Indicates protected messages.
㋱/㋠: Indicates unprotected messages.

Message number/total messages

Melody indicator
"🎵" is displayed for messages that have melodies pasted into them.

Subject
Displays the subject of each message.

Viewing message display screen

Message type

Protect mark
Displayed when a message is protected.
("🔓" is displayed for Message Free.)

Message number

Received date and time

Subject

Text

Screen operations

⬇ (scroll down)	The screen scrolls downward.
⬆ (scroll up)	The screen scrolls upward.
🔽 (scroll down one screen)	The screen scrolls downward 1 screen at a time.
🔼 (Scroll up one screen)	The screen scrolls upward 1 screen at a time.
(#🔁) (Auto scroll down)[*]	Press for at least 1 second to scroll downward automatically.
(✳🔁) (Auto scroll up)[*]	Press for at least 1 second to scroll upward automatically.
➡ (Check next message)	Displays the contents of the next message.
⬅ (Check previous message)	Displays the contents of the previous message.

*Press (#🔁), (✳🔁), or dial key to stop auto scroll.

● When a melody is pasted to a message, "🎵" and the title of the melody appears on the line below the subject.

Reloading Images Contained in Messages <Reload>

When an image contained in a message could not be loaded correctly (when "🖼" is displayed), you can reconnect to the i-mode center and reload the image.

1 **In the message list (☞ Steps 1 and 2 on P.296), select the message to reload, and then press ⦿.**

2 **Press ⓐ①.♂ (Reload).**

● The reloading will begin.

To cancel reloading
● Press ⓐ while connected ("🖑" flashes).

Note	● Some images may not load properly even after reloading.

Protecting Messages <Protect Message>

You can protect received messages or disable protection on protected messages. If a message is protected, it cannot be overwritten.
● When the number of received Message Request exceeds 20 or the number of Message Free exceeds 10, already read messages of the same message type are automatically deleted, starting with the oldest.
● Up to 10 Message Request and 5 Message Free can be protected.

1 **Select the message to protect/disable in the message list (☞ Steps 1 and 2 on P.296), and then press ⦿.**

● The message display screen is displayed.

2 **Press ⓐ②ᴬᴮᶜ (Protect set).**

● The set protect screen is displayed.

3 **Press ①.♂ (ON: Protect message).**

● "🔒" or "🔒" is displayed for protected messages on the message display screen.

To disable
● Press ②ᴬᴮᶜ.

Deleting Messages <Delete Message>

You can delete messages by any of the following methods: Delete one, Delete all, or Delete selected.

1 **Select the message to delete in the message list (☞ Steps 1 and 2 on P.296), and then press ⓒ.**

2 **Press ①,.ᵃ (Delete one).**

To delete all the messages

● Press ②⁂, and then enter your terminal security code (4 digits).

To delete selected messages

● Press ③⁂, select the message to delete, and then press ●. The Unread/Protect mark changes to "☑". Repeat this operation, select all messages you wish to delete, and then press ⓘ (Complete).

3 **Select "Yes", and then press ●.**

To not delete

● Select "No", and then press ●.

Note	● Delete all applies to all unprotected, already read messages. Protected or unread messages are not deleted.
	● You can also delete 1 message by pressing ⓒ④⁂ (Delete one) in the message display screen.

Changing the Display Method of the Message List

You can change the display method of the message list (Sort).
The following display methods can be selected.

By date: old new	In order starting with the oldest received date
By subject	Arranged in order according to title, as follows: half-pitch characters (symbols numbers upper case alphabet lower case alphabet Katakana) full-pitch characters (symbols numbers upper case alphabet lower case alphabet Hiragana Katakana symbols/special characters Kanji pictographs) (by character code order within each type of character)
By unread/protected/read	In order as follows: unread messages protected messages read messages ("By date (new old)" within each item)

● The default setting is "By date (new old)".
● When a screen other than the message list is displayed, the display method returns to the default setting ("By date (new old)"). However, with the display method changed, if ⊗ᴄʟʀ is pressed to return to the message list after displaying the message display screen, the display method remains changed.

1 **Press ⓘ (Sort) in the message list (☞ Steps 1 and 2 on P.296).**

2 **Select the display method, and then press ●.**

299

►MEMO◄

14

Using the Mail Services

301

About i-mode Mail

Once you sign up for i-mode, you can use your mova to exchange mail messages with other i-mode compatible phones as well as via the Internet.
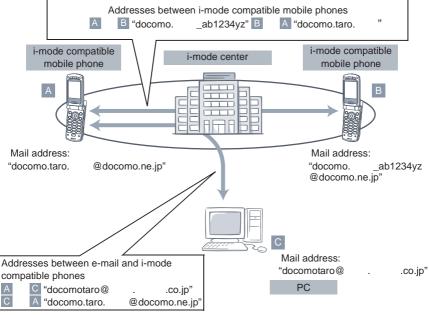The mail address you receive when you sign up with i-mode is as follows.

When newly signed up for i-mode
The part of the address before the "@" mark will be made up of random English letters and numbers. Check your mail address after 9 AM on the morning after registering for i-mode.
Example: abc1234-789xyz@docomo.ne.jp
<To confirm your mail address> Refer to P.345 for details.
"iMenu" ➡ "⑧   " (Option setting) ➡ "①   " (Mail setting) ➡ "   " (Check address)

● Only the part before the "@" mark is needed when exchanging mail with an i-mode compatible mobile phone.
● The entire address, including "@docomo.ne.jp" is needed when receiving e-mail from a PC, etc.

Addresses between i-mode compatible mobile phones
A ▶ B "docomo. _ab1234yz" B ▶ A "docomo.taro. "

i-mode compatible mobile phone — i-mode center — i-mode compatible mobile phone

A B

Mail address:
"docomo.taro. @docomo.ne.jp"

Mail address:
"docomo. _ab1234yz @docomo.ne.jp"

C

Mail address:
"docomotaro@ . .co.jp"

PC

Addresses between e-mail and i-mode compatible phones
A ▶ C "docomotaro@ . .co.jp"
C ▶ A "docomo.taro. @docomo.ne.jp"

● Refer to P.307 for instructions on sending mail
● Refer to P.313 for instructions on receiving mail

Receiving selected mail
Retrieve a list of received time/title/sender and select messages to receive or delete. By doing so, only selected messages are received (☞P.315).

■ Perform mail settings
The various settings described below may be performed.

〈**Setting method**〉
"iMenu" "⑧   " (Option setting) "①   " (Mail setting) (Each setting)

● Refer to the "i-mode Operation Guide" given to you when you subscribed to i-mode for details.

Using the Mail Services

Changing your mail address (" ")
You can change the part of your i-mode mail address that comes before the "@" mark to something of your choice such as "docomo. _ab1234yz@docomo.ne.jp" (☞P.345).

Saving your secret code
" " " "
You can save a 4 digit secret code in addition to your phone number when you use the address for that number. Mail that does not specify the secret code cannot be received, allowing you to avoid receiving unwanted mail (☞P.347).

Using your phone number as a mail address
" " " "
You can use your phone number as your mail address in the form of "phone number@docomo.ne.jp" (☞P.348).

Confirming your address (" ")
You can confirm your current mail address (☞P.345).

Setting received mail character limit (" ")
Up to 2000 full-pitch characters may be received, depending on the settings (up to 250 full-pitch characters may be sent) (☞P.355).

Unsolicited advertisement mail may be rejected
" " " "
You can set to reject mail sent without the consent of the receiver for the purpose of advertising. The initial setting is " " (Reject). Settings do not need to be altered to unsolicited advertisements.(The sender is required to insert " " (6 full-pitch characters) in the beginning of the subject by law.)

You can reject specific mail
You can perform the following settings.
● Reject only mail that comes via the Internet, or reject only mail that comes from i-mode compatible phones.
" / " " " "
"
● You can reject or receive only mail from specific addresses. You can also specify your mova to receive invoice notice mail, i-mode, i-shot, Charge Notice Service, e-Billing, and all mail from other mobile phone/PHS companies (excluding certain companies) as well as mail from any other domain you specify.
" / " " ", " ", "
"
● You can set your mova to reject short mail.
" " " "

Confirming reject settings (" ")
You can confirm the currently set mail reject settings (☞P.345).

Turning off mail functions (" ")
If you are not using mail functions, you can turn them off at the i-mode center (☞P.356).

Number of characters you can send and receive

The number of characters you can send and receive with i-mode mail is as follows.

Category	Send		Receive	
	Full-pitch (Kanji, Hiragana, pictographs, etc.)	Half-pitch (alphabet, numbers, Katakana, etc.)	Full-pitch (Kanji, Hiragana, pictographs, etc.)	Half-pitch (alphabet, numbers, Katakana, etc.)
Subject	15 characters	30 characters	15 characters	30 characters
Mail address		50 characters		50 characters
Text	250 characters	500 characters	2000 characters*	4000 characters*

* Depends on settings (☞P.355)

Note	● Excess characters are deleted automatically, and "/" or "//" is inserted at the end of the message when the text exceeds the maximum number of receivable characters.
	● Excess characters are deleted when the number of characters in the subject line exceeds the maximum number of receivable characters.
	● Do not use half-pitch Katakana or pictographs in messages to receivers not using i-mode compatible mobile phones. Certain characters may not be displayed correctly.
	● Attached files cannot be sent or received. The attached file is deleted automatically at the i-mode center, and only the message reaches the receiver. When this occurs, "Attached file deleted" is added to the top of the message text. (Including the message "Attached file deleted", you can receive up to the set character limit.)

When you cannot receive mail

Mail is sent immediately to your i-mode compatible mobile phone when it arrives at the i-mode center. However, mail is held at the i-mode center when messages cannot be delivered because you are in the middle of a call, running an i-αppli, the power is turned OFF, you are out of the service area, or the Receive option has been set.

Note	● The maximum number of messages that can be held at the i-mode center and the maximum time period for storage are as follows.

	Maximum number	Maximum period
i-mode mail	50 messages	720 hours

● Any mail that exceeds the maximum storage time period is automatically deleted.
● Mail is not accepted at the i-mode center, and is returned to the sender with an error message when the maximum number of mail messages that can be saved is exceeded. In such cases, "✉" is displayed on i-mode compatible phones (☞P.313). However, "✉" is not displayed even if maximum capacity is exceeded, if Receive option is set.
● You can receive messages held at the i-mode center by using Check new message (☞P.316). You will receive any new mail as well as any messages held at the i-mode center.
● The mail held at the i-mode center is deleted when it is received by your phone. Received mail is saved on your phone (☞P.313).
● Extremely large mail may be rejected by the i-mode center.

■ Some things you can do

Chat mail

You can exchange messages like when chatting with multiple people (☞P.365).
● Charges are the same as when sending each mail individually.

Melody mail

You can paste melodies downloaded from sites or webpages to mail and send/receive such mail as well.
● To send melody mail ☞P.311
● When melody mail is received ☞P.322

Image mail

You can send a message with an address (URL) of an image posted on a site or webpage included in the mail text so that the receiver can download and view the image.
● To send image mail ☞P.312
● To display images received by mail ☞P.323

Broadcast mail

You can send the same message to multiple addresses (up to 10) at the same time (☞P.309).
● Charges are the same as when sending each mail individually.

Sending i-shot

You can send still pictures shot with your DoCoMo camera-equipped phone to other i-mode compatible mobile phones as well as PCs and mobile phones from other companies. You do not have to sign up for i-mode to send i-shot (☞P.380).

Receiving i-shot

Received still pictures taken with a DoCoMo camera-equipped phone are treated by i-mode compatible phones as messages with image URLs attached.
You have to sign up for i-mode to receive i-shot (☞P.378).

Receiving i-motion mail

If i-motion mail is received, mail with URL for connected consecutive still picture is received on i-mode compatible mobile phones.
You have to sign up for i-mode to receive i-motion mail.
● i-motion mail cannot be sent from the mova.
● i-motion mail is a service that allows you to send movies shot with your FOMA (i-motion mail compatible mobile phone) and images obtained from sites.

Sending short mail

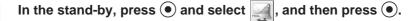You can send short mail regardless of whether or not you signed up for i-mode/short mail (☞P.371).

Receiving short mail

You can receive short mail as i-mode mail when you sign up for i-mode (☞P.374).

Note	Be sure to keep a separate record of mail addresses and received mail
	● Data saved in your mova may be altered or lost in the event of misuse, exposure to static electricity or electrical noise, malfunctions, repairs, phone model changes or certain other handling. DoCoMo cannot be held responsible in any way for the loss of received mail.

Using the Mail Services

Displaying the Mail Menu

〈(📧)〉

You can compose i-mode mail and display sent/received mail from the mail menu.

1 In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select 📧, and then press ⦿.

● The mail menu is displayed.

Menu	Function	Page
①Inbox	Display, reply to, or forward received mail.	☞P.325
②Outbox	Display or re-edit sent mail.	☞P.325
③Unsent messages	Edit or send unsent messages.	☞P.325
④Compose message	Compose new messages and send or save them.	☞P.307
⑤Chat mail	Set and send Chat mail.	☞P.365
⑥Compose shortmail	Compose new short mail and send or save them.	☞P.371
⑦Check new message	Check to see if mail or messages are being held at the i-mode center.	☞P.316
⑧Receive option	Receive only mail you wish to receive among mail being held at the i-mode center.	☞P.315
⑨Mail setting	Call up mova functions related to i-mode mail.	☞P.345

Note	● When in Viewer position, press ⓪ in the stand-by and display the TOP menu (☞P.24), select "Mail" with ⓪, and then press ⓪ to display the Mail menu. Subsequent operations can be performed like when the mova is in Normal position with ●, ⓪, ⟍ (left guidance key), and ⟋ (right guidance key).

Composing and Sending i-mode Mail

⟨ (📱)(4 GHI) or (📱) for at least 1 second ⟩

Compose and send new messages.

● Do not use half-pitch Katakana or pictographs in the subject or message text when you are sending mail to a receiver not using an i-mode compatible phone. Certain characters may not display correctly.

1

In the stand-by, press ⊙ and select [mail icon], and then press ⊙(4 GHI).

```
    Compose msg
Receiver : 0

Subject

Message

Paste
(No paste data)
Save

Send   OK    Submenu
```

● The screen to compose a message is displayed.

When "Too many unsent messages" is displayed

● You cannot compose new messages when the combined total of unsent mail and protected sent mail exceeds 100, or the sent mail saving area is full. Disable the protection for sent mails or delete unsent mail (☞P.337 to P.340).

2

Select the "Receiver" input field, and then press ⊙.

● The screen to select the input method is displayed.

3

Press (2 ABC) (Direct input), and then enter the "Receiver".

● Up to 50 half-pitch alphanumeric characters and certain symbols can be entered.
● "@docomo.ne.jp" may be abbreviated when exchanging mail with other i-mode compatible mobile phones.
● Symbol conversion and Internet phrases can be used (☞P.517).

To select from the phonebook

● Press (1), select the receiver, press ⊙, and then select the mail address.
● For persons whose mail addresses are not registered, "✉", "📧", "✉", or "📧" is not displayed. Up to 3 icons for mail addresses saved in the Phonebook are displayed.

To select from Sent address history/Received address history

● Press (3 DEF) (Sent address) or (4 GHI) (Rcvd address), select the person to send to, and then press ⊙.

To select from a mailing list

● Press (5 JKL), and then select a mailing list to send.
● Register the mailing list in advance (☞P.361).

4

Press ⊙ (OK).

● The mova returns to the mail composition screen.

To send to multiple addresses
● Repeat steps 2 to 4.
● Up to 10 addresses can be added.

To edit addresses
● Select the address you wish to change and press ⊙. Select the input method and edit.

To delete addresses
● Select the address you wish to delete, press (📷)(4 GHI), select "Yes", and then press ⊙.

307

Using the Mail Services

5 **Select the "Subject" and the "Message" input fields, press ⦿, enter, and then press ⦿.**

- You can enter up to 15 full-pitch (30 half-pitch) characters for the subject and up to 250 full-pitch (500 half-pitch) characters for the message text.
- Line breaks ("♪") are counted as 1 full-pitch character and spaces (blanks) are counted as 1 half-pitch character (line breaks "♪" cannot be entered in the subject).
- Use "⊠Quote owner info" (☞P.40) from the sub menu when entering the message to insert user info.

To use phrases
- Press ⓐ⑤⑤. Press the number for the type of phrase you wish to use, and then press the number of the phrase.
- Refer to P.517 for details on phrases.

To paste a signature
- Make sure to register a signature in advance (☞P.359).
- Press ⓐ while entering the message text, select "■ Add signature", and then press ⦿. Select the signature to paste, and then press ⦿.
- You can also paste a signature by pressing ⓐ③⑤ in the mail composition screen.
- If "Auto signature" is set to "ON", the signature is pasted automatically. However, signatures are not automatically pasted when replying with a quote or forwarding.
- The characters in the signature are included in the character count for the main message. If the total number for the message and signature exceeds the number of characters that can be sent, "Signature space is not available" is displayed and the signature is not pasted.

6 **Press ⓘ (Send).**

Sending
i-mode mail

- When sending is completed, "Transmission completed" is displayed. Press ⦿ to return to the stand-by display.
- After sending, the mova operates in i-mode stand-by status ("☐" flashes). In the stand-by, press ☎ to exit i-mode.

To cancel the send operation
- In the screen displayed while sending, press ☎ or ⦿. However, mail may still be sent, depending on when the operation was stopped. Mail for which sending was canceled is saved as unsent mail.

Note	● With the receiver field entered, receivers can be selected from the "mailing list" (☞P.361). If you wish to overwrite, select "Yes", and then press ⦿. If you do not wish to overwrite, select "No", and then press ⦿.

● Depending on the signal status, the message may not be sent. Mail that could not be sent is saved as unsent mail.

● An error message such as "Transmission failed" may be displayed even when sending is completed, depending on the signal status.

● Depending on the signal status, the other party may not receive text correctly.

● A combined total of 101 sent and unsent mail can be saved. However, up to 100 sent or unsent messages can be saved. The mova automatically overwrites unprotected sent mail starting with the oldest message if you send a new mail when more than 100 sent mail or a combined total of 100 sent and unsent mail have already been saved (a confirmation screen is not displayed).

If you receive a call while editing

● After the phone call, the mova returns to the editing screen. Resume editing.

When you receive mail or messages while editing

● Press ⓐ in the message received results screen to return to the previous screen and resume editing. (This applies even when the message received results screen disappears after a certain period of time.)

● If display ends while messages are displayed from the message received results screen, you can return to the previous screen and continue editing.

If the receiver has registered a secret code

● Enter the receiver's secret code (4 digits) before the "@" symbol.

● You do not have to enter the receiver's secret code if it has already been registered in the Phonebook (☞P.80).

● When the address is a "Mobile phone number" or "Mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp", the mova automatically checks whether a secret code is set in the Phonebook. If one is set, the code is sent together with the message (☞P.347).

● If the mail address is registered in the Phonebook as "Mobile phone number + secret code @docomo.ne.jp", mail may not be sent or replied to properly. Change to "Mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp", and then add the secret code.

■ About broadcast mail

You can use your mova to send mail with the same content simultaneously to multiple receivers. You can send to up to 10 different people.
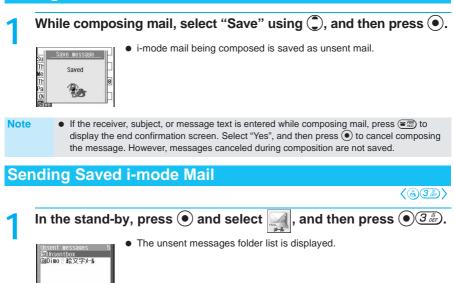
● Charges are the same as when sending each mail individually.

● You can also save frequently used groups of addresses in a mailing list (☞P.361).

● Only the receiver's address is displayed to the other party.

● Mail sent to multiple receivers are saved as 1 sent mail. All the receivers to which the mail was successfully sent are displayed in the sent message display screen.

● The mail is saved as 1 sent mail and 1 unsent mail when the mail fails to reach certain receivers. All addresses for receivers of failed send attempts are displayed in the unsent mail.

Using the Mail Services

Saving i-mode Mail and Sending It Later

When you have to interrupt your work while composing mail, or you wish to save mail you have composed, you can temporarily save the mail on the mova. You can also edit the saved mail before sending it.

● Refer to P.307 to P.309 for details on composing i-mode mail.

Saving i-mode Mail

1 **While composing mail, select "Save" using ○, and then press ●.**

● i-mode mail being composed is saved as unsent mail.

Note ● If the receiver, subject, or message text is entered while composing mail, press 📧 to display the end confirmation screen. Select "Yes", and then press ● to cancel composing the message. However, messages canceled during composition are not saved.

Sending Saved i-mode Mail

⟨🅐3⟩

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select 📧, and then press ●3.**

● The unsent messages folder list is displayed.

2 **Select "Unsentbox", and then press ●.**

● The unsent messages is displayed.

3 **Select a message, and then press ●.**

● The content of the mail is displayed.
When a melody is pasted
● The melody plays.
If "Melody mail" (☞P.363) is set to "Play on Receive" or "No auto play", the melody does not play.
● To stop the melody, press ●. The melody also stops if you switch to a different screen.

4 **Press 📷1 or 🅘 (Send).**

● The mail is sent.
● For unfinished messages and messages you wish to re-edit, press 📷2. The screen to compose the message is displayed. After you finish composing the message, press 🅘 to send.

Note **To confirm/send other unsent messages**
● In the mail display screen, press ⊗. The mova returns to the Unsent messages. Repeat steps 3 and 4.
● In the mail display screen, press ○ to display the previous or next mail display screen.
To confirm attached images
● Press ○ while displaying mail to display the image. Press ○ to return to the mail details screen.

Sending a Melody Using i-mode Mail

You can paste a downloaded melody to mail (☞P.278).

● The number of notes for melodies to send as mail attachments is approximately 90 notes for melody sections 1 to 3 (including rests). The number of notes that can be pasted decreases if the subject or message text has been entered.
● Data, containing main text and melody data, which is less than 250 full-pitch (500 half-pitch) characters can be sent.
● If the receiver uses a mova other than SH506iC, the sent melody may not play correctly.
● A melody and still picture cannot be pasted or attached to the same mail.

1 **Compose a message (☞Steps 1 to 5 on P.307 and P.308).**

2 **Select the "Paste" input field using ⌢, and then press ⏺.**

● The screen to select the data to paste is displayed.

3 **Press ②ABC (Melody).**

● The screen to select the melody to paste is displayed.

To confirm a melody
● Select a melody to confirm, and then press ⓘ (Play).
● To stop playing, press ⓘ (Stop).
● Melodies cannot be played during Manner mode.

To not paste a melody
● Press ④GHI.

4 **Select the melody to paste, and then press ⏺.**

When the pasted melody data is too big
● "Unable to paste. Exceeds max size." is displayed. Check the number of characters of the text and paste again.

5 **Press ⓘ (Send).**

Note	● You can only paste 1 melody per message.
	● Non-pastable melodies ("🎵" displayed) cannot be pasted to mail and sent.
	● You cannot paste mova preset melodies or sound effects.
	To confirm a pasted melody
	● Press ⑧②abc (Play pasted mld) in the mail composition screen.
	● To stop playing, press ⏺.
	● Melodies cannot be played during Manner mode.

Using the Mail Services

Sending an Image Using i-mode Mail

You can compose an Image mail by pasting the URL of an image posted on a website or homepage in the body of your message.

1 **While displaying the site or webpage (☞ Steps 1 and 2 on P.257), press ⓒ, select "■Image mail", and then press ⦿.**

● The mova returns to the site or webpage.

2 **Select an image, and then press ⦿.**

● A screen to compose a message with the image URL entered in the message text is displayed.

3 **Compose and send the message (☞ P.307 and P.308).**

Note	● You can only use this function to paste GIF images.
	● You can also edit pasted URLs.

Composing and Sending i-mode Mail Quickly

Addresses saved in memory numbers 000 to 099 in the phonebook can easily be selected.
● If there are multiple addresses registered for one phonebook entry, the first address registered is entered as the address. The phone number is set as the address if one is not saved.

1 **In the stand-by, enter the last digit of the memory number (0 to 9), or the last two digits of the memory number (10 to 99).**

2 **Press ⓐ.**

● Mail composition screen with the mail address already entered is displayed.

3 **Compose and send the message (☞ P.307 and P.308).**

Note	● This function cannot be used when the Phonebook lock is "☑" (ON) (☞ P.202).
	● When entries registered to memory numbers 000 to 099 are set as secret data, you cannot use "2-touch mailing" to compose and send messages unless you are in Secret mode (☞ P.92 and P.93).

When i-mode Mail is Received

i-mode mail is automatically received from the i-mode center when the mova is within the i-mode service area (when "Receive option" (☞P.315) is "OFF").
Short mail is also received as i-mode mail.

● You can save 334 to 1000 received messages. (The number of messages that can be saved changes depending on the size of received messages.)
● When saving area is not available, the oldest saved unprotected read messages are overwritten (a confirmation screen is not displayed).
● i-mode mail received under the following conditions are held at the i-mode center.

During a call	While i-mode is locked
When using i-αppli	During Ir exchange
The power is OFF	During Self mode
Out of service area	Receive option setting is ON
No space available due to protected and unread mail in Inbox	

● If "Rejecting all short mail" (☞P.354) is set, short mail cannot be received.
● Refer to P.374 for details on receiving short mail.

Note	● You can receive up to 250 full-pitch (500 half-pitch) characters. However, if that limit is exceeded, "/" or "//" is displayed at the end of the message and the exceeded portion is automatically deleted.
	● Mail larger than 250 characters are divided and received as multiple mail when you have increased the number of characters you can receive using the "Character limit" setting (☞P.355).

Explanation of Marks

Mark	Status
✉	You have unread messages. Refer to P.325 to read messages.
✉	mova received messages is full. Check unread messages (☞P.325), disable protected messages (☞P.337), or delete unneeded messages (☞P.338).
📩	Messages are being held at the i-mode center. When you wish to receive, perform "Check new message" (☞P.316).
📩	i-mode center inbox is full. Perform "Check new message" (☞P.316).
🔐	Mail security is on. Enter your terminal security code to confirm your messages (☞P.200).

● Even when messages are held at the i-mode center, "📩" may not be displayed.
● When "Receive option setting" is set to "ON", "📩" and "✉" are not displayed (☞P.315).
● The priority ranking of pictures on the main display are, "📩"　"📩"　"✉"　"✉".
● The priority ranking of pictures on the sub display are, "🔐"　"✉"　"📩"　"✉"　"✉".

Displaying New i-mode Mail

1 **When i-mode mail arrives, it is automatically received ("✉" flashes).**

● Messages cannot be automatically received when "Receive option setting" is set to "ON".

To cancel reception
● While receiving, press ◉.
● Messages that were canceled during reception are held at the i-mode center ("📩" lights).
● Messages may be received, depending on when you cancel.

Receiving

2 **After reception is finished, the message receive results are displayed, and the i-mode mail ring tone sounds ("✉" lights).**

- Received messages are saved in the "Inbox". However, if the message conforms to the "Sort rules", the message is saved to the set folder.
- The mail ring tone sounds when a message is received along with an i-mode mail.

3 **In the message received completion display, select "🦊-mode mail", and then press ⦿.**

- The received message folder list is displayed.
- Folders where unread messages are saved are displayed in pink.

To not display the messages immediately

- If no operations are performed for approximately 30 seconds in the message received completion display, the mova automatically returns to the screen from before reception.
- After approximately 2 seconds in the screen after completing reception, the mova automatically returns to the screen from before reception (☞notes on P.113). In such cases, "i-mode mail" cannot be displayed.
- When this occurs, the mova remains in i-mode stand-by ("🦊" flashes).
- When there are unread messages, messages are automatically displayed in accordance with "Auto message display" (☞P.294).

4 **Select a folder, press ⦿, select a message, and then press ⦿.**

- Refer to P.325 for details on how to view received mail.

Note	● To display new i-mode mail in the Viewer position, press 📱 in the message received results screen (step 2), select "🦊-mode mail", and then press ⦿. Select a folder, press ⦿, select a message, and then press ⦿.

To use Vibrator mode to check whether or not you have new mail

- You can check whether you have any missed calls, recorded messages, or new mail using Vibrator mode by pressing the shutter with the mova closed while in the stand-by display or when in Viewer position. When there are missed calls, recorded messages, or unread mail, "Pattern 1" will activate twice. When none are found, "Pattern 2" will activate twice. Refer to P.98 for vibration patterns.

To silence the ring tone

- Press the following keys.
  - ⦿ . . . . The ring tone stops and the received message folder list is displayed.
  - ⓒⓛⓡ, 🔘 . . . . The ring tone stops and the mova returns to the stand-by display or previous screen.
  - Other keys . . . . The ring tone stops and the message received results screen remains displayed.

When messages are received in a screen other than the stand-by display

- If a received message is displayed from the message received results screen, press ⓒⓛⓡ 3 times to return to the screen from before reception or the stand-by display. If mail was being created, press ⦿, select "Yes", and then press ⦿ to resume operations shown in step 3. If mail was displayed, press ⓒⓛⓡ 3 times to return to the mail composition screen. If "No" is selected and ⦿ pressed, press ⓒⓛⓡ or 🔘 to return to the mail composition screen.
- The mova returns to the stand-by display if the Calculator is being used.

Using the Mail Services

Selecting and Receiving i-mode Mail

You can select i-mode mail held at the i-mode center before receiving it.
● Set the "Receive option setting" to "ON" if you wish to select mail to receive (☞P.361).
● Messages cannot be received automatically when "Receive option setting" is "ON".

When a Message is Received

A screen like the one shown at right or text is displayed when a message arrives at the i-mode center while "Receive option setting" is "ON". "📧" or "📨" is not displayed.
Push any key to return to the previous screen.
● If a call is received while the screen shown at right is displayed and ⌨️ or ⌨️ is pressed, the mova returns to the screen shown at right after the call is finished.

To return the sub display to the stand-by display, press ⌨️ for at least 1 second.

Using the Mail Receive Option

⟨🔋8TUV⟩

1
In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select ✉️, and then press ⦿ 8TUV.

● The mova connects to the i-mode center and a list of messages held at the i-mode center is displayed.

When "Receive option setting" is set to "OFF"
● "Please make sure "Receive option setting" in "Mail setting" is turned ON." is displayed. Press ⦿ to return to the mail menu.

2
Select "   " (Receive) or "   " (Delete) for each message, and then press ⦿.

● "◉" indicates selection.
● To view portions that are not displayed, press ⬍.

To delete all messages held at the i-mode center
● Select "削除" (Delete), located at the very bottom of the Receive option screen, and then press ⦿. After the confirmation screen is displayed, press "決定" to delete all messages held at the i-mode center.

3
After selecting the messages you wish to receive/delete, select "受信／削除" (Receive/Delete), and then press ⦿.

4
Select "決定" (Yes), and then press ⦿.

To re-select mail to receive or delete
● Select "キャンセル" (Cancel), and then press ⦿.

5
To display received mail, press ⦿, select "Yes", press ⦿, and then perform steps 3 and 4 on P.314.

315

Checking for Messages at the i-mode Center

⟨🔒⟩⟨7₍₎⟩

Messages are held at the i-mode center if they arrive during a phone call or when out of the i-mode service area (☞P.313 for details). You can check for messages at the i-mode center and retrieve any messages held there.

● You can set the type of check (i-mode mail, Message Request, Message Free) to be performed at the i-mode center for Check new message (☞P.360).
● Even when "Receive option setting" is "ON", all mails are received if you check for new messages.
● If you check for new messages and do so again while "📨" is still flashing, the types that were inquired in the previous check may not be checked.
● The default setting is to check for all types.

1 In the stand-by, press ● and select 📧, and then press ●⑦₍₎.

● Check new message begins.
● Following the settings for Check new message (☞P.360), messages are checked in the order of "i-mode mail" ➡ "Message Request" ➡ "Message Free".
  (Marks indicating checking ("✉", "Ⓡ", "Ⓕ") are displayed in order.)

To check for new messages with the mova closed or in Viewer position
● In stand-by, press 🔘 for at least 1 second.

To cancel reception
● While receiving, press ●. Press 🔘 if the mova is closed. When in Viewer position, press 🔘.
● Messages that were canceled during reception are held at the i-mode center ("✉" lights).
● Messages may be received, depending on when you cancel.

2 The results of Check new message is displayed. The i-mode mail ring tone sounds if there are new messages at the center.

● Check new message is completed.
● "0" is displayed as the number of messages when no messages are being held at the center.
● The mail ring tone sounds when a message is received along with an i-mode mail.

To stop the mail ring tone
● Press ②₍₎.
● You can also silence the tone by pressing other keys. Refer to P.314 for details.

3 Select "📨-mode mail" in the message received completion display, and then press ●.

● The received message folder list is displayed.
● Folders where unread messages are saved are displayed in pink.

To not display the messages immediately
● The mova returns to the mail menu if idle for approximately 30 seconds in the received completion display.
● The mova stays in i-mode stand-by status ("📨" flashes).
● Messages received during Check new message are not displayed automatically.

4 Select a folder, press ●, select a message, and then press ●.

● Refer to P.325 for details on how to view received mail.

Note	● Also check for new messages by pressing 🅐 twice in the stand-by display or press 4️⃣ in the i-mode menu.
	● Refer to P.313 for meanings of the marks displayed at the top of the screen and results from "Check new message".

Replying to i-mode Mail

There are two ways you can reply to mail: you can reply with quotes from the original message or without them.

● You cannot reply to a message when the sent mail saving area is full.

1 Display message (☞ Steps 1 to 3 on P.325).

2 Press 🛈 or 📷 2️⃣ (Reply).

● "Re:" is included at the beginning of the subject of received mail. Portions that exceed 15 full-pitch (30 half-pitch) characters are deleted.

When you select a mail you cannot reply to

● "Invalid reply address" is displayed.

To "Reply with quote"

● Press 📷 4️⃣.

● ">" is inserted in the beginning of the message and text from the received message is quoted.

3 Compose and send mail (☞ P.307 and P.308).

● The "Receiver" input field is already filled in with the other party's mail address.

● When a message is replied to, the icon in the Inbox changes to "🔄".

To save a message being composed

● Select "Save" in the screen to compose a message, and then press ⬤ to save as an unsent message.

Using the Mail Services

317

Replying while Referring to Received Mail <Reply with Quote>

Reply to received mail while referring to that message.

1 **Display message (☞ Steps 1 to 3 on P.325).**

2 **Press ⓒ (3ᵈᵉᶠ) (Reply w/ quote).**

- The original message is displayed in the bottom half of the screen.

To scroll the original message
- Press ⓒ and select "■Switch window" or press (☎) for at least 1 second and switch to the original mail, and then press (.).
- Press (⬇) to scroll down one screen at a time. Press (⬆) to scroll up one screen at a time.
- Press (i) (Return) or (CLR) to return to the message entry screen.

3 **Enter the message, and then press (●).**

- The mail composition screen is displayed.
- The "Receiver" input field is already filled in with the other party's mail address.

4 **Press (i) (Send).**

Reply Quickly <Quick Reply Mail>

Reply easily from received mail details screen, such as when in Viewer position.
- Save the message text with "Quick reply mail" (☞P.360) in advance. Up to 10 can be registered.

1 **Display the message in Viewer position (☞ Steps 1 to 5 on P.326).**

2 **Press ▱ (right guidance key), select "①Quick reply", and then press ⓪.**

To check the message
- Select a message, and then press ▱ (left guidance key).

Using the Mail Services

3 **Select the message with ⬤, and then press ⬤.**

● Check the receiver, subject, and message.

4 **Press ⬤ (left guidance key) (Send).**

● The mail is sent.

Note	
	● To use Quick reply in Normal position, press ⓐ①₁₌ₐ in the mail details screen, select the message, press ⬤, and then press ⓘ (Send).
	● If you press ☎ᴾᵂᴿₕₗ₀ while composing mail, the end confirmation screen is displayed. Select "Yes", and then press ⬤ to cancel composing the message. However, messages canceled during composition are not saved. (The end confirmation screen is not displayed for Quick reply in Normal position.)
	● Mail is not saved if ☎ᴾᵂᴿₕₗ₀ is pressed in the reply screen while it is unedited.
	● The subject of the reply message is the subject of the original message with "Re:" at the beginning. Portions that exceed 15 full-pitch (30 half-pitch) characters (includes "Re:") are deleted.
	● Portions, including the ">" and main text, that exceed 250 full-pitch (500 half-pitch) characters are deleted.
	● You cannot reply to messages when the original address is longer than 50 characters, is an "iMS", or a "Friend mail 12" of an "ⅰmode Mail Plus". "📧" is displayed in the received message display screen for messages you cannot reply to.
	● When using reply with quote, melodies attached to the original message is not automatically pasted.
	● You must add the secret code to the mail address if the receiver has registered a secret code.
	● Even when "Auto signature" (☞P.359) is set to "ON", the signature is not automatically pasted to messages replying with a quote.
	● When replying to a message that contains i-αppli To, the i-αppli To is not included when replying with a quote.
	● Short mail replying to "photo-server@docomo-camera.ne.jp" will not be delivered.

Using the Mail Services

319

Forwarding i-mode Mail to Other Addresses

You can forward i-mode mail received on your mova to other people. You can also forward received short mail as i-mode mail.

● You cannot forward mail when the sent mail saving area is full.

1 **Display message (☞Steps 1 to 3 on P.325).**

2 **Press ⊙5ₖₗᴮ (Forward).**

● The screen to compose message is displayed.

3 **Compose and send the message (☞P.307 and P.308).**

● The icon displayed in the Inbox changes to "🗐".

To save a message being composed

● Select "Save" in the screen to compose a message, and then press ⊙ to save as an unsent message.

Note	● If you press ☎ while composing mail, the end confirmation screen is displayed. Select "Yes", and then press ⊙ to cancel composing the message. However, messages canceled during composition are not saved.
	● Mail is not saved if ☎ is pressed in the mail forwarding screen while it is unedited.
	● "Currently using phonebook" is displayed if you attempt to forward mail that is received while operating the phonebook and you attempt to use Search phonebook to select the address. Finish phonebook operations before forwarding the mail.
	● The subject for the forwarded message is the subject of the original message with "Fw:" at the beginning. Portions that exceed 15 full-pitch (30 half-pitch) characters (includes "Fw:") are deleted.
	● The quoted message in the reply mail may be edited. After editing, portions that exceed 250 full-pitch (500 half-pitch) characters are deleted.
	● Even when "Auto signature" (☞P.359) is set to "ON", signatures are not automatically added when forwarding mail.
	● The receiver is not able to view images if mail sent by i-shot is forwarded to a PC or another manufacturer's mobile phone.
	● When replying to a message that contains i-αppli To, the i-αppli To is not included when replying with a quote.
	When a melody was pasted to the message you wish to forward
	● The melody is also forwarded. However, they may not be able to play the melody properly using a phone other than the SH506iC.
	● "This melody is not pastable data. It cannot be transferred." is displayed after step 2 and the pasted melody is deleted when the pasted melody cannot be pasted again.
	● You cannot forward a message if the total of the message and pasted melody exceeds 250 full-pitch (500 half-pitch) characters.

Using the Mail Services

Saving i-mode Mail Sender to the Phonebook

You can save mail addresses or phone numbers used in sent and received mail to the Phonebook. You can also save mail addresses written in the text of a received message to the Phonebook.

- When saving to the Phonebook, you can select "New" to create a new phonebook entry or "Add/Update" to add to/update an existing entry.
- For mail received from short mail, the sender's phone number is registered in the phone number field in the Phonebook.
- Mail addresses that exceed 50 half-pitch characters cannot be registered to the phonebook.
- You cannot add to the Phonebook when Keypad dial lock has been set.
- You cannot add a new entry to the Phonebook when the number of saved entries has already reached 750.
- Mail addresses with over 50 characters, addresses with "iMS" (Short mail), "Friend mail 12", of an "┊Mode Mail plus" cannot be added.

Adding a Sender/Receiver Mail Address to the Phonebook

1 **Display a message (☞ Steps 1 to 3 on P.325).**

2 **For received messages, press ⓒ⑨ (Save address).**

For sent mail
- Press ⓒ⑥.

For unsent mail
- Press ⓒ⑤.

3 **Press ① (New).**

- The screen to enter phonebook data is displayed.
- The mail address of the sender or receiver is entered in the phonebook mail address column.

To add to/update an existing entry
- Press ②.
- The search phonebook screen is displayed.

4 **Register the various setting items, and then press ⓘ (Complete).**

- Refer to P.77 to P.79 for information on registering to the Phonebook.

Note	- "Currently using phonebook" is displayed if you attempt to save the sender of mail that is received to the phonebook while operating the phonebook. Finish phonebook operations before saving.

To save from sent and unsent messages
- There may be more than one address.
  In this case, the mova returns to the select address screen after step 2. Select the address you wish to add, and then press ●.

Saving Phone Numbers and Mail Addresses in the Text to the Phonebook

1 **Display a message (☞Steps 1 to 3 on P.325), select the phone number or mail address you wish to add, and then press ⓒ⓪.**

2 **Perform steps 3 and 4 on P.321.**

Save Melody

Extracting a Melody from an i-mode Mail

You can save melodies pasted to i-mode mail.
Once you save a received melody, you can set that melody as the ring tone or paste it to a message.

● You can save up to 60 melodies, including ones you received and those you saved.
● The mova automatically plays a melody pasted to a mail or message when the mail or message is displayed. However, if "Melody mail" (☞P.363) is set to "Play on receive" or "No auto play" or if "Paste data" (☞P.364) is set to "Disable" or if Manner mode (☞P.96) is set, the melody will not play.

1 **Display a received message that has a pasted melody (☞Steps 1 to 3 on P.325).**

● The melody is played automatically.

To stop the melody
● Press ⦿. The melody also stops if you switch to a different screen.

2 **Press ⓒ⁕ (Save melody).**

● The screen to save melodies is displayed.

3 **Press ① (Play all).**

● When set as the ring tone, the entire melody is played.

To save the portion to play
● Press ②. The portion set in advance is played when set as the ring tone.

When 60 melodies are already registered
● Select the number of the melody to overwrite, and then press ⦿. Select "Yes", and then press ⦿.

| Note | ● Melodies sent from mobile phones other than mova SH506iC may not play properly. |

Displaying Image Mail Images

When Image mail (messages containing URLs that begin with "http://" and end with ".gif") is received, the image is automatically downloaded and displayed in the body of the mail. However, if you have set "Image mail" (☞P.364) to "Manual download", the image is not displayed.

Downloaded images are saved in an exclusive cache. You can display an image from the cache without connecting to i-mode if the image has been saved in the cache.

● You can download at least 5 images to the cache.
● The image from the oldest image mail is deleted from the cache and the new image is saved in its place if you download a new image when the cache is full.

Viewing Images

Displaying images in unread Image mail

When unread mail that has an image attached is displayed, the mova automatically connects to i-mode and the image is downloaded. After download is completed, the image is displayed (when "Download on open" is set in "Image mail" (☞P.364)).

● Marks displaying the status of images have the following meanings.

🖼	Displayed when images are being acquired.
🖼	Displayed when the image could not be acquired or image acquisition is canceled.

● If "Image mail" (☞P.364) is set to "Manual download", select the URL contained in the message, and then press ⬤.
  The mova connects to i-mode and downloads the image. After download is completed, the image is displayed.
● Even if the image mail setting is set to "Download on open", still pictures sent with i-shot are not retrieved automatically.

Displaying images contained in read Image mail

An image is displayed from the cache without connecting to i-mode if the image is saved in the cache when you display a previously read Image mail that contains a pasted image (when "Download on open" is set in "Image mail").

"Image attached Download?" is displayed if the image is not in the cache.

Select "Yes", and then press ⬤ to connect to i-mode and download the image. After download is completed, the image is displayed.

● If "Image mail" (☞P.364) is set to "Manual download", select the URL contained in the message, and then press ⬤. The mova connects to i-mode and downloads the image.

Note	● While an image mail image is displayed, press ⬤ to display the image URL.
	● You cannot display URLs that begin with "https://" as image mail.
	● When "Image mail" (☞P.364) is set to "Manual download" and multiple images are contained in the message text, select one URL, and then press ⬤. The display can only show one image at a time.

Using the Mail Services

Saving Images

You can set an image as the stand-by display if you save an image from Image mail to My picture (☞P.184).

● The image is saved in the "Download" folder in My picture (☞P.150).
● You can save up to 700 images. However, the maximum number of images you can save may differ depending on status of memory use. For example, if you save only images that are 20KB, you can only save up to 249 images.

1 **Display a received message that has a pasted image (☞Steps 1 to 3 on P.325).**

● The screen at left is when "Download on open" is selected for "Image mail" (P.364). Select the URL of the image, and then press ⦿ if "Manual download" is set.

2 **Press ⦿, select "█Save image", and then press ⦿.**

3 **Select the image, and then press ⦿.**

● The screen to save images is displayed.

4 **Press 1 (Save to My pic).**

● The selected image is saved in the "Download" folder in My picture.

When there is no memory area or the maximum number (☞P.119) is exceeded

● A confirmation screen is displayed. Select "Yes", and then press ⦿. The screen to select data to delete is displayed. Select still pictures and i-αppli to delete until the bar below reaches 100% to save the shot still picture.

To set as the stand-by display

● Press a key from 2 (Stand-by dsp) to 8 (Guidance key). Refer to "Setting an Image as the Stand-by Display" (☞P.184) for details on Stand-by display settings.
● When a file format cannot be read, the selection item is displayed in gray.

Note	● The Image mail must be protected while the image is displayed in order to protect the image (☞P.337).

Displaying Messages in Inbox/Outbox

《 📱①.🅰 / 📱②🅰 / 📱③🅰 》

Confirm sent/received/unsent messages. You can use i-mode mail to send messages with up to 250 full-pitch characters and receive messages with up to 2000 full-pitch characters.

● "/" or "//" is inserted at the end of i-mode mail exceeding 250 full-pitch (500 half-pitch) characters. Exceeding portions are deleted automatically. You cannot view the deleted portions.

● When "Character limit setting" (☞P.355) is set, received mail that exceed 250 full-pitch (500 half-pitch) characters are divided into multiple 250 full-pitch character messages up to a total of 2000 full-pitch characters.

● Up to a combined total of 101 unsent and sent messages can be saved. However, up to 100 sent or unsent messages can be saved.

● You can save 334 to 1000 received messages (the number of messages that can be saved changes depending on the size of received messages).

● You can use folders to manage sent/received messages.

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select 📧, and then press ●①.🅰 (Inbox).**

● The Inbox folder mark is displayed in pink when you have unread messages.

To check sent mail
● In the stand-by, press ● and select 📧, press ●②🅰. The Outbox is displayed in step 2.

To check unsent mail
● In the stand-by, press ● and select 📧, press ●③🅰. The Unsent messages are displayed in step 2.

2 **Select a folder, and then press ●.**

● The Inbox is displayed.

To view sender's addresses
● Press 📷④🅰.

3 **Select the message, and then press ●.**

```
Inbox                    1
 ● 🕐20/07/2004  14:08
   ✉Inoue Kaori
 🗐Bowling
Nice to meet you!
I'm Kaori Inoue.
This will be my first bo
wling gathering.
Thanks.
```
Mail display screen

● The content of the mail is displayed.

4 **Press 📞 PWR HLD when finished checking.**

Using the Mail Services

325

To Display Mail in Viewer Position

1 **In the Stand-by in Viewer position, press ◉.**

● The TOP menu is displayed (☞P.24).

2 **Select 📧 with ⬍, and then press ◉.**

● The mail menu is displayed.

3 **Select "Inbox" with ⬍, and then press ◉.**

To check sent mail
● Select "Outbox", and then press ◉. The sent mail list is displayed in step 4.

To view unsent mail
● Select "Unsent messages", and then press ◉. The unsent mail list is displayed in step 4.

4 **Select a folder with ⬍, and then press ◉.**

● The Inbox is displayed.

To view sender's addresses
● Press ▭ (right guidance key), select "④Check address" with ⬍, and then press ◉.

5 **Select mail with ⬍, and then press ◉.**

● The content of the mail is displayed.

6 **To end checking, press ⓒ for at least 1 second.**

Note	**To make a call from a displayed message**

● Press ⓐ in the message display screen, select "■Call from entry" ("❽Call from entry" for unsent messages, "⓪Call from entry" for sent messages), and then press ◉. Next, press ◉ (Call) to dial.

To check other messages
● Press ⓒ in the mail display to return to the mail list, and then repeat step 3.

Screen operations
● The following key operations can be performed while displaying mail.

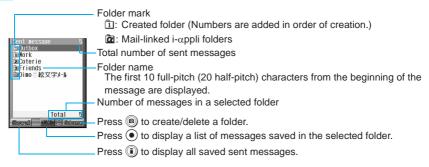| Operation	When in Normal position	When in Viewer position
Scroll down	⌄	●
Scroll up	⌃	●
Scroll down a screen	⊡	▭ (right guidance key) for at least 1 second
Scroll up a screen	⊡	▭ (left guidance key) for at least 1 second
Auto scroll down*	#̄ for at least 1 second	—
Auto scroll up*	*̄ for at least 1 second	—
Display next mail	◯	●
Display previous mail	◯	●

* Press #̄, *̄ or a dial key to stop auto scroll.

To use Assistant view
● Press ⓥ during a call to display and copy mail. You can display other mail while composing mail. When in Viewer position, press the shutter. (☞P.478)

Using the Mail Services

Viewing the Folder List

■ Outbox folders list

Folder mark
- 🔢: Created folder (Numbers are added in order of creation.)
- 🔒: Mail-linked i-αppli folders

Total number of sent messages

Folder name
The first 10 full-pitch (20 half-pitch) characters from the beginning of the message are displayed.

Number of messages in a selected folder

Press 📷 to create/delete a folder.

Press ● to display a list of messages saved in the selected folder.

Press ⓘ to display all saved sent messages.

■ Inbox folders list

Folder mark
- 🔢: Created folder (Numbers are added in order of creation.)
- 🔒: Mail-linked i-αppli folders
  (Displayed in pink when there are unread messages.)

Total number of received messages

Folder name
The first 10 full-pitch (20 half-pitch) characters from the beginning of the message are displayed.
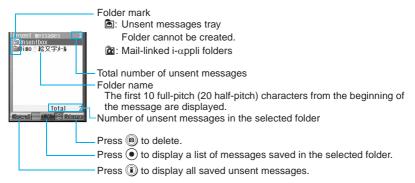
Number of unread messages in the selected folder/Total number of messages in the selected folder

Press 📷 to create/delete a folder.

Press ● to display a list of messages saved in the selected folder.

Press ⓘ to display all saved received messages.

■ Unsent messages folders list

Folder mark
- 📤: Unsent messages tray
  Folder cannot be created.
- 🔒: Mail-linked i-αppli folders

Total number of unsent messages

Folder name
The first 10 full-pitch (20 half-pitch) characters from the beginning of the message are displayed.

Number of unsent messages in the selected folder

Press 📷 to delete.

Press ● to display a list of messages saved in the selected folder.

Press ⓘ to display all saved unsent messages.

Using the Mail Services

327

Note	● When deleting Mail-linked i-αppli, you can choose to delete other automatically composed mail folders at the same time. However, you cannot delete folders or software when there are protected messages in the mail folder.

● When deleting Mail-linked i-αppli, you can choose to delete other automatically composed mail folders at the same time. However, you cannot delete folders or software when there are protected messages in the mail folder.

● Select the Mail-linked i-αppli folder, press ⓐ, select "View i-mode mail", and then press ⊙. You can display the mail list in the folder without activating Mail-linked i-αppli.

To copy to a miniSD memory card

● You can copy the data saved on your mova onto a miniSD memory card (☞P.449) or display mail saved on a miniSD memory card (☞P.450).

● You can copy mail from a miniSD memory card to the mova (☞P.452).

Ir exchange

● You can send mail data saved on your mova with Ir (☞P.438) or receive mail data with Ir exchange (☞P.439).

It is recommended that contents of saved mail be saved on a memo or on a miniSD memory card (☞P.444). You can also use Data Link software (☞P.553) and a USB cable (sold separately) to save to your PC.
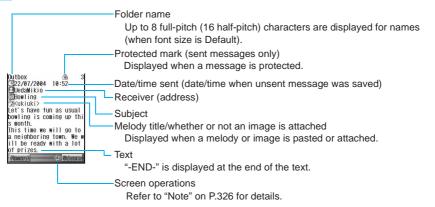
● Malfunction, repairs, or other handling of the mova may cause loss of registered contents. DoCoMo cannot be held responsible in any way for the loss of data registered in the mail.

Using the Mail Services

Viewing Outbox/Inbox and Display Screen

Viewing the Outbox/Unsent messages

Picture call
Displayed when the other party's image is registered in the Phonebook.
Even if an image is not registered, the image is displayed when set in the phonebook as a group and a Picture call image is registered in that group.

Folder name
Up to 9 full-pitch (18 half-pitch) characters from the beginning of the message are displayed.

Type of mail (Protected/Unprotected)
- 📧: Sent mail   📧: Sent mail (Protected)
- 📧: Unsent mail
- 📧: Sent short mail   📧: Sent short mail (Protected)
- 📧: Unsent short mail
- 📧: Mail sent by Mail-linked i-αppli
- 📧: Mail sent by Mail-linked i-αppli (Protected)
- 📧: Mail-linked i-αppli unsent mail

When data is attached
- 📄: Indicates a pasted melody
- 🖼: Indicates an image is attached
- 🖼: Indicates an i-shot image is attached

Subject ("Untitled" is displayed for messages with no subject)
The message subject is displayed.

Press 📷 to move or delete a message.

Press 🔘 to edit a message.

Viewing the sent/unsent messages screen

Folder name
Up to 8 full-pitch (16 half-pitch) characters are displayed for names (when font size is Default).

Protected mark (sent messages only)
Displayed when a message is protected.

Date/time sent (date/time when unsent message was saved)

Receiver (address)

Subject

Melody title/whether or not an image is attached
Displayed when a melody or image is pasted or attached.

Text
"-END-" is displayed at the end of the text.

Screen operations
Refer to "Note" on P.326 for details.

● The receiver's name is displayed in the receiver column when the receiver's mail address is saved in the Phonebook. The phone number or mail address is displayed when it is not saved in the Phonebook. Names are not displayed when Phonebook lock is set or when the phonebook entry is set as secret data (names in entries set as secret data (☞P.92) are displayed only when Secret mode (☞P.93) is set to "ON").

Display the key operations list

For sent mail, select "■Key list" using 📷🔘, and then press 🔘 to display the key list.
For unsent mail, press 📷✳ to display the key list.

● When in Viewer position, the display is sometimes different.

Using the Mail Services

329

Viewing the Inbox

Picture call
Displayed when the other party's image is registered in the Phonebook. Even if an image is not registered, the image is displayed when set in the phonebook as a group and a Picture call image is registered in that group.

Folder name
Up to 9 full-pitch (18 half-pitch) characters from the beginning of the message are displayed.

Type of mail (Protected/Unprotected)
- ✉: Unread mail   ✉🔒: Unread mail (Protected)
- 📨: Read mail   📨🔒: Read mail (Protected)
- 🗐: Mail that has been read and replied to
- 🗐🔒: Mail that has been read and replied to (Protected)
- 🗐: Mail that has been read and forwarded
- 🗐🔒: Mail that has been read and forwarded (Protected)
- 🈁: Unread Mail-linked i-αppli mail
- 🈁🔒: Unread Mail-linked i-αppli mail (Protected)
- 📱: Read mail using Mail-linked i-αppli
- 📱🔒: Read mail using Mail-linked i-αppli (Protected)
- 🅜: Mail that has been read and replied to using Mail-linked i-αppli
- 🅜🔒: Mail that has been read and replied to using Mail-linked i-αppli (Protected)
- 🅕: Mail that has been read and forwarded using Mail-linked i-αppli
- 🅕🔒: Mail that has been read and forwarded using Mail-linked i-αppli (Protected)

When data is attached
- 🎵: Indicates a pasted melody
- 🖼: Indicates an image is attached
  (red: cached, gray: not cached)
- 🆔: Indicates that i-αppli To information is attached.

Subject
The message subject is displayed.
("Untitled" is displayed for messages with no subject)
"(1/3)" or the equivalent is displayed in the subject line when a divided message has no subject.

Press 🔘 to move or delete a message.

Press 🔘 to reply to the message (only Read mail).
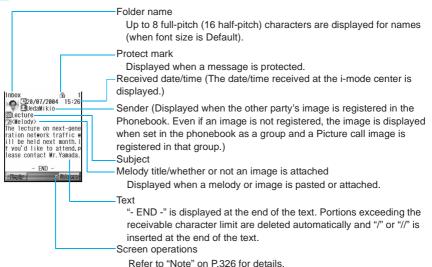
- The default setting displays the messages starting in order with the latest message that was received at the i-mode center. (The display method can be changed. ☞P.336)
- The following is displayed depending on the sender when the message is a short mail.
  - When the other party's phone number is sent and is also registered in the Phonebook
  . . . . Name registered in the Phonebook
  - When the other party's phone number is sent but is not registered in the Phonebook
  . . . ."090 (or 080, etc.) XXXXXXXX (   )"
  - If the sender is anonymous . . . . "User unset (   )"
  - When the caller uses a payphone to send . . . . "Payphone (   )"

[Divided mail]

- (1/3), (2/3), (3/3) or the equivalent based on the number of divisions is displayed in the subject line when you receive a long message divided into several messages.

- You can reply to any of the divided message sections (☞P.317).
- Unread/Protected Mark
  - 🗐: Unread divided message
  - 📨: Read divided message
  - 🗐🔒: Unread divided message (Protected)
  - 📨🔒: Read divided message (Protected)

"- CONTINUE -" is displayed at the end of all divided messages except the last message.

Using the Mail Services

■ Viewing the Inbox screen

Folder name
　Up to 8 full-pitch (16 half-pitch) characters are displayed for names
　(when font size is Default).

Protect mark
　Displayed when a message is protected.

Received date/time (The date/time received at the i-mode center is
displayed.)

Sender (Displayed when the other party's image is registered in the
Phonebook. Even if an image is not registered, the image is displayed
when set in the phonebook as a group and a Picture call image is
registered in that group.)

Subject

Melody title/whether or not an image is attached
　Displayed when a melody or image is pasted or attached.

Text
　"- END -" is displayed at the end of the text. Portions exceeding the
　receivable character limit are deleted automatically and "/" or "//" is
　inserted at the end of the text.

Screen operations
　　Refer to "Note" on P.326 for details.

● The sender's name is displayed in the sender column when the sender's mail address is
saved in the Phonebook. The phone number or mail address is displayed when it is not
saved in the Phonebook.
Names are not displayed when the Phonebook lock is set or when the phonebook entry is
set as secret data.
(Names in entries set as secret data are displayed when Secret mode is set to "ON".)

● If the image URL is displayed in the text and the image is saved in My picture, press ⬡ in
the message display screen to display received/saved images.

● You can receive image data of up to 20KB in size.

■ Displaying the key operations list

Press ◉⬡, select "■Key list", and then press ⬤. The key list is displayed.

● When in Viewer position, the display is sometimes different.

Creating/Editing/Deleting Folders

Creating a folder

You can divide sent/received messages and manage them in up to 10 different folders ("Outbox", "Inbox", and Mail-linked i-αppli folders are not counted). You can edit folder names and delete folders you create (however, you cannot edit the names or delete the "Outbox" and "Inbox").

1 In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select 📧, and then press ⦿ ①
(Inbox).

● The inbox folder list is displayed.

To display the outbox folder list
● In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select 📧, and then press ⦿ ②.

2 Press 📷 ① (New folder).

● The screen to enter the folder name is displayed.

3 Enter the new folder name, and then press ⦿.

● The folder is created.
● You can enter up to 10 full-pitch (20 half-pitch) characters.

Note	● When Mail-linked i-αppli is downloaded, Mail-linked i-αppli folders are automatically created in the Outbox, Inbox, and Unsent messages.
	● The name of the downloaded Mail-linked i-αppli will be the name of the Mail-linked i-αppli folder, and cannot be edited.

Editing folder names

You can change the names of folders.
● You cannot change the names of the "Outbox", "Inbox", and "Mail-linked i-αppli" folders.

1 In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select 📧, and then press ⦿ ①
(Inbox).

● The inbox folder list is displayed.

To display the outbox folder list
● In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select 📧, and then press ⦿ ②.

2 Select a folder, and then press 📷 ② (Edit folder name).

● The screen to edit the folder name is displayed.

3 Enter the new folder name, and then press ⦿.

● Press 🔘 for at least 1 second to delete the current folder name.
● You can enter up to 10 full-pitch (20 half-pitch) characters.

Using the Mail Services

◢ Deleting folders

You can delete any folders you have created.
- You cannot delete the "Outbox", "Inbox", and "Mail-linked i-αppli" folders.
- You can also delete folders containing saved mail.

1 **In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select [icon], and then press ⦿①/.₂ (Inbox).**

- The inbox folder list is displayed.

To display the outbox folder list
- In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select [icon], and then press ⦿②ₐᵦᵪ.

2 **Select a folder, and then press 📷④ᴳᴴᴵ (Delete).**

3 **To delete a received messages folder, press ④ᴳᴴᴵ (Delete folder).**

- The screen to enter your terminal security code is displayed.

To delete the outbox folder
- Press ②ₐᵦᵪ.

4 **Enter your terminal security code (4 digits), select "Yes", and then press ⦿.**
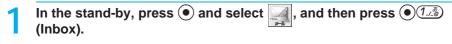
When a folder contains protected messages
- Cancel the protection setting for any protected messages, and try again.

Note	● You cannot delete a folder when there is an i-αppli software that supports Mail-linked i-αppli folders. Delete the i-αppli software, and then delete folder. Also, when there is no i-αppli software that supports the Mail-linked i-αppli folder, folders can be deleted, but all other Mail-linked i-αppli folders will also be deleted if you delete an i-αppli folder created in a sent mail, received mail, or unsent mail list.

◢ Moving folders

Move folders up 1 spot at a time to change the order of the folders.
- You cannot move the "Outbox", "Inbox", and "Mail-linked i-αppli" folders.

1 **In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select [icon], and then press ⦿①/.₂ (Inbox).**

- The inbox folder list is displayed.

To display the outbox folder list
- In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select [icon], and then press ⦿②ₐᵦᵪ.

2 **Select a folder, and then press 📷⑥ᴹᴺᴼ (Move folder ( )).**

- The folder moves 1 spot up.

Using the Mail Services

333

Moving Sent and Received Mail to Folders <Move i-mode Mail>

You can manage mail by moving different types of mail messages to different folders.
● Sent mail is automatically saved in the "Outbox" folder. Received mail is automatically saved in the "Inbox" folder.
However, messages that match the "Sort rules" are saved to specified folders.
● Sent/Received messages can automatically be sorted to folders (☞P.357).

1 **Display the message list (☞Steps 1 and 2 on P.325).**

2 **Select a message, and then press ⓐ①.ⓐ (Move).**

3 **Press ①.ⓐ (Move one).**

To move all mail in a folder
● Press ②ᴬᴮᶜ.

To move multiple selected mail
● Press ③ᴰᴱᶠ, select the mail to move, and then press ●. (The mark changes to "☑". To cancel a selection, select a mail with "☑" displayed, and then press ●.) Select all mail to move, and then press ⓘ (Complete).

4 **Select the destination folder, and then press ●.**

Note	● Received i-αppli messages can be manually moved into folders which are automatically created when Mail-linked i-αppli are downloaded.
	To move messages to folders from the mail display screen
	● Press ⓐ⑦ᴬᴮᶜ in the sent mail display or ⓐ in the received mail display and select "●Move one", press ●, select the folder to move to, and then press ●.

Changing the Display Method for Message List <Switch View Mode>

Set Message list display method to "Subject display", "Name display", "Picture display", or "Preview display".

● The default setting is "Picture display".

Subject display	Name display	Picture display	Preview display
Subject, time (if today), and date (if not today) are displayed.	Name (mail address if not registered in the phonebook), time (if today), and date (if not today) are displayed.	Image registered in the phonebook, name (mail address if not registered in the phonebook), and subject are displayed.	Subject, message text, time (if today), and date (if not today) are displayed. The message cannot be scrolled.

To view the sender's address

● Select a message in the Inbox, and then press ⑧④.

1 **Display the message list (☞ Steps 1 and 2 on P.325).**

2 **Press ⑧③ (Switch view mode).**

3 **Select a view mode, and then press ●.**

Changing the Display Order of the Inbox/Outbox

You can change the display method of the message list (Sort).

● The default setting for the order of both sent and received mail is "By date (new ➡ old)".

Display orders for mail

[Display order for Sent messages]

By date: old new	Oldest sent messages appear at the top
By address	Messages are sorted by the receiver's mail addresses in the following order: numbers ➡ upper case Alphabet ➡ lower case Alphabet
By subject	Messages are sorted by subject in the following order: half-pitch characters (symbols ➡ numbers ➡ upper case Alphabet ➡ lower case Alphabet ➡ Katakana) ➡ full-pitch characters (symbols ➡ numbers ➡ upper case Alphabet ➡ lower case Alphabet ➡ Hiragana ➡ Katakana ➡ symbols/special characters ➡ Kanji ➡ pictographs) (In order of character code within each character type)
Protected mail prfd*	In the order of protected mail ➡ normal mail
Melody mail prfd*	In the order of Melody mail ➡ i-shot mail ➡ Image mail ➡ normal mail
i-shot mail prfd*	In the order of i-shot mail ➡ Melody mail ➡ Image mail ➡ normal mail
Image mail prfd*	In the order of Image mail ➡ Melody mail ➡ i-shot mail ➡ normal mail

*All lists are displayed in order of "By date: new   old".

[Display order for Received messages]

By date: old new	Oldest received messages appear at the top
By address	In the order of numbers ➡ upper case Alphabet ➡ lower case Alphabet
By subject	"Sorted by subject", as shown above for sent messages (For Short mail, messages are sorted by the sender's phone number. The name registered in the Phonebook is not the target.)
Unrd/Protect/rd*	In the order of unread mail ➡ protected mail ➡ read mail
Melody mail prfd*	In the order of Melody mail ➡ Image mail ➡ messages that contain i-αppli To ➡ normal mail
Image mail prfd*	In the order of Image mail ➡ Melody mail ➡ messages that contain i-αppli To ➡ normal mail
i-αppli prfd*	In the order of messages that contain i-αppli To ➡ Melody mail ➡ Image mail ➡ normal mail
Mail size limit*	In the order of divided mail ➡ normal mail

*All lists are displayed in order of "By date: new   old".

1 **Display the message list (☞ Steps 1 and 2 on P.325).**

2 **For received messages, press ⓒ 5̄ (Sort).**

For sent mail
● Press ⓒ 4̄.

3 **Enter the number of the display order you wish to set.**

● The display method is changed.

Note	● When a screen other than the message list is displayed, the display method returns to the default setting ("By date: new old"). However, if the display method is changed, the mail display screen is viewed, and ⊗ʷ is pressed, the display method remains changed.

Coloring Specific Messages in the Inbox/Outbox

You can color icons for specific messages so that they stand out in the message list.
● The default color for the marker is "None".

1 **Display the message list (☞Steps 1 and 2 on P.325), and then choose a message to change marker color.**

2 **Press ⓒ⑥ꟷ (Marker) for received mail.**

Marker color
1 None
2 Blue
3 Red
4 Orange

For sent mail
● Press ⓒ⑤ₖₗ.

For unsent mail
● Press ⓒ④ₕᵢ.

3 **Enter the number of the Background color.**

● The mail icon is marked with the selected color.

Protecting Sent and Received Mail

You can protect sent or received messages or clear protection on already protected messages. If protected, mail cannot be deleted as a group.
● You can protect up to 50 sent messages. However, if unsent messages are also protected, you can only protect up to 50 messages including both sent and unsent messages.
● You can protect up to 100 received messages.

1 **Display the message you wish to protect/disable (☞Steps 1 to 3 on P.325).**

2 **For received messages, press ⓒ⑧ᴛᵁⱽ (Protect set).**

Bowling
Let's have fun at the an
nu   **Protect set**
Th 1 ON
he 2 OFF
y in the neighbouring to

For sent mail
● Press ⓒ⑤ₖₗ.

3 **Press ①• (ON).**

● Protected messages are indicated in the message display screen with "🔒". Refer to P.329 and P.330 for details.

To disable
● Press ②ₐᵦᴄ.

Deleting Sent and Received Mail

You can delete one message at a time or delete multiple messages at once. You can also delete groups of selected mail.

● Protected messages cannot be collectively deleted.
● Depending on the type of i-αppli, i-αppli messages are sometimes deleted automatically from the folder.

■ Notes on deleting mail

[Sent/Unsent messages]

Deletion method	Explanation	Operation screens
Delete all	Deletes all sent messages that are not protected.	Outbox folder list Unsent message folder list
All in folder	Deletes all messages that are not protected, in the displayed folder.	Outbox/Unsent messages
Delete selected	Deletes all selected messages.	Outbox/Unsent messages
Delete one	Deletes a selected message.	Outbox/Unsent messages or Sent (Unsent) message screen

[Received messages]

Deletion method	Explanation	Operation screens
Delete all read	Deletes all unprotected read messages in all folders, including Inbox.	Inbox folder list
Delete all unread	Deletes all unprotected unread messages in all folders, including Inbox.	
Delete all	Deletes all unprotected read and unread messages in all folders, including Inbox.	
Read in folder	Deletes all unprotected messages that have been marked as read, contained in the displayed folder.	Inbox
Unread in folder	Deletes all unprotected unread messages, in the displayed folder.	
All in folder	Deletes all unprotected messages, in the displayed folder.	
Delete selected	Deletes all selected messages.	
Delete one	Deletes a selected message.	Inbox or received message display

Note	● You can also delete whole folders (☞P.333).

Using the Mail Services

■ Deleting a message

You can delete sent, received, or unsent messages one at a time.

● Even if a message is protected, you can delete it using this method.

1 **Display message (☞ Steps 1 to 3 on P.325).**

2 **For received messages, press ⓒ⑦ (Delete one).**

Delete one
Delete mail?
Yes
No

For sent/unsent mail
● Press ⓒ④.

3 **Select "Yes", and then press ●.**

To not delete
● Select "No", and then press ●.

Note	To delete 1 message from the message list
	● Select the message, press ⓒ②①, select "Yes", and then press ●.

■ Deleting groups of messages

You can delete groups of messages at once.

Perform the steps below to delete all sent messages from the Outbox folder list, delete all in folder from the Outbox.

When deleting all unsent messages, perform the following steps in the Unsent message folder list. For deleting all messages in a folder, perform the following steps below in the Unsent messages.

To delete all received messages that have been read, all unread messages, or all received messages, perform the following steps in the Inbox folder list (☞P.327).

To delete all read messages in a folder, all unread messages in a folder, or all received messages in a folder, perform the following steps in the Inbox (☞P.330).

● Even if messages are deleted collectively, protected messages are not deleted.

1 **Display the folder list (☞ Step 1 on P.325) or message list (☞ Steps 1 and 2 on P.325).**

2 **Select a folder (or message), and then press ⓒ.**

● The submenu screen is displayed.

3 **For received/sent mail folders, press ④ (Delete).**

Delete
1 Delete all read
2 Del all unread
3 Delete all
4 Delete folder

For unsent mail folders
● Press ①.

For messages lists
● Press ②.

4 **Enter the number of the deletion method.**

● The screen to enter your terminal security code is displayed.
● Refer to "Deleting selected message" below for details on "Delete selected".

5 **Enter your terminal security code (4 digits), select "Yes", and then press ⦿.**

To not delete
● Select "No", and then press ⦿.

■ **Deleting selected message**

1 **Display the message list (☞ Steps 1 and 2 on P.325).**

2 **Press ⦿ 2̄ᴬᴮᴄ (Delete).**

3 **For received messages, press 5̄ᴶᴷᴸ (Delete selected).**

For sent/unsent message
● Press 3̄ᴰᴱꜰ.

4 **Select the messages you wish to delete, and then press ⦿.**

● The mark changes to "☑". Repeat this operation to select all messages you wish to delete.
● Up to 50 messages can be selected.

5 **After selecting all messages you wish to delete, press ⓘ (Complete).**

6 **Select "Yes", and then press ⦿.**

To not delete
● Select "No", and then press ⦿.
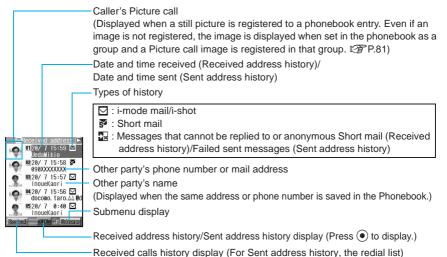
Using the Mail History

The mova keeps a history of up to 30 sent and received mail (i-mode mail, i-shot and short mail) each. Mail can be sent or the other party's address and phone number can be registered to the Phonebook using this history.

● If the number of items that can be saved is exceeded, the history is deleted starting with the oldest.
● When more than 1 mail is sent/received to/from the same sender, each is saved individually in the history.

Viewing the Received/Sent address history

The following explanation is based on the received address history screen.

Caller's Picture call
(Displayed when a still picture is registered to a phonebook entry. Even if an image is not registered, the image is displayed when set in the phonebook as a group and a Picture call image is registered in that group. ☞P.81)

Date and time received (Received address history)/
Date and time sent (Sent address history)

Types of history

☑ : i-mode mail/i-shot
📳 : Short mail
📳✕ : Messages that cannot be replied to or anonymous Short mail (Received address history)/Failed sent messages (Sent address history)

Other party's phone number or mail address

Other party's name
(Displayed when the same address or phone number is saved in the Phonebook.)

Submenu display

Received address history/Sent address history display (Press ● to display.)

Received calls history display (For Sent address history, the redial list)

● Switch between the Received address history and Sent address history with ◌.

Received/Sent address history details

The following explanation is based on the Received address history screen.

Caller's Picture call
(Displayed when a still picture is registered in the phonebook. Even if an image is not registered, the image is displayed when set in the phonebook as a group and a Picture call image is registered in that group. ☞P.81)

Date and time received (Received address history)/
Date and time sent (Sent address history)

Other party's name
(Displayed when the same address or phone number is saved in the Phonebook.)

Other party's phone number or mail address

Submenu display

Display the compose message screen (Press ● to display.)

Note	**To display from the compose message screen**
	● In the compose message screen, select the input field for "Receiver", and then press ● 3 (Sent address) or ● 4 (Rcvd address).

Using the Mail Services

Using Received Calls (Received Address History)

Using the Received address history to send mail

1 **In the stand-by, press ◯ (→▢) (ⅰ).**

● The Received address history list is displayed.

● The smaller the number before the date is in the history, the newer the mail.

● When security for the Received address history is set to "ON", "Security on. Show rcvd address history is turned OFF" is displayed.

● When there is no Received address history, "No rcvd address history" is displayed.

To display the Sent address history
● Press ◯.

2 **Select the history item, and then press ◉.**

● The Received address history details screen is displayed.

To end viewing
● Press ☎⁄.

3 **Press ◉.**

● When i-mode mail or i-shot history items are selected and operated, the i-mode compose message screen is displayed (the receiver field is filled in with the address of the receiver). Refer to steps 5 and 6 on P.308 for subsequent steps.

● When Short mail history is selected, the compose short mail screen is displayed (the receiver field is filled in with the phone number of the receiver). Refer to steps 2 and 3 on P.372 for subsequent steps.

Saving addresses and phone numbers from Received address history to the Phonebook

1 **Perform steps 1 and 2 of "Using the Received address history to send mail" above.**

● The Received address history details screen is displayed.

2 **Press ◎ (1.ぁ) (Add to phonebook).**

● You can also select a history to register to the phonebook from the Received address history list and then press ◎ (1.ぁ).

● If i-mode mail or i-shot is selected in the history, the sender's address is registered to the phonebook.

● If short mail is selected in the history, the sender's phone number is registered to the phonebook.

Using the Mail Services

3 Press ①.② (New).

● The screen to enter a new phonebook entry is displayed. (The address or phone number is already entered.)
Refer to "Adding Data to the Phonebook" on P.76 to P.79 for subsequent steps.

To add to/update an already existing phone number

● Press ②.ᴬᴮᶜ.
● Select the entry to add an address or phone number, and then proceed with phonebook editing.

Using the Mail Redial (Sent Address History)

Using the Sent address history to send mail

1 In the stand-by, press ◯ (▢) ⓘ.

● The Sent address history list is displayed.
● The smaller the number before the date is in the history, the newer the mail.
● When security for the Sent address history is set to "ON", "Security on. Show sent address history is turned OFF" is displayed.
● When there is no Sent address history, "No sent address history" is displayed.

To display the Received address history

● Press ◯.

2 Select the history item, and then press ⦿.

● The sent address history details screen is displayed.

To end viewing

● Press ☎ ᴾᵂᴿ.

3 Press ⦿.

● When i-mode mail or i-shot history items are selected and operated, the i-mode compose message screen is displayed (the receiver field is filled in with the address of the receiver). Refer to steps 5 and 6 on P.308 for subsequent steps.
● When Short mail history is selected, the compose short mail screen is displayed (the receiver field is filled in with the phone number of the receiver). Refer to steps 2 and 3 on P.372 for subsequent steps.

Note	● Addresses and phone numbers in the Sent address history can be registered to the Phonebook. Refer to "Received address history" for details on operations (☞ P.342).

Deleting the Mail History

Mail history can be deleted individually, or as a whole Received address history/Sent address history.

1 **To delete mail from Received address history, press ◯ (↰) ⓘ in the stand-by.**

● To delete one, select the history to delete (this is not necessary when deleting all).

To delete mail from Sent address history
● In the stand-by, press ◯ (⊓) ⓘ.

2 **Press ⓐ② (Delete).**

```
      Delete
①Delete one
②Delete all
```

3 **Press ① (Delete one).**

To delete all histories
● Press ②.

4 **Select "Yes", and then press ●.**

To not delete
● Select "No", and then press ●.

Calling from Received Address History/Sent Address History

Calls can be made from the Received address history/details screen and the Sent address history/details screen.
● When the receiver of sent mail is not registered in the Phonebook or is registered without a phone number, calls cannot be made.

1 **To call from Received address history, press ◯ (↰) ⓘ in the stand-by, and then select a history.**

To call from Sent Address History
● In the stand-by, press ◯ (⊓) ⓘ, and then select a history.

2 **Press ⓐ③ (Call from entry).**

● The Phonebook details screen is displayed.

3 **Select a phone number, and then press ●.**

● The number is dialed.

Setting the Mail Function at the i-mode Center

〈(🔔)(9ᵂˣʸᶻ)〉

i-mode center functions such as "Change mail address", "Character limit settings", and "Receive/Reject settings" can be set.

1 **In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select [icon], and then press ⦿(9ᵂˣʸᶻ).**

● The screen to set mail/message is displayed.

2 **Select "■Mail center setting", and then press ⦿.**

[screen image: メール設定
■メールアドレス設定
├アドレス変更
├アドレス確認
└その他設定
■メール受信設定
├受信/拒否設定
├受信文字数確認
├設定状況確認
└その他設定
■メール機能停止
オプション設定へ]

● The mova connects to i-mode and the i-mode center mail setting screen is displayed.

Note	● In the stand-by, press (🔔)(1.あ), display the iMenu, and then press (8ᵀᵁᵛ) ( ) (Option settings) (1.あ) ( ) (Mail settings) to also display the screen of step 2.
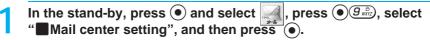
Changing Your Mail Address <Change Mail Address>

The mail address for i-mode mail can be set to an address of your choice.

● The portion that comes before the "@" mark can be changed.

For example: "docomo.___ab1234yz@docomo.ne.jp". To change, only enter the portion that comes before the "@" (underlined). The changeable portion can be set using 3 to 30 half-pitch alphanumeric characters (first character must be an alphabet), and symbols such as "_" (underscore), "." (period), and "-" (hyphen).

● "Change mail address" is one way to prevent nuisance (spam) mail.

1 **In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select [icon], press ⦿(9ᵂˣʸᶻ), select "■Mail center setting", and then press ⦿.**

● The mova connects to i-mode, and the i-mode center mail setting screen is displayed.

2 **Select " " (Change mail address), and then press ⦿.**

[screen image: アドレス変更
■説明・注意■
▼メールアドレスを希望順に3つ、
半角英数字で3字以上30字
以内で入力してください。
半角英字・数字と「_」「.」「-」
をご利用いただけます。
※先頭文字は、必ず英字入
力してください。
□迷惑メールを防止するため
に英数字と「_」「-」を16]

● Press (⌄) to scroll the screen and confirm the mail address changing procedures.

To confirm your current mail address

● Select " " (Check address), and then press ⦿.

3 **Select the " 1 " (1st preference) input field, and then press ⦿.**

4 Enter your 1st preference for an address, and then press ●.

● If upper case alphabet characters are entered, they are automatically recognized as lower case.
● Spaces (blanks) cannot be used.
● If a "." (period) is used consecutively or set at the end of the mail address, mail sent through some internet service providers may not be delivered properly.

5 Enter the "   " (2nd preference) and "   " (3rd preference) for your mail address in the same way.

● If the 2nd and 3rd preferences are not needed, then proceed to step 6.

6 Select the "   " (i-mode password) input field, and then press ●.

● The screen to enter your i-mode password is displayed.

7 Enter your i-mode password, and then press ●.

● Each entered digit is displayed as "＊".

8 Select "   " (Yes), and then press ●.

● Address change is completed, and then the new e-mail address is displayed.

Note	● Cannot be used when mail functions are disabled.
	● Refer to "Changing mail address" in the latest "i-mode User's Manual" for details.
	● Keep a note of your mail address on a separate memo.
	● Your mail address can only be changed using your mova.
	● Once a mail address is changed, mail cannot be received at your previous address, and senders receive an error message or error mail informing them that the recipient is unknown.
	● If you choose a very simple mail address (such as your name), you may receive spam mail or mail intended for somebody else. It is recommended that Roman characters and numbers be combined to make the mail address difficult to guess.
	● Even if the mail address is changed, short mail is received.
	● Mail held at the i-mode center before changing the i-mode mail address can be retrieved after changing the address.

Registering Your Secret Code <Set Secret Code>

When you register a secret code when using "Mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp" as your mail address, you only receive mail for which the sender has added the secret code to the address. Any other mail will be returned to the sender with an address unknown error message.

1 In the stand-by, press ⬤ and select 📧, press ⬤⑨, select "■Mail center setting", and then press ⬤.

● The mova connects to i-mode, and the i-mode center mail setting screen is displayed.

2 Select "   " (Other settings) in "   " (Mail settings), and then press ⬤.

●   (Mail settings/Other settings) screen is displayed.

3 Select "   " (Set secret code), and then press ⬤.

● The screen to register your secret code is displayed.

4 Select the "   " (Secret code) input field, and then press ⬤.

● The screen to enter your secret code is displayed.

5 Enter the secret code, and then press ⬤.

● Cannot be set as "0000".

6 Select the "   " (i-mode password) input field, and then press ⬤.

● The screen to enter your i-mode password is displayed.

7 Enter your i-mode password, and then press ⬤.

● Each entered digit is displayed as "⁂".

8 Select "   " (Yes), and then press ⬤.

● Secret code registration is completed, and then the mail address is displayed. The 4 digits after the phone number is the secret code that you set.

Note	● Cannot be used when mail functions are disabled.
	● Your secret code can only be registered using your mova.
	● The secret code is hidden when you send mail after registering the code so receivers of your messages cannot see it.
	● To send i-mode mail to another person who has set a secret code, the secret code must be set to the mail address and/or phone number (☞P.309).
	● To disable the secret code, perform " " (Address reset) (☞P.348).
	● Even when the secret code is set, short mail can be received.
	● The registered secret code is cleared when the mail address is changed.
	● Messages held at the i-mode center before a Secret code is registered can be retrieved after registering the secret code.
	● When sent to a non-DoCoMo address, error messages such as address unknown error messages may not be received.

Using the Mail Services

Setting Your Phone Number as the Mail Address <Address Reset>

You can use your mobile phone number as your mail address in the form of "Mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp".

1 In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select 📧, press ⦿⑨ⓦⓧⓨⓩ, select "■Mail center setting", and then press ⦿.

● The mova connects to i-mode, and the i-mode center mail setting screen is displayed.

2 Select "⠀⠀⠀⠀⠀⠀" (Other settings) in "⠀⠀⠀⠀⠀⠀⠀⠀⠀⠀" (Mail settings), and then press ⦿.

● ⠀⠀⠀⠀⠀⠀⠀⠀⠀⠀⠀⠀⠀⠀⠀⠀ (Mail settings/Other settings) screen is displayed.

3 Select "⠀⠀⠀⠀⠀⠀⠀⠀⠀⠀" (Address reset), and then press ⦿.

● Address reset screen is displayed.

4 Select the "⠀⠀⠀⠀⠀⠀⠀⠀⠀⠀" (i-mode password) input field, and then press ⦿.

● The screen to enter your i-mode password is displayed.

5 Enter your i-mode password, and then press ⦿.

● Each entered digit is displayed as "⁂".

6 Select "⠀⠀" (Confirm), and then press ⦿.

● A confirmation screen is displayed.

Note	● When "⠀⠀⠀⠀⠀⠀⠀⠀⠀⠀" (Address reset) is performed, mail sent to the address that was reset cannot be received.
	● After resetting your mail address, there is a possibility you cannot revert back to the address you had been using up to that time.
	● Cannot be used when mail functions are disabled.
	● Refer to the latest "i-mode User's Manual" for details on "⠀⠀⠀⠀⠀⠀⠀⠀⠀⠀" (Address reset).
	● Messages held at the i-mode center before resetting the address can be retrieved after resetting the address.

Receiving Mail from Specified Domains <Receive Mail from Specified Domains>

Select to receive mail from au, Vodafone, TU-KA, or DDI Pocket.
Mail from domains not listed above is received from specified domains.
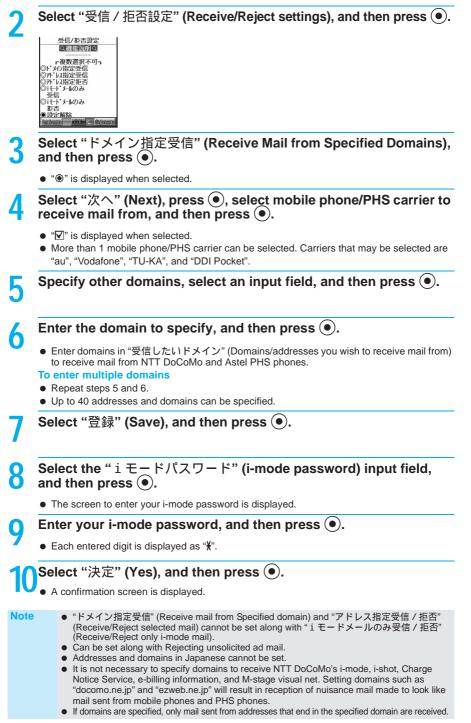
A "domain" is the part of the mail address that comes after the "@", such as the underlined portion in "⠀⠀⠀⠀@⠀⠀⠀⠀.ne.jp".

Mail from NTT DoCoMo such as i-mode, i-shot, Charge Notice Service, e-billing, and M-stage visual net is received.

1 In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select 📧, press ⦿⑨ⓦⓧⓨⓩ, select "■Mail center setting", and then press ⦿.

● The mova connects to i-mode, and the i-mode center mail setting screen is displayed.

2 Select " " (Receive/Reject settings), and then press ●.

3 Select " " (Receive Mail from Specified Domains), and then press ●.

● "◉" is displayed when selected.

4 Select " " (Next), press ●, select mobile phone/PHS carrier to receive mail from, and then press ●.

● "☑" is displayed when selected.
● More than 1 mobile phone/PHS carrier can be selected. Carriers that may be selected are "au", "Vodafone", "TU-KA", and "DDI Pocket".

5 Specify other domains, select an input field, and then press ●.

6 Enter the domain to specify, and then press ●.

● Enter domains in " " (Domains/addresses you wish to receive mail from) to receive mail from NTT DoCoMo and Astel PHS phones.
To enter multiple domains
● Repeat steps 5 and 6.
● Up to 40 addresses and domains can be specified.

7 Select " " (Save), and then press ●.

8 Select the " " (i-mode password) input field, and then press ●.

● The screen to enter your i-mode password is displayed.

9 Enter your i-mode password, and then press ●.

● Each entered digit is displayed as "⁕".

10 Select " " (Yes), and then press ●.

● A confirmation screen is displayed.

Note	● " " (Receive mail from Specified domain) and " " (Receive/Reject selected mail) cannot be set along with " " (Receive/Reject only i-mode mail). ● Can be set along with Rejecting unsolicited ad mail. ● Addresses and domains in Japanese cannot be set. ● It is not necessary to specify domains to receive NTT DoCoMo's i-mode, i-shot, Charge Notice Service, e-billing information, and M-stage visual net. Setting domains such as "docomo.ne.jp" and "ezweb.ne.jp" will result in reception of nuisance mail made to look like mail sent from mobile phones and PHS phones. ● If domains are specified, only mail sent from addresses that end in the specified domain are received.

Using the Mail Services

Note	● Note that subscribers who have registered for mail based information distribution services may not receive those messages after setting Receive mail from specified domain. ● Some i-mode sites require you to confirm details via e-mail, in which case the domains and addresses for such sites should be specified in order for you to receive confirmation e-mail. ● Note that when settings are completed, mail from addresses that have been set are not received and an address unknown error message is sent. However, messages held at the i-mode center before resetting the address can be retrieved after resetting the address. **To avoid nuisance mail (spam)** ● Receive mail from Specified domain is effective in preventing nuisance mail.

Receiving/Rejecting Selected Mail <Receive/Reject Selected Mail>

You can receive or reject mail from addresses that you specify.

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select [icon], press ●(9ₗ₂), select "■Mail center setting", and then press ●.**

● The mova connects to i-mode and the i-mode center mail setting screen is displayed.

2 **Select " " (Receive/Reject Mail Settings), and then press ●.**

受信/拒否設定
🔍機能説明🔍

┌複数選択不可┐
◎ドメイン指定受信
◎アドレス指定受信
◎アドレス指定拒否
◎iモードメールのみ
　受信
◎iモードメールのみ
　拒否
◉設定解除
[interneti] [OK] [Schmenu]

3 **Select " " (Receive Specified Mail) or " " (Reject Selected Mail), and then press ●.**

● "◉" is displayed when selected.

4 **Select " " (Next), press ●, select an input field, and then press ●.**

5 **Enter the address to specify, and then press ●.**

● The part after the "@" is not necessary when entering an i-mode address.
To enter more than 1 mail address
● Select an input field again, and then press ●. Enter the address to specify, and then press ●.
● Up to 40 addresses and domains can be specified.

6 **Select " " (Register), and then press ●.**

7 **Select the " " (i-mode password) input field, and then press ●.**

● The screen to enter your i-mode password is displayed.

8 **Enter your i-mode password, and then press ●.**

● Each entered digit is displayed as "⁕".

9 **Select " " (OK), and then press ●.**

● A confirmation screen is displayed.

Note	● " " (Receive mail from Specified domain) and " " (Receive/Reject selected mail) cannot be set along with " " (Receive/Reject only i-mode mail).

● " " (Receive mail from Specified domain) and " " (Receive/Reject selected mail) cannot be set along with " " (Receive/Reject only i-mode mail).
● Can be set along with Rejecting unsolicited ad mail.
● Addresses and domains in Japanese cannot be set.
● Domains cannot be specified when using " " (Reject Specified mail) and " " (Receive Specified mail).
● Note that subscribers who have registered for mail based information distribution services may not receive those messages after setting Receive/Reject selected mail.
● Some i-mode sites require you to confirm details via e-mail, in which case the domains and addresses for such sites should be specified in order for you to receive confirmation e-mail.
● Note that when settings are completed, mail from addresses that have been set are not received and an address unknown error message is sent. However, messages held at the i-mode center before resetting the address can be retrieved after resetting the address.

To avoid nuisance mail (spam)
● Reject/Receive specified mail are effective in preventing nuisance mail.

Receiving Only i-mode Mail <Receive/Reject Only i-mode Mail>

1 **In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select 📧, press ⦿ ⑨, select " ■Mail center setting", and then press ⦿.**

● The mova connects to i-mode, and the i-mode center mail setting screen is displayed.

2 **Select " " (Receive/Reject settings), and then press ⦿.**

受信/拒否設定
◎機能説明◎
──────
┌複数選択不可┐
◎ドメイン指定受信
◎アドレス指定受信
◎アドレス指定拒否
◎iモードメールのみ
　受信
◎iモードメールのみ
　拒否
◉設定解除
[int menu] [OK] [Submenu]

3 **Select " " (Receive only i-mode mail), and then press ⦿.**

● "◉" is selected.

To reject only i-mode mail
● Select " " (Reject only i-mode mail), and then press ⦿.

To disable Reject all mail
● Select " " (Clear settings), and then press ⦿.

4 **Select " " (Next), and then press ⦿.**
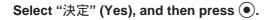
● The screen for Receive only i-mode mail is displayed.

5 **Select the " " (i-mode password) input field, and then press ⦿.**

● The screen to enter your i-mode password is displayed.

351

6 **Enter your i-mode password, and then press ⦿.**

● Each entered digit is displayed as "✳".

7 **Select " " (Yes), and then press ⦿.**

● A confirmation screen is displayed.

Note	● "Only i-mode mail" includes i-shot mail. ● Mail from "Friend mail 12" of " mode Mail Plus" are received even when "Reject only i-mode mail" is set. ● Cannot be set while Reject/Receive specified mail or Receive selected domain is set. ● Can be set along with Reject unsolicited ad mail. ● Cannot be used when mail functions are disabled. ● "Receive/Reject mail settings" can only be performed from your mova. ● Refer to the latest "i-mode User's Manual" for details on "Receive/Reject mail settings". ● Note that when settings are completed, mail from addresses that have been set are not received and an address unknown error message is sent or displayed. ● Messages received at the i-mode center before applying rejection settings are delivered. **To check the current reject mail settings** ● In step 2, select " " (Confirm setting status), and then press ⦿ to confirm current reject mail settings.

Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders

You can reject mail from senders who have sent more than 200 messages that day. The default setting is " " (Reject). Settings do not have to be changed to use this feature.
● The default setting is " " (Reject).

1 **In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select 📧, press ⦿ ⑨ⱳₓᵧ𝒛, select "■Mail center setting", and then press ⦿.**

● The mova connects to i-mode, and the i-mode center mail setting screen is displayed.

2 **Select " " (Other settings) in " " (Receiving mail), and then press ⦿.**

● (Receiving mail/Other settings) screen is displayed.

3 **Select " " (Reject mass i-mode mail senders), and then press ⦿.**

● The (Reject mass i-mode mail senders) screen is displayed.

4 **Select the item you wish to set, and then press ⦿.**

● "◉" is selected.

5 **Select the " " (i-mode password) input field, and then press ⦿.**

● The screen to enter your i-mode password is displayed.

6 **Enter your i-mode password, and then press ⦿.**

● Each entered digit is displayed as "✳".

7 Select " " (OK), and then press ⦿.

● A confirmation screen is displayed.

Rejecting Unsolicited Ad Mail <Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail>

You can set to reject mail sent without the consent of the receiver for the purpose of advertising. The default setting is " " (reject) so there is no need to change settings if you wish to reject unsolicited ad mail. (By law, senders must put " " (unsolicited ad mail) (6 full-pitch characters) in the very first part of the subject.)

● The default setting is " " (reject).
● "Reject unsolicited ad mail" can be set along with other functions to reject incoming mail such as "Receive mail from specified domains".
● "Receive mail from specified domains" rejects unsolicited ad mail from set domains.

1 In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select 📩, press ⦿ ⑨, select " ∎ Mail center setting", and then press ⦿.

● The mova connects to i-mode, and the i-mode center mail setting screen is displayed.

2 Select " " (Other settings) in " " (Receiving mail), and then press ⦿.

● (Mail settings /Other settings) screen is displayed.

3 Select " " (Reject unsolicited ad mail), and then press ⦿.

未承諾広告※
メール拒否
未承諾広告※
メール拒否について
未承諾広告※メール
の受信を
◉拒否する
◎拒否しない
iモードパスワード
(数字4桁)
imiメニュー ＯＫ サブメニュー

4 Select the item you wish to set, and then press ⦿.

● "◉" is selected.

5 Select the " " (i-mode password) input field, and then press ⦿.

● The screen to enter your i-mode password is displayed.

6 Enter your i-mode password, and then press ⦿.

● Each entered digit is displayed as "✳".

7 Select " " (Yes), and then press ⦿.

● A confirmation screen is displayed.

Note	● Refer to the latest "i-mode User's Manual" for details on " " (Reject unsolicited ad mail).
	● " " (Reject unsolicited ad mail) can only be set from your mova.
	● If " " (Reject unsolicited ad mail) is set to " " (Do not reject), mail held at the i-mode center before setting to " " (Reject) will be received.

Rejecting All Short Mail <Reject All Short Mail>

1 In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select 📧, press ⦿ (9 ᵂˣʸᶻ), select "■Mail center setting", and then press ⦿.

● The mova connects to i-mode, and the i-mode center mail setting screen is displayed.

2 Select " " (Other settings) in " " (Receiving mail), and then press ⦿.

● (Receiving mail/Other settings) screen is displayed.

3 Select " " (Reject all short mail), and then press ⦿.

4 Select " " (Reject all short mail), and then press ⦿.

● "◉" is selected.
To clear Reject all short mail
● Select " " (Disable group reject), and then press ⦿.

5 Select the " " (i-mode password) input field, and then press ⦿.

● The screen to enter your i-mode password is displayed.

6 Enter your i-mode password, and then press ⦿.

● Each entered digit is displayed as "⚹".

7 Select " " (OK), and then press ⦿.

● A confirmation screen is displayed.

Note	● Short mail saved at the i-mode center before setting Reject all short mail can be retrieved after setting.

Using the Mail Services

Setting the Character Limit for Received Mail <Character Limit Setting>

You can receive mail that exceeds 250 full-pitch characters in segments of 250 full-pitch characters. For example, if you wish to receive the maximum 2000 full-pitch characters, you will receive 8 messages.

● If the message text exceeds the maximum number of characters set, the excess is deleted automatically and "/" or "//" is inserted at the end of the text. The exceeded portions cannot be viewed.
● This cannot be used when the mail function is disabled.

1 **In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select ▨, press ⦿⑨ⁱⁿⁿⁿ, select "▉Mail center setting", and then press ⦿.**

● The mova connects to i-mode, and the i-mode center mail setting screen is displayed.

2 **Select "⠀⠀⠀⠀⠀⠀⠀⠀⠀" (Character limit setting), and then press ⦿.**

● The character limit setting screen is displayed.

3 **Select "⠀⠀⠀⠀⠀" (New setting value), and then press ⦿.**

● The screen to select the character limit is displayed.

4 **Select the character limit to set, and then press ⦿.**

5 **Select the "⠀⠀⠀⠀⠀⠀⠀⠀⠀⠀⠀" (i-mode password) input field, and then press ⦿.**

● The screen to enter your i-mode password is displayed.

6 **Enter your i-mode password, and then press ⦿.**

● Each entered digit is displayed as "⁂".

7 **Select "⠀⠀⠀" (OK), and then press ⦿.**

● The details of the settings are displayed.
● A screen showing the set character count is displayed when setting is completed.
● Refer to P.330 to view divided mail.

Note	● Divided messages have a number such as "1/8" (number/total segments) inserted to the front of the subject, and parts exceeding 15 full-pitch characters are deleted.
	● "Character limit setting" can only be performed using your mova.
	● You can only send up to 250 full-pitch characters, even if you set to receive more than 250 full-pitch characters.
	● If you exceed your limit at the i-mode center and cannot receive all segments of a divided mail message, all messages are returned to the receiver along with an error message indicating that the server is full.

Using the Mail Services

355

Disabling Mail Functions <Disable Mail Functions>

When not using mail functions, you can disable mail functions at the i-mode center. When mail functions are disabled, your mova will not be able to receive messages and senders will receive user unknown error messages.

- If mail functions are disabled, you may not be able to use your previous address again after reactivating mail functions. Also, any secret code registered before disabling mail is disabled.
- When mail functions are disabled, Receive/Reject only i-mode mail, Receive/Reject selected mail, and Receive mail from specified domain cannot be used.

1 In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select ✉, press ⦿⑨, select "■Mail center setting", and then press ⦿.

- The mova connects to i-mode, and the i-mode center mail setting screen is displayed.

2 Select "   " (Disable mail functions), and then press ⦿.

- The screen to disable mail functions is displayed.

3 Select the "   " (i-mode password) input field, and then press ⦿.

- The screen to enter your i-mode password is displayed.

4 Enter your i-mode password, and then press ⦿.

- Each entered digit is displayed as "✻".

5 Select "   " (Confirm), and then press ⦿.

- A confirmation screen is displayed.

Note	• Mail functions can only be disabled from your mova.
	• Messages held at the i-mode center before disabling mail will be held for up to 720 hours. Retrieve them using "Check new message" (☞P.316).
	• Refer to the latest "i-mode User's Manual" for details on Disable mail functions .
	• Note that attempting i-mode mail transmission or "Check new message" while mail is disabled incurs packet transmission charges.
	• New messages are not held at the i-mode center while mail is disabled.
	• i-mode mail cannot be sent while mail is disabled. An error message such as "Transmission failed" is displayed.

Restarting Mail Functions <Restart Mail Functions>

1 In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select ✉, press ⦿⑨, select "■Mail center setting", and then press ⦿.

- The mova connects to i-mode, and the i-mode center mail setting screen is displayed.

2 Select the "   " (i-mode password) input field, and then press ⦿.

- The screen to enter your i-mode password is displayed.

3 Enter your i-mode password, and then press ⦿.

- Each entered digit is displayed as "✻".

Using the Mail Services

4 Select " " (Reactivate mail), and then press ⬤.

● A confirmation screen is displayed.

Note	● Mail rejection settings after mail functions are reactivated are the same as before being disabled.
	● Mail functions can only be reactivated from your mova.
	● Refer to the latest "i-mode User's Manual" for details on reactivating mail functions.
	● Note that when you reactivate mail functions, there is a possibility you cannot use the address you had been using before you disabled mail functions.
	● When mail services are resumed, the address is "phone number@docomo.ne.jp".

Mail Settings

Setting the mova's Mail Functions

Automatically Sort Mail Into Folders <Sort Mail>

Sort rules can be set for folders and messages that meet the sort criteria are automatically sorted.

● You cannot set sort rules to the "Outbox", "Inbox", and the "Unsent messages folder" of mail-linked i-αppli.
● Up to 5 sort rules can be applied to a single folder.
● Normal mail can be divided into Mail-linked i-αppli folders.

About sort rules

The following 5 criteria can be set as sort rules.

Sort by group	Sorts by the groups set in the Phonebook.
Sort by address	Sorts by the mail address.
Sort by subject	Sorts by a character string contained in the subject.
Phonebook empty	Sorts mail from senders who are not registered in the Phonebook.
All rcvd (sent) msgs	Sorts all received (or sent) messages.

● When more than one sort rule is met, "Folder 1" is given the most priority while "Folder 0" is given the least priority.
● Phonebook data set as secret is handled in the same manner as those not registered. Keep in mind that Sort rules for "Sort by group" are not applied but sort rules for "Phonebook empty" will be applied. To apply "Sort by group", set Secret mode "ON".

Setting sort rules for folders

〈 1 / 2 〉

1 In the stand-by, press ⬤ and select 📧, and then press ⬤ 1 (Inbox).

● The inbox folder list is displayed.

To display the out box folder list
● In the stand-by, press ⬤ and select 📤, and then press ⬤ 2 .

2 **Select a folder, and then press ⑥ ③ᵈₑꜰ (Sort rules).**

● The sort rules screen is displayed.

3 **Press the number of the rule to set.**

● If a number that has a sort rule already set is selected, you can edit that sort rule.
To set as a Mail-linked i-αppli folder
● "Mail will be used in software. Set mail sorting?" is displayed. Select "Yes", and then press ⬤. Proceed to step 4. All subsequent operations are the same as for normal folders. If "No" is selected, press ⬤ to return to the screen of step 2.

4 **To sort into groups, press ①.🎜 (Sort by group), select the group to set, and then press ⬤.**

● The group name is displayed.
To sort by mail address
● Press ②ₐᵦ𝒸, select the input method, and then press ⬤. Select (or enter) the mail address, and then press ⬤.
● The first 20 half-pitch characters of the mail address are displayed.
To sort by a character string contained in the subject
● Press ③ᵈₑꜰ, enter the character string to set, and then press ⬤.
● Up to 15 full-pitch (30 half-pitch) characters can be entered. The first 10 full-pitch (20 half-pitch) characters are displayed.
To sort mail from senders who are not registered in the Phonebook
● Press ④ᵍₕᵢ.
To sort all sent (received) mail
● Press ⑤ⱼₖₗ, select "Yes", and then press ⬤.
● "All sent (received) mail" is set to "①".
● Select "No", and then press ⬤ to set to a specified number.

5 **To set more than one sort rule, repeat steps 3 and 4.**

6 **Press ⓘ (Complete).**

■ Deleting set sort rules

One sort rule or all sort rules set for selected folders can be deleted.

1 **Perform steps 1 and 2 on P.357.**
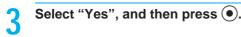
● Select the folder with a sort rule set that you wish to delete in step 2.

2 **Select a rule, and then press ⑥ ①.🎜 (Delete one).**

● When deleting all rules that are applied to folders, you do not need to select.
To delete all sort rules
● Press ⑥ ②ₐᵦ𝒸.

3 Select "Yes", and then press ⚫.

4 Press (:) (Complete).

Adding a Signature to Messages <Save Signature>

⟨ⓐ⑨⑩⟩

You can tell people your name, telephone number, and mail address by adding a signature.
Up to 30 full-pitch (60 half-pitch) characters can be entered.

● You can register up to 5 signatures.
● You can set the mova to automatically add a signature when composing messages.
  However, only 1 signature can be set.
● The default setting for Auto signature is "OFF".
● Even when Auto signature is "ON", signatures are not pasted automatically when forwarding
  or replying with a quote.

1 In the stand-by, press ⚫ and select 📧, and then press ⚫⑨⓪.

2 Press the number to save or edit.

● The signature registration screen is displayed.

When a signature is already registered
● The currently registered signature is displayed.

3 Enter your signature, and then press ⚫.

● Line breaks ("↵") can also be entered.

4 Press (1.) (ON: Auto signature).

● When composing a message, the signature is added to the "Message" automatically in
  advance.

To not add a signature automatically
● Press (2.).

359

Note	**To delete a signature**
	● Perform steps 1 and 2, and then press ⓐ for at least 1 second. Delete the saved signature, and then press ⦿.
	To add a signature while composing a message
	● The characters in the signature are included in the character count for the main message. If the total number of characters in the message and signature exceeds the maximum allowed for sending mail, "Signature space is not available" is displayed and the signature cannot be added. Refer to P.308 for details on methods of adding signatures.

Setting Quick Reply Mail Text <Quick Reply Mail>

⟨ⓐ⑨ⓌⓍⓎⓏ②ABC⟩
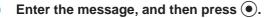
Set the message in advance that is to be sent for Quick reply mail (☞P.318).
● Up to 10 messages and 250 full-pitch characters (500 half-pitch characters) per message can be registered.
● "①　　　　　　　　　　　(Will call back later)", "②OK　　(OK)", "③NG　　(No good)",
"④　　　　　　　　　　(Thank you very much)", "⑤　　　　　　　　　(I'm sorry)", "⑥
　　　　　　　(Your cooperation is greatly appreciated)", "⑦
(Canceled)", "⑧　　　(Busy)", "⑨　　　　　(Understood)", and "⓪
　　　(One moment please)" are set by default.

1 In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select [MAIL], and then press ⦿⑨ⓌⓍⓎⓏ②ABC.

2 Press the number to save or edit.
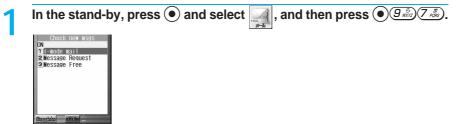
● The screen to compose message is displayed.
● Saved texts are displayed.

3 Enter the message, and then press ⦿.
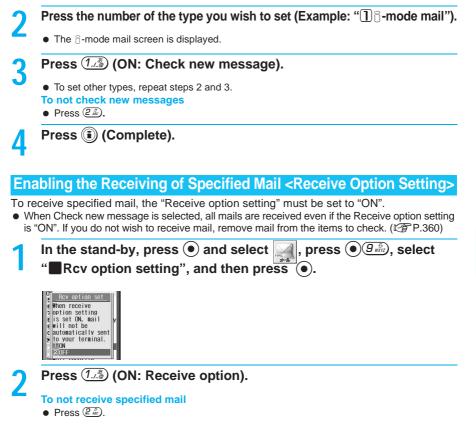
Setting the i-mode Center Details <Check New Msgs>

⟨ⓐ⑨ⓌⓍⓎⓏ⑦ⓅⓆⓇⓈ⟩

You can set different settings for different types of mail (i-mode mail, Message Request, Message Free) for Check new messages.
● The default setting is to check all types.

1 In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select [MAIL], and then press ⦿⑨ⓌⓍⓎⓏ⑦ⓅⓆⓇⓈ.

Using the Mail Services

2 Press the number of the type you wish to set (Example: "①-mode mail").

● The -mode mail screen is displayed.

3 Press ①.⑤ (ON: Check new message).

● To set other types, repeat steps 2 and 3.
To not check new messages
● Press ②.

4 Press ⑧ (Complete).

Enabling the Receiving of Specified Mail <Receive Option Setting>

To receive specified mail, the "Receive option setting" must be set to "ON".
● When Check new message is selected, all mails are received even if the Receive option setting is "ON". If you do not wish to receive mail, remove mail from the items to check. (☞P.360)

1 In the stand-by, press ● and select 📧, press ●⑨, select "■Rcv option setting", and then press ●.

2 Press ①.⑤ (ON: Receive option).

To not receive specified mail
● Press ②.

Adding an Address to a Mail Group (Mailing List) <Mailing List>

⟨ ⑧ ⑨ ⑨ ⟩

By registering addresses to a mailing list, you can easily specify multiple addresses with only a few operations. Unlike the operations for broadcast mail in which you must specify each address, you can specify multiple addresses at once.
● A single mailing list can store up to 10 mail addresses.
● Up to 10 different mailing lists can be stored.
● Charges are the same as when sending each mail individually.
● When using mail groups to send mail, the receiver will only see the sender's address.

Creating a mailing list

1 In the stand-by, press ● and select 📧, and then press ●⑨⑨.

Using the Mail Services

2 **Press the number of the mailing list you wish to register.**

● The list screen is displayed.

3 **Press the number of the mail address you wish to register.**

● The screen to select the input method is displayed.

4 **Select the input method, and then press ⦿. Select (or enter) the mail address to register.**

● Refer to step 3 on P.307 for details on the input method.

When a number already registered is selected
● If a key other than ②ABC (Direct input) is pressed in the input method selection screen, "Overwrite?" is displayed. Select "Yes", and then press ⦿ to select the address. Select "No", and then press ⦿ to return to the list screen.
● When ②ABC (Direct input) is pressed, characters can be entered using the normal method.

5 **Press ⦿.**

● To add addresses to the mailing list, repeat steps 3 to 5.

6 **Press ⓘ (Complete).**

■ Editing the name of the mailing list

● You can enter up to 10 full-pitch (20 half-pitch) characters.

1 **In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select 📧, and then press ⦿ ⑨WXYZ ⑨WXYZ.**

● The mailing list screen is displayed.

2 **Select a mailing list, and then press 📷①./@ (Edit name).**

To reset the name of the mailing list
● Press 📷②ABC. Select "Yes", and then press ⦿. List names return to default names ("List 1" to "List 10").

3 **Edit the list name, and then press ⦿.**

Deleting an address registered in a mailing list

Addresses registered to a mailing list can be deleted individually, or all addresses contained within a mailing list can be deleted as a whole.

1 **Display the mailing list (☞Steps 1 and 2 on P.361 and P.362).**

● Select the mailing list that contains the address you wish to delete in step 2.

2 **Select the mail address, and then press ⓐ.**

● There is no need to select anything in particular when deleting all addresses in a mailing list.

3 **Press ⓵ (Delete one).**

To delete all addresses
● Press ⓶.

4 **Select "Yes", and then press ●.**

5 **Press ⓘ (Complete).**

Setting Melody Auto Play ON/OFF <Melody Mail>

〈ⓐ ⑨ ③〉

Melody playing options for melodies pasted to messages and received mail can be set. The following playing options can be set.

Play on Receive	Automatically plays when received.
Play on Open	Automatically plays when opened.
Play on Rcv/Open	Automatically plays when received and opened.
No auto play	No automatic play.

● The default setting is "Play on Open".

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select 📧, and then press ● ⑨ ③.**

2 **Select the playback method, and then press ●.**

Note	● You cannot play melodies when Manner mode is set.
	● When attached data is set to "Disable", melodies cannot be played.

Automatically Receiving Image Mail Images <Image Mail>

〈🔋9ʷˣʸᶻ4ᴳᴴᴵ〉

You can set your mova to automatically receive images in Image mail when opened or to manually download them.
● The default setting is "Manual download".

1 In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select [🖼], and then press ⦿9ʷˣʸᶻ4ᴳᴴᴵ.

| Image mail |
| 1 Download on open |
| 2 Manual download |

2 Press 1 (Download on open).

To download manually
● Press 2.

| Note | ● Refer to P.323 for details on displaying and saving images in Image mail. |

Disabling Attached Data <Paste Data>

〈🔋9ʷˣʸᶻ5ᴶᴷᴸ〉

You can disable pasted melodies and i-αppli To information.
● The default setting is "Able".
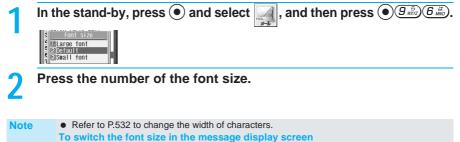
1 In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select [🖼], and then press ⦿9ʷˣʸᶻ5ᴶᴷᴸ.

● The screen to set pasted data is displayed.

2 Press 2 (Disable).

When set to Disable
● Pasted melodies are shown as text characters. Melody and i-αppli To marks are not displayed in the mail list or mail details screens.
● Melodies are not automatically played.
● i-αppli To is not displayed.
To enable
● Press 1.

Switching the Mail Font Size <Font Size>

〈🔋9ʷˣʸᶻ6ᴹᴺᴼ〉

Characters for mail can be set from "Large font", "Default" and "Small font".
● The default setting is "Default".

1 In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select [🖼], and then press ⦿9ʷˣʸᶻ6ᴹᴺᴼ.

| Font size |
| 1 Large font |
| 2 Default |
| 3 Small font |

2 Press the number of the font size.

Note	● Refer to P.532 to change the width of characters.
	To switch the font size in the message display screen
	● In the mail display screen, press ⓜ, select "■Font size", and then press ⦿. Press the number of the font size to set.

Confirming the Mail Settings Status

〈ⓐ⑨〉

You can confirm the mail settings status of your mova.

1 In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select 📧, and then press ⦿⑨.

2 Select the setting to confirm using 🔘.

● The status for the selected item is displayed in the second line.
To confirm "Check new message"
● Press ⑦, and then select the item to confirm. The settings are displayed.

Note	● Setting details are not displayed in the second line of the display when "Quick reply mail", "Check new messages", "Mailing list", or "Mail center setting" is selected.

Composing and Sending Chat Mail

Composing and Sending Chat Mail

〈ⓐ⑤〉

You can exchange mail with multiple people, making it seem like you are having a conversation.
● The other party's mail address must be registered as a Chat mail member in advance.
● The mail address displayed in the screen to set Chat mail members is linked with Owner information (☞P.39).
● Including yourself, up to 11 people can be registered as members.
● When you send and receive Chat mail amongst multiple people, you will be charged for each sent message.
● If the other party uses a mobile phone that does not support Chat mail, sent Chat mail is delivered as Mail with the subject "   " (Chat mail) (full-pitch or half-pitch).
● When you use Chat mail with more than 3 people (you and 2 others), all participant's mail addresses must be registered as Chat members. It is recommended that all members exchange their mail addresses before using Chat mail.
● Chat mail will not start if the Receive option setting is set "ON". Redo operations after setting to "OFF" (☞P.361).

Registering a Chat Member <Chat Member Registration>

● To use Chat mail, members must be registered in advance.

1 In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select 📧, and then press ⦿⑤.

● If chat members are already registered, the chat mail screen (☞P.367) is displayed. To add new members, press 📷③, display the screen to set members, and then follow the procedure below.

2 Press 📷① (New).

3 **Press ② (Direct input), and then enter the i-mode mail address.**

- You can enter up to 50 half-pitch alphanumeric characters and certain symbols.
- Only the portion before the "@" in a mail address is necessary for mail exchanged between i-mode compatible phones.
- You can use symbol conversion and Internet Phrases (☞P.517).
- To use Chat mail with a person who has set a secret code, the person's secret code must be set in advance (☞P.80).

To select from the phonebook
- Press ①, select the mail address of the party to send to, and then press ●. Select a mail address from the Phonebook list.
- For persons whose mail address is not registered, "☑", "📇", "📇", or "📇" is not displayed. Up to 3 icons for mail addresses saved in the phonebook are displayed.
- If the saved receiver is already registered in the phonebook, the name and image are automatically saved.
  Refer to P.369 to edit manually.

To select from Sent address history/Received address history
- Press ③ (Sent address) or ④ (Rcvd address), select the person to send to, and then press ●.

To select from a mailing list
- Press ⑤, and then select a mailing list to send.
- Register the mailing list in advance (☞P.361).
- When the mailing list is selected, "Current member will be deleted. Are you sure?" is displayed. Select "Yes" and then press ●. Select a list, press ● and then ⓘ (Complete). The set mailing list member is replaced. (chat member registration completed.)

4 **Press ● (OK), select the "👤" line, and then press ●.**

5 **Enter the name (chat name), and then press ●.**

- Up to 2 full-pitch (4 half-pitch) characters can be entered.

6 **Select the "🖼" line, press ●, and then set the still picture.**

- Refer to "Setting a Still Picture <Picture Call Set>" on P.81 for information on setting still pictures.
- If the My picture save memory is running low, the camera may not function. Delete still pictures in My picture and try again.

7 **Press ⓘ (Complete) twice.**

Note	• When multiple mail addresses are registered, mail is sent to each registered address.

Register/Disable Chat Mail Members
- In the screen to set members, select members, and then press ●. "☐" will change to "☑". Press ⓘ (Complete) to register. Chat mail is only sent to members with ☑.
- Select a member with "☑" displayed, and then press ●. The displayed "☑" changes to "☐" and registration is disabled.
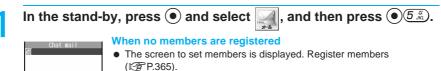
When auto start is set for Chat mail (☞P.368)
- When opening mail from the mail list with " (Chat mail)" (full-pitch or half-pitch) in the subject, the confirmation for auto start is displayed.

Composing and Sending Chat Mail

1 **In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select 🖂, and then press ⦿⑤.**

When no members are registered

● The screen to set members is displayed. Register members (☞P.365).

To check registered members

● Press ⦿③ (Set members) to display the member setting screen. Chat mail is only sent to members with "☑" displayed.
● Refer to "Notice" on P.366 for details on registering/disabling members.

2 **Press ⦿, enter the message, and then press ⦿.**

● The entered characters are highlighted.
● You can enter up to 250 full-pitch (500 half-pitch) characters.

3 **Press ⓘ (Send).**

● Chat mail is sent to all members with "☑" displayed.

Note	● Sent Chat mail is saved in the "Outbox". If the message conforms to the "Sort rules", the message is saved into the set folder.
	● Mail that failed to be sent and unsent messages are saved in the Unsent messages folder and are displayed in red in Chat mail screen. To resend Chat mail, do so from the Unsent messages. When Chat mail is sent again, "Deleted" is displayed in the chat mail screen but the mail is sent.

When Chat Mail is Received While Running Chat Mail

When mail with "   " (Chat mail) (full-pitch or half-pitch) in the subject is received from a Chat member while starting Chat mail, an animation indicating reception is displayed, and then the Chat mail is displayed (if another mail is received, it is not displayed in the Chat mail screen).

Chat mail message text (In the Chat mail display, up to 50 messages, starting with the newest, are displayed.)

● Scroll up and down one line at a time using ⦿.
● Press ⓐ or ⓓ, scroll up and down 1 screen at a time.

Note	● Received chat mail is saved in the "Inbox". If the message conforms to the "Sort rules", the message is saved in the set folder.
	● Phone to, Mail to, and Web to functions (☞P.279) are unavailable for phone numbers, mail addresses, and URL received by Chat mail. End Chat mail (☞P.369) and display the received Chat mail to use these functions.

Using the Mail Services

367

Receiving Chat Mail When Chat Mail is Not Started

● Chat mail will not start if the Receive option setting is set "ON".

1 **When you try to open a message with "   " (Chat mail) (full-pitch or half-pitch) included in the subject from the mail List, the confirmation screen for Chat mail is displayed.**

● Chat mail cannot start automatically if Auto start settings are set to "OFF". Refer to "Note" below for Auto start setting.

When the sender is registered as a chat member
● "Chat member. Start chat mail?" is displayed.

When the sender is not registered as a chat member or is registered but disabled "☐"
● "Register as a chat member then start chat mail?" is displayed.
(If 11 members are already registered, they are not added.)

2 **Select "Yes", and then press ●.**

Chat mail screen

● The selected text of the received mail is added as the mail text of the most recent chat mail, then the chat mail screen is displayed (if a received mail whose mail text is already included in the chat mail text is selected, the same contents will be included in the most recent chat mail).
● When registration is disabled "☐", it switches to Able "☑", and then the chat mail screen is displayed.

To not start Chat mail
● Select "No", and then press ● to display the received mail screen.

Note	● To reply with i-mode mail, you can use the same steps as for i-mode mail. (☞P.317) ● In the chat screen, up to 2 full-pitch (4 half-pitch) characters can be displayed for names. ● If the name is not registered in the phonebook, the first 4 characters of the mail address are displayed. ● Up to 50 new sent and received messages are displayed in order with the newest at the top. **To set Auto start for Chat mail** ● In the chat mail screen, press ⑧⑧ (Auto start), and then press ① (ON) or ② (OFF). **To manually start from received mail** ● In the Inbox (☞P.325), press ⑧⑧ (Start chat mail). Refer to steps 1 and 2 above for subsequent steps. **To update Chat mail** ● Display the Chat mail screen, and then press ⑧② (Update). Chat mail is updated.

Ending Chat Mail

1 **During Chat mail, press ⏻.**

If ⏻ is pressed while editing the text or member settings for Chat mail
- "Your changes will be lost. End anyway?" is displayed. Select "Yes", and then press ● to return to the stand-by display (sent and received Chat mail is saved).

2 **"Delete Chat mail?" is displayed. Select "No", and then press ●.**
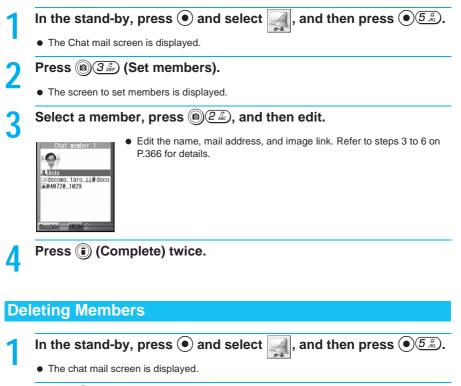
- Chat mail is ended.

To delete and end chat mail
- Select "Yes", and then press ●.

Editing Members

Edit chat members and set/clear them as the receiver.

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select 📧, and then press ●⑤.**

- The Chat mail screen is displayed.

2 **Press 📷③ (Set members).**

- The screen to set members is displayed.

3 **Select a member, press 📷②, and then edit.**

- Edit the name, mail address, and image link. Refer to steps 3 to 6 on P.366 for details.

4 **Press 📱 (Complete) twice.**

Deleting Members

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select 📧, and then press ●⑤.**

- The chat mail screen is displayed.

2 **Press 📷③ (Set members).**

- The screen to set members is displayed.

Using the Mail Services

3 **Select a member, and then press ⓒ③₍ₑₑ₎ (Delete).**

● You cannot delete yourself.

```
   Set members
      自分
 ☑Ueda
      Delete
 1 Delete one
 2 Delete all


      OK
```

4 **Press ①₍ₐₒ₎ (Delete one).**

To delete all members
● Press ②₍ₐₑₑ₎.

5 **Select "Yes", and then press ●.**

To not delete
● Select "No", and then press ●.

6 **Press ⓘ (Complete).**

Note	● Without deleting members from the member setting screen, you can set to not send Chat mail by changing the displayed "☑" to "☐".

Deleting Chat Mail

This deletes all Chat mail displayed in the chat screen (data contained in the sent mail folder/received mail folder are also deleted). However, if messages are protected, they are not deleted from the mail folders (unread received messages and unsent messages will be deleted).

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select [📧], and then press ●⑤₍ⱼₖₗ₎.**

● The Chat mail screen is displayed.

2 **Press ⓒ④₍ᴳᴴᴵ₎ (Delete chat mail).**

● The delete chat mail screen is displayed.

3 **Select "Yes", and then press ●.**

To not delete
● Select "No", and then press ●.

Note	● To delete 1 Chat mail item at a time, refer to standard i-mode mail operations (☞ P.338).

Switching the Chat Mail Screen

1 **In the Chat mail screen, press ⓒ, and then press ⑥ⅿₙₒ (Font size) or ⑦ₚₒᵣₛ (Switch view mode).**

- With Switch font size, the size of the displayed characters can be changed.
- With Switch display, you can choose whether or not to display still pictures in the chat mail screen.

Chat mail screen with still pictures (Standard)	Chat mail screen without still pictures (Standard)	Chat mail screen with still pictures (Reduced)	Chat mail screen without still pictures (Reduced)

Composing and Sending Short Mail

Composing and Sending Short Mail

You can compose and send short mail. Short mail can be sent to users of the following phones.

Short mail reception compatible phones	Messages are received as Short mail if the other party is registered for "Short mail service". The message is received as i-mode mail if the other party's mobile phone is compatible and registered to "i-mode". (Registration for "Short mail service" is not necessary.)
i-mode compatible phones	Messages are received as i-mode mail if the other party is registered for "i-mode". If the other party has " " (Disable mail functions) (☞P.356) or " " (Reject all short mail) (☞P.354) set, messages are not received.

- Short mail cannot be sent during calls.
- Dialing charges are incurred when sending short mail.
- When the message text is not entered, the mail does not reach the receiver. However, calling charges are incurred.

Character types and number of characters that can be sent

Kanji, Hiragana, Katakana, alphanumeric characters, symbols and pictographs can be sent. Up to 50 characters, regardless of whether they are full-pitch or half-pitch, can be sent per message.

- Short mail containing full-pitch characters, such as Kanji, Hiragana and pictographs, may not be sent, depending on the other party's mobile phone. Confirm the other party's mobile phone before sending.
  (Messages containing Kanji and Hiragana can only be sent to "Short mail service" (Kanji compatible) and "i-mode" compatible phones.)
- When half-pitch lower case characters (such as "a" and "　") are sent, they become half-pitch upper case characters.
- Pictographs other than "♥", "♣" and "☎" become spaces.
- Half-pitch symbols other than "?", "!", "-", "/", "　", "&", "(", ")", "￥", "#", "　" (Dakuten), and "　" (Handakuten) become half-pitch spaces when sent. In addition, "[" and "]" are sent as "(" and ")".

371

Using the Mail Services

Note	● Messages may not be properly sent and received in areas where signals are weak or bad. Move to a place where the signal is stronger and try again.
	● Depending on the signal status, there may be times when the other party cannot receive text correctly.
	● You can send short mail without registering for Short mail service or i-mode.
	● The mova can receive short mail as i-mode mail. Registration for Short mail service is not necessary. (The same charges as those for i-mode mail apply to receive messages. Refer to P.313 for information about i-mode mail.)
	● If the other party is not registered for "Short mail service", a guidance stating so is played.
	● Even when the other party is registered for "i-mode", short mail may not be delivered and a guidance stating so is played in the following circumstances. ■ If the other party's mail functions have been disabled ■ If the other party has set the "Reject all short mail" function ■ If the other party has the maximum (50 messages) number of messages held at the center
	● If Keypad dial lock is set, the mova beeps and "Keypad dial lock" is displayed, and then returns to the stand-by display. If a message is manually composed after directly connecting to the Short mail center, Short mail can be sent.

Sending Your Phone Number to the Other Party

When "Send own number" is set to "ON", you can send your own number to the party you are sending a short mail message to (☞P.38). Also, regardless of "Send own number" settings, you can choose whether or not to send your own number to the other party each time you send a short mail message.

Composing and Sending Short Mail

〈🔔 6 ♫〉

1 In the stand-by, press ● and select 📧, and then press ● 6 ♫.

```
     Compose shortmail
Receiver

Message

Save
```

2 Enter the "Receiver" and "Message".

● Up to 50 half-pitch and full-pitch characters can be entered in the "Message".
● Refer to P.307 for instructions on entering the "Receiver" and "Message".
● Emoticons (☞P.519) are not sent correctly using short mail.

3 Press 🔘 ● (Call).

● Short mail is sent.
● When sending is completed, a guidance is played. Confirm that the message has been sent correctly and press 📵.
● Sent short mail is saved in the "Outbox". However, if the message meets the criteria set for "Sort rules" (☞P.357), the message is saved in the set folder.

Note	**To add "184" or "186"**
	● In the screen to compose new Short mail, press ⓐ①ⁱ.𝐬 (Send 184) or ⓐ②ᵃᵇᶜ (Send 186).
	● Messages are automatically sent from the mova if connected to the short mail center and the guidance is skipped and interrupted, but there are no problems.
	When you receive a call while editing
	● Data being edited at the time is automatically saved. After the call is finished, the screen returns to the previous screen and you can resume editing.
	When i-mode mail and messages are received during editing
	● Press ⓒ cʟʀ in the message received results screen to return to the previous screen and resume editing (this applies even when the receive results display disappears after a certain period of time).
	● i-mode messages are not automatically displayed, regardless of "Auto message display" settings, when messages are received during editing.

Saving Short Mail and Sending It Later <Save Short Mail>

Short mail can be temporarily saved in the mova if you wish to interrupt your work while composing Short mail or if you wish to save Short mail that you composed. You can also edit the saved message before sending it.

● Refer to P.371 and P.372 for details on composing Short mail.

Saving Short mail

1 When composing Short mail, select "Save" using ⌄ in the screen to compose Short mail, and then press ●.

● The message being composed is saved as an unsent message.

Note	● If you press ⓒ PWR while composing Short mail, the end confirmation screen is displayed. Select "Yes", and then press ● to cancel message composition. However, messages canceled during composition are not saved.

Sending saved Short mail

⟨ⓐ③ᵈᵉᶠ⟩

1 In the stand-by, press ● and select 📧, and then press ●③ᵈᵉᶠ.

● The Unsent message list is displayed.

2 Select "Unsentbox", and then press ●.

● "📧" is displayed for Short mail.

3 Select the Short mail you wish to send from the folder, and then press ●.

● The content of the mail is displayed.

4 Press ⓘⓞ.

- Short mail is sent.
- When sending is completed, a guidance is played. Confirm that the message has been sent correctly, and then press (📞).
- Sent Short mail is saved in the "Outbox". However, if the message meets criteria set for "Sort rules" (☞P.357), the message is saved in the set folder.
- For unfinished Short mail and Short mail you wish to re-edit, press ⓒ②.
  The screen to compose a message is displayed. After you finish composing the Short mail, press ⓘⓞ (Call) to send.

Receiving Short Mail

When Short Mail is Received

You can receive Short mail as i-mode mail. Like i-mode mail, received Short mail is saved in the "Inbox". However, if the message meets criteria set for "Sort rules" (☞P.357), the message is saved in the set folder.

- If "Reject all short mail" (☞P.354) is set, Short mail cannot be received.
- All Short mail can be received even if "Caller ID Request Service" (☞P.433) is set.
- Short mail can be received even if "Change mail address" (☞P.345) or "Set secret code" (☞P.347) is set.
- Short mail cannot be replied to.
- When Short mail is received, the sender is displayed as "iMS" (i-mode Mail Service).
  The subject is displayed as follows, depending on the sender.
  - When the other party's phone number is sent and is also registered in the Phonebook
    . . . . Name registered in the Phonebook
  - When the other party's phone number is sent but is not registered in the Phonebook
    . . . ."090 (or 080, etc.) XXXXXXXX (   )"
  - If the sender is anonymous . . . . "User unset (   )"
  - If sent from a payphone. . . . . "Payphone (   )"

Displaying New Short Mail

1 When Short mail arrives, it is automatically received ("✉" flashes).

- Messages cannot be automatically received when "Receive option setting" is set to "ON" (☞P.361).

To cancel reception
- Press ⓞ while messages are being received to cancel reception, and then display the message received results screen.
- Messages that were canceled during reception are held at the i-mode center ("✉" lights).

Receiving

- Messages may be received, depending on when you cancel.

2 **After reception is finished, the message received results are displayed, and the i-mode mail ring tone sounds ("✉" lights).**

<Received>

✉ i-mode mail	1
Message R	0
Message F	0

OK

- Received messages are saved in the "Inbox". However, if the message conforms to the "Sort rules", the message is saved in the set folder.
- If mail and messages are received simultaneously, the mail ring tone sounds.

✉ 1 R 0 F 0

3 **In the message received results screen, select "⬚-mode mail", and then press ●.**

Received msg   5
✉ Inbox
1 Work
2 Coterie
3 Friends
Dimo⬚絵文字メール

Unread   1／Total   5
Showall   OK   Showsub

- The received message folder list is displayed.
- Folders where unread messages are saved are displayed in pink.

To not display the messages immediately
- If no operations are performed for approximately 30 seconds in the message received results screen, the mova automatically returns to the screen from before reception.
- In the message received results screen, the mova may automatically return to the display from before reception after 2 seconds. In this case, the screen cannot be displayed by selecting "⬚-mode mail".
- The mova stays in i-mode stand-by status ("⬚" flashes).

4 **Select the folder, press ●, select the message to display, and then press ●.**

- Refer to P.325 for details on how to view received mail.

| Note | ● To display new i-mode mail in the Viewer position, press ● in the received results screen (step 2), select "⬚-mode mail", and then press ●. Select a folder, press ●, select a message, and then press ●. |

Using the Mail Services

▶MEMO◀

15

Using the i-shot Services

What is i-shot?
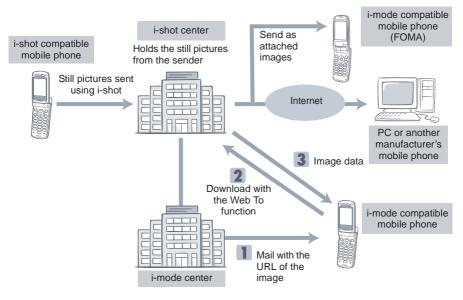
i-shot is a service that lets you send still pictures taken with your i-shot compatible mobile phone to an i-mode compatible mobile phone. You can also send pictures to a PC or to mobile phones from other manufacturers.
● Refer to P.307 to P.310 for details on composing i-mode mail.

How the Service Works

When an image is sent using i-shot, the image is saved at the i-shot center, and a message with a URL for the image is delivered to the recipient.
Using the URL, the recipient can download the image. The downloaded image can also be saved as a screen memo.

i-shot center
Holds the still pictures from the sender

i-shot compatible mobile phone

Still pictures sent using i-shot

Send as attached images

i-mode compatible mobile phone (FOMA)

Internet

PC or another manufacturer's mobile phone

3 Image data

2 Download with the Web To function

i-mode compatible mobile phone

i-mode center

1 Mail with the URL of the image

● When an image is sent to a PC or another manufacturer's mobile phone, the image is delivered as an attachment.
● Images are held at the i-shot center for up to 10 days. When the maximum time period is exceeded, the images are automatically deleted.
● When an i-shot URL is sent to an i-mode compatible mobile phone, the recipient can download the image from that URL up to 50 times. After 50 times, the image cannot be viewed.
● Using i-shot, messages with the same content can be sent to multiple addresses (up to 10) at the same time.

Note	● A subscription to i-mode is not required for sending images using i-shot. However, a subscription is required to receive mail from i-shot.
	● To send i-shot, you must set "Send own number" to "ON".
	● i-shot is incompatible with some PHS and mobile multimedia devices.
	● When i-shot is sent to multiple addresses at once (Broadcast mail), all of the addresses may be revealed to the recipients.

Using the i-shot Services

Before Using i-shot

Still pictures that can be sent

- You can only send images shot with the mova camera.
- GIF images, still pictures downloaded with i-mode, and screen memos cannot be sent.
- Only 1 still picture, regardless of size, can be sent with each mail.
- The maximum data size for still pictures to be sent is 30KB.
- You can send a JPEG image from a miniSD memory card (image to be sent is saved on your mova).

Number of characters that can be sent

Category	Full-pitch (Kanji, Hiragana, pictographs, etc.)	Half-pitch (alphabet, numbers, Katakana, etc.)
Subject	15 characters	30 characters
Mail address	-	50 characters
Message	100 characters	200 characters

Data exchange formats and charging methods

i-shot is sent using a different communication format (circuit switching) than i-mode mail (packet transmission). Consequently, instead of assessing communication charges by the amount of data transmitted, charges are calculated for the transmission time, just like telephone calls.

- The charges vary with the size of the still picture data sent and the customer's billing plan.
- The amount of time for transmission and the fee charged may vary when sending the same still picture, depending on the signal status.
- In some cases, transmission charges may apply even when signal problems cause an i-shot transmission to be interrupted.

Content of the mail delivered to the other party
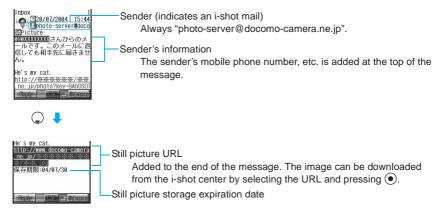
If the sender has subscribed to i-mode, each mail will be delivered with the "still picture URL" and "still picture storage expiration date" included (the example below is for a recipient with an i-mode compatible mobile phone).

The sender's i-mode mail address

Still picture URL
Added to the end of the message. The image can be downloaded from the i-shot center by selecting the URL and pressing ⊙.

Still picture storage expiration date

If mail cannot be properly delivered using i-shot because the address is unknown, an error message will be returned to the sender.

Using the i-shot Services

379

If the sender does not subscribe to i-mode or if the sender has a subscription and the subject starts with "/NUM/" (full or half-pitch), the mail is delivered with the following information added by the i-shot center (the example below is for a recipient with an i-mode compatible phone).

Sender (indicates an i-shot mail)
> Always "photo-server@docomo-camera.ne.jp".

Sender's information
> The sender's mobile phone number, etc. is added at the top of the message.

Still picture URL
> Added to the end of the message. The image can be downloaded from the i-shot center by selecting the URL and pressing ⊙.

Still picture storage expiration date

In this example, please note that an error message will not be returned to the sender even if the mail cannot be properly delivered (address unknown, etc.).

Do not reply to this message. Your reply will not be delivered to the sender.

Note	● If mail sent by i-shot is forwarded to a PC or another manufacturer's mobile phone, note that the recipient cannot view the image.
	● Packet communications fees are assessed for the text automatically added by the i-shot center.

Composing and Sending i-shot Mail

Sending Still Pictures Using i-shot

Pasting and Sending Already Taken Still Pictures

Using i-shot, you can send still pictures by mail.

● Set "Send own number" to "ON" in advance (☞P.38).
● You can enter up to 100 full-pitch (200 half-pitch) characters for the message of i-shot mail.
● Only 1 still picture can be pasted per mail, regardless of the size of the image.
● A still picture and a melody cannot be pasted to the same mail.
● You cannot send images downloaded from websites.
● The maximum data size for still pictures to be sent is 30KB.
● The image sizes that can be sent are "i-shot (S): 144× 144" and "i-shot (L): 288× 352".
● You can convert to "i-shot (S): 144× 144" or "i-shot (L): 288× 352" when sending still pictures of other sizes.
● When sending JPEG images saved on a miniSD memory card with i-shot, images larger than those that can be taken using a mova may not be converted to the images that can be sent with i-shot.

1 **Display the still picture you wish to send (☞Steps 1 to 3 on P.149).**

2 **Press ⓘ (Mail).**

● The mail composition screen is displayed.
● The title of the image is displayed in the paste field.

3 **Compose and send the message.**

● Refer to steps 2 to 6 of "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" on P.307 and P.308.

Note	● If an image saved on a miniSD memory card is sent with i-shot, the i-shot image is saved in the "Camera image" folder on your mova.
	● Movies that can be taken by this mova, flash movies, GIF images, downloaded images cannot be sent (however, a scene of a movie saved as a still picture can be sent).
	● i-shot may not display or display properly depending on the receiver's mobile phone. In addition, displayed images may be blurred.
	To send to multiple addresses
	● Up to 10 addresses can be added.
	● All sending addresses may be revealed to all recipients when broadcast mail is sent using i-shot.
	Titles and file names
	● Still pictures taken with the mova are automatically assigned a "Title" and "File name". The file name is the name used when the picture is sent by i-shot. You cannot edit the file name. Titles are the names displayed in My picture and can be edited.
	● When still pictures sent using i-shot are received by an i-mode terminal, the file name and title of the still picture change.
	To check the pasted still picture
	● In step 2, press ⓑ①.♪ to display the pasted still picture.
	To paste a still picture after the mail is composed
	● Select "Paste" while composing mail, and then press ●. Press ①.♪, select a folder, and then press ●. Select the still picture to paste and then press ●.

Taking Pictures With the Camera While Composing Messages

You can compose i-shot mail from the mail composition screen by activating the camera and taking a picture.

1 **While composing mail, select "Paste" using ◌, and then press ●.**

● The screen to select pasted data is displayed.

2 **Press ③ᴅᴇꜰ (Activate camera).**

● The screen to shoot still pictures is displayed and the image seen through the camera lens is shown in the display.

3 **Press ● to take the still picture.**

● The image you took is displayed.

To delete the still picture you took and retake
● Press ⓒ. The mova returns to step 2.

Using the i-shot Services

4 Press ●.

● The still picture you took is saved in the "Camera image" folder in My picture in the Library. The mova returns to the mail composition screen.
  The title of the still picture you took is displayed in the paste field.
● Refer to steps 2 to 6 of "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" on P.307 and P.308 to send i-shot still pictures.

Note	● When Auto save mode (☞P.148) is set to "ON", the screen to confirm the still picture you took is not displayed.

Sending a Still Picture Immediately to a Registered Recipient

You can send an image immediately to an already registered recipient (receiver/subject/ message).

Setting the receiver of the still picture (Quick i-shot setting)

1 In the stand-by, press ● and select 📧, and then press ●(9₍wxyz₎).

```
        Mail/Message
OFF
1 Quick i-shot setting
2 Quick reply mail
3 Melody mail
4 Image mail
```

2 Press (1.ぁ)(1.ぁ) (ON).

● The "Subject" is preset as "   " (i-shot), with "   " (Sending an image) as the "Message".
To cancel settings
● Press (1.ぁ)(2.abc).

3 Enter the "Receiver", "Subject", and "Message", and then press ⓘ (Complete).

To set the receiver
● Press (1.ぁ), select the number to register, and then press ●. The input method select screen is displayed. Press (1.ぁ) to (5.な), select or enter the receiver's mail address, and then press ●. When the address has been entered, press ⓘ (Complete).
To enter the subject
● Press (2.abc), enter the title, and then press ●. Press ● if there is nothing to edit.
To enter the message
● Press (3.def), enter the message, and then press ●. Press ● if there is nothing to edit.

Sending still pictures you took immediately (Quick i-shot)

● Save the recipients address in advance and set Quick i-shot to "ON".

[When shot in Normal position]
● Press ⓘ (Mail). The message composition screen is displayed. Press ⓘ to send.
● A "Transmission completed" confirmation screen is displayed. Press ●.

[When shot in Viewer position]
● After shooting, press ⌐ (left guidance key). The mail screen is displayed, and then press ⌐ (left guidance key).
● The confirmation screen "Transmission completed" is displayed. Press ●.

Note	● When Auto save mode (☞P.148) is set to "ON", you cannot use Quick i-shot.
	● Depending on the image size, press ⓘ (mail) after shooting, and when ⌐ (left guidance key) is pressed a selection screen for converting to "i-shot (S)" or "i-shot (L)" may be displayed.

Saving i-shot Mail and Sending It Later

When you have to interrupt your work while composing mail or you wish to save mail you have composed, you can temporarily save the mail on the mova. You can also edit the saved message before sending it.

Saving i-shot Mail

1 **While composing mail, select "Save" using ⬍, and then press ⏺.**

● i-shot mail that was being composed is saved as unsent mail.

| Note | ● If the receiver, subject, or message is entered while composing mail, press ⬛ to display the end confirmation screen. Select "Yes", and then press ⏺ to cancel message composition. However, messages canceled during composition are not saved. |

Sending Saved i-shot Mail

⟨ⓐ③⟩

1 **In the stand-by, press ⏺ and select ✉, and then press ⏺③.**

● The unsent messages folder list is displayed.

2 **Select "Unsentbox", and then press ⏺.**

3 **Select the mail you wish to send, and then press ⏺.**

4 **Press ⓘ (Send).**

● The mail is sent.
● You can also press ⓑ① to send.

| Note | **To confirm attached images** |
| | ● Press ⬆ while displaying mail to display the still picture. Press ⬇ to return to the mail display screen. |

Using the i-shot Services

383

Displaying Still Pictures Sent With i-shot

You can display and save still pictures received using i-mode mail. To display a received still picture, connect to i-mode using the Web To function (☞P.280), and download the image from the i-shot center.

● A communications fee is charged when downloading the still picture.

1 **Display the received message that contains the URL for the still picture (☞Steps 1 to 3 on P.325).**

2 **Select the URL for the still picture.**

● Select the URL that begins with "http://***.docomo-camera.ne.jp/".
("***" is not fixed.)

The sender's i-mode mail address, or "photo-server@docomo-camera.ne.jp".

Still picture URL

Still picture storage expiration date

If the sender does not subscribe to i-mode or if the sender has a subscription and the subject starts with "/NUM/" (full or half pitch) is sent, the mail is delivered with the following information added by the i-shot center.

● Note that replies to this i-shot mail are not delivered.

" (Replies to this mail are not delivered)" is displayed.

Sender (indicates an i-shot mail)
Always "photo-server@docomo-camera.ne.jp".

Sender's information
The sender's mobile phone number, etc. is added to the top of the message.

Still picture URL
Added to the end of the message. Select the URL and press ⦿ to download the still picture from the i-shot center.

Still picture storage expiration date

3 **Press ⦿.**

● The mova automatically connects to i-mode, and downloads (displays) the still picture.

To save the still picture after downloading
● Press ⓘⓖ⦿①. The image is saved in the "Download" folder in My picture.

To set in the stand-by display directly
● Press ⓘⓖ⦿, and then press ② (Stand-by dsp). Refer to P.184 for subsequent steps.
● When a file format cannot be read, its selection item is gray.

When a still picture is saved in My picture
● After received messages are displayed, press ⌃ to display the saved still picture (not displayed when the picture is deleted or moved to another folder).

Using the i-shot Services

Note	● The i-shot sender source is either "the sender's address" or "photo-server@docomo-camera.ne.jp". If the sender source is "the sender's address", you can specify to receive (or reject) by sender. However, if the sender source is "photo-server@docomo-camera.ne.jp", you cannot specify to receive (or reject) by sender.

● When saving the still picture, be aware of the memory indicator. If a still picture is saved while the memory indicator is displayed, still pictures may be overwritten.
Before saving the still picture, delete still pictures in My picture, and check that the memory indicator has disappeared.

Ⓜ (Yellow)	Displayed when available memory is low.
Ⓜ (Red)	Displayed when there is no available memory.

● i-shot may not display or display properly depending on the mobile phone. In addition, displayed images may be blurred.

Notes on receiving messages from the i-shot service

● To receive mail from the i-shot service, an i-mode subscription is required.
● Even if the Image mail setting is set to "Download on open", still pictures sent with i-shot are not retrieved automatically.
● When Set image display is set to "OFF", images downloaded from the i-shot service and Flash movies are not displayed.
● Received still pictures cannot be attached to another i-shot mail for sending (☞P.379).
● Still pictures received from i-shot may differ in display size, depending on the terminal.
● If mail received from the i-shot service on an i-mode compatible mobile phone is forwarded to another manufacturer's mobile phone or PC, the still pictures cannot be displayed (☞P.380).
● When receiving mail sent from specified domain, the i-shot domain (docomo-camera.ne.jp) does not need to be set. If set, nuisance mail (spam) that looks as though it was sent from i-shot arrives.
● The charges for downloading images will vary according to the size of the image and the signal status at your location. Keep this in mind (☞P.379).
● Still pictures received on i-mode compatible mobile phones can be viewed up to 50 times per URL (☞P.378).

Using the i-shot Services

Changing the i-shot Host

Generally, there is no need to change this setting.

You can change the i-shot host.
● If the date is not set, the host cannot be changed.
● If settings are changed to "User set host", i-shot cannot be used.
● The default setting is "DoCoMo".
● "DoCoMo" cannot be edited.

Setting the Host

⟨(🔅)(9ʷˣʸᶻ)⟩

1 In the stand-by, press ● and select 📧, and then press ●(9ʷˣʸᶻ).

● The screen to set Mail/Message is displayed.

2 Press (✳📧), and then enter your terminal security code (4 digits).

● Each entered digit is displayed as "✳".

3 Press (2ᴬᴮᶜ)(1.✲) (Edit).

To reset the mova to the default settings
● Press (2ᴬᴮᶜ)(2ᴬᴮᶜ).
If you reset, the host returns to "DoCoMo". Also, any edited or registered information in "User set host" is deleted.

4 Enter the various setting items, and then press ●.

● Enter the various items, and then press ● to display the following settings.

Host name	You can enter up to 8 full-pitch (16 half-pitch) characters.
Host number	You can enter up to 24 digits.
SMTP server	Server name of the outgoing mail server. You can enter up to 256 half-pitch alphanumeric characters.
Mail address	You can enter up to 50 half-pitch alphanumeric characters. The entry must be in the following format: "account@domain name".
User ID	You can enter up to 128 half-pitch alphanumeric characters.
Password	You can enter up to 128 half-pitch alphanumeric characters.
Primary DNS	Server address for the main domain name search. You can enter up to 15 half-pitch numbers and "." (periods).
Secondary DNS	Server address for the sub domain name search. You can enter up to 15 half-pitch numbers and "." (periods).
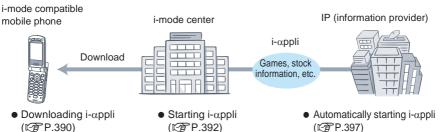
● The settings are changed when you finish entering the secondary DNS.

16

Using i-αppli

What is i-αppli?

Downloading i-αppli from sites makes your i-mode compatible mobile phone much more useful. For example, you can enjoy playing various games downloaded to your i-mode compatible mobile phone, or get the latest information on your stock portfolio with an i-αppli that automatically updates stock prices at regular intervals.
A map i-αppli downloads only the necessary data to allow you to scroll smoothly along the map. There are also i-αppli applications that allow you to register items directly to Phonebook or Schedule, those that link with My picture and allow you to retrieve or save images, or those that link with "FeliCa (contactless IC card)".

i-mode compatible mobile phone
i-mode center
IP (information provider)

i-αppli
Games, stock information, etc.

Download

- Downloading i-αppli (☞P.390)
- Starting i-αppli (☞P.392)
- Automatically starting i-αppli (☞P.397)

- Some software use mobile phone information related to your i-mode compatible mobile phone (such as the model and serial number).
- Some software perform communication when running. You can change the settings so that such communication does not occur.

Using Registered Data

There are some i-αppli software that refers to, registers, and performs operations with the registered data (phonebook, bookmarks, schedules, images, icon information) for your i-mode compatible mobile phone. Registered data that can be used:

- Phonebook registration
- Icon information use
- Bookmark registration
- Schedule registration
- Acquiring images from My picture
- Saving images to My picture

What is i-αppli DX?

By linking with i-mode compatible mobile phone information (such as mail or phone call history, and phonebook data), i-αppli DX lets you compose mail with screens featuring your favorite characters and identifies callers with comments from characters when calls are received. When linked with mail, you can receive updates or information of your choice, such as stock prices or game progress, in near real time. i-αppli DX makes i-αppli even more useful and enjoyable (☞P.406).

Using Registered Data

In addition to the registered data used by normal i-αppli (phonebook, bookmarks, schedules, images, icon information), i-αppli DX data can view, register, and operate data such as mail, redial, received calls history, and ring tones. Registration data that can be used:

- Phonebook registration
- Phonebook reference
- Bookmark registration
- Schedule registration
- Using mail menu
- Using the i-mode mail composition screen

Using i-αppli

388

- Referring to recent redial data
- Referring to recent received call history
- Referring to recent unread mail
- Saving ring tones
- Changing ring tones (phone, mail, message)
- Acquiring images from My picture
- Saving images to My picture
- Icon information use
- Changing screen settings (Stand-by display, incoming/ outgoing calls, sending/receiving mail, receiving messages)

- To confirm software effectiveness, i-αppli DX may communicate regardless of the settings for Set network transmission. The amount of communication and the timing vary depending on the software.
- Before i-αppli DX can be started, the date and time must be set.

Mail-linked i-αppli

Mail-linked i-αppli is a variety of i-αppli DX. Through the exchange of information using i-mode mail, it can provide near real time updates of information such as stock prices and the progress of games, allowing more enjoyable and convenient use of your software.

What is FeliCa Compatible i-αppli?

You can use FeliCa compatible i-αppli to read and write data on an IC card and download electronic money and tickets, check balances and use history on your mobile phone.
- When you use FeliCa compatible i-αppli, your usage balance and other service related information is sent to the information service provider of the service you use.
- What is FeliCa? (☞ P.410)

Some things you can do

i-αppli stand-by
In the i-αppli stand-by display, i-αppli can be used as the stand-by display, and mail can be received and phone calls can be made. You can set up a more enjoyable and useful stand-by display where up-to-date news and weather reports can be displayed on the stand-by display. You can also have your favorite characters notify you of mail reception and alarms (☞P.401).
- These functions can be used with software that is supported by i-αppli stand-by display.

i-αppli auto start
You can specify parameters such as time, date, or day of the week and have software start automatically when specified. There is also software that can automatically start according to a preset time interval (☞P.397).

Taking pictures with the camera
You can take pictures from software using the mova camera (☞P.406).
- This function can be used with software that supports the camera function.

Ir exchange
You can communicate by software with devices that have an infrared communication function installed. By integrating an infrared communication function, a wider range of applications is possible (☞P.408).
- This function can be used with software that supports the infrared communication function.
- Depending on the other party's device, there may be some data that cannot be communicated even though it has an infrared communication function installed.

Infrared remote control
By software, you can operate many household appliances such as those that are compliant with infrared remote controls (☞" " (separate mova "SH506iC i-αppli" manual)).
- This function can be used with software that supports the infrared remote control function. Compatible software for the target device is required.

Using i-αppli

389

Downloading i-αppli

You can download i-αppli programs from various sites and run them on the mova display.
- You can save up to 200 programs. However, the number varies between 20 to 200, depending on the size of the software.

1 **While displaying a site or webpage (☞ Steps 1 and 2 on P.257), select a software, and then press ⊙.**

- Downloading starts.

To cancel the download
- Press ⊛ while "Downloading" is displayed.

When open memory space on the mova is insufficient
- A confirmation screen is displayed. Select "Yes", and then press ⊙. The screen to select data to delete is displayed. Select still pictures and i-αppli to delete until the bar below reaches 100% to save the downloaded i-αppli.

Note	• If the download fails due to signal problems, the i-αppli is not registered.
	• Delete saved data to save downloaded software when the number of saved items exceeds the maximum or the save area is insufficient. If software is deleted and downloaded fails, the deleted software is not restored.
	• Please note that when "NO" is set for Network set, the software may not be able to supply information.
	• Before the download begins, a "Terminal ID notification" screen may be displayed.
	• If "ON" is set for "Soft description", i-αppli information is displayed at download. Press ⊙ to begin downloading.
	• If "Icon info set" for the i-αppli stand-by display is set to "Yes", there is a possibility a third party could learn your mobile phone information because that information (presence of unread mail message icons) is sent through the Internet to the IP (information provider) along with information about the model and serial number.
	• While downloading an i-αppli or i-αppli information from SSL pages, "$\boxed{\text{SSL}}$" is displayed.
	• Some i-αppli software may continue data exchange after downloading. Settings on the i-mode terminal must be made to use this service.
	If the selected software is already saved on your mova
	• If a newer version is available, a screen asking if you wish to upgrade is displayed. Select "Yes", and then press ⊙ to begin downloading (Upgrade).
	When software to run is selected immediately after download
	• Some software may be set to run automatically when downloading is completed. These software are not saved to your mova immediately after download. After running the software, choose whether to save or not.
	If the FeliCa compatible i-αppli cannot be downloaded
	• Depending on the size of data in the IC card, you may not be able to download FeliCa compatible i-αppli even when there is available save area. Follow the instructions on the confirmation screen, delete the software displayed and download again (depending on the type of software, some downloaded software cannot be deleted). Some software will delete data on the IC card and itself when you run the software.
	Memory area
	• Memory area is shared by My picture and i-αppli. i-αppli software may not be saved depending on the amount of image data saved in My picture .

▋ **Downloading Mail-linked i-αppli**
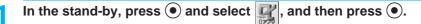
Keep the following points in mind when downloading Mail-linked i-αppli software.

● When Mail-linked i-αppli software is downloaded, folders for use by the software are created automatically in the Outbox, Inbox, and Unsent messages. The folder is saved using the name of the downloaded Mail-linked i-αppli, and cannot be changed.

● Software cannot be downloaded if Mail-linked i-αppli software that uses the same folders is already in the software list.

● When only folders for Mail-linked i-αppli remain, those folders can be used when software that uses those folders is downloaded again. If the folders are not used, they can be deleted and new folders can be created. However, if new folders are not created, you cannot download Mail-linked i-αppli.

● Mail-linked i-αppli cannot be downloaded when Mail security is set.

● You cannot download or upgrade Mail-linked i-αppli software used to change mail folder names while Mail security is set.

● Mail-linked i-αppli that create new folders cannot be downloaded when Mail security is set.

Viewing i-αppli Information During Download <Soft Description>

⟨ 🔵🔵 or 🔵 for at least 1 second ⟩

You can set whether or not the i-αppli information is displayed at download.
● The default setting is "OFF".

1 **In the stand-by, press ⬤ and select** 🔲 **, and then press ⬤.**

● The i-αppli screen is displayed.

2 **Press ③ (Soft description).**

3 **Press ① (ON: Soft description).**

● When software is downloaded, the software description is displayed. Press ⬤ to begin downloading.

To not display
● Press ②.

i-αppli To Be Started From Sites

If i-αppli startup settings are shown on a site, the i-αppli can be started from the site.
● There are some i-αppli software that cannot be saved. They can only be downloaded.
● You cannot start it as an i-αppli stand-by display.

1 **Select the i-αppli item to start, and then press ⬤.**

2 **Select "Yes", and then press ⬤.**

● The i-αppli software starts.

To cancel starting
● Press ⬛ while "Running i-αppli" is displayed.

Note	● Some software may be set to run automatically after downloading is completed. This type of software is not saved to your mova immediately after download. After running the software, choose whether to save or not when ending.
	● "Network set" (☞P.394) may be needed for some software.

Run i-αppli

Running i-αppli

⟨ ⓘⓘ or ⓘ for at least 1 second⟩

i-αppli software saved on the mova will be run (started).
● When started, some i-αppli software automatically communicates. You can set "Network set" beforehand to disallow communication, or to check whether or not to connect when i-αppli software is running.

1 **In the stand-by, press ⬤ and select [icon], and then press ⬤.**

● The i-αppli screen is displayed.

2 **Press (1.。) (Software list).**

● Titles for the i-αppli software saved on the mova are displayed.
● The following icons may be displayed, depending on the settings for the selected software.
　🄰 : Software featuring i-αppli stand-by capabilities
　🄰 : Software featuring auto start capabilities
　ssl : Software downloaded via an SSL session
　🄳 : i-αppli DX software
　🅀 : Mail-linked i-αppli software
　🄰 : Software set as i-αppli stand-by
　🄰 : Software that has auto start set
　⬒ : Software with transmission features
　🆁 : FeliCa compatible software

3 **Select an i-αppli software to run, and then press ⊙.**

● The selected i-αppli software is started.

To end software

● While the software is running, press ☎️‍🔒, select "Yes", and then press ⊙.

Note	● When in Viewer Position, in the stand-by, press ⬜ (left guidance key) for at least 1 second. Select "**1**Software list" with ⬤, press ⬤, select a software with ⬤, and then press ⬤. To end software, press ☎️ for at least 1 second, select "Yes" with ⬤, and then press ⬤.
	● When mail or messages are received while software is running, they are not automatically received but held at the i-mode center (notification with an icon. ☞P.293, P.313). To check mail and messages, perform Check new message or Receive specified mail after ending the software.
	● Software is interrupted if you receive a call while software is running. When the call is ended, the i-αppli is restarted.
	● When the set alarm time comes, software is suspended and the schedule or alarm is displayed. The software is resumed when the notification screen is exited.
	● Mail-linked i-αppli can run from the Inbox, Outbox, or the Unsent messages. Select the Mail-linked i-αppli folder from the folder list, and then press ⊙.
	To run i-αppli DX
	● Some i-αppli DX software perform transmissions regardless of transmission settings to test validity (the timing and frequency of the transmissions vary depending on the software).
	● The software will not be run or test for validity if the date and time are not set.
	● If the software becomes invalid, it cannot run until it can test for validity.
	● If the software is upgraded, a confirmation screen is displayed.
	To run i-αppli from the Shortcut menu
	● If software is registered in the Shortcut menu, that software can be run.

▉ To i-αppli software developers

If you create i-αppli software and it does not function correctly, the trace description may be useful. Press ⓘ for at least 1 second, and then press 6️⃣ to display the trace description. Normally, "**6**Trace description" is not displayed.

● Trace description cannot be displayed without software specifically set to obtain it.

Adjusting i-αppli Volume <i-αppli Volume>

〈ⓘⓘ2️⃣〉

● The default setting is "Volume 3".

1 **In the stand-by, press ⊙ and select 🔲, and then press ⊙2️⃣.**

● The i-αppli volume setting screen is displayed.

2 **Select a volume to use, and then press ⊙.**
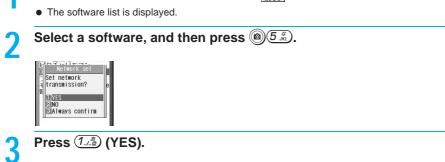
● The i-αppli volume is set.

Enabling or Disabling Communication <Set Network Transmission>

⟨ⓘⓘ①.⅜⟩

This sets whether communication is allowed for each software when i-αppli is running.
- These settings apply only to software that use communications.
- The default setting and setting at download is "YES".

1 **In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select 📲, and then press ⦿①.⅜.**

- The software list is displayed.

2 **Select a software, and then press ⓒ⑤ᴶᴷᴸ.**

```
    Network set
Set network
transmission?
1 YES
2 NO
3 Always confirm
```

3 **Press ①.⅜ (YES).**

To not communicate
- Press ②ᴬᴮᶜ.

To confirm each time i-αppli is run
- Press ③ᴰᴱᶠ.

Note	● Please note that when "No" is set for Network set, the software may not function or be able to supply information.
	● Because the images you use with i-αppli and the information you enter is sent over the Internet, it may become accessible to a third party ("Images you use with i-αppli" are images obtained by taking photographs with the camera function activated from running i-αppli software, images obtained by using the Ir exchange function from running i-αppli software, and images obtained while viewing My picture from running i-αppli software).

Enabling or Disabling Icon Notice Information <Icon Info Set>

⟨ⓘⓘ①.⅜⟩

This grants or denies permission to notify i-αppli software with icon information, the presence of unread mail/messages, battery charge, whether you are in or out of the service area, and Manner mode settings, etc.
- This setting is only for software that uses icon information.
- The default setting and the setting at download is "YES".

1 **In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select 📲, and then press ⦿①.⅜.**

- The software list is displayed.

2 **Select a software, and then press ⓒ⑦ᴾ�QᴿS.**

```
    Icon info set
Use icon
description?
1 YES
2 NO
```

3 **Press** ① **(YES).**

To not use
● Press ②.
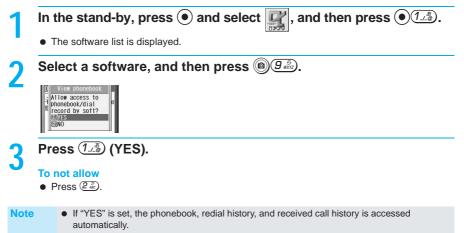
Note	● Software that requires icon descriptions may not function if set to "NO".
	● If "Icon info set" for the i-αppli stand-by display is set to "Yes", there is a possibility a third party could learn your mobile phone information (model and serial number), because that is sent through the Internet to the IP (information provider) along with icon descriptions.

Allowing Phonebook and History Access <View Phonebook/Dial History>

⟨ⓘⓘ①⟩

This grants or denies software permission to access to the phonebook, redial history, and received call history.
● This setting is only for i-αppli software that uses phonebook or history information.
● The default setting and setting at download is "YES".

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select 📱, and then press ●①.**

● The software list is displayed.

2 **Select a software, and then press ⓒ⑨.**

```
D  View phonebook
   Allow access to       e
   phonebook/dial
   record by soft?
   1 YES
   2 NO
```

3 **Press ① (YES).**

To not allow
● Press ②.

Note	● If "YES" is set, the phonebook, redial history, and received call history is accessed automatically.

Allowing or Prohibiting Changes to Ring Tones and Display <Change Ring Tone/Image>

⟨ⓘⓘ①⟩
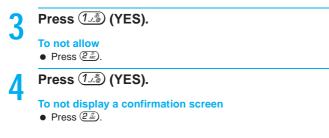
Allow each i-αppli to change or not change the ring tone or display. Also, set whether or not to display a confirmation screen when doing so.
● The default setting and the setting at download is "YES" and "NO", respectively.

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select 📱, and then press ●①.**

● The software list is displayed.

2 **Select a software, and then press ⓒ⑧.**

```
E  Change tone/img
   Allow ring tone/      e
   image changes
   by software?
   1 YES
   2 NO
```

Using i-αppli

395

3 Press ①ᵃ (YES).

To not allow
● Press ②ᵇ.

4 Press ①ᵃ (YES).

To not display a confirmation screen
● Press ②ᵇ.

| Note | ● When set to "YES", the ring tone and display may automatically be changed. |

Starting Software From Other Software

Some software can start other software and allow you to enjoy software without returning to the Software list.
● If the software to be run is not specified, select the software according to the instructions displayed on the screen.
● If the specified software is not saved on the mova, download the software.

Software Registered at the Time of Purchase

■ Picture Remote Controller

A TV remote control that you can freely decorate the Background of by using images shot using the camera and those downloaded as the Background.
You can use this for the stand-by display, allowing you to use at your convenience.

©2004 SHARP CORPORATION

■ Monster Farm Life

A cute monster tells your fortune using various movements.
The monster also alerts you of schedules and alarms.

©TECMO Lab. TECMO, LTD. 2004

■ (Library Viewer)

Enjoy electronic books on your mova. Contents may be downloaded using i-mode.

©2004 SHARP CORPORATION

Using i-αppli

■ Electronic Money "Edy" (FeliCa Compatible)

E-money Edy is an easy/convenient prepaid type that allows you to pay by simply touching a reader (☞P.410).

● "Edy" is a service offered by bitWallet, Inc. To use, you must agree to the user agreement, and a contract with bitWallet (effective as of when initial setup is performed) is required.

©2004 bitWallet, Inc.

■ Dimo 🎱　　　🎶 (Pictograph mail)

Enjoy exchanging mail with characters that move around according to the pictographs contained in subject of mail. In addition, enter text and converse with the characters or have the characters inform you of missed calls and unread mail by setting it as an i-αppli stand-by display.

● i-αppli mail used by Mail-linked i-αppli may not be displayed properly.

©BVIG

Note	● The default settings for preset i-αppli are as follows.
	● You can change the settings in the Software list submenu.

Settings	Default setting				
	Picture Remote Controller	Monster Farm Life	(Library Viewer)	Electronic Money "Edy"	Dimo 🎱 🎶 (Pictograph Mail)
Network set	—	YES	YES	YES	YES
Stand-by display	Do not set	Do not set	—	—	Do not set
Icon info set	—	YES	—	—	YES
i-αppli To	—	—	YES	YES	YES
View phonebook	—	—	—	—	YES

● Refer to "i-mode User's Manual" for details on "Dimo 🎱　　🎶　　" (Pictograph mail). Refer to "　　　　　　　　　" (separate mova "SH506iC i-αppli" manual) for information preset i-αppli other than "Dimo 🎱　　🎶　　" (Pictograph mail).

Auto Start

Running i-αppli Automatically

There are 2 types of i-αppli auto start.

Auto start from the software
Auto start function that is preset in the software.

Auto start from mova settings
Set the time/date/day to i-αppli saved on the mova and set Auto start.

This section describes the mova settings which run the Auto start.

Setting whether to accept i-αppli Auto start and the registering of the date and time for software is necessary.
● Set the date and time beforehand.
● You can register up to 10 software.

Using i-αppli

397

Setting to Start Automatically <Auto Start>

⟨(i)(i)(4 ᵍᴴⁱ)⟩

1 In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select 🖳, and then press ⦿(4 ᵍᴴⁱ) (Auto start).

2 Press (1.ᵃ) (ON: Set i-αppli auto start).

● The i-αppli Auto start software list is displayed.

To disable Auto start
● Press (2 ᵃᵇᶜ).

Note	● When auto start settings are turned "ON", only the i-αppli that was set is run.

Setting the Date and Time to Start Software <Set Auto Start Date and Time>

⟨(i)(i)(4 ᵍᴴⁱ)⟩

1 In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select 🖳, and then press ⦿(4 ᵍᴴⁱ) (Auto start).

● The Auto start settings screen is displayed.

2 Press (3 ᵈᴱᶠ) (Details set).

3 Select the number to set, and then press ⦿.

● To register a new number, select one with "--------------------" displayed.

To change the Auto start schedule
● Select the number to change, press ⦿, and then press (1.ᵃ) (Update).

To delete the Auto start schedule
● Select the number to delete, press ⦿, and then press (2 ᵃᵇᶜ) (Delete).

4 Select an i-αppli software to Auto start, and then press ⦿.

Using i-αppli

5 **Press** $\boxed{1._{\prime\prime\prime}^{\circledast}}$ **(Daily).**

To Auto start on set days
● Press $\boxed{2_{ABC}^{\mathbb{Z}}}$.
● Select the day you wish to start, and then press ⊙. The display changes to "☑". Select all the days to start on, and then press ⊛ (Complete).

To Auto start on a set date
● Press $\boxed{3_{DEF}^{\mathbb{Z}}}$.
● Enter the date.

When the software supports Auto start
● Press $\boxed{4_{GHI}^{\mathbb{Z}}}$.

6 **Enter the time, and then press ⊙.**

● Enter the time using the 24-hour format.
● Use ◌ to move the cursor.

Note	● If auto start fails, the error is recorded in the "Auto start error history".
	● When i-αppli software is set for Auto start, its own Auto start settings are turned "ON" in addition to the settings made here.
	● Software cannot start automatically in the following cases.
	■ Power is off
	■ Other functions are activated
	■ During a call
	■ When the set time for Schedule, ToDo or Alarm is the same as Auto power ON time.
	● When Reset settings are performed, i-αppli auto start settings are reset.

i-αppli To

Running i-αppli From Sites or Mail

If an i-αppli To is shown (i-αppli startup settings) in a site or screen memo, i-αppli can be started from them. Also, i-αppli software is started if i-αppli start signals are received during Ir exchange. Whether or not to allow i-αppli To is set in i-αppli To settings.

Setting Whether to Start i-αppli To <i-αppli To>

⟨⊛⊛$\boxed{1._{\prime\prime\prime}^{\circledast}}$⟩

Specify for each software whether to start i-αppli To.
● The default setting and setting at download is "YES".

1 **In the stand-by, press ⊙ and select** 🖳**, and then press ⊙**$\boxed{1._{\prime\prime\prime}^{\circledast}}$**.**

● The software list is displayed.

2 **Select a software, and then press** ⊚$\boxed{6_{MNO}^{\mathbb{Z}}}$ **(i-αppli To).**

3 **Press** $\boxed{1.\overset{\mathscr{a}}{\scriptscriptstyle{\textcircled{}}}}$ **(YES).**

To not allow
● Press $\boxed{2 \overset{\mathscr{b}}{\scriptscriptstyle{abc}}}$.
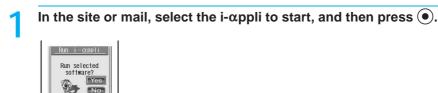
Note	● The software to run is predetermined by the site or i-mode mail. The specified software must be downloaded in advance.

Starting i-αppli From Sites or Mail <i-αppli To>

If an i-αppli To is set (i-αppli startup settings) in sites or in received i-mode mail, the software can be started from them.
● If i-αppli To is set to "No", i-αppli To will not start.
● You cannot start it as an i-αppli stand-by display.
● If "Paste data" is set to "Disable", i-αppli To is not displayed.

1 **In the site or mail, select the i-αppli to start, and then press** $\textcircled{\bullet}$.

2 **Select "YES", and then press** $\textcircled{\bullet}$.

● The i-αppli software starts.
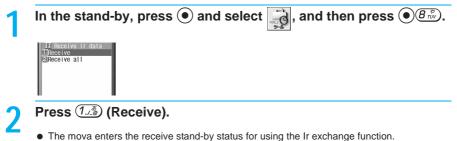
Note	● When the i-αppli is ended, the mova returns to the original i-mode mail details screen. ● If the applicable software in the i-αppli startup settings is not present, "No requested software" is displayed. ● i-αppli To from i-mode mail is a function to be used with i-mode mail from IP (information provider). This cannot be used between mova.

Using i-αppli

Starting i-αppli From the Ir Exchange Function

⟨●⟩⟨8 TUV⟩⟨8 TUV⟩

You can start an i-αppli if a signal to start i-αppli software is received during Ir exchanges from i-αppli start enabled transmission devices.
● If "i-αppli To" (☞P.399) is set to "No", i-αppli To will not start.
● You cannot start it as an i-αppli stand-by display.
● You cannot start it during i-mode lock.

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select [icon], and then press ●⟨8 TUV⟩.**

```
0.3 Receive Ir data
1 Receive
2 Receive all
```

2 **Press ⟨1⟩ (Receive).**

● The mova enters the receive stand-by status for using the Ir exchange function.

3 **If a signal to start i-αppli software is received from the sender's side, the i-αppli starts.**

Note	● If the applicable software in the i-αppli startup settings is not present, "No requested software" is displayed.

i-αppli Stand-by Settings

Setting Up i-αppli Stand-by Display

You can set an i-αppli as a stand-by display.
● Press ⟨CLR⟩ to run i-αppli set as the stand-by display.

Setting Up i-αppli Stand-by Display

⟨i⟩⟨i⟩⟨1⟩

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select [icon], and then press ●⟨1⟩.**

● The software list is displayed.

2 **Select a software, and then press ⟨camera⟩⟨4 GHI⟩ (Stand-by display).**

```
Stand-by display
Set up as i-αppli
stand-by display?
Yes
No
```

Using i-αppli

401

3 Select "Yes", and then press ⦿.

● The i-αppli stand-by screen is set. The software starts when the mova returns to the stand-by display.

To not set

● Select "No", and then press ⦿.

When i-αppli software uses communication

● The screen to set communication settings for the stand-by display is displayed.
Press ①. Keep in mind that information may not be provided if ② is pressed.

Note	● Only one compatible software can be set as the i-αppli stand-by display.
	● Some i-αppli cannot be set up as an i-αppli stand-by display.
	● When an i-αppli stand-by display is set, the image set in "Stand-by display" is not displayed. When an error occurs that disables the i-αppli stand-by display, the time the error occurred is recorded and shown in the error history. Nothing is recorded when ending normally.
	● When software that connects to the network is set as an i-αppli stand-by display, it may not work properly, depending on the signal quality.
	● When Keypad lock or i-mode lock is set while the i-αppli stand-by display is running, the i-αppli stand-by display ends, and the screen set in Stand-by display is displayed. If the keypad lock or i-mode lock is disabled, the i-αppli stand-by display is displayed again.
	● If an i-αppli DX is set as the i-αppli stand-by display, the software will test for validity when the i-αppli stand-by is first run.
	● When the i-αppli stand-by display has been set, a confirmation screen to start the i-αppli stand-by display appears when the power is turned on. Select "Yes", and then press ⦿, or wait approximately 5 seconds to start the i-αppli stand-by display. Select "No", and then press ⦿. The normal stand-by display is displayed and the i-αppli stand-by display is disabled. However, if the mova was turned on using Auto power ON, the i-αppli is started when you return to the stand-by display.
	● When an i-αppli stand-by display is set, it is not disabled even if the setting for Stand-by display is changed.
	● The amount of time that the battery can be used becomes shorter when i-αppli stand-by display is set.
	● The Web To function cannot be used from the i-αppli stand-by display.

Disabling i-αppli Stand-by Display <Disable i-αppli Stand-by>

〈ⓘⓘ①〉

1 In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select 🖼, and then press ⦿①.

● The software list is displayed.

2 Select a software, and then press 📷④ (Stand-by display).

3 Select "Yes", and then press ⦿.

● The i-αppli stand-by display is disabled.

To not disable

● Select "No", and then press ⦿.

Note	● Set i-αppli stand-by, and then press ⦿② (Disable) to also cancel i-αppli stand-by. Press ⦿① (End) while using i-αppli to return to the i-αppli stand-by.

Using i-αppli

Managing i-αppli Software

⟨i⟩⟨i⟩⟨1.⟩⟩

- Depending on the software, the IP (information provider) may access software saved in the mova and directly stop use of the software. In this case, you cannot start the software, set it as stand-by or upgrade. You can only delete the software or show software details. To use the software again, the software must receive a transmission to be able to run again. Contact the IP (information provider).
- Depending on the software, the IP (information provider) may send data to the software saved in the mova.
- The mova performs transmissions and "📶" flashes when contacting the IP (information provider) to request the software to stop or run again, or when data is being transmitted. There are no charges when this happens.

Upgrading i-αppli Software <Upgrade>

When registered i-αppli software has been changed to a newer version, you can upgrade your version of the software.

1 **In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select 📱, and then press ⦿ ①.**

- The software list is displayed.

2 **Select a software, and then press 📷 ② (Upgrade).**

3 **Select "Yes", and then press ⦿.**

- Downloading of the new version begins.
- If "ON" is set for "Soft description", i-αppli information is displayed. Press ⦿ to begin downloading.
- If the maximum download capacity has been exceeded, the software cannot be upgraded. Delete other i-αppli and try again.

When the software was not updated

- "Software updated" is displayed.

To cancel operation

- Select "No", and then press ⦿.

■ Automatic upgrade

For some software, upgrade information is automatically checked when run, and an upgrade may be performed automatically.
When "Upgrade available" is displayed, press ⦿ to automatically upgrade.
- If you do not wish to perform the upgrade, press 🔘.

Note ● You cannot upgrade Mail-linked i-αppli that changes mail folder names while Mail security is set.

Rearranging i-αppli Software <Sort>

You can change the arrangement of the software list in one of the following ways.

DL (New　Old)	In order of download date, starting with the newest.
DL (Old　New)	In order of download date, starting with the oldest.
By size	In order according to the size of the software, starting with the largest.

1 **In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select 📱, and then press ⦿①.**

● The software list is displayed.

2 **Press 📷⓪ (Sort).**

● DL (New→Old)
● DL (Old→New)
● By size

3 **Select the sort method, and then press ⦿.**

Deleting i-αppli

You can delete software using any of the following methods: Delete one, Delete all, or Delete selected.
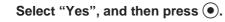
1 **In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select 📱, and then press ⦿①.**

● The software list is displayed.

2 **Select a software, and then press 📷③ (Delete).**

● Delete one
● Delete all
● Delete selected

3 **Press ① (Delete one).**

To delete all
● Press ②, and then enter your terminal security code (4 digits).

To delete selected
● Press ③, select the software you wish to delete, and then press ⦿. (The display at the beginning of the list changes to "☑". To cancel the selection, select software with "☑", and then press ⦿.) Select all software you wish to delete, and then press ⓘ (Complete).

4 **Select "Yes", and then press ⦿.**

To not delete
● Select "No", and then press ⦿.

Note	● When deleting Mail-linked i-αppli, you can choose whether or not to delete the mail folder that was automatically created. However, if there is protected mail in the folder, the software and folder are not deleted.
	● To check mail contained in a folder when a Mail-linked i-αppli is deleted without deleting the folder, press ⑥ in the Inbox, Outbox, or Unsent messages, select "View i-mode mail", and then press ⦿ to display only the text of the mail.
	● To use preset software after deleting, download from "SH-MODE".
	To delete all software including Mail-linked i-αppli
	● If the folder contains protected mail, software and folders cannot deleted.
	● If the Mail-linked i-αppli folder has not been deleted and software is downloaded again, the folder can be used.
	To delete FeliCa compatible software
	● Depending on the software, you may have to run the software and delete data in the IC card to delete the software.
	● Some FeliCa compatible i-αppli may not be deleted.
	● Software may not be deleted if data remains in the mova. Activate the software and delete data.

Checking the i-αppli Settings <Soft Description>

Information such as the name of the software, version, save area, profile version, supported models, Auto start interval, and SSL connection is displayed.
● The displayed i-αppli software name cannot be changed.

1 **In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select 📱, and then press ⦿①.**

● The software list is displayed.

2 **Select a software, and then press ⑥① (Soft description).**

● The i-αppli settings status is displayed.
● If the i-αppli was downloaded from an SSL page, "Yes" is displayed in the "SSL connection" item of the software information.

Viewing the Error Display <Error Display>

⟨ⓘⓘ⑤⟩

You can check errors that occur while i-αppli software is running ("Auto start error history", "Stand-by error history", "Security error history").

1 **In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select 📱, and then press ⦿⑤.**

● The error history screen is displayed.

2 **Select the error history item, and then press ⦿.**

● The error history is displayed.

Using i-αppli

405

Using Various Functions From i-αppli

Displaying Sites From i-αppli

You can display sites from i-αppli software that is running.
- You must download i-αppli software that supports site display.
- The "Web To function" cannot be used from the i-αppli stand-by display.
- Sites where the URL exceeds 255 half-pitch alphanumeric characters and symbols cannot be displayed.

1 **While an i-αppli is running, select a URL, and then press ⬤.**

- The method for displaying sites varies depending on the i-αppli software.

2 **Press 1 (Yes).**

- The site page is displayed.
To cancel operation
- Press 2.
To display a URL
- Press 3.

Making Phone Calls From i-αppli

You can make phone calls from i-αppli software that is running.
- You must download i-αppli software that supports phone calls.
- You cannot make phone calls from the i-αppli stand-by display.
- When "Keypad dial lock" or "Self mode" is set, phone calls cannot be made.

1 **While an i-αppli is running, select a phone number, and then press ⬤.**

- The method for making phone calls varies depending on the i-αppli software.

Using the Camera Function From i-αppli

You can use the camera from i-αppli software that is running.
- The picture you took is saved in the i-αppli software.
- Even if the software is deleted, images saved in My picture are not deleted.

1 **While the i-αppli is running, select the function to activate camera, and then press ⬤.**

- The mova enters to Camera mode (still picture shooting screen). You can adjust the Brightness, set the Auto timer, and use the Zoom function.
- "Image size", "Multishot", "Image quality", and "Frame" may be set from some software. The items you can set, the setting method, and the camera activation method vary for each i-αppli.

2 Press ⦿.

● The picture is taken.

To save the picture you took

● Press ⦿.

Note	● Images used with i-αppli and information you enter may be sent over the Internet automatically. Images used with i-αppli are images obtained by taking photographs with the camera function activated from i-αppli software that is running and images obtained by using the Ir exchange function from i-αppli software that is running.

Using the Bar Code Reader From i-αppli

You can use the bar code reader from i-αppli software that is running.
● Read data may be used by the i-αppli.

1 While the i-αppli is running, select the function to activate bar code reader, and then press ⦿.

● The mova enters to Camera mode (still picture shooting screen).
● Bar code reading is performed in AF Closeup mode.
 The focal distance is approximately 10cm.
● The method for starting bar code reader varies depending on the i-αppli software.

2 Position the camera so that the bar code (JAN code/QR code) is displayed, and then press ⦿ (SCAN).

● The bar code (JAN code/QR code) is shot.

Using OCR From i-αppli

Perform Character reader from running software.
● Read data may be used by the i-αppli.

1 While i-αppli is running, select the function to activate the OCR, and then press ⦿.

● The Character reader screen is displayed.
● Character reading is performed in AF Closeup mode.
 The focal distance is approximately 10cm.
● The method to activate OCR varies depending on the i-αppli software.

Using i-αppli

407

2 Position the camera so that the characters to read are in the center of the display, and then press ⦿.

3 Press ⦿ (Scan).

4 Press ⟨1./ⓐ⟩ (OK: End reading).

Using Ir Exchange From i-αppli

You can use the Ir exchange function (☞P.436) from i-αppli software that is running.
● When "Self mode" is set, the Ir exchange function cannot be used.

1 While i-αppli is running, activate Ir exchange.

● The method for activating Ir exchange varies depending on the i-αppli software.

2 Select "Yes", and then press ⦿.

● Ir exchange begins.

To cancel operation
● Select "No", and then press ⦿.

To cancel Ir exchange
● Press ⟨@ⒶⓁⓉ⟩ while "Exchanging data" is displayed.

Using i-αppli

17

Using the Felica

What is FeliCa?
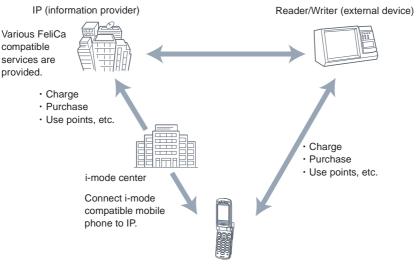
FeliCa is a form of contactless IC card that can read and write data by holding it up to compatible device.

With a FeliCa compatible mobile phone, you can shop using electronic money by holding your mobile phone up to a reader/writer (note: external device), taking the place of your wallet. FeliCa makes your mobile phone further handy in everyday life.

In comparison to other FeliCa compatible contactless IC cards, charging is available from sites, and balance and usage history can be viewed; features only available on mobile phones. These useful FeliCa compatible functions are called the IC card function.

   Download FeliCa compatible i-αppli to use IC card functions.

(Note) This is a device for reading and writing IC cards.

IP (information provider)   Reader/Writer (external device)

Various FeliCa compatible services are provided.

Charge
Purchase
Use points, etc.

Charge
Purchase
Use points, etc.

i-mode center

Connect i-mode compatible mobile phone to IP.

FeliCa compatible Mobile phone

- Registration and usage methods vary for each FeliCa compatible service. Contact the IP (information provider) for information. Refer to the "i-mode User's Manual" for notes on using the various FeliCa compatible services.
- Note and store the names and contacts for the FeliCa compatible services that you are using. Data contained in the IC card may be deleted or modified in the event of malfunctions or repairs to the mova and the switching of models, etc. (As a rule, data is deleted by the customer upon repairs.) DoCoMo cannot be held responsible in any way for the loss or alteration of data stored in the IC card. Support services for deleted or altered data vary depending on the FeliCa compatible service. Contact the IP (information provider) of the service in advance.
- Data in the IC card cannot be copied to your new mobile phone at the DoCoMo counter when switching models. Support services vary depending on the FeliCa compatible service. Contact the IP (information provider) in advance.
- Be careful not to misplace your mova. If the mova is lost, contact the IP (information provider) for details. IC card functions cannot be restricted.

Using the IC Card Function

How to use the IC card function.

Download a FeliCa compatible i-αppli ☞P.390

→

Activate the FeliCa compatible i-αppli and read and write data in the IC card ☞P.392

● Use convenient functions such as charging electronic money and tickets, checking your balance and usage history with the FeliCa compatible i-αppli.

→

Bring the side with the FeliCa mark close to the reader/writer (external device)
☞See below
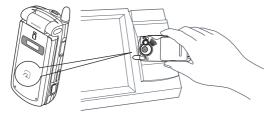
● You can bring the side with the FeliCa mark close to a reader/writer (external device) and use the mova as electronic money or as boarding tickets.

Bring the side with the FeliCa mark close to the reader/writer (external device)

You can bring the side with the FeliCa mark close to a reader/writer (external device) and use the mova as electronic money or as boarding tickets.
● You can use this without activating the software.
● Be careful not to hit the reader/writer (external device) with the mova.
● Reading is available only from the side with the FeliCa mark.
● Reading is not available from Viewer position.
● Hold up the side with the FeliCa mark parallel to the reader/writer (external device).
● Hold the mova up to the center of the reader/writer (external device).
● Metal objects on the FeliCa side may interfere with transmissions.

1 **Hold the side of the mova with the FeliCa mark up to a reader/writer (external device).**

2 **Confirm that FeliCa mark has been scanned.**

● Confirm scan results on the display of the reader/writer (external device).

Precautions When Using the IC Card Function

- Attach the battery pack when using the IC card function.
- You can bring the side with the FeliCa mark close to a reader/writer (external device) and use the IC card functions even if the power is OFF or the battery has run out. FeliCa compatible i-αppli cannot be run. However, when the battery pack is not used for a long time, or left uncharged after the battery alarm has sounded, this function may not work. Please charge the battery.
- You can bring the side with the FeliCa mark close to a reader/writer (external device) and use the IC card functions during a phone call or i-mode transmissions. However, FeliCa compatible i-αppli cannot be run.
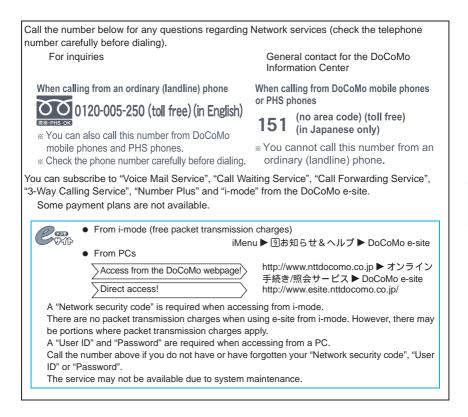
Note	● The i-αppli software and "Edy" electronic money registered by default can also be used.
	● Reading and writing data to the IC card from the software is interrupted in the following cases. In these cases, the data that is read or written is deleted. Operations after finishing the call vary depending on the service used.
	■ The software is interrupted if you receive a call while the software is running. When the call is ended, the software resumes.
	■ When the set alarm time comes, software is interrupted and the schedule or alarm notification screen is displayed. The software is resumed when the notification screen is exited.
	● Handle terminal security code and passwords for various services carefully.

Using the Felica

18

Using Network Services

413

Voice Mail Service (Fees Apply)

The Voice Mail Service center holds messages for you.	Voice Mail Service

This is an optional (fees apply) subscription service.

For inquiries	General contact for the DoCoMo Information Center

When calling from an ordinary (landline) phone

🔊 0120-005-250 (toll free) (in English)
携帯・PHS OK

※ You can also call this number from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHS phones.
※ Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

When calling from DoCoMo mobile phones or PHS phones

151 (no area code) (toll free) (in Japanese only)

※ You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.

You can subscribe to "Voice Mail Service", "Call Waiting Service", "Call Forwarding Service", "3-Way Calling Service" and "Number Plus" from the DoCoMo e-site.

Some payment plans are not available.

● From i-mode (free packet transmission charges)   iMenu ▶ 9   ▶DoCoMo e-site
● From PCs   http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp ▶
                           ▶DoCoMo e-site or http://www.esite.nttdocomo.co.jp/

Voice Mail Service Provides the Following Useful Functions

● The Voice Mail Service center holds messages for you when you are out of reach of signals, or when your mova is turned off.

● You can answer the call with a reply message.

● You can play back recorded messages from anywhere in Japan.

Note	● Up to 20 messages at three minutes each can be recorded. ● Recorded messages are held at the center for 72 hours. ● There is also a service that only informs the caller that you are not available. ● You can make or receive calls as usual, even if you have set "Start" for the Voice Mail Service. ● When a call is received while "Start" is set for the Voice Mail Service, the ring tone sounds for about 10 seconds (change this setting: ☞P.415). If you answer the call during that time, you can talk to the caller. If you do not answer, the call is connected to the Voice Mail Service center. Such calls are also noted in the stand-by display and in received calls history. However, when "0 seconds" is set for the ring time, no entry is made in received calls history. ● Incoming calls can also be forwarded to the Voice Mail Service center by key operations alone. Calls received while you are in the middle of another call can also be forwarded. Such calls are also noted in the stand-by display and in received calls history. ● After termination of a call received on an additional phone number registered using Number Plus (☞P.431), you will not be able to check your messages using Voice Mail Service. After this, the function becomes temporarily unavailable, and disappears from the menus. However, once you use the normal phone number again, the function will resume. ● The Voice Mail Service automatically stops when "Start" is set for the Call Forwarding Service (☞P.423). ● The Voice Mail Service can be operated from ordinary touch-tone telephones including payphones, using the security code selected when you subscribed to the service. ● When "Start" is set for the Caller ID Request Service (☞P.433), a guidance requesting Caller ID is played when an "User unset" is received (the Voice Mail Service is not available). ● If you are in a hurry and wish to record a message quickly, press # while the reply message is playing. The phone immediately switches to Message record mode. ● When the Record message function (☞P.69) is also set, but you want the Voice Mail Service to record the call, set the ring time for the Voice Mail Service shorter than the set time for the Record message function.

Basic Flow of the Voice Mail Service

STEP 1 Record a reply message. (Default setting (1)(4)(1)(6)(📞))
STEP 2 Set the Voice Mail Service to "Start".
STEP 3 Caller leaves a message.
STEP 4 Playback the recorded message.

mova Basic Operations

Playback new recorded message	(1)(4)(1)(7)(📞)➡Main menu➡(1)➡Play
Playback saved recorded message	(1)(4)(1)(6)(📞)➡Main menu➡(1)➡Play
Switch service options	(1)(4)(1)(6)(📞)➡Main menu ➡(9)(1)(✱)(✱)(📞)
Change the reply message	(1)(4)(1)(6)(📞)➡Main menu➡(9)(2)
Start the service	(1)(4)(1)(1)(📞)➡(📞)
Stop the service	(1)(4)(1)(0)(📞)➡(📞)
QUICKCAST* ring function	(1)(4)(1)(8)(📞)➡Set ➡(📞)
Set/Change the ring time	(1)(4)(1)(9)(📞)➡Set ➡(📞)
Record/Check/Change reply message for message box (optional)	(1)(4)(1)(6)(📞)➡Main menu➡(5)➡Set ➡(📞)

● See the "mova Voice Mail Service Operation Guide" for details.
● In addition to the operation methods above, you can also use the mova menu functions.

Voice Mail Service Charges

> (Monthly service charge) + (Fees incurred for playing recorded messages, etc.)

Call charges

Operations for starting/stopping the service, turning function settings ON or OFF during a call, and setting the ring time	Free
Initial setting, saved message playback, changing the reply message switching functions, QUICKCAST* ring function, record/check/change reply message for message box	Fees apply
New recorded message playback	When no messages are recorded	Free
	When playing back recorded messages	Fees apply
When using an ordinary phone or payphone	Fees apply (Charged to the contracted mobile phone)
Caller records a message	Fees apply (Paid by the caller)

● The fees above do not include consumption tax.
(Note 1) If there is a message, the fee is charged from when the instructions start.

Note	● 4-digit access codes such as (1)(4)(1)(7) cannot be used when Keypad dial lock is ON. ● Your personal security code used for Voice Mail Service and other network services cannot be changed from your mova or from other phones.

*   From January 2001, the DoCoMo paging service changed its name to "QUICKCAST".

Forwarding a Received Call (Received During a Call) to the Voice Mail Service

If you receive a call during another call (or during i-mode), the incoming call can be forwarded to the Voice Mail Service center.

- i-mode settings can be set in advance on the mova (☞P.281).
- i-mode settings can be set in advance. However, these settings are only effective when set to ①④⑤⓪.

[Before making calls, set the settings as shown below.]

Connect manually to the Voice Mail Service center[*1]	①④⑤⓪◻ ➡ ◻
Connect automatically to the Voice Mail Service center	①④⑤①◻ ➡ ◻
Do not connect to the Voice Mail Service center[*2]	①④⑤⑨◻ ➡ ◻

*1 If you have a contract for Call Waiting Service (☞P.420), you have the choice of receiving the call.

*2 In this case, the caller calling during another call hears a busy signal.

■ Connecting manually (when ①④⑤⓪ is set)

If a call is received during another call, you are notified by a beep tone. Perform the following operation while the beep tone is sounding.

- Incoming calls are connected to the Voice Mail Service center. This is not the operation to "Start" the Voice Mail Service.
- You cannot perform this operation while Keypad lock is set.

1 Press ●# while the beep tone is sounding.

Forwarding Calls to the Voice Mail Service When the Voice Mail Service is Stopped

Even if the Voice Mail Service is not set to "Start", you can perform the following operation while the phone is ringing to forward the call to the Voice Mail Service center.

● Only incoming calls are connected to the Voice Mail Service center. This is not the operation to "Start" the Voice Mail Service.

● You cannot perform this operation while Keypad lock is set.

1 **Press ⊙(#▽₇ˀ) while the ring tone is sounding.**

Note	● This function uses the last service that was set.
	● This function is only available when a call from a third party is received during another call. In other situations (when you are out of the service area, not available to answer the call, or have turned off the power), mova operation follows the Voice Mail Service settings (1411: start/1410: stop).
	● You cannot use the manual connection operation (1450) when making calls to service numbers: 110 (police), 118 (emergencies at sea), 119 (ambulance/fire), 117 (time) and 14XX (Voice Mail Service operations, etc.).
	● The settings for this function are performed from your own mova. These operations cannot be performed remotely from ordinary phones, payphones, or other mobile phones. The ON/OFF operations for this function are not subject to dialing charges.
	What is the beep tone during a call?
	● If you have subscribed to the mova Voice Mail Service, Call Forwarding Service, or Call Waiting Service, and you have (1.%)(4 ặ)(5 ặ)(0 ặ) set, when a call is received during another call, a beep tone is heard to notify you of the new call. You can then take the following actions.
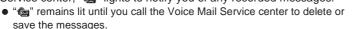
Voice Mail Service	You can transfer the call to the Voice Mail Service center (☞P.416).
Call Forwarding Service	You can forward the call to a registered destination (☞P.425).
Call Waiting Service	You can place the current call on hold and answer the new call (☞P.420).

Using Network Services

When Messages are Held at the Voice Mail Service Center

If you make (receive) a call when messages are held at the Voice Mail Service center, "📧" lights to notify you of any recorded messages.
● "📧" remains lit until you call the Voice Mail Service center to delete or save the messages.

Using your mova to check for any recorded messages

⟨●④①②⟩

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select 📧, and then press ●④①②.**

● "Contacting srvc" is displayed, and then whether or not any messages were recorded is indicated.
● To return to the stand-by display, press 📞 or wait about 3 seconds. (When there are messages held at the Voice Mail Service center, "📧" lights.)
● If the mova cannot check for messages, "Unable to contact service" is displayed for about 1 second.
● A message may be displayed instead of "📧" to notify you of a recorded message. This will disappear when you call the Voice Mail Service center and delete or save a recorded message.

To re-check the number of messages
● Press ●④①① in the stand-by display. The number of already checked messages is displayed.

Note
● If you are not subscribed to the Voice Mail Service, you cannot perform these operations.
● If you turn off the power, "📧" disappears temporarily but reappears after you make (receive) a call or check the service again.
● You cannot check the service for recorded messages while "圏外" is displayed. Move to a place where the signal is stronger and try again.
● If the call is disconnected or the signal is poor, you may not be able to check the service.
● During i-mode stand-by ("ℹ" flashes), "Unable to contact while i-mode is in use" is displayed and you cannot use this service. Press 📞 in the stand-by display, exit i-mode, and try again.
● In some cases, this function may not access messages saved after checking the service.
● After checking for recorded messages, you cannot press 🔙 to return to the previous menu or page.
● The number of messages displayed is the same as the number mentioned when playing new recorded messages (1417). Saved recorded messages are not included in this number.

Using the Voice Mail Service While Checking the mova Display

〈●4₂〉

You can start and stop the service, play recorded messages, or change service settings while confirming your operations on the mova display.

● The menu below is displayed regardless of whether or not you are subscribed to the Voice Mail Service. However, if you do not have a subscription, you cannot use the service.

■ Starting/Stopping the Voice Mail Service

1 In the stand-by, press ● and select ![icon], and then press ●4₂.

```
42 Voice mail
Play Voice mail    1417
Change Voice mail  1416
Start Voice mail   1411
Stop Voice mail    1410



        OK
```

2 Select "Start Voice mail" or "Stop Voice mail", and then press ●.

● A guidance notifies you that the service has been started or stopped.

■ Listening to messages

1 In the stand-by, press ● and select ![icon], and then press ●4₂.

● The voice mail screen is displayed.

2 Select "Play Voice mail", and then press ●.

● A guidance message is played. Follow the instructions to play the message.

■ Changing service options

1 In the stand-by, press ● and select ![icon], and then press ●4₂.

● The voice mail screen is displayed.

2 Select "Change Voice mail", and then press ●.

● A guidance message is played. Change service settings by following the guidance.

Note	● You cannot use this function if Keypad dial lock is set.
	● If "Unable to use at the moment" is displayed, move to a place where the signal is stronger and try again.
	A useful function for recording a message using the Voice Mail Service
	● If you are in a hurry and wish to record a message quickly, press #⌨ while the reply message is playing. The phone immediately switches to Message record mode.

Call Waiting Service (Fees Apply)

Accept a second call while you are in the middle of another call	Call Waiting Service

This is an optional (fees apply) subscription service.

For inquiries

General contact for the DoCoMo Information Center

When calling from an ordinary (landline) phone

携帯・PHS OK **0120-005-250 (toll free) (in English)**

※ You can also call this number from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHS phones.
※ Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

When calling from DoCoMo mobile phones or PHS phones

151 (no area code) (toll free) (in Japanese only)

※ You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.

You can subscribe to "Voice Mail Service", "Call Waiting Service", "Call Forwarding Service", "3-Way Calling Service" and "Number Plus" from the DoCoMo e-site.
 Some payment plans are not available.
● From i-mode (free packet transmission charges) iMenu ▶ ⑨ ▶DoCoMo e-site
● From PCs http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp ▶
  ▶DoCoMo e-site or http://www.esite.nttdocomo.co.jp/

Call Waiting Service Provides the Following Useful Functions

When a call is received from a third party during another call, a beep tone notifies you of the second call. You can talk to the new caller while holding the current call.

Starting or Stopping Call Waiting Service

You can start (ON) or stop (OFF) Call Waiting Service before making calls.

To start Call Waiting Service (ON)	①④⑤⓪（📞）▶（🔴）
To stop Call Waiting Service (OFF)	①④⑤⑨（📞）▶（🔴）

● If Call Waiting Service is stopped (OFF), you cannot use the Call Waiting Service until it is started (ON) again. Callers who call you while you are using the phone hear a busy signal.
● If Call Waiting Service is set ON, the service starts after the guidance "
  " (Perform key operations during calls to use registered services.) is played.

Note
● 4-digit access codes such as ①④⑤⓪ cannot be used when Keypad dial lock is ON.
● When "Start" is set for the Caller ID Request Service, a guidance requesting Caller ID is played when an "User unset" is received (the Call Waiting Service is not available).
When Using the Call Waiting Service
● Call Waiting Service cannot be used in the following situations:
 ■ When making calls to 110, 119, 118, 117 or 104
 ■ While dialing or while the phone number you have dialed is ringing
 ■ When making a call to the Voice Mail Service center if you are subscribed to Voice Mail Service. Also, when set to automatically connect received calls to the Voice Mail Service center (1451)
 ■ You are subscribed to Call Forwarding Service and the call is being forwarded to the destination. Also, when set to automatically forward received calls to a set destination (1452)
 ■ During data communications
● The caller is charged while the call is on hold.

Answering a New Call While Holding the Current Call

1 **During the call, press 📞 (Answer).**

《📶Call Waiting》

0M 17S

● When there is a call on hold, " 📶Call Waiting " is displayed.

2 **Press 🔘 (Switch) to switch to the other party.**

● You are switched back to the caller of the first call.
● You can switch between calls by pressing 📞 or 🔘 (Switch).

Note ● When in Viewer position, press ⬜ (left guidance key) to receive the call and ⬜ (left guidance key) to switch calls.

Answering a Call After Finishing the Current Call

1 **During a call, press 📞.**

● The ring tone for the new call sounds. In this case, the call is not forwarded to the Voice Mail Service even if you are subscribed to Voice Mail Service. Press ●# to manually forward the call.
● If the party you are talking to terminates the call, proceed to step 2 without pressing 📞.

2 **Press 📞 (Answer).**

● You can talk to the new caller.

Note ● When in Viewer position, press ⬜ (right guidance key) to end the call and ⬜ (left guidance key) to switch to the new call.

Using Network Services

Using the Call Waiting Service While Checking the mova Display

〈●4 GHI 4 GHI〉

You can start and stop the service while checking the mova display.

Starting or Stopping Call Waiting Service

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select 🖾 , and then press ●4 GHI 4 GHI.**

```
44 Call Waiting
Start          1450
Stop           1459
```

2 **Select "Start" or "Stop", and then press ●.**

● A guidance notifies you that the service has been started or stopped.

Note	● If you are subscribed to mova Voice Mail Service, Call Forwarding Service or Call Waiting Service, and you have 1 4 GHI 5 JKL 0 set, when a call is received during another call, a beep tone is heard to notify you of the new call. You can then take the following actions.

Voice Mail Service	You can transfer the call to the Voice Mail Service center (☞P.416).
Call Forwarding Service	You can forward the call to a registered destination (☞P.425).
Call Waiting Service	You can place the current call on hold and answer the new call (☞P.420).

● Catch Phone (Call Waiting Service) is a registered trademark of Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation.

Call Forwarding Service (Free)

Never miss a call from a client	Call Forwarding Service

This is an optional (free) service that requires a subscription.

For inquiries

General contact for the DoCoMo Information Center

When calling from an ordinary (landline) phone

📞 0120-005-250 (toll free) (in English)

携帯·PHS OK

※ You can also call this number from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHS phones.
※ Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

When calling from DoCoMo mobile phones or PHS phones

151 (no area code) (toll free) (in Japanese only)

※ You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.

You can subscribe to "Voice Mail Service", "Call Waiting Service", "Call Forwarding Service", "3-Way Calling Service" and "Number Plus" from the DoCoMo e-site.

Some payment plans are not available.
- From i-mode (free packet transmission charges)   iMenu ▶ 9   ▶DoCoMo e-site
- From PCs   http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp ▶
                         ▶DoCoMo e-site or http://www.esite.nttdocomo.co.jp/

Call Forwarding Service Provides the Following Useful Functions

- Calls are forwarded automatically even when you are out of the reach of signals or have your mova turned off.

- The service is available from anywhere within the nationwide service area.

Note	● You can store up to 5 different forwarding destinations. ● You can make or receive calls as usual even if you set "Start" for the Call Forwarding Service. ● When a call is received while "Start" is set for the Call Forwarding Service, the ring tone sounds for about 7 seconds (change this setting: ☞P.424). If you answer the call during that time, you can talk to the caller. If you do not answer, the call is forwarded to the set forwarding destination. Such calls are also noted in the stand-by display and in received calls history. However, when "0 seconds" is set for the ring time, no entry is made in received calls history. ● Incoming calls can also be forwarded using simple key operations on your mova. Calls received during another call can also be forwarded. Such calls are also noted in the stand-by display and in received calls history. ● The Call Forwarding Service automatically stops when "Start" is set for the Voice Mail Service (☞P.415). ● You can add to or change the settings for the Call Forwarding Service from ordinary touch-tone telephones including payphones, using the 4-digit security code determined when you subscribed to the service. ● When "Start" is set for the Caller ID Request Service (☞P.433), a guidance requesting Caller ID is played when an "User unset" is received. Call Forwarding Service is not available. ● You cannot receive collect calls while "Start" is set for Call Forwarding Service. ● Subscription to Call Forwarding Service and DoCoMo's " " (International forwarding service) (no monthly fee) is required to forward calls abroad. A subscription to DoCoMo's WORLD CALL or an international phone company is required.

Basic Flow for the Call Forwarding Service

STEP 1 Register a phone number to forward to (up to 5 numbers can be registered).
STEP 2 Set the forwarding destination and select "Start" for the Call Forwarding Service.
STEP 3 A call is made to your mova.
STEP 4 If you do not answer, the call is automatically forwarded to the set forwarding destination.
STEP 5 The caller can talk to the party at the forwarding destination.

mova Basic Operations

Register the phone number of the forwarding destination	①④⑨⑤➡Main menu➡③ ➡Select list number➡Register forwarding destination ➡(#)(#)➡☎
Start the service	①④②①➡Select list number➡☎
(To connect to the Voice Mail Service when a new call is received while a call is being forwarded, or when the forwarding destination is busy)	①④②①➡Select list number➡①➡☎ (Note 1)
Stop the service	①④②⓪➡☎
Set the ring time	①④②⑨➡Main menu➡① ➡Set ring time➡(#)(#)➡☎
Enable or disable Set Fwd w/Msg (guidance)	①④②⑨➡Main menu➡②➡Set ➡(#)(#)➡☎
Check service options	①④②⑨➡Main menu ➡④➡Confirm content ➡(#)➡☎

● See the "Network Services General User's Manual" for details.
(Note 1) A subscription for both the Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service is necessary.

Note

● If you have a contract for the mova Voice Mail Service, Call Forwarding Service, or Call Waiting Service, and you have ①④⑤⓪ set, when a call is received during another call, a beep tone is heard to notify you of the new call. You can then take the following actions.

Voice Mail Service	You can transfer the call to the Voice Mail Service center (☞P.416).
Call Forwarding Service	You can forward the call to a registered destination (☞P.425).
Call Waiting Service	You can place the current call on hold and answer the new call (☞P.420).

● Your personal security code used for Voice Mail Service and other network services cannot be changed from your mova or from other phones.
When the forwarding destination is a pager
● When adding or changing a forwarding destination, just add ✱ before the pager number. The number is recognized as a pager, and the call is forwarded. If a pager is set as the forwarding destination, and you have started the service, a call is forwarded and a guidance notifies the caller that the call is being forwarded to a pager.
● 4-digit access codes such as ①④②⑨ cannot be used when Keypad dial lock is ON.

From January 2001, the DoCoMo paging service changed its name to "QUICKCAST".

Call Forwarding Service Charges

Monthly service charge (Free)	+	Call charge

Call charges

Caller	Charge is billed to the caller.	Call Forwarding Service Subscriber	Charge is billed to the subscriber of the Call Forwarding Service.	Forwarding Destination

Note	● You cannot receive collect calls while "Start" is set for Call Forwarding Service.
	● When a call is forwarded, call charges are billed to the Call Forwarding Service subscriber, for a call from the mova location registration area to the forwarding destination.
	● Calls for registration of forwarding destinations and for operations for starting and stopping the service are not charged.
	Notes on using the Call Forwarding Service
	● Call forwarding settings to Free Dial (0120), 110, Quick Numbers, Toll-Free Numbers, and numbers "186", "131　", or "#" are unavailable.
	● You can make calls even if "Start" is set for the Call Forwarding Service.
	● If "Start" was selected with ①④②①, all the default settings for "Set Fwd w/Msg." are set to "ON (Yes)". To set to "OFF (None)", follow the voice guidance played after pressing ①④②⑨.
	When set to "ON (Yes)", the caller hears the guidance "　　　　　　　　　　　　　　　　　" (Call will be forwarded. Please wait.) when a call is forwarded.
	● When "Set Fwd w/Msg." is set to "OFF (None)", the caller only hears the ring tone even if the forwarding destination is busy, out of the service area, or the phone is turned off.
	● If you answer the call while the phone is ringing, you can talk to the caller.
	● Calls are automatically forwarded without the ring tone if the mova is out of the signal area or is turned off. In this case, the call charge from the forwarding origin to the destination is billed to the person who subscribed to the Call Forwarding Service.
	● If a request is made from the forwarding destination, and DoCoMo agrees to the necessity, forwarding to the destination may be canceled.
	● Please note that if you set a PBX, QUICKCAST*, or a fax machine as the forwarding destination, the caller may misunderstand.

* From January 2001, the DoCoMo paging service changed its name to "QUICKCAST".

Forwarding a Received Call (Received During a Call) to a Forwarding Destination

If you receive a call during another call (or in i-mode stand-by), you can forward the second call to a forwarding destination.
● i-mode stand-by settings can be set in advance on the mova (☞P.281).
● To enable the settings below during i-mode stand-by, set "Set i-mode rcv" to "i-mode answer" (☞P.281).

[Before making calls, set the settings as shown below.]

Connect manually to the registered forwarding destination*1	①④⑤⓪ ⬛ ➡ ⬛
Connect automatically to the registered forwarding destination	①④⑤② ⬛ ➡ ⬛
To not forward*2	①④⑤⑨ ⬛ ➡ ⬛

*1 If you are subscribed to Call Waiting Service (☞P.420), you have the choice of receiving the call.
*2 In this case, the caller calling during another call hears a busy signal.

■ Forwarding manually (when 1.4500 is set)

If a call is received during another call, you are notified by a beep tone. Perform the following operation while the beep tone is sounding.

● You cannot perform this operation while Keypad lock is set.

1 **Press ⊙⊛ while the beep tone is sounding.**

● The call is forwarded to the registered forwarding destination.

Forwarding Calls to a Registered Forwarding Destination When the Call Forwarding Service is Stopped

Even if the Call Forwarding Service is not set to "Start", you can forward a call to a registered forwarding destination by using the following key operations while the phone is ringing.

● You cannot perform this operation while Keypad lock is set.

1 **Press ⊙⊛ while the ring tone is sounding.**

● The call is forwarded to the forwarding destination registered as item "1".
 (This is not the operation to "Start" the Call Forwarding Service.)
● This operation is ignored if there is no destination registered for item "1" in the list of forwarding destinations.

Note	● This function uses the last service that was set.
	● This function is available only when a call from a third party is received during another call. In other situations (when you are out of the service area, not available to answer the call, or have turned the power off), operations follow the Call Forwarding Service settings (1421: start/1420: stop).
	● You cannot use the manual connection operation (1450) when making calls to service numbers, such as 110 (police), 118 (emergencies at sea), 119 (ambulance/fire), 117 (time) and 14XX (Call Forwarding Service operations, etc.).
	● The settings for this function are performed from your own mova. These operations cannot be performed remotely from ordinary phones, payphones, or other mobile phones. ON/OFF operations for this function are not subject to call charges.
	● This may not be available with some billing plans.
	What is the beep tone during a call?
	● If you are subscribed to Voice Mail Service, Call Forwarding Service, or Call Waiting Service, the mova notifies you with a beep tone of any incoming calls during another call. The beep tone is the same as the tone for Call Waiting Service, and this tone will still sound even if you are not subscribed to Call Waiting Service.
	However, if you are not subscribed to Call Waiting Service, you cannot answer the call.

Enabling or Disabling "Set Fwd w/Msg." When Forwarding a Call

〈●④⑤⑤⑤〉

When you manually forward a call while the phone is ringing or during another call, you can select whether or not to play the guidance.
● The default setting is "ON" (Play).

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select 🗙, and then press ●④③③.**

● The screen to set forward with message is displayed.

2 **Press ① (ON).**

To not play a message
● Press ②.

| Note | ● We recommend that you notify the caller, when forwarding, using "Set Fwd w/Msg".
● When "Set Fwd w/Msg" is set to "OFF", the caller only hears a ring tone if the forwarding destination is busy, out of the service area, the phone is turned off or is set to Drive mode.
● This function is only available when forwarding calls manually (●✱).
● This cannot be used when dialing or during a call.
● If ①④②①✱ is used to start call forwarding, "Set Fwd w/Msg" is set to "ON".
● When the call is forwarded, the caller hears the guidance "<br>" (Call will be forwarded. Please wait.). |
|------|------|

Using the Call Forwarding Service While Checking the mova Display

〈●④③①〉

You can start and stop the service or register a forwarding destination while checking the operation on the mova display.

■ Starting or stopping the Call Forwarding Service

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select 🗙, press ●④③①, select "Start" or "Stop", and then press ●.**

● Forwarding is started or stopped.

2 **Follow the guidance to set.**

■ Registering a forwarding destination

〈●④③②〉

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select 🗙, press ●④③②, and then press ●.**

● Forwarding destination registration is started.

2 **Follow the guidance to set.**

Note	● If you register a forwarding destination from an ordinary phone or payphone (refer to the "Network Services General User's Manual"), Call Forwarding Service is automatically set to "Start" when you register the forwarding destination.

3-Way Calling Service (Fees Apply)

| Three-person conversation | 3-Way Calling Service |

This is an optional (fees apply) subscription service.

For inquiries

When calling from an ordinary (landline) phone

0120-005-250 (toll free) (in English)

検索・PHS OK

※ You can also call this number from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHS phones.
※ Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

General contact for the DoCoMo Information Center

When calling from DoCoMo mobile phones or PHS phones

151 (no area code) (toll free) (in Japanese only)

※ You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.

You can subscribe to "Voice Mail Service", "Call Waiting Service", "Call Forwarding Service", "3-Way Calling Service" and "Number Plus" from the DoCoMo e-site.

Some payment plans are not available.
● From i-mode (free packet transmission charges)   iMenu ▶ ⑨   ▶DoCoMo e-site
● From PCs   http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp ▶
                    ▶DoCoMo e-site or http://www.esite.nttdocomo.co.jp/

3-Way Calling Service is a service that enables you to call another person during another call and conduct a three-person conversation.

| Note | ● You can conduct a 3-way call with DoCoMo mobile phones, other manufacturers' mobile phones, ordinary phones, or PHS phones.
● The call charge continues while calls are on hold, and is charged to the party who made the call.
● 3-Way Calling Service is not available in the following situations.
When making international calls, or calls to 113, 115, 110, 119, 118, 104, 106, using Call Waiting Service, Call Forwarding Service, Voice Mail Service, Quick Number, etc. (ringing for 3-way calling is also unavailable). |

Making a 3-Way Call

Example: While talking to B, dial C to initiate a 3-way call

1 **While talking to B, enter C's phone number, and then press (Answer).**

● When you dial the number, the first party (B) hears a signal tone and the call is placed on hold.
● When a pause dial (P) is included, the numbers up to the pause dial is sent.

If the third party (C) does not answer
● Press to cancel the call, then press (Answer).
● The call with the first party (B) is resumed.

2 **Press ( ).**

● You can talk to both B and C.

Switching Between Calls <Switch 3-Way>

Example: To make a call to C while talking to B and switch their calls

1 **While talking to B, enter C's phone number, and then press ⊡ (Answer).**

● When you dial the number, the first party (B) hears a signal tone and the call is placed on hold.

If the third party (C) does not answer
● Press ⊡ to cancel the call, then press ⊡ (Answer).
● The call with the first party (B) is resumed.

2 **Press ⊡ (Switch).**

● The call with B is resumed. The third party (C) hears a signal tone and the call is placed on hold. From this point on, each time you press ⊡ (Switch), you can switch between the calls with B and C.

To terminate a call with the current party
● Press ⊡ to end the call. In this case, a ring tone notifies you that there is still a call on hold. Press ⊡ to talk to the caller on hold.

Note	● To change switching between the two calls (Switch 3-way) into a 3-way call, press ⊡ (⊡). Press ⊡ (Switch) during a 3-way call to return to switching between the two calls (Switch 3-way).

Adding a New Caller to Make a 3-Way Call

If you are subscribed to the "Call Waiting Service" (☞P.420), you can add a call received during another call and make a 3-way call. (However, when you add a call received during another call for a 3-way call, you cannot switch between the two calls (Switch 3-way).)
Example: To add a call received from C while talking to B to initiate a 3-way call

1 **If C calls while you are talking to B, press ⊡ (Answer).**

● You can talk to C. The first party (B) hears a signal tone and the call is placed on hold.
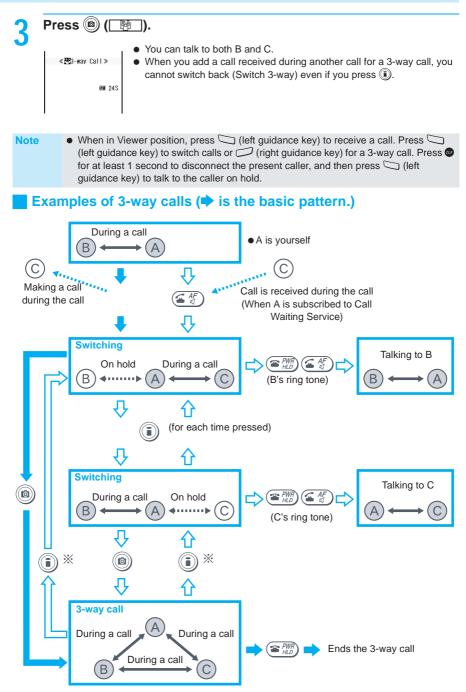
2 **Press ⊡ (Switch).**

● The call with B is resumed. The third party (C) hears a signal tone and the call is placed on hold.
From this point on, each time you press ⊡ (Switch), you can switch between the calls with B and C.

To terminate a call with the current party
● Press ⊡ to end the call. In this case, a ring tone notifies you that there is still a call on hold.
Press ⊡ to talk to the caller on hold.

429

Using Network Services

3 **Press ◉ (📇).**

《📇3-way Call》

0M 24S

- You can talk to both B and C.
- When you add a call received during another call for a 3-way call, you cannot switch back (Switch 3-way) even if you press ⓘ.

Note	● When in Viewer position, press ⌐ (left guidance key) to receive a call. Press ⌐ (left guidance key) to switch calls or ⌐ (right guidance key) for a 3-way call. Press ◉ for at least 1 second to disconnect the present caller, and then press ⌐ (left guidance key) to talk to the caller on hold.

■ Examples of 3-way calls (➡ is the basic pattern.)

When you add a call received during another call for a 3-way call, you cannot switch between the two calls (Switch 3-way) even if you press ⓘ (Switch).

Number Plus (Fees Apply)

| Multiple phone numbers for your mova | Number Plus |

This is an optional (fees apply) subscription service.

For inquiries

When calling from an ordinary (landline) phone

0120-005-250 (toll free) (in English)

※ You can also call this number from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHS phones.
※ Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

General contact for the DoCoMo Information Center

When calling from DoCoMo mobile phones or PHS phones

151 (no area code) (toll free) (in Japanese only)

※ You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.

You can subscribe to "Voice Mail Service", "Call Waiting Service", "Call Forwarding Service", "3-Way Calling Service" and "Number Plus" from the DoCoMo e-site.

Some payment plans are not available.
● From i-mode (free packet transmission charges)　iMenu ▶ 🔟　　　　　　　▶DoCoMo e-site
● From PCs　　　　　　　　http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp ▶
　　　　　　　　　　　　　▶DoCoMo e-site or http://www.esite.nttdocomo.co.jp/

Number Plus Provides the Following Useful Functions

This is a service that allows you to register additional phone numbers for incoming calls on your mova to separate your business calls and private calls, or to use fax software on a PC to receive fax transmissions.

Conventionally, this service could only be used for data and fax communications, but it can now be used for voice calls as well.

By using a DoCoMo data communication device, such as "Mobile card Triplex N", and fax software, you can automatically receive faxes sent to an additional phone number registered for receiving fax transmissions. For details, refer to the manual provided with the device or software.

● You can check a call that has been received on a Number Plus phone number on the display. You can also set a ring tone that differs from normal ring tones.
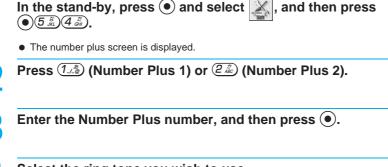
Note	● If "Send own number" is set to "ON", only the main number listed in the contract for your phone is displayed on the receiver's phone. The Number Plus number is not displayed.
	● After terminating a call received on a Number Plus number, you will not be able to check for messages on the Voice Mail Service. After this, the function becomes temporarily unavailable, and disappears from the menus. However, once you use the normal phone number again, the function will resume.
	● If a call is received on Number Plus number while Drive mode (☞P.66) is set, the ring tone does not sound. You can receive calls automatically when the phone is connected to a PC or fax machine using a DoCoMo data communication device, such as "Mobile card Triplex N", and fax software.
	● If a call is received on a Number Plus number, you cannot use Voice Mail Service (☞P.414), Call Waiting Service (☞P.420), or Call Forwarding Service (☞P.423).
	● Even if "Caller ID Request Service" (☞P.433) is set to "Start", when a call is received from an unidentified caller on the Number Plus number, the guidance is not played and the normal ring tone is heard.
	● You cannot register a toll-free number as a Number Plus number for incoming calls.
	● You cannot send or receive fax or data communications (except for short mail messages) from mobile phones in the Ogasawara-mura area in Tokyo, or the Kitadaito-son and Minamidaito-son areas in Okinawa.
	● You cannot have a simultaneous subscription for "Access number".
	● To subscribe to this service, you may need to change the phone number of the contracted phone.

Registering Number Plus Numbers

〈●5 4〉

You can register up to 2 phone numbers. Register the Number Plus number which you registered when you subscribed to the service.

● You can change the ring tone type for each Number Plus number. The default setting is "
   ".

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select [icon], and then press ●5 4.**

● The number plus screen is displayed.

2 **Press 1 (Number Plus 1) or 2 (Number Plus 2).**

3 **Enter the Number Plus number, and then press ●.**
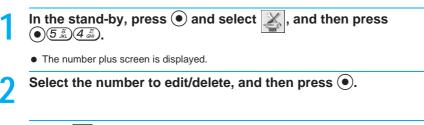
4 **Select the ring tone you wish to use.**

Note	**If you register an additional phone number with Number Plus**
	● When calls are received on the Number Plus number, the calls are saved in received calls history.
	● The ring tone volume for the Number Plus is set to that used for normal calls.
	● When Manner mode is set, the phone vibrates to notify you of an incoming call.
	● If a call is received on Number Plus while using i-mode, the other party hears a busy signal.

Editing/Deleting a Number Plus Number

〈●5 4〉

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select [icon], and then press ●5 4.**

● The number plus screen is displayed.

2 **Select the number to edit/delete, and then press ●.**

3 **Press 1 (Edit).**

To delete a Number Plus number
● Press 2, select "Yes", and then press ●.

4 **Edit the Number Plus number, and then press ●.**

5 **Select the ring tone you wish to use.**

Caller ID Request Service (Free)

This is an optional (free) service. You do not need to subscribe for this service.

Caller ID Request Service Provides the Following Useful Functions

When a call is received from an unidentified caller, this service automatically requests the caller to activate Caller ID (via a guidance), and terminates the call. This prevents prank calls and other problems caused by unidentified callers, and allows you to receive calls safely.
● This is only enabled when the caller has set the reason of non-disclosure to "User unset". (This does not apply to calls from payphones or phones which do not support caller ID.)
● The caller is charged during the guidance. (Calls received on your toll-free number* are charged to you.)

Starting or Stopping the Caller ID Request Service

Starting or stopping "Caller ID Request Service" is performed from your own mova phone (free).
● These operations cannot be performed remotely from ordinary phones, payphones, or other manufacturer's mobile phones.
● The default setting is "Stop".

1 **In the stand-by, press** $\boxed{1.}\boxed{4_{GHI}}\boxed{8_{TUV}}\boxed{\phone_{AF}}$ **.**

● A guidance notifies you whether the current setting is "Start" or "Stop".

2 **Press** $\boxed{1.}$ **(Start) or** $\boxed{0_n}$ **(Stop).**

● A guidance notifies you that the current setting will be changed to "Start" or "Stop".

When the new setting is the same as the previous setting
● After you make the settings, a guidance notifies you that the settings remain in effect.

3 **After listening to the guidance, press** $\boxed{\phone_{HLD}^{PWR}}$ **.**

Note	● After you have started the service, when a call is received from an unidentified caller, a guidance requests the caller to activate Caller ID.

● When your mova's "Reject unknown" setting and this service are both enabled, this service has priority.

Incoming calls and network services when the Caller ID Request Service is enabled

Service name	Incoming call from a caller who does not send their Caller ID
Voice Mail Service	A guidance requesting Caller ID is played. (Messages are not accepted.)
Call Forwarding Service	A guidance requesting Caller ID is played. (The call is not forwarded to the forwarding destination.)
Call Waiting Service	A guidance requesting Caller ID is played.
Drive Mode	A guidance requesting Caller ID is played. (The guidance informing the caller that you are driving is not played.)
Number Plus	A guidance requesting Caller ID is not played for incoming calls to a Number Plus.

* The charges for calls to 10-digit telephone numbers beginning with 0120 are paid by the recipient.

Using Network Services

►MEMO◄

434

19

Using Infrared Exchange

435

About Infrared (Ir) Exchange

The infrared exchange function lets you send and receive Phonebook data, schedule entries, mail, still pictures, and other data to and from other mova phones supporting infrared exchange. By using i-αppli to send data by infrared exchange, you can also interface with other devices that support infrared exchange.

● Your mova's infrared exchange function conforms to the IrMC 1.1 standard. However, even if the other party's device conforms to the IrMC 1.1 standard, depending on the function, there may be some data items that you cannot send or receive.

● During Ir exchange, the mova operates as if out of the service area. For this reason, you cannot receive or make calls, use i-mode, send or receive mail, or send i-shot.

● You cannot use Ir exchange during a call or while in Self mode.

Types of Data You Can Send or Receive

You can send or receive the following types of data with the infrared (Ir) exchange function.

Data you can send from your mova

Function	One	All	Notes
Phonebook			You cannot send group information, secret information, or memory numbers individually. You also cannot send images or addresses set as a Picture call, secret codes, specified phone or Mail ring tones, Called LED and Mail/Message LED settings. Owner information is also sent when all Phonebook data is sent.
Schedule			You cannot send secret information individually when Secret mode is "OFF". You cannot send alarm, contact and image information other than the alarm time. The start date is set as the end date for data that does not have end date set.
ToDo list			You cannot send secret information individually when Secret mode is "OFF". When all data is sent, secret information is also sent. It is saved as ordinary data on the receiver side. You cannot send alarm information other than the alarm time.
Memo pad			Security memo cannot be sent.
Mail			You cannot send pasted i-shot images, i-αppli To, divided mail information, or folder information.
Bookmark			You cannot send folder information.
Still pictures in My picture		×	You cannot send still pictures that cannot be pasted.
Owner information		×	The information is saved as a Phonebook entry on the receiver side.

● Data contained in the miniSD memory card cannot be sent.

Data you can receive on your mova

Function	One	All	Notes
Phonebook			Memory numbers above "010" are automatically allocated, starting with the smallest available number. However, if there are no available memory numbers above "010", they are added to available memory numbers above "000". All Owner information other than Own number is overwritten when all Phonebook data is received.
Schedule			Schedule data is saved in date order.
ToDo list			ToDo list data is saved in date order.
Memo pad			Memo data is saved in order of last revised.
Mail			Mail is saved in order of received date/sent date/saved date.
Bookmark			Bookmarks are saved at the top.

Function	One	All	Notes
Still pictures in My picture		×	Saved in order of available memory spaces, starting at the top.
Owner information		×	The information is saved as a Phonebook entry.

● Please note that when you receive all items, all data on the device receiving the information will be overwritten.
● Up to 500KB of images can be sent/received with Ir exchange.

Infrared Exchange Mode

Infrared exchange is performed in Infrared exchange mode. You can perform the following operations in Infrared exchange mode.

Send one item	Sends data selected from a Phonebook or mail screen etc., 1 item at a time. The data is added to the appropriate function on the receiver side.
Receive one item	In the receive Ir data screen, 1 item of data at a time is received from the mova sending the data. The received data is automatically identified and is added to the appropriate mova function.
Send all data	All data for each function is sent, from the Phonebook or mail screen, etc.
Receive all data	In the receive Ir data screen, all data is received for a function specified by the mova sending the data.

Notes on using the Infrared exchange function

30° or less
Within 20cm

● Place the sending and receiving movas on a table or other stable surface within 20cm of each other. Align so that the infrared (Ir) ports of the movas are pointing at each other.
● When data is received, "Save?" is displayed on the receiver side. Keep the Infrared (Ir) ports on the mova terminals aligned until "Yes" or "No" is selected, and ⦿ (OK) is pressed.
● Do not move the two movas until transmission is complete, and keep the infrared ports aligned.
● If the exchange is performed in places exposed to direct sunlight, fluorescent lighting, or other infrared devices, the data exchange may not be performed correctly.
● If the infrared port is dirty, it becomes difficult to perform the exchange. Clean with a soft cloth, taking care not to damage the port.

Note	● i-mode is automatically ended if infrared exchange is started during an i-mode session.
	● If you interrupt the Infrared exchange or if it could not be completed correctly, the following messages are displayed. "Connection interrupted. Retry?", "No response. Retry?", "Authentication failed. Retry?" In these cases, select "Yes", press ⦿, and then try again.
	● If the exchange is not completed successfully, move the movas closer together, and try again.
	● Images sent by Infrared exchange may lose picture quality or change in data size.
	● When sending a still picture with a title exceeding 10 full-pitch (19 half-pitch) characters, only the first 9 full-pitch (18 half-pitch) characters are received.

Using Infrared Exchange

Sending and Receiving Data One Item at a Time

You can use the Infrared exchange function to send or receive mova data, one item at a time.

● Refer to P.436 for details on the types of data you can send and receive.

Sending One Data Item

Perform this operation from a list screen or details screen of the data you wish to send. This example describes how to send Phonebook data.

1 **Select the data you wish to send from the Phonebook list.**

● Display the data to send.
● This can also be performed from the Phonebook details screen.

2 **Press ⓐⓢ⑤ᴶᴷᴸ (Send Ir data).**

● The submenu numbers differ depending upon the type of data being sent and the screen from which it is being sent.

3 **Set the receiver mova to stand-by status to receive one item at a time (☞P.439).**

4 **Press ①·ᵃ (Send).**

● Sending starts and "📺" is displayed.
● When all the data has been sent, "Exchange completed" is displayed, and the mova returns to the screen of step 1.

Note	● You cannot send Phonebook data if the Phonebook lock is set.

Using Infrared Exchange

Receiving One Data Item

〈 ⊙ 8ᵀᵁᵛ 8ᵀᵁᵛ 1./.@ 〉

"Receive one" is performed from the receive Ir data screen.

1 **In the stand-by, press ⊙ and select [TOOLS], and then press ⊙ 8ᵀᵁᵛ 1./.@ (Receive).**

● The mova enters receive stand-by status. If the data is sent from the mova on the sender's side, the data is received automatically.
● When the data is received, a confirmation screen is displayed.

When the password input screen is displayed
● Receiving starts after you enter the same password (4 digits) as that on the device sending the data.

2 **Select "Yes", and then press ⊙.**

When Mail security is set (Receiving mail)
● Enter your terminal security code (4 digits).

When you save the same bookmark
● "The same URL has been saved. Copy it?" is displayed.
● To overwrite the current data, select "Yes", and then press ⊙.

To not save the received data
● Select "No" and then press ⊙.

Note	**To Send/Receive one Phonebook entry**

● Received Phonebook data is automatically added to a memory number above "010", starting with the smallest available memory number. However, if there are no available memory numbers above "010", they are added to available memory numbers above "000".
● You cannot receive Phonebook data or Owner information if Phonebook lock or Keypad dial lock is set.
● Secret Phonebook data received in Secret mode is saved as normal Phonebook data.
To Send/Receive one Schedule entry
● Secret Schedule data received in Secret mode is saved as normal Schedule data.
To Send/Receive one Mail
● Mail data received is saved by date received/date sent/date saved.
● You cannot receive data if i-mode lock is set.
● If Mail security is set, the screen to enter your terminal security code is displayed after receiving is complete. Enter your terminal security code (4 digits), and then press ⊙ to save received data.
To Send/Receive one Bookmark
● Received bookmarks are saved at the top.
● You cannot receive data if i-mode lock is set.

Using Infrared Exchange

Sending and Receiving All Data

You can use the Infrared exchange function to send or receive all data for each function on the mova.
● Refer to P.436 for details on the types of data you can send and receive.
● To send or receive all data items, you need to enter your "terminal security code" and "password".
  ■ For the "terminal security code", enter your current 4-digit mova terminal security code.
  ■ The "password" is exclusively for Ir exchange. Before starting to send or receive data, decide on a 4-digit password, and enter the same number on both the receiver and sender mova units. You can change this password each time you perform Ir exchange.

Sending All Data

Perform this operation from a list screen of the data you wish to send.
This example describes how to send Phonebook data.

1 **Set the receiver mova to stand-by for receiving all data (**☞**P.441).**

2 **Press ⓞ⑤ (Send Ir data) in the phonebook list screen.**

● The submenu numbers differ depending upon the type of data being sent and the screen from which it is being sent.

3 **Press ② (Send all).**

● The screen to enter your terminal security code is displayed.

4 **Enter your terminal security code (4 digits).**

● Each entered digit is displayed as "✱".

5 **Enter the password (4 digits).**
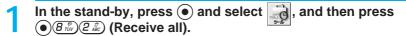
● If this matches the password entered by the receiver, data sending starts and "📶" is displayed.
● When all the data has been sent, "Exchange completed" is displayed, and the mova returns to the screen of step 2.

Note	● You cannot send Phonebook data if the Phonebook lock is set.
	● When sending all schedules, perform "Show all scheds" before sending Ir data.
	● On the receiving mova, the bookmark list for Send all is displayed in the order they were used last.

Using Infrared Exchange

Receiving All Data

〈 ⦿ 8̲ 8̲ 2̲ 〉

"Receive all" is performed from the receive Ir data screen.
● Performing a "Receive all" will overwrite all the data already saved on your mova.

1 **In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select 🛠, and then press ⦿ 8̲ 2̲ (Receive all).**

2 **Select "Yes", and then press ⦿.**

● The screen to enter your terminal security code is displayed.

To not receive
● Select "No" and then press ⦿.

3 **Enter your terminal security code (4 digits).**

● Each entered digit is displayed as "✳".

4 **Set the sender mova to send all status.**

● Remember the password entered for the sender.

5 **Enter the same password as the sender.**

● If the data is sent to the receiver mova, the data is received automatically.

Note	**To Send/Receive all Phonebook data**
	● You cannot receive Phonebook data if Phonebook lock or Keypad dial lock is set.
	To Send/Receive all Mail
	● You cannot receive data if i-mode lock is set.
	● Data can be received even when Mail security is set.
	To Send/Receive all Bookmarks
	● You cannot receive data if i-mode lock is set.
	● The bookmark list for Receive all is displayed in the order they were used.
	To send pictographs
	● Pictographs can be received for items in which pictographs can be saved. However, pictographs may not be displayed properly when sent to mobile phones other than i-mode and PCs.

Using Infrared Exchange
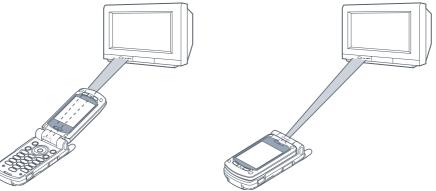
Using the Infrared Remote Control Function

Use i-αppli software with the mova's infrared port to operate devices that support infrared remote controls, such as televisions and VCRs.

● You must have i-αppli software that supports the infrared remote control function. ("Picture Remote" is pre-installed on the mova, and supports the infrared remote control function.)
● The infrared remote control function cannot be used in Self mode.

Operating the Remote Control

Remote control operations are performed by running i-αppli software that supports the infrared remote control function, and then pointing the mova's infrared port directly at the remote control sensor of the television or VCR.

● Some i-αppli can be operated in Viewer position. (The pre-installed Picture Remote can be operated in Viewer position.)
● Actual operation procedures may differ depending on the software used. Refer to P.396 or the " " (Separate mova "SH506iC i-αppli" manual) for details on "Picture Remote".
● Operations can be performed from up to 4m away. (Distance may vary depending on the device and lighting conditions.)
● " " lights while the infrared remote control is sending.

Note	● The function may not operate properly depending on the device.
	● The function may not operate properly if the mova is in direct sunlight or under a fluorescent light, or is near an infrared device.

20

Managing Data

About the miniSD Memory Card

The mova supports miniSD memory cards. The miniSD memory card is a memory card that is a smaller version of the SD memory card. You can save data such as phonebook, mail, and Bookmarks on a miniSD memory card, or you can transfer data contained on a miniSD memory card to the mova. In addition, you can view data contained on a miniSD memory card with the mova.

By using a miniSD memory card adapter, you can use the miniSD memory cards with PCs and printers that support SD memory cards.

Notes on Handling the miniSD Memory Card

Keep the following points in mind when using miniSD memory cards.

Contents saved on miniSD memory cards may be lost or damaged due to malfunctions or accidents, or if the card is not handled properly. It is therefore recommended that important data be backed up.
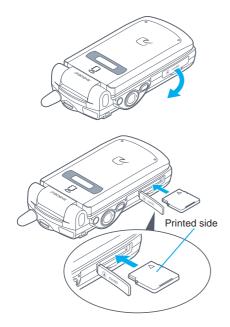
DoCoMo cannot be held responsible in any way for data that may be lost or damaged.

● Do not insert or remove a miniSD memory card while the mova is turned ON.
● Insert the miniSD memory card correctly. If it is not inserted correctly, it cannot be used.
● miniSD memory cards have a limited service life. If they are used for a long time, you may not be able to save new data on the cards.
● Purchase miniSD memory cards or the miniSD memory card adapter at electronics stores. The mova supports miniSD memory cards of up to 128MB. (As of June 2004)
  For the latest information on supported miniSD memory cards
    From the mova: "⌗Menu" "③   " (Menu list) "   " (Mobile phone manufacturers) "SH-MODE"
    From a PC: See "http://k-tai.sharp.co.jp/products/sh506ic.shtml"
● Keep in mind the following when using the sample miniSD memory card for the first time, when using miniSD memory cards sold in stores or formatted on other devices.
  ■ When inserted into the mova, the mova will write necessary information for approximately 10 seconds. Do not remove the miniSD memory card or turn off the mova while it is writing. Doing so may damage data in the card or cause a malfunction.
  ■ If the card cannot be used after inserting into the mova, it must be formatted with the mova. Refer to P.458 for information on formatting. Keep in mind that when a card is formatted, all data saved on the card is erased.
● Do not affix adhesive labels or seals to the card. miniSD memory cards are extremely thin and delicate. Affixing something even as thin as an adhesive label or seal to the card may cause a bad connection or destroy data stored on the card.
● Do not write on the miniSD memory cards. This may damage the card and data stored on the card.
● Do not remove or insert a miniSD memory card while data on the card is being edited. In addition, do not turn off the mova or device containing the miniSD memory card while editing. Doing so may damage data stored on the card, and cause a malfunction.

Managing Data

Inserting/Removing miniSD Memory Cards

■ Inserting a miniSD memory card

Do not insert a miniSD memory card while the mova is ON.
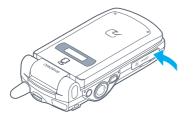
1 Open the miniSD memory card slot cover.

2 Slowly insert the miniSD memory card with the printed surface facing upward.

● Do not forcefully insert the miniSD memory card when it is not straight. Doing so may damage the miniSD memory card.
● Push all the way in until a click is heard.

Printed side
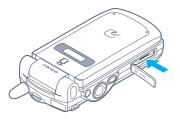
3 Close the miniSD memory card slot cover.

■ Removing a miniSD memory card

Do not remove a miniSD memory card while the mova is turned ON.

1 Open the miniSD memory card slot cover, and gently push the card further into the slot.

● Push in until a click is heard. The miniSD memory card pops forward. If you pull the card out forcibly, the mova or miniSD memory card may be damaged.

Managing Data
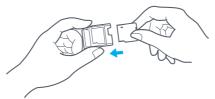
2 **Remove the miniSD memory card.**

● Pull the card out slowly and straight. After removing the card, close the miniSD memory card slot cover.

Note	● Always refer to the instructions included with the card when using the miniSD memory card.

● Do not remove the card with the miniSD memory card slot aimed at your face. The card may pop out of the slot when you remove your finger.

● When removing the miniSD memory card, gently push in the miniSD memory card in until you hear a click, and then remove the miniSD memory card. If you pull the card out forcibly, the mova or miniSD memory card may be damaged.

● After removing a miniSD memory card, always store the card in the protective case provided with the card. If you store the miniSD memory card in another card's protective case, the card may stop functioning.

Precautions on handling miniSD memory cards

■ Do not disassemble or modify the miniSD memory card.

■ Do not subject miniSD memory cards to strong shocks, bend them, drop them, or expose them to water.

■ Do not touch the metal terminals with your hands or metal objects.

■ Do not leave the card where it may be exposed to high temperatures, such as in an automobile or a location exposed to direct sunlight.

■ Do not leave the card in humid or dusty locations.

■ Do not leave the card in the presence of corrosive gases.

■ Do not expose miniSD memory cards to flames or throw them in fires.

Using the miniSD memory card adapter

Have the label on the miniSD memory card and the miniSD memory card adapter facing the same direction, and push in the direction of the arrow.

● To remove the card, grasp the miniSD memory card using the groove on the miniSD memory card adapter, and then pull out of the adapter.

● Do not attach the miniSD memory card adapter to a PC or other device when there is no card inserted in the adapter. This may damage the device or adapter.

● Do not remove a miniSD memory card from the adapter while the adapter is attached to a PC or other device. This may cause the device to malfunction.

● Depending on the device to which it is attached, you may not be able to use miniSD memory cards inserted into the adapter.

Managing Data

Using miniSD Memory Cards

Copying Data From the mova to a miniSD Memory Card <Copy miniSD>

You can copy Phonebook, Mail, Schedule, ToDo list, Bookmark, Memo pad, Melodies, and My picture (still picture) data to a miniSD memory card.
Copy one, Copy all, and Copy selected can be used. Depending on the function, you can copy all the data within groups or folders.

Data that can be copied from the mova to a miniSD memory card

Function	No. of items[*1]	Copy one	Copy selected	Copy all	Other items
Phonebook[*2]	Up to 65,535 items combined (approx. 850 items)				All in group
Mail [*5]					
ToDo list[*3]					
Schedule[*3*7]					
Bookmark					
Memo pad					Security memos are not copied
Melodies[*4]	999 folders/max. 400 items per folder (approx. 850 items)		×	×	
Still pictures in My picture[*6]	900 folders/max. 400 items per folder (approx. 800 items)				

*1 The numbers above may be fewer depending on data size and capacity of miniSD memory cards. Numbers inside ( ) indicate the number of entries when the included 16MB miniSD memory card (sample) is used.

*2 The following information for items is not copied; secret setting, group numbers, group name, memory numbers, mail address type, secret codes, selected ring tones, mail ring tones, called LEDs, mail/message LEDs, and picture call settings. The saving area for names and readings, phone numbers, and mail addresses may be changed.

*3 Alarm, contact and image information other than secret settings and alarm time will not be copied.

*4 Only pastable melodies ("♪" and "♫") may be copied. Melodies that cannot be pasted ("♬") cannot be copied. If the folder to copy exceeds 400 melodies, the melody cannot be copied. Move the melody to another folder, and then copy again.
The number of melodies that can be copied is for melodies smaller than 16KB.

*5 You can reply to or forward mail copied onto a miniSD memory card but they cannot be protected. In addition, i-αppli To, divided mail information, attached i-shot images and folder information cannot be copied.

*6 The number of items above is when shot in NORMAL mode in i-shot (S). Refer to P.119, P.448 for details. When there are more than 400 images saved in the target folder, a new folder is automatically created and images are saved in the new folder. For GIF animations, the maximum is 400 images. You cannot copy images (including Flash movies and frames) downloaded from a website and images received by mail.

*7 When data with no end date/time is copied, the start date/time is entered for the end date/time.

Note	● When you copy data to a miniSD memory card, the management information is also copied to the card.
	● Files copied directly onto a miniSD memory card from a computer may not be displayed on the mova. If this is the case, use Data Link software.

Managing Data

Estimates of the number of images that can be saved on a miniSD memory card

● The estimates below are for the number of still pictures and the length of movies that can be saved on a 16MB miniSD memory card.
● These figures are when pictures of the same shot size and quality are shot.
● Recording time will be shorter and the number of still pictures will be fewer if other data is saved on the miniSD memory card.

[Still pictures]

Compression mode / Shot size	NORMAL	FINE	SUPER FINE
i-shot(S) : 144× 144	Approx. 800	Approx. 400	Approx. 400
i-shot(L) : 288× 352	Approx. 400	Approx. 400	Approx. 260
Stand-by : 240× 320	Approx. 400	Approx. 400	Approx. 260
VGA : 480× 640	Approx. 260	Approx. 150	Approx. 120
XGA : 768× 1024	Approx. 85	Approx. 65	Approx. 55
2M pxl : 1224× 1632	Approx. 50	Approx. 35	Approx. 30

[Movies]

Movie compression mode / Shot size	NORMAL	FINE
Large : 240× 176	Approx. 15 minutes	Approx. 10 minutes
Default : 160× 120	Approx. 18 minutes	Approx. 14 minutes
Small : 120× 88	Approx. 25 minutes	Approx. 16 minutes
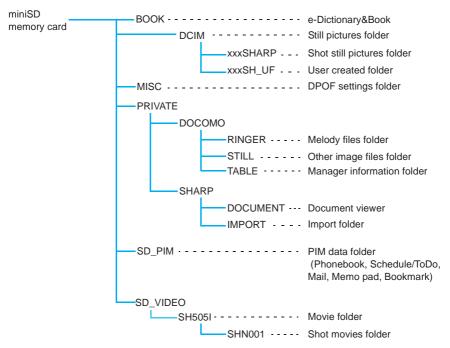
Note	● You can save still pictures taken with the camera directly to the mova or a miniSD memory card. ● Movies recorded with the camera can only be saved to the miniSD memory card.

Folder structure of miniSD memory cards used on the mova

```
miniSD
memory card ──────┬──── BOOK ------------------- e-Dictionary&Book
                  │         DCIM ------------- Still pictures folder
                  │              ┌── xxxSHARP --- Shot still pictures folder
                  │              └── xxxSH_UF --- User created folder
                  ├──── MISC ------------------- DPOF settings folder
                  ├──── PRIVATE
                  │         ┌── DOCOMO
                  │         │        ┌── RINGER ----- Melody files folder
                  │         │        ├── STILL ------ Other image files folder
                  │         │        └── TABLE ------ Manager information folder
                  │         └── SHARP
                  │                  ┌── DOCUMENT --- Document viewer
                  │                  └── IMPORT ----- Import folder
                  ├──── SD_PIM ----------------- PIM data folder
                  │                               (Phonebook, Schedule/ToDo,
                  │                               Mail, Memo pad, Bookmark)
                  │
                  └──── SD_VIDEO
                            └── SH505I ----------- Movie folder
                                └── SHN001 ----- Shot movies folder
```

● The "x" portion is substituted with a half-pitch number.
● Animation GIF files are stored in the "STILL" folder while other GIF files are stored in the "DCIM" folder.
● The mova may not display data correctly if folder names are changed or deleted on a PC.

Copying data

Operate from the list or details screen for the data you wish to copy.
This example describes how to copy phonebook data.

● Submenu numbers may differ, depending on the function or screen.

1 In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select [PHONEBOOK icon], and then press ⦿.

● Select the data to copy.

To check the details of the entry before copying
● In the details screen, press ⦿⓪. Next, proceed to step 4.

2 In the phonebook list, press ⦿⑦ (Copy → miniSD).

```
Copy → miniSD
1 Copy one
2 All in group
3 Copy all
4 Copy selected
```

Managing Data

449

3 **Press** (1.3) **(Copy one).**

To copy all items in a group
● Press (2.3), select the group to copy, and then enter your terminal security code (4 digits).

To copy all
● Press (3.3), and then enter your terminal security code (4 digits).

To copy selected
● Press (4.3). Select the data to copy, and then press $\odot$. The beginning of the list changes to "☑". Select all the data to copy, and then press $\circledast$ (Complete). Select data with "☑", and then press $\odot$ to cancel the selection.
● Up to 50 items may be selected.

4 **Select "Yes", and then press** $\odot$**.**

● Copying starts.

Note	● When still pictures are copied between the mova and a miniSD memory card, the image may lose quality and the data size may change. When there are more than 400 still pictures saved in the target folder, a new folder is automatically created and the data exceeding 400 still pictures will be saved in the new folder.
	● When copying schedules to a miniSD memory card, perform "Show all scheds" before copying.
	● Images that are larger than those shot with the mova or displayable on the mova may not be copied properly.

Viewing miniSD Memory Card Data on the mova <View miniSD Data>

You can check the data that has been copied to a miniSD memory card from the miniSD management screen or the screen within each function.
● You cannot use this operation to check My movie data. Operate from the library function for these items.

■ Checking from various functions

Data contained in the miniSD memory card can be viewed from the lists for the various data.
This example describes how to check phonebook data.

1 **In the stand-by, press** $\odot$ **and select** 🖼️ **, and then press** $\odot$**.**

2 **Press** 📷 $(\# \overline{\overline{\overline{\cdots}}})$ **(View miniSD data).**

● The data on the miniSD memory card is displayed. You can now check the data in the same manner as you would on the mova.
● When there is no corresponding data, "No miniSD data" is displayed and the mova returns to the previous screen. (Excludes Melody and My picture. If no data is stored in folders in My picture, "No image" is displayed.)

To view backup data
● Press $\odot$ again to view data backed up (Transfer group) to the miniSD memory card.

To view normal data (1 item)
● Press $\odot$ again to display data.

Checking the data from the miniSD memory card management screen

⟨ ⦿ 8_{TUV} 9_{WXYZ} $1_{.@}$ ⟩

1
In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select [TOOLS icon], and then press ⦿ 9_{WXYZ} $1_{.@}$ (View miniSD data).

● The miniSD memory card data screen is displayed.

2
Select the function to check, and then press ⦿.

● The data for the selected function is displayed in a list. If there is no corresponding data, "No miniSD data" is displayed, and the mova returns to the screen of step 2. (Excludes Melody and My picture. If no data is stored in folders in My picture, "No image" is displayed.)

To view information about the data (Properties)
● Press ⓐ 3_{DEF}.

To delete data
● Press ⓐ $1_{.@}$. Select the deletion method, press ⦿, and then proceed with the displayed instructions. (The basic operations are the same as for the phonebook.)

3
Select the data to view, and then press ⦿.

● The selected data is displayed. (Data is played if it is a melody.)
● Functions that can be used with data in a miniSD memory card and data in the mova are different.
● For information on operations while data is displayed, refer to each function's information page.

Note	● For data in My picture, operations on P.149 to 169 are available in step 3.
	● For melodies, press ⓐ in the screen of step 3 to perform the following operations.

Menu items	Function
1 New folder	Creates a new folder.
2 Edit folder name	Folder names can be changed. (Up to 31 full-pitch (63 half-pitch) characters)
3 Change volume	Set the playback volume between "Volume 1" and "Volume 5".
4 Delete	Melodies can be deleted.
5 Move	Move 1 or multiple selected melodies to a different folder. If the destination folder exceeds 400 melodies, the melody cannot be moved.
6 Copy 1　main mem	Can be copied to the melody area of the mova. In addition, "i-melody 1" through "i-melody 60" can be overwritten if there are no available areas (☞ Step 3 on P.452).
7 Properties	You can check data information.

Managing Data

Copying Data From the miniSD Memory Card to a mova <Copy miniSD　Main>

You can copy data stored on a miniSD memory card to your mova.
Copy one, Copy all, and Copy selected can be used.
- You cannot copy movies from a miniSD memory card to the mova.
- For data backed up (Transfer group) on a miniSD memory card, you can perform Copy one in the details screen or perform miniSD card reading operations (☞P.454).

■ Copying data

Copying selected data items from miniSD memory card is performed from the list within each function.
This example describes how to copy phonebook data.
- Submenu numbers may differ, depending on the function or screen.

1 In the stand-by, press ● and select [PHONEBOOK icon], and then press ●.

2 Press ⓐ (#⁻⁷⁷) (View miniSD data).
- The data on the miniSD memory card is displayed.

3 Select the data to copy, and then press ⓐ (2ABC) (Cpy　main memory).

4 Press (1.á) (Copy one).

To copy all
- Press (2ABC), and then enter your terminal security code (4 digits).
- Copy all cannot be used for melodies.

To copy selected
- Press (3ä), select data to copy, and then press ●. (The display at the beginning of the list changes to "☑". To cancel the selection, select data with "☑", and then press ●.) Select all data you wish to copy, and then press ⓘ (Complete).
- Up to 50 items may be selected.
- Copy selected cannot be used for melodies.

5 Select "Yes", and then press ●.
- Copying starts.
- Depending on the type of data being copied, a confirmation screen may be displayed. Select "Yes", and then press ● to start copying.

Note	● If an image saved on the mova is copied to a miniSD memory card and then copied again to the mova, file size increases. In such cases, the number of items that can be saved on the miniSD memory card decreases.

Managing miniSD Memory Cards

With the miniSD memory card manager screen, the contents of the miniSD memory card can be viewed, backed up and formatted, as well as be managed and used.

- Press ⊙ 8ᵀᵁⱽ 9ᵂˣʸᶻ to display the miniSD card manager screen.
- Information such as folders and filenames contained in a miniSD memory card are managed in an area called "Manager info". If you have used a miniSD memory card on a PC or other device (to edit, add or delete data etc.), the miniSD manager info must be updated (☞P.457).
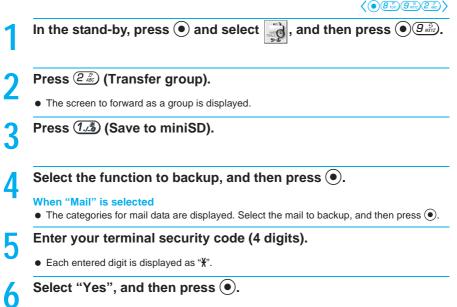
Backing Up mova Data <Transfer Group>

⟨ ⊙ 8ᵀᵁⱽ 9ᵂˣʸᶻ 2ᴬᴮᶜ ⟩

You can copy all the data for a function on the mova (Phonebook, Mail, Schedule, ToDo list, Bookmark, Memo pad) to a miniSD memory card as backup data in one simple operation. Group transfer for the phonebook also transfers owner information.

- Refer to P.447 for information on the types of data you can backup. Note that you cannot backup My picture images and movies or melodies.
- It is recommended that this be used when you wish to back up owner data, share data with another mova or other devices that support miniSD memory cards, or to transfer your data to a new phone when you purchase a new phone.
- You cannot backup data when the battery level is low. It is recommended to backup data while charging the battery. When the battery level is low, data backups may not be successful.
- Set the date and time in advance (☞P.37).

■ Backing up data to a miniSD memory card

⟨ ⊙ 8ᵀᵁⱽ 9ᵂˣʸᶻ 2ᴬᴮᶜ ⟩

1 In the stand-by, press ⊙ and select [TOOLS icon], and then press ⊙ 9ᵂˣʸᶻ.

2 Press 2ᴬᴮᶜ (Transfer group).

- The screen to forward as a group is displayed.

3 Press 1 (Save to miniSD).

4 Select the function to backup, and then press ⊙.

When "Mail" is selected
- The categories for mail data are displayed. Select the mail to backup, and then press ⊙.

5 Enter your terminal security code (4 digits).

- Each entered digit is displayed as "✳".

6 Select "Yes", and then press ⊙.

- Backup starts.
- When backup is finished, "Data group transfer done" is displayed.

Managing Data

Note	● Depending on the amount of memory used on the card, you may not be able to transfer the data.
	● There is also some backup data that cannot be copied to a different mova.
	● Phonebook mail address, Secret code, ring tone, mail ring tone, Called LED, Mail/Message LED and Picture call settings will not be backed up. The save location for name, reading, phone number and mail address may be different.
	● Alarm information other than alarm time will not be backed up in Schedule and ToDo. Contact and image information will also not be backed up in Schedule.
	● Keep in mind that when backing up the ToDo list, data set as secret will be saved as normal data.
	● In mail, i-αppli To, divided mail information, attached i-shot images, folder information, and marker information will not be backed up.

■ Reading backup data from a miniSD memory card

Reading backup data from a miniSD memory card to the mova

● You can add data while keeping data stored on the mova, or delete and add data to the mova.
● This cannot be done when the battery level is low. Check the battery level before performing.

1 In the stand-by, press ● and select 🔒, and then press ●(9ᵂˣʸᶻ).

● The miniSD memory card management screen is displayed.

2 Press (2ᴬᴮᶜ) (Transfer group).

● The screen to forward as a group is displayed.

3 Press (2ᴬᴮᶜ) (Read from miniSD).

4 Select the function to read, and then press ●.

● The backup data for the selected functions are displayed. If there is no corresponding data, "No miniSD data" is displayed, and then the mova returns to the screen of step 3.
● The date of the backup is included in the name of the data.
   Example: August 11, 2004 8:52 a.m.   "datagr040811_0852"

When "Mail" is selected
● The categories for mail data are displayed. Press ● to display the mail backup list screen.

To view the contents of a backup
● After step 4, select the backup data you wish to confirm, and then press 📷(2ᴬᴮᶜ).

To view backup data information (Properties)
● After step 4, select the backup data you wish to confirm, and then press 📷(3ᴰᴱᶠ).
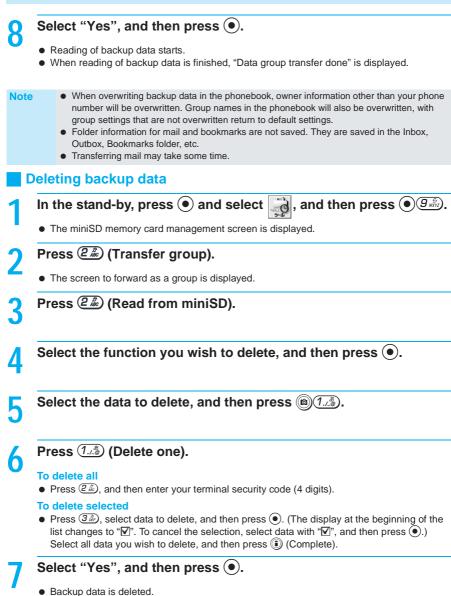
5 Select the backup data to read, and then press ●.

6 Enter your terminal security code (4 digits).

● Each entered digit is displayed as "✱".

7 Press (1.,@) (Add).

To overwrite mova data
● Press (2ᴬᴮᶜ).

8 Select "Yes", and then press ⦿.

● Reading of backup data starts.
● When reading of backup data is finished, "Data group transfer done" is displayed.

Note	● When overwriting backup data in the phonebook, owner information other than your phone number will be overwritten. Group names in the phonebook will also be overwritten, with group settings that are not overwritten return to default settings. ● Folder information for mail and bookmarks are not saved. They are saved in the Inbox, Outbox, Bookmarks folder, etc. ● Transferring mail may take some time.

Deleting backup data

1 In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select ⬛, and then press ⦿ (9 _WXYZ_).

● The miniSD memory card management screen is displayed.

2 Press (2 _ABC_) (Transfer group).

● The screen to forward as a group is displayed.

3 Press (2 _ABC_) (Read from miniSD).

4 Select the function you wish to delete, and then press ⦿.

5 Select the data to delete, and then press 🄰 (1 _@_).

6 Press (1 _@_) (Delete one).

To delete all
● Press (2 _ABC_), and then enter your terminal security code (4 digits).

To delete selected
● Press (3 _DEF_), select data to delete, and then press ⦿. (The display at the beginning of the list changes to "☑". To cancel the selection, select data with "☑", and then press ⦿.) Select all data you wish to delete, and then press 🄸 (Complete).

7 Select "Yes", and then press ⦿.

● Backup data is deleted.

Managing Data

455

Viewing Data Created on a PC or Other Device on the mova <Import>

⟨●⟩⟨8 TUV⟩⟨9 WXYZ⟩⟨3 DEF⟩

You can view data (Phonebook, Mail, Schedule, ToDo list, Memo pad, Melodies, and My pictures) created on a PC or other device by using a miniSD memory card on the mova.
● Copy data from a PC to the import folder on the miniSD memory card using Data Link software in advance.

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select [TOOLS], and then press ●⟨9 WXYZ⟩⟨3 DEF⟩ (Import).**

```
893 Import
1 Phonebook
2 Mail
3 Schedule/ToDo
4 Memo pad
5 Melody
6 My picture



        OK
```

2 **Select the function to check, and then press ●.**

● The data (file name) for the selected function is displayed.
● When there is no corresponding data, "No miniSD data" is displayed and the mova returns to screen of step 2.

To delete data
● Press ⟨📷⟩⟨1.⟩. From this point on, the operation is the same as for deleting normal data.

To copy data to the mova
● Press ⟨📷⟩⟨2 abc⟩. From this point on, the operation is the same as for copying normal data.
● If a file with a name in Kanji or Hiragana is copied, the file name is changed to one that the mova can recognize.

To view information about the data (Properties)
● Press ⟨📷⟩⟨3 DEF⟩.
● There is no title information as data created on a PC does not include a title.

3 **Select the data to view, and then press ●.**

● The selected data is displayed.

Note	● Though up to 5,000 full-pitch (10,000 half-pitch) characters can be displayed for messages, only 250 full-pitch (500 half-pitch) characters can be copied.
	● Melody playback is limited to 100KB. Melody copy is limited to only 20KB.
	● Only one backup data put into the import folder is displayed.
	● Images exceeding 2048 pixels (JPEG) and 1024 pixels (GIF) cannot be displayed. For large images, the image used in the image list may be displayed.

Managing Data

Updating the Manager Information on a miniSD Memory Card <New Manager Info>

⟨⦿ 8ᴛᵁᵛ 9ᵂˣʸᶻ 4ᴳᴴᴵ⟩

If you have used a miniSD memory card on a PC or other device (to edit, add or delete data etc.), you need to update the manager information of the miniSD memory card.

● This cannot be done when the battery level is low. Check the battery level before performing.
● If the miniSD memory card is full, it may not be possible to update the manager information.
● If you do not update the manager information on the mova, the miniSD memory card may not work correctly.
● It may take some time to update the manager information if there are a lot of files on the miniSD memory card or the files are very large.
● To view new e-Dictionary&Book data saved in a miniSD memory card, manager information must be updated.
● If the file name for an e-Dictionary&Book is less than 8 half-pitch characters, the half-pitch characters may change to full-pitch characters.

1 **In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select ⬚, and then press ⦿ 9ᵂˣʸᶻ 4ᴳᴴᴵ (New manager info).**

8.9.4 New manager info
Specify folder
☐All
☐Camera image
☐Movie
☐Other images
☐Melody
☐e-Dict/Book
☐Phonebook・Mail
☐Schedule・ToDo
☐Bookmark・Memo pad

● Note that when manager information is updated, titles of image files other than Exif format files shot on SH series mobile phones are deleted.
● If i-αppli stand-by is set (☞P.401), "End i-αppli?" is displayed. Select "Yes" to display the screen to update manager information.

2 **Select the item for which you wish to update the manager information, and then press ⦿.**

● "☑" is displayed at the beginning of the list. To cancel, select "☑", and then press ⦿. Repeat the process to select all the items for which you wish to update the manager information.

3 **Press ⓘ (Complete).**

4 **Select "Yes", and then press ⦿.**

● Updating of the manager information starts.
● While updating the manager info, press ⦿, select "❸Backgrnd process", and then press ⦿ to perform other operations while updating the manager info. Press ☎ᴾᵂᴿ to also automatically perform background processing.

To not update
● Select "No", and then press ⦿.

Note	● Mail and calls can be received while updating. However, the following functions are unavailable. i-mode, i-αppli, shooting still picture/movies, viewing mail, My picture, My movie, melody playback, viewing miniSD memory card data from Phonebook/Mail/Schedule/ToDo/Memo pad, e-Dictionary&Book, print designation (DPOF), Ir exchanges, Document viewer

Managing Data

457

Formatting miniSD Memory Cards <Format>

〈●⑧ ⑨ ⑤ 〉

When using miniSD memory cards that have not been formatted (initialized), always use the mova to format the card.

● Formatting a miniSD memory card deletes all the data on the card. Please be careful.
● This cannot be done when the battery level is low. Check the battery level before performing.
● A miniSD memory card that has been formatted by a PC or other device may not be used by the mova.

1 In the stand-by, press ● and select [image], and then press ●⑨⑤ (Format).

2 Enter your terminal security code (4 digits).

● Each entered digit is displayed as "⁂".

3 Select "Yes", and then press ●.

● Formatting starts.
● When the formatting is finished, "formatted" is displayed.

To not format
● Select "No", and then press ●.

Managing Data

21

Using Other Functions

Viewing e-Dictionary&Book

〈●⑨⑨₩₩ ①ₐₐ〉

Books and literature in XMDF or TEXT format may be displayed on the mova.

- Displayable dictionary/book types (extensions): XMDF format (.zbf) and Text format (.zbk, .txt, .text)
- Place files to view in ☐ BOOK in the miniSD memory card in advance (☞P.449).
- Insert the miniSD memory card in the miniSD memory card slot of the mova in advance. (MiniSD memory card is not required when only using internal dictionaries.)
- If a miniSD memory card is inserted for the first time, an e-Dictionary&Book list is displayed for the first time after turning the power ON, or e-Dictionary&Book data is added/deleted, manager information must be updated (☞P.457).
- Some dictionaries/books have sound or images data embedded. Audio is not available on the mova. Some images may also not be available.

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select ☐, and then press ●①ₐₐ.**

- e-Dictionary&Book list is displayed.
- If ☎_{HLD}^{PWR} or ◉ᴄʟʀ was pressed for at least 1 second to end the last time, the last page displayed appears.
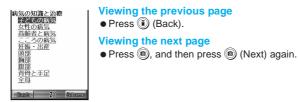
2 **Select the dictionary/book you wish to display, and then press ●.**

Horizontal Screen

To move one line in the horizontal screen
- Press ◓.

To display the next page in the horizontal screen
- Press ◑.

To display the previous page in the horizontal screen
- Press ◐.

To return to the e-Dictionary&Book list
- Press ⓘ.

—Indicates the location relative to the entire dictionary/book.

Vertical Screen

To move one line in the vertical screen
- Press ◑.

To display the next page in the vertical screen
- Press ◓.

To display the previous page in the vertical screen
- Press ◒.

To return to the e-Dictionary&Book list
- Press ⓘ.

Note	● " (Keritai Senaka)" by Risa Wataya provided by © (Zaurus Select Library)/ KAWADE SHOBO SHINSHA, PUBLISHERS.

◼ Viewing History

Navigate in order through pages that you previously displayed.
- "Back" and "Next" are not displayed if there is no history.

Viewing the previous page
- Press ⓘ (Back).

Viewing the next page
- Press ⓒ, and then press ⓒ (Next) again.

Using Other Functions

Note	● If 🔴 or 🔴 was pressed for at least 1 second to end e-Dictionary&Book the last time, the last page displayed appears the next time it is opened. This is not the case if miniSD memory card is re-inserted, power is turned off once, if started from Assistant view or Character reader, or if internal dictionary is opened. (In such cases, e-Dictionary&Book list is displayed when e-Dictionary&Book is started.)
	● Depending on the dictionary/book, you may need to enter a password. Enter your password (up to 16 digits), and then press ⦿.
	● Some data contain information that allows you to jump to other pages. Select such character strings and pictures, and then press ⦿ to jump to the relevant page. Press ⓘ (Return) to return to the original page.
	● Display up to 400 items per folder in the file list.
	● " (Katei no Igaku)" ©2004 Jiji Press Publication Services, Inc.
	To use Assistant view
	● If 📷 is pressed while composing a message, etc., you can use the e-Dictionary&Book. When in the viewer position, press the shutter (☞P.478).

▉ Searching in a Dictionary

The operation for dictionaries is the same as for books. This example describes searching in a dictionary.

● You can also search for characters scanned using the Character reader in dictionaries (☞P.171).
● A 20,000 word English-Japanese Dictionary is preset in the mova.

1 **In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select 🔲, and then press ⦿①.**

● e-Dictionary&Book list is displayed.

2 **Select the dictionary you wish to display, and then press ⦿.**

To read characters using character reader
● Press 📷⑧ (☞P.171).

3 **Select the input field, press ⦿, and then enter the term you wish to search for.**

● Enter up to 255 half-pitch characters.

4 **Press ⦿.**

● The search results are displayed.
● If no match is found, "   " (Character string not found) is displayed.

5 **Select the applicable term, and then press ⦿.**

● Details are displayed.

Inserting Bookmarks <Insert Bookmark>

You can insert a bookmark to mark the displayed page.
● The internal dictionary cannot be bookmarked.

1 **In the details screen, press ⓒ①.ã (Insert bookmark).**

2 **Press ①.ã (Bookmark 1).**

● A bookmark is set in the displayed page.
● You can set up to 2 bookmarks per book/dictionary (up to 10 books/dictionaries).

To set Bookmark 2
● Press ②ᴬᴮᶜ.
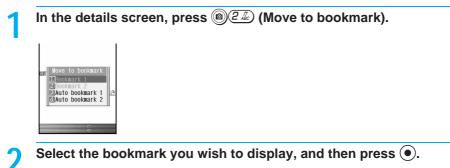
| Note | ● Bookmarks cannot be set if e-Dictionary&Book is started from Assistant view or Character reader.
| | ● When e-Dictionary&Book ends, "Auto bookmark 1" is set for the last page displayed. The next time the same book/dictionary is displayed, "Auto bookmark 1" is set for the last page displayed. The former "Auto bookmark 1" is moved to "Auto bookmark 2". (Up to 2 Auto bookmarks are set per book/dictionary. Older bookmarks are deleted.)
| | ● "Auto bookmark" is not set if e-Dictionary&Book is started from Assistant view, is ended during Character reader, or power is automatically turned OFF because remaining battery level is insufficient.
| | ● When the eleventh bookmark is set, the oldest saved bookmark is deleted.

Moving to Bookmarks <Move to Bookmark>

You can display the page of a previously set bookmark.

1 **In the details screen, press ⓒ②ᴬᴮᶜ (Move to bookmark).**

2 **Select the bookmark you wish to display, and then press ●.**

| Note | ● Bookmarks cannot be moved to internal dictionaries because bookmarks cannot be set for internal dictionaries.

Using Other Functions
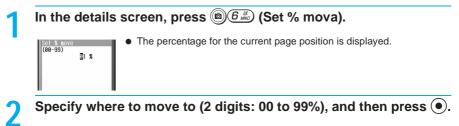
Displaying Pages from the Table of Contents <Table of Contents>

When viewing indexed data, you can display pages from the list of contents.

1 **In the details screen, press ⓐ③ (Table of contents).**

```
Tble of contents
検索画面
構成と使い方
```

2 **Select the item you wish to display, and then press ●.**

Displaying the Top/End Page <To Top/To End>

You can display the top or end page.

1 **In the details screen, press ⓐ④ (To top).**

● The top page is displayed.

To display the end page
● Press ⓐ⑤.

Specifying Percentages to Move to Pages <Set % Move>

You can specify a percentage relevant to the total and display the page.

1 **In the details screen, press ⓐ⑥ (Set % mova).**

```
Set % move
(00-99)
      ２1 %
```

● The percentage for the current page position is displayed.

2 **Specify where to move to (2 digits: 00 to 99%), and then press ●.**

Copying Text <Copy>

You can copy character strings in dictionaries/books.
● You can copy up to 20 characters at one time.

1 **In the details screen, press ⓐ⑦ (Copy).**

```
active
①圈活動的な,活発な②能
動態の



Cancel  Start
```

463

Using Other Functions

2 Use ⊙ to move the cursor to the first character to copy, and then press ⦿ (Start).

3 Use ⊙ to move the cursor to the last character to copy, and then press ⦿ (Copy).

● Perform paste operations in another screen to enter the copied text. (☞P.524)

Note ● Some characters cannot be copied.

Read Characters with the Camera and Search <Character Reader>

You can shoot English words with the mova while e-dictionary is displayed, and search the characters in the e-dictionary.

● Refer to "Scanning Characters" on P.171 for details.

Example: For Internal dictionaries

1 In the details screen, press ⓐ⑧ᵀᵁⱽ (Character reader).

● Camera is activated and the character reader screen is displayed.

2 Refer to steps 3 to 6 on P.172 and scan characters.

● Candidates are displayed.

3 Press ⦿.

● Search results for the scanned characters are displayed.
● Read characters are entered in the character entry area.
● If there are no text entry fields, read characters are discarded.

4 Press ⦿.

● The word to search can be edited.

5 Press ⦿.

● Words which start with the search string are displayed.

6 Select the desired word, and then press ⦿.

● The definition is displayed.

Setting Font Size and Screen Display <Display Settings>

You can set the font size and screen settings such as vertical/horizontal display for e-Dictionary&Book.

● Some dictionary/book data may have display settings specified or may not allow you to change the display.
● The direction of text cannot be switched for the internal dictionary.

Setting the Font Size

You can set character size to "Large font", "Default", or "Small font".
● The default setting is "Default".

1 In the details screen, press 📷 9₉ᵂˣʸᶻ (Display settings).

● The display setting screen is displayed.

2 Press 1.ᵃ (Font size).

> Font size
> 1 Large font
> 2 Default
> 3 Small font

3 Select a font size, and then press ●.

Switching between Vertical and Horizontal

You can switch between vertical and horizontal.

蹴りたい背中
綿矢りさ

Vertical Screen

蹴りたい背中
綿矢りさ

Horizontal Screen

1 In the details screen, press 📷 9₉ᵂˣʸᶻ (Display settings).

● The display setting screen is displayed.

2 Press 2ᴬᴮᶜ (Text direction).

> 蹴りた
> Text direction
> 1 Horizontal
> 2 Vertical
> 綿矢りさ
> OK

3 Press 1.ᵃ (Horizontal).

● "Horizontal" is set.

To set to vertical
● Press 2ᴬᴮᶜ.

Setting the Display of Ruby Text (Reading)

You can set whether to display ruby text.

プリントを指で千切る。細
長く、細長く。紙を裂く耳
障りな音は、孤独の音を消
してくれる。気怠げに見せ
てくれたりもするしね。葉
緑体? オオカナダモ?
ハッ。っていうこのスタン

When display of
ruby text is "ON"

● Ruby text cannot be displayed for dictionary/book that do not have them set. Ruby text is also unavailable for internal dictionaries.

1 **In the details screen, press 📷⑨_{WXYZ} (Display settings).**

● The display setting screen is displayed.

2 **Press ③_{DEF} (Ruby text).**

障りな音は、孤独の音を消
してくれる。気怠げに見せ
てくれたりもするしね。葉
緑体? オオカナダモ?
ハ   Ruby text
見 ①ON
で ②OFF
ちょっと遠慮しておく。
だってもう高校生だし。
ま、あなたたちを横目で見
ながらプリントでも千切っ

3 **Press ①_{.@} (ON).**

● Ruby text is set.

To not display ruby text

● Press ②_{ABC}.

Displaying Dictionary/Book Detailed Information <Properties>

You can display dictionary/book detailed information.
● In the details screen, properties can only be displayed for XMDF (.zbf) files.

1 **In the details screen, press 📷⓪_{ん} (Properties).**

When on e-Dictionary&Book list
● Press 📷③_{DEF}.

2 **When you have finished checking, press ●.**

Using Other Functions

Using Characters in Dictionary/Book

Some character data in dictionary/book contain link information, mask information, or movie activation information. In such cases, movies may be played and set Phone To, Mail To, and Web To information may be used.

■ Playing Movies

When the playback information for a movie is set in a character string, the movie can be played.

1 **In the details screen, select a character string with a movie play setting, and then press ⦿.**

● The movie plays.

■ Using the Phone To, Mail To, Web To Functions

You can easily make a call, send mail, or display Internet webpages using highlighted information (such as phone numbers, mail addresses, and URLs) in dictionaries/books (☞P.279).

1 **In the details screen, select a phone number, mail address, or URL, and then press ⦿.**

2 **Select "Yes", and then press ⦿.**

When the Phone To function is set
● Confirm the displayed phone number, and then press ⓘ (Call).

When the Mail To function is set
● The mail composition screen is displayed with the mail address already entered.

When the Web To function is set
● A connection is established and the site or page is displayed.

Note	● Calls may not be made, messages may not be sent, and sites may not be accessed even if a phone number, mail address, or URL is displayed.

■ Displaying Linked Pages

When the link information for different page is set in a character string, that page can be displayed.

1 **In the details screen, select a character string with a link information, and then press ⦿.**

● The linked page is displayed.

■ Hiding/Displaying Character Strings in Text

You can hide or display a character string if mask information is set for a character string.

1 **In the details screen, select masked text, and then press ⦿.**

● The character string is masked. If you repeat the operation, the character string is displayed.

Using Other Functions

467

Using Images in Dictionary/Book

Some image data in dictionary/book contain link information, mask information, or movie activation information. In such cases, images may be saved, movies played, and set Phone To, Mail To, and Web To information may be used.

■ Saving Still Pictures

If you save a still picture displayed in a dictionary/book to My picture (☞P.149), you can set it as the Stand-by display, etc. (☞P.184).

● Some images cannot be saved.
● The image is saved in the My picture "Camera image" folder (☞P.149).
● You can save up to 700 images. This number may be reduced, depending on memory usage.

1 **In the details screen, select a still picture, and then press ⦿.**

2 **Select "Save to My pic", and then press ⦿.**

● Image is saved in My picture.

■ Playing Movies

You can play movies in dictionary/book.

1 **In the details screen, select a still picture, and then press ⦿.**

● For still pictures with only "Run movie" selected, movie is played back without performing step 2.

2 **Select "Run movie", and then press ⦿.**

● The movie is played.

■ Using the Phone To, Mail To, Web To Functions from Still Pictures

If link information (Phone To, Mail To, or Web To) is set for a still picture in dictionary/book, you can easily make a call, send mail, or display a site or web page (☞P.279).

1 **In the details screen, select a still picture, and then press ⦿.**

● For still pictures with only "Move to link" selected, perform step 3.

2 **Select "Move to link", and then press ⦿.**

3 **Select "Yes", and then press ⦿.**

When the Phone To function is set
● Confirm the displayed phone number, and then press ⓘ (Call).

When the Mail To function is set
● The mail composition screen is displayed with the mail address already entered.

When the Web To function is set
● A connection is established and the site or web page is displayed.

Displaying Linked Pages from Still Pictures

When a link information to a different page is set in a dictionary/book, you can display that page.

1 **In the details screen, select a still picture, and then press ●.**

● If the still picture is set with "Move to link", the linked page can be displayed without performing step 2.

2 **Select "Move to link", and then press ●.**

● The linked page is displayed.

To return to the original page
● Press (Return).

Hiding/Displaying still pictures

If a still picture has a mask set, you can switch to display or hide the still picture.

1 **In the details screen, select a still picture, and then press ●.**

● If the still picture is set with "Switch mask", it is masked without performing step 2. Perform the step again to display.

2 **Select "Switch mask", and then press ●.**

● The still picture is masked. If you repeat the operation, the still picture is displayed.

Editing File Names <Edit File Name>

You can change the file name of a dictionary/book.

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select [icon], and then press ● 1.**

● The e-Dictionary&Book list is displayed.

2 **Select the dictionary/book to edit, and then press 📷 1. (Edit file name).**

3 **Enter the file name, and then press ●.**

● Enter up to 109 full-pitch (218 half-pitch) characters.

Note	● The file name of the internal dictionary cannot be changed.
	● File names that are less than 8 half-pitch characters may change to full-pitch when manager information is updated.

Deleting Files <Delete>

When the e-Dictionary&Book is activated, you can delete a dictionary/book in a miniSD memory card.

1 **In the stand-by, press ⬤ and select [icon], and then press ⬤(1.⁄ₐ).**

  ● The e-Dictionary&Book list is displayed.

2 **Select the dictionary/book to delete, and then press 📷(2ᴬᴮᶜ).**

> Delete Files
> ①Delete one
> ②All in folder
> ③Delete selected

3 **Press (1.⁄ₐ) (Delete one).**

  To delete all dictionaries/books in a folder
  ● Press (2ᴬᴮᶜ), enter your terminal security code (4 digits).

  To delete multiple selected dictionaries/books simultaneously
  ● Press (3ᴰᴱᶠ).
  ● Select the dictionaries/books you wish to delete, and then press ⬤. (The mark changes to "☑". To clear a selection, select a dictionary/book that has "☑" displayed and then press ⬤.) Select all the dictionaries/books you wish to delete and then press ⓘ.
  ● Select up to 50 files.

4 **Select "Yes", and then press ⬤.**

  To not delete
  ● Select "No", and then press ⬤.

Note	● Internal dictionaries cannot be deleted.

Switching Folders <Switch folder>

You can switch to a different folder while the e-Dictionary&Book list is displayed.

1 **In the stand-by, press ⬤ and select [icon], and then press ⬤(1.⁄ₐ).**

  ● The e-Dictionary&Book list is displayed.

2 **Press 📷(4ᴳᴴᴵ).**

  ● The screen to switch the displayed folder is displayed.

3 **Select a folder, and then press ⬤.**

Note	● If a XMDF format book such as mobile information terminal is used on a non-mova device, the folder containing the book may be displayed.
	● Depending on the mobile information terminal used, folders may not be displayed.

Using Other Functions

Displaying Word, Excel, PDF, and Other Files

⟨●⟩⟨9⟩⟨2⟩⟩

On the main display of the mova, you can display Microsoft Word files, Microsoft Excel files, image files, and other files in a miniSD memory card.

- Displayable file types (extensions)
  Microsoft Word (.doc), Microsoft Excel (.xls), Microsoft PowerPoint (.ppt), PDF (.pdf), plain text (.txt), JPEG (.jpg, .jpeg), GIF (.gif), PNG (.png), and BMP (.bmp)
- Place the files to be viewed in the PRIVATE\SHARP\DOCUMENT folder of the miniSD memory card in advance (☞P.449).
- Before performing this operation, insert the miniSD memory card in the miniSD memory card slot of the mova.
  In order to facilitate PC's, file extensions such as ".doc" and ".xls" are added to file names. (File extensions may not be displayed on PCs depending on settings.) Refer to the manuals for your PC or software for more information.

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select [icon], and then press ●②.**

- The Document viewer folder list is displayed.

2 **Select a folder, and then press ●.**

- The file list is displayed.

To switch display method
- Press ⦿④ (Switch view mode) (☞P.153).

3 **Select the file you wish to display, and then press ●.**

To scroll up, down, left, or right
- Press ⦿.

Note	● Document viewer was realized by Picsel Technologies. Picsel Technologies is a registered trademark of Picsel Technologies Ltd.

Precautions on using Document viewer
- Depending on the file content, some content may be displayed differently from a PC or other device.
  - Depending on the file size, the content may take some time to display. Furthermore, not all content may be able to be displayed.
  - Depending on the font type, text may not display properly because the font types supported by Document viewer differ from those supported by PCs and other devices.
- Up to 255 files can be displayed for one folder in the file list.
- For details on restrictions for files that Document viewer can display, refer to http://k-tai.sharp.co.jp/products/sh506ic.shtml.

Enlarging and Reducing Display Size <Zoom/Shrink>

You can enlarge/reduce the display size. The display size is enlarged/reduced further each time the operation is performed.

1 **In the details screen (☞Steps 1 to 3 on P.471), press ⓐ③.**

● You can also operate by simply pressing ③ (1-touch operations ☞P.475).
● To enlarge the display size further, repeat the same operation.

To reduce the display size
● Press ⓐ①.
● You can also operate by simply pressing ① (1-touch operations ☞P.475).
● To reduce the display size further, repeat the same operation.

To display a whole page or image
● Press ● (Default).

Switching between Vertical and Horizontal Display <Change L W>

You can switch between vertical and horizontal display of a screen.

1 **In the details screen (☞Steps 1 to 3 on P.471), press ⓐ②.**

● You can also operate by simply pressing ② (1-touch operations ☞P.475).
● To return to the original display direction, repeat the same operation.

Enlarging with the Magnifier <Magnifier>

If you move the cursor over the part you wish to display enlarged, for example, to distinguish between characters, that part is displayed enlarged at the bottom of the screen. The display at the bottom of the screen changes according to cursor movement.

1 **In the details screen (☞Steps 1 to 3 on P.471), press ⓐ④.**

● The magnifier screen is displayed.
● You can also operate by simply pressing ④ (1-touch operations ☞P.475).

2 **Use ⊙ to move the "Q" cursor.**

● Move the cursor over the part you wish to enlarge.
● The part at the cursor position is displayed enlarged.

To enlarge/reduce the magnifier display part
● Press ③ (Enlarge) or ① (Reduce).

3 **Press ●.**

● The Magnifier is ended.

Using Other Functions

Enlarging Specific Parts <Zoom selected>

You can enlarge the screen centering on the part specified by the cursor by twice its height and width.

1 In the details screen (☞Steps 1 to 3 on P.471), press ⓞ⑤.

● You can also operate by simply pressing ⑤ (1-touch operations ☞P.475).

2 Use ◉ to move the "+" cursor.

3 Press ●.

● The screen is enlarged centering on the cursor position.

Displaying Edges and Center of Pages <Move w/in screen>

You can display the upper left, upper right, bottom left, bottom right, or center of the page (document) being displayed.

1 In the details screen (☞Steps 1 to 3 on P.471), press ⓞ⑥.

● The screen to specify where to move to within the screen is displayed.
● You can also operate by simply pressing ⑥ (1-touch operations ☞P.475).

2 Select a destination, and then press ●.

When upper left was selected

Displaying Specified Pages <Move Spec Page>

You can specify the page to display in a document. Available when there are more than 2 pages.

1 In the details screen (☞Steps 1 to 3 on P.471), press ⓞ⑦.

● The screen to specify a page is displayed.
● You can also operate by simply pressing ⑦ (1-touch operations ☞P.475).

2 Enter the page number to jump to, and then press ●.

Using Other Functions

Scrolling Automatically <Auto Scroll>

You can scroll a screen to the right automatically. In horizontal display, you can scroll a document to the right.

1 **In the details screen (☞ Steps 1 to 3 on P.471), press ⓒ⑧⒯ᵤᵥ.**

● Auto scroll starts.
● You can also operate by simply pressing ⑧⒯ᵤᵥ (1-touch operations ☞ P.475).

To move up and down
● Press 🔘.

To adjust the scrolling speed
● You can adjust the speed to 1 of 3 levels. Press ◐ to speed up scrolling and ◑ to slow down scrolling.

2 **Press ⬤.**

● Auto scrolling is ended.

Note	● In horizontal display, press 🔘 to scroll faster and 🔘 to scroll slower.

Saving Display Images as Still Pictures to Send with i-shot

You can save displayed image as an "i-shot(L): 288× 352" still picture onto your mova and send using i-shot.

1 **In the details screen (☞ Steps 1 to 3 on P.471), press ⓘ (Send).**

● The screen to compose message is displayed. The name of the saved still picture is displayed in the attachments field.

2 **Compose and send the message.**

● Refer to steps 2 to 6 of "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" on P.307 and P.308.

Displaying the Key List to Confirm 1-touch Operations <Key List>

You can display a list of 1-touch operations of details screens.
● The display may vary when in Viewer position.

1 In the details screen (☞ Steps 1 to 3 on P.471), press ⓐ ⑨ₙₓᵧₓ.

Key	Operation	Reference
◯◯◯◯	Scroll up, down, left, and right	P.471
ⓐ*	Display the previous page	P.475
ⓑ*	Display the next page	P.475
1./☆	Reduce the display size*	P.472
2ₐʙᴄ	Switch between vertical and horizontal display	P.472
3ᴅᴇꜰ	Enlarge the display size*	P.472
4ɢʜɪ	Magnifier	P.472
5ᴊᴋʟ	Specify the zoom position	P.473
6ᴍɴᴏ	Move within the screen	P.473
7ᴘǫʀꜱ	Move to a specified page	P.473
8ᴛᴜᴠ	Auto scroll	P.474
9ᴡxʏᴢ	Display the Key list	P.475
0ₙ	Display full-screen	P.475
#⌨	Cut off	P.476

*1 When in Viewer position, press ⃞ (left guidance key) for at least 1 second.
*2 When in Viewer position, press ⃞ (right guidance key) for at least 1 second.
*3 The size is reduced with each press of the key.
*4 The size is enlarged with each press of the key.

Display a Document Over the Entire Main Display <Full-screen>

You can turn off the marks and guide being displayed in the main display and display a document over the entire main display.

1 In the details screen (☞ Steps 1 to 3 on P.471), press ᵛⁱᵉʷ.

● Press ②ᴄʟʀ to return to the original screen.
● This operation can also be performed by simply pressing 0ₙ (1-touch operation ☞ P.475).
● Press ◉ to move up, down, left, or right.
● Press 1./☆ 3ᴅᴇꜰ to reduce/enlarge the screen.
● Press 2ₐʙᴄ to switch between vertical and horizontal display.
● Press ⓘ to cut off screen and paste to i-shot mail.
● Press ⓐ to display the previous page.
● Press ⓑ to display the next page.
● Press #⌨ to cut off screen.
● Press ◉ to display the entire document.

Saving the displayed image as a still picture

You can save an image of displayed text as a still picture.

● You can save in "Stand-by (main): 240× 320" size.

1 In the details screen (☞ Steps 1 to 3 on P.471), press ⓐ(✳꙼꙼).

● You can also operate by simply pressing (✳꙼꙼) (1-touch operations ☞ P.475).

2 Select "Yes", and then press ⦿.

3 Select "OK", and then press ⦿.

To change the file name
● Select "   " (Change title), and then press ⦿.
● Enter up to 12 full-pitch (24 half-pitch) characters.
● Press ⦿, select "OK", and then press ⦿.
To change the Save location
● Select "   " (Change folder), and then press ⦿.
● Select a folder, press ⦿, select "OK", and then press ⦿.

Deleting Files <Delete>

You can use the next procedure to delete document and image files saved in a miniSD memory card.

● This operation cannot be used to delete data in the "Camera folder" and "Other images" folders. Perform this operation from My picture.
● When Document viewer is activated from Assistant view, files cannot be deleted.

1 In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select 🔲, and then press ⦿(2ᴬʙᴄ).

● The Document viewer folder list is displayed.

2 Select a document folder, and then press ⦿.

● The file list is displayed.

3 Select a file, and then press ⓐ(1).

4 **Press $(1.\overset{\circ}{\scriptstyle\cdot})$ (Delete one).**

To delete all files in a folder
● Press $(2\overset{D}{\scriptstyle ABC})$, enter your terminal security code (4 digits).

To delete multiple selected files simultaneously
● Press $(3\overset{E}{\scriptstyle DEF})$, select the file to delete, and then press $\odot$. (The mark changes to "☑". To cancel a selection, select a file with "☑" displayed, and then press $\odot$.) Select all files to delete, and then press $\textcircled{\tiny 回}$ (Complete).
● You can select up to 50 files.

5 **Select "Yes", and then press $\odot$.**

To not delete
● Select "No", and then press $\odot$.

Displaying Detailed Information <Properties>

You can display detailed information for the document.

1 **In the stand-by, press $\odot$ and select 🔍, and then press $\odot$$(2\overset{D}{\scriptstyle ABC})$.**

● The Document viewer folder list is displayed.

2 **Select a folder, and then press $\odot$.**

● The file list is displayed.

3 **Select a file, and then press $\textcircled{\tiny 回}$$(2\overset{D}{\scriptstyle ABC})$ (Properties).**

```
          Properties
Date/time saved
          24/07/2003 14:55
File size
          325.8 KByte
File format
          Adobe PDF
File name
     チェックシート.pdf


     Agree
```

4 **When you have finished checking, press $\odot$ (Agree).**

Rearranging Files <Sort>

You can change the display order of the file list to one of the following ways.

Date (new → old)	By date saved, from the newest
Date (old → new)	By date saved, from the oldest
Size (big → small)	In size order, from the largest
Size (small → big)	In size order, from the smallest

● The default setting is "Clear sort".

1 **In the stand-by, press $\odot$ and select 🔍, and then press $\odot$$(2\overset{D}{\scriptstyle ABC})$.**

● The Document viewer folder list is displayed.

477

Using Other Functions

2 Select a folder, and then press ⦿.

● The file list is displayed.

3 Press ⊚ 3ᴅᴇꜰ (Sort).

4 Select a sort method, and then press ⦿.

● The files are sorted.

To disable the setting
● Press 5ᴊᴋʟ.

Note	● The display order does not change even if the Document viewer is ended.

Assistant View

Using Other Functions During a Call or Operation

You can start a different function during a call or while using other functions. This feature is useful for situations such as when you wish to check or copy information in your schedule or phonebook during a call, and use the e-mail address or phone number in the phonebook, while composing a mail message.

● The functions that you can check with Assistant view are "Memo pad", "Phonebook", "Calculator", "Schedule", "Mail", "ToDo list", "e-Dict/Book", "Document viewer" and "Money Calc". (Depending on the function you are using, you may not be able to check some functions.)
You cannot start Assistant view again if it has already been started.

● When Assistant view is starting, the Assistant view mark for the original function flashes.

● Only checking of data and the copying (for Mail, Phonebook, Memo pad, and Calculator) of items (characters) can be performed for functions that are in use. Editing and deleting cannot be done. However, you can sort mail and search the Phonebook when viewing data.

● You cannot use Assistant view during i-mode transmission (🖴 flashes), while recording messages, playing recorded messages or voice memos, or when using Infrared exchange.

Functions that can be used in combination with assistant view

		Memo pad	Phone-book	Calcu-lator	Sche-dule	Mail	ToDo list	e-Dict/Book	Document viewer	Money Calc
Original function	Call[*1]								×	×	
	During i-mode[*2]										
	Mail										
	Phonebook		–								
	Memo pad	–									
	Schedule				–		×				
	ToDo list				×		–				
	Money Calc										–
	e-Dictionary&Book	×	×	×	×	*3	×	–	×	×
	Document viewer	×	×	×	×	*3	×	×	–	×

: Can be used.   : Some features may be used.   × : Cannot be used.
–: Cannot be used because it is the same function.

[*1] Cannot be started during 3-way call or when using Call Waiting.
[*2] Assistant view cannot be activated during i-mode transmissions.
[*3] Mail received while using e-Dictionary&Book/Document viewer can be checked using Assistant view.

1

Press `view` during a call or using a function.

- A list of the functions that you can start is displayed. (You cannot start functions displayed in gray.)
- If you press `view` when Assistant view cannot be used, nothing is displayed.

2

Select the function to start, and then press ●.

- Move the cursor with ⊙.
- You can also select by directly pressing the dial keys (`1` to `9`). (The Assistant view icons are in accordance with the dial keys.)
- The selected function starts. Operations may be limited for certain functions.
- For instructions on how to use a function, refer to the reference pages for each function.
To copy phonebook items
- In the phonebook details screen, select the data you wish to copy and then press ⊠`3`. Refer to P.524 for information on pasting copied items.
To copy Memo pad text
- Select the characters to copy, and then press ● twice. For subsequent steps, refer to P.523. Refer to P.524 for information on pasting copied characters.
When a call or mail is received while using Assistant view
- Assistant view ends, and then the incoming call screen is displayed.
- After the call is finished, the mova returns to the screen from before starting Assistant view.

3

Press `view` to end Assistant view.

- The mova returns to the original screen.

Note	● When in Viewer position, press the shutter to activate Assistant view, select a function with ⊕, and then press ⬤. Press the shutter to end Assistant view. ● You can view mail received while displaying e-Dictionary&Book or Document viewer by using Assistant view.

Shortcut Menu

Quick Access to Frequently Used Functions

If you register frequently used functions in the Shortcut menu in advance, you can access the screens for those functions with simple operations.
You can register up to 18 shortcuts in the Shortcut menu. The following shortcuts are registered by default.

Registering shortcuts in the Shortcut Menu

You can register shortcuts for functions, i-αppli software, bookmarks, etc. in the Shortcut menu.

1 **While accessing the function you wish to register (with 🔝 displayed), press `view` for at least 1 second.**

● Functions other than camera (still picture)/camera (movie)/camera (character reader)/camera (bar code reader) that do not have "🔝" displayed cannot be added to the shortcut menu.
● When registering camera functions (still picture, movie, character reader and bar code reader), activate the camera in the corresponding function and before shooting, press `view` for at least 1 second.

2 **Select a shortcut to overwrite, and then press ⬤.**

When a blank area is selected
● Registration is completed.

3 **Select "Yes", and then press ⬤.**

To not register
● Select "No", and then press ⬤.

Note	● If a miniSD memory card is not inserted, "Camera(Movie)", "My movie" and "miniSD manager", and "Document viewer" are displayed in gray. ● When you register a shortcut, it is named automatically. ● You can also overwrite a shortcut that has already been registered. ● When i-αppli software and bookmarks for which shortcuts were registered are deleted, the corresponding shortcuts are deleted automatically from the Shortcut menu. ● If you perform "Reset settings" (☞P.505), all shortcuts are reset to default settings.

Using the Shortcut Menu

1 **In the stand-by, press ⃝.**

- The shortcut menu is displayed.
- Alternatively, press 🔘 in the TOP menu to switch to the Shortcut menu.
- If you used this method to display the Shortcut menu last time, simply pressing ⦿ will display the Shortcut menu.

When a calendar is displayed on the stand-by display
- Pressing ⃝ changes the month that is displayed. Press ⊛CLR to disable the calendar display, and then press ⃝.

2 **Use ⬡ to select a shortcut, and then press ⦿.**

- The registered function is performed.

Note	● When in Viewer position, press ◗ in stand-by to display the Shortcut menu. Use ◖ to select a shortcut, and then press ◖.

Deleting from the Shortcut Menu

1 **Display the Shortcut menu, select a shortcut, and then press 📷 4ᴳᴴᴵ (Delete).**

2 **Select "Yes", and then press ⦿.**

- The shortcut is deleted.

To not delete
- Select "No", and then press ⦿.

Changing the Display Positions of Shortcut Menu Icons

You can change the display position of a shortcut.

1 **Display the Shortcut menu, select the shortcut to move, and then press 📷 2ᴬᴮᶜ (Move icon).**

- "Select destination" is displayed.

2 **Move the cursor to the position you wish to move to, and then press ⦿.**

- The shortcut is replaced with the shortcut selected in step 1.

Using Other Functions

481

Setting Shortcut Menu Icons <Icon Settings>

You can change the Shortcut menu icons.
You can display 2 images, 1 for when selected and another for when unselected.

● You can use JPEG images, GIF images, and GIF animations of 76× 76 pixels.
● Use up to 3 scenes for GIF animations. An image for when selected cannot be set.

1 **Display the Shortcut menu, select the shortcut you wish to change, and then press ⓒ①.ₐ (Icon settings).**

2 **Select a folder, and then press ●.**

● The icon images in the folder are displayed.

To preview still pictures
● Select a still picture, and then press ⓘ (Preview).

3 **Select an image for when unselected, and then press ●.**

● The Unselected icon is set.

4 **Select "No", and then press ●.**

To set a separate image for "Selected"
● Select "Yes", press ●, and then use the same procedure as in steps 2 to 3 to set the image.

When a GIF animation is selected in step 3
● The mova returns to the Shortcut menu.

Note	● A diagonal line appears across still pictures that cannot be used as a shortcut icon.
	● When a still picture of My picture is set as a shortcut icon, even when the original still picture is deleted, the shortcut icon will remain until its setting is changed.
	● Still pictures stored in a miniSD memory card cannot be directly set as a shortcut icon. Copy them to the mova before setting.

Setting the Shortcut Menu Background

You can set the Shortcut menu background image.
● You can use JPEG and GIF images. (You cannot use Flash movies and GIF animations.)

1 Display the Shortcut menu, and then press ⓒ ③ (Set background).

● The my picture screen is displayed.

2 Select a folder, and then press ⦿.

● The background images in the folder are displayed.

To preview still pictures
● Select a still picture, and then press ⓘ (Preview).

3 Select a still picture, and then press ⦿.

● The background image is set.

Note	● Still pictures that cannot be set as the background image are crossed out and cannot be selected.
	● When still pictures from My picture are set as background images, the image remains set until the background image settings are changed, even if the original image is deleted.
	● Still pictures stored on a miniSD memory card cannot be set as the background image directly. Copy them to the mova before setting.

Resetting the Shortcut Menu

Resetting the Shortcut menu to its default state.

1 Display the Shortcut menu, and then press ⓒ ⑤ (Reset).

2 Select "Yes", and then press ⦿.

● The settings are reset.

To not reset
● Select "No", and then press ⦿.

Registering the Shortcut Menu to Side Keys

⟨●3 9⟩

You can allocate functions registered in the Shortcut menu to ●●●● and use ●●●● when in normal position to activate those functions.
● This setting is valid only when in the stand-by display in Normal position.
● This is not set at default.

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select 🗡, and then press ●3 9.**

● ●●●● are displayed as numbers.

2 **Press 1 to register to ●.**

To register to ●
● Press 2.
To register to ●
● Press 3.
To register to ●
● Press 4.

3 **Press 1 (Register).**

To disable registration
● Press 2 (Delete).

4 **Select the function to register with ⊙, and then press ●.**

| Note | ● If a side key set for a Shortcut menu item to access miniSD memory cards, the miniSD memory card menu is not displayed if one is not inserted. Error tones (beeps) and messages do not appear. Insert miniSD memory card before operating.
● Applicable menus are not displayed if i-mode related functions such as i-mode and mail, or if side key set for Shortcut menu of i-αppli etc. is pressed when i-mode lock is set. Error tones (beeps) and messages do not appear. Release i-mode lock before using.
● Applicable menus are not displayed if you are not registered for Voice Mail Service and side key set for Shortcut menu of service total and service contacts is pressed. Error tones (beeps) and messages do not appear. Register for Voice Mail Service before using. |

Close Operation

Setting the Operation for When the mova is Closed

〈●⑤⑦〉

The default setting is for a call to disconnect when the mova is closed. You can set this to put the call on hold.
● You can also set the hold tone to not play ("Silent") when a call is placed on hold.
● The default setting is "Finish call".

1 In the stand-by, press ● and select , and then press ●⑤⑦.

```
5 Phone setting
Finish call
1Noise canceling
2Reconnect
3 Close operation
 1Silent
 2Finish call
 3Hold sound
8Auto answer set
9Self mode
0Int'l prefix
        OK
```

2 Press ③ (Hold sound).

To put on hold (Silent)
● Press ①.

To set to finish call
● Press ②.

Note	**When "1 Silent" or "3 Hold sound" is selected**
	● Calls are placed on hold when the mova is closed.
	■ "Silent" or "Holding" is displayed in the sub display. (When "1 Silent" is selected, no hold tone is played.)
	■ To continue the call, open the mova. (You can now speak to the caller again.)
	● When the optional flat-type switch-equipped earphone is attached to the mova, calls are not terminated regardless of this setting.
	● If "Silent" or "Hold sound" are selected, calls are placed on hold when you disconnect the earphone while the mova is closed. If you connect the earphone again or open the mova, you can talk to the caller.
	● The hold tone is " " and is fixed at 7 harmonies.

Using Any Key Answer

⟨●⟩⟨5 JKL⟩⟨✳⟩

When Any key answer is set to ON, you can answer calls by pressing keys other than 📞.
- Answer calls by pressing ⟨0⟩, ⟨1⟩ to ⟨9 WXYZ⟩ and ⟨✳⟩ on the keypad.
- The default setting is "ON".

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select** 🔧 **, and then press**
●⟨5 JKL⟩⟨✳⟩.

2 **Press ⟨1⟩ (ON: Any key answer).**

To not set
- Press ⟨2 ABC⟩.

Saving Battery Power During Calls

⟨●⟩⟨5 JKL⟩⟨5 JKL⟩

Set Battery saver mode to reduce the amount of power that is used during calls.
- The default setting is "Disable" (OFF).
- You can also perform this operation during a call.

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select** 🔧 **, and then press**
●⟨5 JKL⟩⟨5 JKL⟩.

- The battery saver mode screen is displayed.
- Press ●⟨4 GHI⟩ to set during a call.

2 **Press ⟨1⟩ (ON: Set Battery saver mode).**

To disable
- Press ⟨2 ABC⟩.

Note	● If Battery saver mode is enabled, "✳" flashes during a call to indicate that the Battery saver mode is active. It stays lit when the mode is disabled.
	● Once Battery saver mode has been enabled, the setting remains ON even if the mova is turned off. However, Battery saver mode is temporarily disabled when performing data communications or fax transmissions (☞P.501).
	● When this setting is enabled, the other party may find it difficult to hear the beginning and end of your conversation.
	● When the setting is enabled, the continuous talk time is longer than when the setting is disabled.

Using Other Functions

Recording Your Own or a Caller's Voice

You can record a caller's voice during a call (Voice memo (during call)) or your own voice during stand-by (Voice memo (stand-by)).

● Up to 3 messages of 12 seconds each, including recorded messages (☞P.69), can be recorded.

1 In the stand-by, press ⌒ (⊡) ●.

Indicator

Voice memo(stand-by)
3rd
Recording

Scale

● Recording starts.
● Speak into the microphone, from within 10cm.
● If there are 3 items recorded already, a beeping alert sounds and "Unable to record anymore" is displayed. Delete any unnecessary recording, and try again (☞P.73).
● Recording stops automatically after approximately 12 seconds.
● Indicator and scale are estimates.

When a calendar is displayed on the stand-by display
● The displayed month for the calendar changes when ⌒ (⊡) is pressed. Press ⊗CLR to disable the calendar display, and then press ⌒ (⊡) ●.

To stop recording within 12 seconds
● Press ●. (The contents up to the point where recording was stopped is recorded.)

To use during a call
● Press ● twice. (Points to note and how to stop recording are the same as when used from the stand-by.)

Note	● Recording may not be possible if Voice memo is shorter than 3 seconds.
	● You cannot record your own voice with Voice memo (during call). However, depending on the line conditions, your own voice may be recorded.
	● The Keypad sound is silenced while recording a Voice memo (stand-by).
	● If security settings are ON (☑), your 4-digit terminal security code must be entered to play Record message, Voice memo and Voice memo (stand-by).
	If an incoming call is received while recording a Voice memo (stand-by)
	● Recording stops. Press ⌒ to answer the call. (The contents up to the point where recording was stopped is recorded.)
	To play/delete recorded content
	● Use the same operations as playing or deleting recorded messages (☞P.72).
	Be sure to make a separate note of the content of any recorded message.
	● The contents of recordings may be altered or lost in the event of misuse, exposure to static electricity or electrical noise, malfunction, repairs or phone model changes. DoCoMo cannot be held responsible in any way for the loss of data recorded by the record message function.

Using Other Functions

487

Quality Alarm

Sounding an Alarm When the Signal is Weak

⟨●⟩⟨5 JKL⟩⟨3 DEF⟩

This feature sounds an alarm when there is a risk that a call may be disconnected due to a poor signal.

● You can select one of two alarm tones, High note or Low note.
● The default setting is "ON: High note".

1 In the stand-by, press ● and select 🗲 , and then press ●⟨5 JKL⟩⟨3 DEF⟩.

● The quality alarm screen is displayed.

2 Press ⟨1.⟩ (ON).

To not sound an alarm (Silent)
● Press ⟨2 ABC⟩.

3 Press ⟨1.⟩ (High note).

To use low note
● Press ⟨2 ABC⟩.

Note	● If the signal quality suddenly deteriorates, the call may be disconnected before the alarm can sound.

Reconnect

Automatically Reconnecting If a Connection is Cut Off

⟨●⟩⟨5 JKL⟩⟨2 ABC⟩

If you enter a tunnel or the shadows of tall buildings etc., the signal quality can temporarily deteriorate or be cut off. In these cases, the mova automatically reconnects when the signal improves, and you can continue the call.

● You can set an alarm to notify you that a call is being reconnected.
● The default setting is "OFF" (do not reconnect).

1 In the stand-by, press ● and select 🗲 , and then press ●⟨5 JKL⟩⟨2 ABC⟩.

● The screen to set reconnect is displayed.

2 Press ⟨1.⟩ (ON).

● The screen to enter your terminal security code is displayed.
To not reconnect
● Press ⟨2 ABC⟩.

3 Enter your terminal security code (4 digits).

● Each entered digit is displayed as "✳".

4 Press ⟨1.⟩ (High note).

To use low note
● Press ⟨2 ABC⟩.
To not sound an alarm
● Press ⟨3 DEF⟩.

Note	● Depending on the signal, the time within which the call can be reconnected will vary. An approximate interval is about 10 seconds.
	● The other party hears no sound until the call is reconnected (max.10 sec). The call continues to be charged during this time.

Noise Canceling

Reducing Interference to Hear Calls Clearly

〈⦿5 1.〉

If the Noise canceling setting is selected, surrounding noise is suppressed during a call to make conversation easier.
● The default setting is "ON".

1 **In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select 🗡, and then press ⦿5 1..**

● The noise canceling screen is displayed.

2 **Press 1. (ON: Set).**

To disable
● Press 2.

Note	● We recommend you to set this to "ON" for normal use.

Call Details

Checking the Duration and Cost of a Call

〈⦿6 6〉

You can check the approximate duration or cost of the last call, the accumulated duration or cost of calls, and the previous reset date.
● Last call duration includes both calls you make and calls you receive.
● Last call cost includes only calls you make.

Displaying the Call Details

1 **In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select 🗡, and then press ⦿6 6.**

● The call details screen is displayed.
● If you have never reset the Call details, or the date and time have not been set, "--/--/---- (--) --:--" is displayed for the previous reset information.

2 **Press 🔴^PWR_HLD when finished checking.**

Note	● Set the limit for call charges, display a message and sound an alarm when that amount is exceeded (☞P.210).
	● Some payment plans are not available.

489

Checking the Duration and Cost of a Call

Note	**About call duration**

- The call duration display is only an estimate. The actual call duration may be different.
- If the duration of the previous call exceeds 9 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds, counting starts again from 0 minutes 0 seconds.
- If the accumulated duration of calls exceeds 999 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds, counting starts again from 0 minutes 0 seconds.
- The last call duration and accumulated call duration information are not deleted when the power is turned off.
- The ring duration for an incoming or outgoing call is not counted.
- The call duration and call cost are counted for data sent using i-shot.
- The call duration or call cost for i-mode sessions is not counted. See the "i-mode User's Manual" given to you when you subscribe to i-mode for details about service charges.

About call cost

- In the following situations, "------yen" is displayed for call cost, and the cost of the call is not added to the accumulated total. Be careful since this is different from the actual cost of calls.
  - When using other international phone services (call costs are displayed when using DoCoMo International Call Service "WORLD CALL").
  - Collect calls ■ Telegrams
  - Calls that are cut off
  - Remote operations for "Voice Mail Service"
  - Cost to forward a call from the mova to the forwarding destination for the Call Forwarding Service (Last call cost is displayed as "------- yen".)
- "------- yen" is displayed for operations of the following services that are not subject to call charges.
  - "Voice Mail Service" .... For 1416 calls and 1417 calls with stored recorded messages, Last call cost is displayed (☞P.415).
  - "Call Forwarding Service" .... (☞P.425)
  - "Access Number" .... For 1490 and 1491
  - "Caller ID Display Request Service" .... For 148
  - "Nuisance Call Blocking Service" .... For 144
  - "English Announcement Service" .... For 1458
  - "End Remote Operation/Start Remote Operation" .. For 159
- If you have a contract for Toll-free Number Service, "0 yen" is displayed for calls to the number and they are not added to the accumulated call cost. However, the call is charged to the owner of the mova at the same rate as when calling from the mova.
- "------- yen" is displayed as the call cost for calls to 0120 toll-free numbers or NTT toll-free numbers.
- The call cost from the mova to the directory assistance service (104) is always displayed as 140 yen. This 140 yen charge is added to the total calls cost each time you use the service, so please be careful. When your telephone bill is calculated, the bill is calculated as the assistance charge + call charge, for each time you use the service that month.
- The call cost for i-mode sessions is not counted. See the "i-mode User's Manual" given to you when you subscribe to i-mode for details about service charges.
- If the last call cost exceeds 9,999,999 yen, counting starts again from 0 yen.
- If the total call cost exceeds 9,999,999 yen, counting starts again from 0 yen.
- Last call cost and total call cost information is not deleted when the power is turned off.
- The ring duration for an incoming call or outgoing call is not charged.
- Last call cost for 3-way calls is counted.
- When an incoming call is received, "------- yen" is displayed as the last call cost.

Resetting the Call Duration and Call Cost

You can reset the last call and total call duration and call cost records to "0".

1 In the stand-by, press ● and select 🔧, and then press ●⑥⑥.

● The call details screen is displayed.

2 Press ● (Reset), and then enter your terminal security code (4 digits).

● Each entered digit is displayed as "✳".

3 Select "Yes", and then press ●.

● The reset date, accumulated duration, and cost of calls are saved as the previous reset date.
● If the date and time have not been set, "--/-- --:--" is registered.

To not reset
● Select "No", and then press ●.

Check Memory

Checking Memory Usage

⟨●③①⟩

The following details can be checked.

Phonebook and Schedule/ToDo	Remaining items/Saved items/Secret items
Bookmark, Holiday, Memo pad	Remaining items/Saved items
Received messages, Sent messages, Message R/F, My picture, Screen memo, i-αppli.	Memory used (%)

● When the available space in My picture memory is low, "Ⓜ" (yellow) lights in the stand-by display. When there is no available memory, "Ⓜ" (red) lights.
● The number of items for secret data is only displayed when Secret mode has been set (☞P.92).

1 In the stand-by, press ● and select 🔧, and then press ●③①.

● The current status of memory usage is displayed.
● Press ⤓ to display the amount of memory used for other functions.
● When you have finished checking, press ● (Agree) or 🔴.
● Indicator and scale are estimates.

Indicator

To check memory usage of miniSD memory card
● Press 🅘 (SD). Memory usage of the miniSD memory card is displayed. Press 🅘 (Main) again to return to the previous screen.
● When you have finished checking, press ● (Agree) or 🔴.

Scale

491

Using the Calculator

⟨●⟩⟨8̲⟩⟨3̲⟩⟩

You can use the Calculator to perform calculations such as addition, subtraction, multiplication, division, percentages, and tax. The calculator screen can be displayed by pressing numbers for a calculation during stand-by, and then pressing ⓘ (Calc).
● Refer to P.546 for details on Calculator functions.

1 In the stand-by, press ● and select 🔲, and then press ●⟨3̲⟩.

● The calculator screen is displayed.

2 Enter the numbers for the calculation.

● Use the following keys to enter the information.

⟨0̲⟩ to ⟨9̲⟩	Numbers 0 to 9
⟨*̲⟩	Decimal point
⟨#̲⟩	Switch between + and -

● Press ⟨🔙⟩ to delete all numbers. (When number is 0, press ⟨🔙⟩ to end Calculator.)

3 Select the calculation function.

● Use the guide key to specify addition, subtraction, multiplication or division.

◐	Add	◑	Subtract	◓	× Multiply	◒	÷ Divide

● You can also specify the following operations.

🔼	CM (Clear memory)	🔽	RM (Recall memory)	ⓘ	Percentages	⟨AF⟩	TAX
📷	M+ Add memory						

4 Enter the numbers for the calculation, and then press ● (=).

● The result of the calculation is displayed.
To end the Calculator
● Press ⟨PWR⟩. The mova returns to the stand-by display.

Note	● When performing calculations using memory, results are saved even when the Calculator is ended.
	To calculate tax
	● Display the calculation results, and then press ⟨AF⟩ (TAX). Tax is added to the result.
	● Press ⟨AF⟩ (TAX) again to display only the tax.
	● Digits after the decimal point are not shown for tax calculations.
	To change the tax rate
	● In the calculator screen, press ⟨AF⟩ (RATE) for at least 1 second, enter a number from 1 to 99 (tax rate), and then press ●.
	To use calculation results in Money calculator (☞P.496)
	● Press ⓘ ( ) for at least 1 second while performing calculations. The number is displayed in Money calculator.
	● Numbers after the decimal points are not shown.
	To copy results
	● While calculating, press ⟨#̲⟩ (Copy) for at least 1 second to copy the information displayed and paste to other screens.
	Using Assistant view
	● Press ⟨view⟩ during a call to use Calculator and copy its results (☞P.478).

Entering Memos

⟨●⟩8ᴛᵁⱽ⟨7ᴾᵠᴿˢ⟩

You can register text phrases that you use frequently, and use them when composing messages, schedules, or ToDo lists. You can create a "Security memo" that cannot be displayed or used by other people.

● In the Memo pad, you can register up to 10 normal memos and 10 Security memos. You can also set 20 types of category icon.

1 In the stand-by, press ● and select 🔧, and then press ●7ᴾᵠᴿˢ.

2 Select "Memo", and then press ●.

● The memo list is displayed.
Creating Security memos
● Select "Security memo", press ●, and then enter your terminal security code (4 digits).

3 Press ⊚1.₀ (New).

● The screen to register Memos is displayed.
If 10 memos are already registered
● "Unable to save anymore" is displayed.

4 Select "Text", press ●, and then press ● after entering text.

● The text can be up to 64 full-pitch (128 half-pitch) characters in length.

5 Select "Ctgry", press ●, select a category, and then press ●.

● You can select from 20 category settings. Refer to P.230 for information on types of categories.
● The last category that was selected is displayed at the top.

6 Press ⓘ (Complete).

7 Select "Yes", and then press ●.

Note	Copying to a miniSD memory card.
	● You can copy memos saved on your mova onto a miniSD memory card (☞P.449) or display memo pads registered on a miniSD memory card (☞P.450).
	● You cannot copy Security memos.
	● You can copy the Memo pad in a miniSD memory card to the mova. (☞P.452)
	Ir exchange
	● You can send memo pads saved on your mova with Ir (☞P.438), or receive one with Ir (☞P.439).
	● Security memos cannot be sent by Ir exchange.
	We recommend that you keep a separate note of the contents of the Memo pad on a miniSD memory card (☞P.444). You can also use Data Link software (☞P.553) and a USB cable (sold separately) to save contents on your PC.
	● Malfunctions, repairs, or other handling of the mova may cause loss of registered contents. DoCoMo cannot be held responsible in any way for the loss of data registered in the Memo pad.
	● Security memos cannot be saved on a PC using Data Link software and USB cable.
	Using Assistant view
	● Press ⓥⁱᵉʷ during a call to use Memo pad and copy its details. In Viewer position, press the shutter (☞P.478).

Checking Memos

You can display registered memos.

1 **In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select 🔧, and then press ⦿ ⑦ₚQₚₛ.**

● The folder selection screen is displayed.

2 **Select "Memo", and then press ⦿.**

● The memo list is displayed.

To check Security memos
● Select "Security memo", press ⦿, and then enter your terminal security code (4 digits).

3 **Select a memo to display, and then press ⦿ (Display).**

● The memo details are displayed.

Date created

Date last revised

Category

Details

Using the Memo pad

You can use memos registered in the Memo pad when composing messages, creating schedules and ToDo lists.

1 **In the memo details screen (☞ Steps 1 to 3 on P.494), press (⊚), select a method of use, and then press (●).**

To use the memo in mail
● Press (2̲ᴬᴮᶜ).
● The text in the memo is already entered into the "Message" field of the mail message.

To use the memo in the schedule
● Press (3̲ᴰᴱꟳ).
● The details of the memo are already entered in the "Agenda" field.
● The category for the memo is already entered in the "Ctgry" field.

To use the memo in ToDo lists
● Press (4̲ᴳᴴᴵ).
● The details of the memo are already entered in the "Agenda" field.
● The category for the memo is already entered in the "Ctgry" field.

Note	● During a call or while composing a message, press (view), and you can retrieve the Memo pad to check or copy a memo. In Viewer position, press the shutter (☞ P.478).

Changing the Font Size for "Details"

The default setting is "Default".

1 **In the memo details screen (☞ Steps 1 to 3 on P.494), press (⊚)(6̲ᴹᴺᴼ) (Font size).**

2 **Select a font size, and then press (●).**

● The selected font is displayed from the next time on.

Editing registered memos

1 **In the memo details screen (☞ Steps 1 to 3 on P.494), press (⊚)(1̲.̲) (Edit).**

● The screen to register memos is displayed.

2 **Edit the memo.**

● Editing is performed in the same manner as registering (☞ P.493).

3 **Press (ⅰ) (Complete) when finished editing.**

● The screen to edit is displayed.

4 **Press (1̲.̲) (Save new).**

If 10 memos are already registered
● "Unable to save anymore" is displayed.

To overwrite
● Press (2̲ᴬᴮᶜ).

Deleting memos

1 **In the memo list screen (☞ Steps 1 and 2 on P.494), select a memo, and then press ⓐ⑥ⁱ.**

● The delete screen is displayed.

2 **Press ①,ᵃ (Delete one).**

To delete all memos
● Press ②ᵃ, and then enter your terminal security code (4 digits).

To delete multiple memos
● Press ③ᵈᵉᶠ, select a memo to delete, and then press ⬤. ("☑" is displayed before the text. To cancel the selection, select a memo with "☑", and then press ⬤.) Select all memos you wish to delete, and then press ⓘ (Complete).

3 **Select "Yes", and then press ⬤.**

To not delete
● Select "No", and then press ⬤.

| Note | ● Press ⓐ⑤ᵏ in Memo details to also delete one. |

Calculating a Total Amount

⟨⬤⑧ᵗᵘᵛ④ᵍʰⁱ⟩

You can use the Money calculator to automatically calculate the total for sum of money entered. This can be very useful to calculate costs when you are on a business trip.
● You can enter up to 100 items in the Money calculator. (The total sum can be up to ± 99,999,900 yen, while each item can be up to ± 999,999 yen.)

1 **Enter the numbers or formula in the calculator screen (☞ P.492).**

● You can only enter numbers.

2 **Press ⓘ for at least 1 second.**

● If you enter an amount larger than ±1,000,000 yen, a beeping alert sounds. "Enter 999,999 yen or less" is displayed, and the mova returns to the calculator screen.
● If the total exceeds 101 items, a beeping alert sounds and "Unable to calculate" is displayed. The mova returns to the calculator screen.
● After entering the amount in the stand-by, you can also press ⟨view⟩ to activate Money calculator.

3 **Press the number of the details.**

● The entered number is added to the Money calculator and the mova returns to the stand-by.
● The date when the calculation was performed is automatically registered.
● If you repeat steps 1 to 3, the total is calculated by the Money calculator.
● Numbers after the decimal points are dropped.

Note	**Be sure to make a separate note of the content of any calculations.**
	● Data saved in your mova may be altered or lost in the event of misuse, exposure to static electricity or electrical noise, malfunction, repairs, phone model changes or certain other handling. The contents of the data will be stored for about one month even after the power for the battery pack has run down or has been removed. DoCoMo cannot be held responsible in any way for the loss of data stored by the Money calculator function.
	Using Assistant view
	● Press [view] during a call to use Money calc and copy details. In Viewer position, press the shutter (☞P.478).

Checking the Money calculator

1 **In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select [TOOLS icon], and then press ⦿④.**

- The contents of the Money calculator is displayed.
- Press ⓘ (Switch) to switch in order of "Grand total" → "This month total" → "This month balance".

To continue viewing
- Press ⦿.

Changing detail name in the Money calculator

You can change the detail names already saved in the Money calculator.
- Each detail can be up to 5 full-pitch (10 half-pitch) characters in length.
- You can change the details for "01" to "14".

1 **In the Money calculator details screen, press ⓞ⑦.**

- The current details are displayed.

To restore the original detail after changing
- Select the detail you wish to restore, and then press ⦿. After deleting the current detail name, press ⦿. The detail reverts to the default detail name.

2 **Press the number of the detail name you wish to change.**

3 **Enter the detail name, and then press ⦿.**

- Repeat steps 2 and 3 to change additional detail names.

Entering new items from Money calculator

1 In the Money calculator details screen, press ⊚(1.ₐ).

2 Enter a date, and then press ⊙.

```
      Enter amount
(¥-999,999
   ~¥999,999)
         ¥ 000000




 +/-      OK
```

3 Enter an amount, and then press ⊙.

4 Select a detail, and then press ⊙.

● A new item is added to the Money calculator.

Editing Money calculator items

1 In the Money calculator details screen, select the Money calculator item to edit, and then press ⊚(2ᴬᴮᶜ).

2 Edit the item.

```
      Detail name
Set amount   ¥  2479
00 No name
01 Airplane
02 Train
     Edit
0  1 Save new
0  2 Overwrite
05 Shopping
07 Meal
08 Hotel
09 Drink
           OK
```

● Refer to "Entering new items from Money calculator" (☞ steps 2 to 4) for information on editing methods.

3 Press ②ᴬᴮᶜ (Overwrite).

● Registered contents are changed.
To save edited contents as a new entry
● Press (1.ₐ).

Displaying totals

1 In the Money calculator details screen, press ⊚(4ᴳᴴᴵ).

```
84 Money calc   1/3
00 23/ 7/2004 18:57
Shopping   ¥  2479
01 25/ 7/2004 10:15
  Switch total dsp 0
0 1 This month total
  2 Current balance 0
  3 Grand total
Total : All ¥   20259
           OK
```

● Press ⓘ (Switch) in Money calculator details to switch in order of "Grand total" "This month total" "This month balance".

2 **Press ① (This month total).**

● The total for this month is displayed.
To display this month's balance
● Press ②.
To display total
● Press ③.

▌Calculating set periods

1 **In the Money calculator details screen, press ⑤⑤.**

2 **Press ① (This month).**

● The total for this month is displayed by details.
● To copy, press ⓘ (Copy), and then select a range to copy.
To specify a period
● Press ②, enter dates to total, and then press ●.
● The totals for the set period for each detail is displayed.
To total all dates
● Press ③.
● All totals for each detail is displayed.

▌Setting a budget

1 **In the Money calculator details screen, press ⑥⑥.**

2 **Press ① (ON: Set).**

3 **Enter a budget, and then press ●.**

● You can enter up to 99,999,999 yen.
● Results are displayed in "This month balance".

To not set budget
● Press ②.

■ Deleting Money calculator items

1 **In the Money calculator details screen, select the Money calculator items to delete, and then press ⊙③ᴅᴇ꜀.**

- If deleting all or deleting selected, a Money calculator does not need to be selected.

2 **Press ①ᵢ꜀ (Delete one).**

To delete all items
- Press ②ₐ꜀, and then enter your terminal security code (4 digits).

To delete multiple items
- Press ③ᴅᴇ꜀, select items to delete, and then press ⊙. ("☑" is displayed before the text.
  To cancel the selection, select an item with "☑", and then press ⊙.
  Select all items you wish to delete, and then press ⓘ.

To delete items up to last month
- Press ④ᴳₕ꜀, and then enter your terminal security code (4 digits).

3 **Select "Yes", and then press ⊙.**

To not delete
- Select "No", and then press ⊙.

Using Other Functions

Data Communications and Fax Transmissions (Optional)

⟨●④⑤⟩

By using a DoCoMo data communication device, such as the "Mobile Card Triplex N", you can perform data communications or fax communications from a PC connected to the mova (at 9600bps).

● Make sure that you are in an area where you can use the phone and that the settings for the modem card have been setup in advance.
● You can use command operations on the PC (AT command setting) to switch between ordinary calls and data communications.

To communicate data

No special settings are necessary on the mova for automatic or manual calls.

● The current communication status is displayed on the mova display if data communications are available during a call. If you are connected to a party that is registered in the Phonebook, the registered name is displayed instead of the phone number.
● Refer to the manual provided with the optional device for details.

Fax transmissions with a G3 fax

No special settings are necessary on the mova for automatic or manual calls.

Fax transmissions with a G4 fax (with G3 fax function)

Perform the following settings, and send the fax after checking that the Fax mode setting is set to ON.

● The default setting is "OFF".
● You can also perform this operation during a call.
● Do not perform the following operations during fax transmissions with a G3 fax.
● Refer to the manual provided with the optional device for details.

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select [icon], and then press ●④⑤.**

● The fax mode screen is displayed.
● During a call, press ●②.

2 **Press ① (ON: Set).**

● If Fax mode is set to ON, the mova is connected to a Mobile DP card or adapter, and you are in the middle of the call, you will be able to use fax transmissions.

To disable
● Press ②.

Note	● You cannot perform data/fax communications from the earphone/microphone socket.
	● Some faxes may require the settings to be changed. Consult with the fax manufacturer for details.
	● If you use data/fax communications in a location where the signal status is poor or while on the move, data/fax communications may not end correctly. We recommend using locations where the signal is strong.
	● Optional extras for the mova such as "Modem unit" and "Fax unit" cannot be used.
	● DoPa is not supported by this mova.
	● Fax mode automatically returns to OFF when fax transmissions are completed.

Using Other Functions

501

Using the Switch-equipped Earphone (Optional)

If you connect the flat-type switch-equipped earphone (optional) to the earphone/microphone socket, you can make calls to people registered in the phonebook or answer incoming calls just by pressing the switch. You can also use the switch-equipped earphone as the camera shutter (☞P.145). The switch-equipped earphone can be used as is or combined with the following products.

- Flat-type switch-equipped earphone
- Switch-equipped earphone microphone + earphone jack adapter P001
- Stereo earphone set P001+ earphone jack adapter P001
- Earphone terminal P001+ earphone jack adapter P001
  (For these combinations, separate stereo earphones are necessary.)

■ Registering a memory number <Earphone>

⟨◉ 3 0 ⟩

If you register a memory number for 1-touch dialing (☞P.79), you can make a call to that party simply by using the switch on the switch-equipped earphone, without having to dial the number or use the phonebook. (This feature can be also used when the mova is closed.)

- You can only register one number in any memory number between 000 and 749.
- The default setting is "ON". "749" is displayed for the memory number.

1 **In the stand-by, press ◉ and select [icon], and then press ◉ 3 0 .**

- The screen to set calls from switch-equipped earphones is displayed.

2 **Press 1 (ON: Earphone).**

To disable calling with the switch
- Press 2 .

3 **Enter the memory number, and then press ◉.**

■ Using the switch to make calls

1 **Connect the switch-equipped earphone.**

- Insert the switch-equipped earphone connector plug into the earphone/microphone socket.

2 **In the stand-by, press the switch for at least 2 seconds.**

- A call is automatically placed to the number registered as the memory number.
- When there are multiple memory numbers saved, the call is placed to the first phone number with one. When the first phone number entry does not have a memory number, the second entry is called, when the second entry does not have a memory number, the third entry is called.
- Talk when the other party answers.

3 **After the call is finished, press the switch for at least 2 seconds.**

- The call is ended. (The call can also be ended by pressing [key] on the mova.)

Using Other Functions

Note	● If the phone number registered for the memory number has been set as secret data, enable Secret mode before using the switch to make the call.
	● If the switch-equipped earphone is left connected and the mova is placed in a briefcase or a bag, the switch may inadvertently be pressed, causing the phone to dial out. Remove the switch-equipped earphone when not in use.
	● When the Security setting (☞P.202) for "Phonebook lock" is set to "☑" (Set), calls cannot be placed.
	● When Keypad lock is enabled, you can use the switch to receive a call, but you cannot make a call (☞P.207).
	● If you connect and then immediately disconnect an earphone without a switch from the earphone/microphone socket, the phone may automatically dial out. Please be careful.
	● When a switch-equipped earphone is connected, the keypad sound, open sound, rotation sound, and close sound can be heard only through the earphone regardless of Ring output settings (☞P.114).
	● Sounds from the earphone are heard at the volume level set when adjusting the earpiece volume (☞P.56).
	● Do not use excessive force on the rubber cover of the earphone/microphone socket. This may cause damage.

■ Using the switch to receive calls

1 **Connect the switch-equipped earphone.**

● Insert the switch-equipped earphone connector plug into the earphone/microphone socket.

2 **When you receive a call, press the switch on the switch-equipped earphone for at least 2 seconds.**

● The call is connected. (The call can also be connected by pressing 🔘 on the mova.)
● Talk with the other party.

3 **After the call is finished, press the switch for at least 2 seconds.**

● The call is ended. (The call can also be ended by pressing 🔘 on the mova.)

Note	● During 3-way calls, you can press the switch to switch between the parties in the call, instead of pressing 🔘 on the mova.
	● If you connect the switch-equipped earphone after ringing starts, the call may be connected at the moment the switch-equipped earphone is connected even though the switch has not been pressed. Remove the switch-equipped earphone when not in use.
	● Do not press and let go of the switch continuously. Calls may automatically be made or received.
	● Do not wind the switch-equipped earphone cord around the mova. This may cause the antenna to stop functioning properly.
	● Bringing the switch-equipped earphone cord close to the antenna may generate noise. Please be careful.
	● Insert the plug completely. If not plugged in completely, sound may be inaudible. If plug is not completely inserted, a beep sounds but this is not a malfunction.
	● If the power is turned on while the switch-equipped earphone is connected, a click may be heard. This is not a malfunction.
	● Do not use excessive force on the rubber cover of the earphone/microphone socket. This may cause damage.

Using Other Functions

Auto Answer Set

Answering Calls Automatically When the Earphone is Connected (Optional)

‹●5 8›

You can automatically answer calls received on the mova when the optional flat-type switch-equipped earphone (optional) is connected.

● You can also set the amount of time (Receive time) before a call is answered automatically.
● Even if Auto answer is set to "ON", you cannot answer calls automatically if the switch-equipped earphone is not connected.
● The default setting is "OFF".

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select** 🗡 **, and then press ●5 8.**

● The screen to set Auto answer set screen is displayed.

2 **Press 1. (ON: Set).**

To disable
● Press 2.

3 **Enter the receive time (3 digits: 000 to 120 seconds), and then press ●.**

● If you press ● without entering a receive time, incoming calls are answered automatically after 2 seconds. (The default setting is "2 seconds".)
● Be aware that when the Receive time is set to "000 seconds" the call is received without ring tone or vibrator operations.

Note	● If a call is received from a caller from whom you are not accepting calls using the Reject/Accept calls function, the call cannot be answered automatically.
	● When the receive settings for "Record message" (☞P.69), "Voice Mail Service" (☞P.414) or "Call Forwarding Service" (☞P.423) is set simultaneously with Auto answer, the priority ranking will differ according to the activation time for Record message. For Auto answer settings to take priority, set the Receive time to be shorter than the activation time for Record message, Voice Mail Service, or Call Forwarding Service.

Self Mode

Using Self Mode

‹●5 9›

Disables the making or receiving of calls, sending or receiving of mail, and i-mode functions.

● When you receive a call while Self mode is enabled, a guidance notifies the other party that you are out of the signal area or the phone is turned off. If you are using the Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service, the services are used in the same manner as when the mova is turned off.
● The Self mode setting continues even when the power is turned off.
● When Self mode is enabled and you perform an operation which requires a network connection, the "Self mode" message is displayed.
● You can still make calls to emergency services (110, 119, 118) while Self mode is enabled. These calls cancel Self mode.
● The default setting is "OFF".

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select** 🗡 **, and then press ●5 9.**

● The self mode screen is displayed.

2 **Press ① (ON: Set).**

To disable
● Press ②.

3 **Select "Yes", and then press ●.**

● "self" lights at the top of the display.

Note	● You cannot enable Self mode during in i-mode standby (" ☐ " flashes).
	During Self mode
	● You can read mail received before Self mode was enabled.
	● Ir exchange and Infrared remote control operations cannot be performed.
	● i-mode mail sent to you is held by the i-mode center.

Reset Settings

Resetting Functions to Their Default Settings

〈●#〉

Settings you have set are reset to their default settings.
● For details on default setting contents, refer to "Menu list" on P.547 to P.551.

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select [icon], press ●#, and then enter your terminal security code (4 digits).**

● Each entered digit is displayed as "✳".

2 **Select "Yes", and then press ●.**

To not reset
● Select "No", and then press ●.

Note	**When the settings are reset**
	● The following items are not reset (deleted/changed). Refer to the reference pages for information on how to reset these items.

Date/time (☞P.37)	ToDo list (☞P.248)
Terminal security code (☞P.200)	Screen memo (☞P.275)
Owner information (☞P.39)	i-mode settings (☞P.281)
Accept calls list (☞P.57)	Sent/Unsent messages (☞P.338)
Reject calls list (☞P.59)	Mail settings (☞P.345)
Recordings such as Record message (☞P.72)	Signature contents (☞P.360)
Phonebook contents (☞P.91)	Network Service Settings (☞P.415, P.420, P.424)
i-melody (☞P.110)	Data on miniSD memory card (☞P.455, P.458)
Downloaded images (☞P.157)	Memo pad (☞P.496)
Images shot with the camera (☞P.157)	Money calculator (☞P.500)
Language (☞P.36)	User dictionary (☞P.526)
Alarm (☞P.222)	Download dictionary (☞P.529)
Schedule (☞P.241)	

● Refer to P.289 for details on resetting i-mode function settings.

Connecting Your mova to a Car Navigation System or "PlayStation" (Optional)

Operating i-mode From a Car Navigation system

By connecting your mova to an i-mode compatible car navigation system, you can view sites or send and receive i-mode mail with the car navigation system.

- You can enjoy useful functions such as searching for a restaurant using an i-mode site (program with location information) and setting it as a destination or have notifications sent by mail.
- While your mova is connected to an i-mode compatible car navigation system, all i-mode operations are performed on the car navigation system. The only possible operation that can be performed on your mova is to turn it off.
- For operational instructions of i-mode compatible car navigation systems, refer to the instruction manual for the car navigation system or contact the customer service center.
- To connect your mova with an i-mode compatible car navigation system, you need an i-mode compatible adaptor.

If you connect your mova with an i-mode compatible car navigation system

- "EX" lights at the top of the display.

Note	• Before connecting with a car navigation system, confirm that all calls are complete, and then turn off the mova. • Bookmarks and Screen memos registered on your mova cannot be used on an i-mode compatible car navigation system. • When an i-mode mail or i-mode message is received on an i-mode compatible car navigation system, it is saved on the i-mode compatible car navigation system, but not on your mova.

Connecting Your mova With a "PlayStation"

By connecting your mova with a "PlayStation", you can acquire or exchange the necessary data for games using i-mode compatible "PlayStation" software.

- i-αppli does not function on i-mode compatible "PlayStation" software. (As of July 2004)
- Depending on the i-mode compatible software, some i-mode functions cannot be operated while connected to a "PlayStation".
- To use i-mode by connecting your mova with a "PlayStation", you need a mobile phone connection cable (sold by Sony Computer Entertainment), "PlayStation" ("PlayStation", "PS one", or "PlayStation 2"), and i-mode compatible "PlayStation" Software.
- Refer to the user's manual of each software for operation procedures and details of i-mode compatible "PlayStation" software.

Connecting your mova with a "PlayStation".

- "EX" lights at the top of the display.

Note	• Before connecting with a "PlayStation", confirm that all data exchange is complete, and then turn off the mova. • When an i-mode mail or i-mode message is received on a "PlayStation", it is saved on the memory card of the "PlayStation", but not on your mova.

"PlayStation" and "PS one" are registered trademarks of Sony Computer Entertainment.

Services You Can Use With Your mova

Services you can use with your mova		Phone number
Collect calls		(no area code) 106
Standard directory assistance calls or calls to DoCoMo directory assistance for mobile phones (Fees Apply) (You cannot receive information about phone numbers of those who have not requested this service.)		(no area code) 104
Telegrams (Fees Apply)	8:00 AM to 10:00 PM	(no area code) 115
Time signal service (Fees Apply)		(no area code) 117
Weather forecast (Fees Apply)		Area code for region concerned + 177
Police emergencies		(no area code) 110
Fire and ambulance emergencies		(no area code) 119
Marine emergencies and accident reports		(no area code) 118
Busy signal inquiries		(no area code) 114

Note	
	● If you make a collect call (106), the recipient of the call is billed for the cost of the call plus a 90 yen (94.5 yen including tax) handling fee for each call. (As of July 2004)
	● If you call directory assistance (104), you are charged a 100 yen (105 yen including tax) service fee in addition to the cost of the call. People with vision disabilities or arm disabilities can receive this service free of charge. For details, call 116 (NTT sales) from an ordinary (landline) phone. (As of July 2004)
	● Since your location cannot be pinpointed if you call 110 or 119 from a mobile phone, some police and fire stations return the call for verification purposes. State that you are calling from a mobile phone and give your phone number and exact location. Stand still while making an emergency call to ensure that the call is not disconnected. Keep your phone turned on and in stand-by status for about 10 minutes afterwards.
	● Depending on the region, calls to the police or fire station may not be connected. If your call is not connected, use the nearest payphone or an ordinary phone to dial 110 or 119.
	● If you specify a mobile phone as the forwarding destination when using "Forwarding Service" or "Voice Warp Service", depending on the settings, the caller may hear the mobile ringing even if the line is busy, or while out of the service area or turned off.
	● You cannot use services such as 116 (NTT sales), dial Q2, message service, or make credit call card calls. (You can make an automatic credit card call to a mova from an ordinary phone or payphone.)

►MEMO◄

22

Input Method

Text Input

The mova has several functions by which text is entered, such as phonebook entries and messages.
Before you try to enter text, you should familiarize yourself with the text input methods.

Text input methods

5-touch	Several characters are assigned to each keypad key and you enter the desired character by pressing the key a number of times. Refer to P.539 and P.540 for details on the characters assigned to each keypad key. To display the candidates in reverse, press ⊛.
2-touch	With this method you enter the desired character by pressing a 2-digit number on the keypad, as when sending text to a pager[*]. Refer to P.541 for information on the characters you can enter by pressing 2-digit numbers on the keypad (2-touch conversion table).

● Refer to P.530 for selecting an input method.
● Each input method has several input modes for entering different types of characters (☞P.511, P.530).
* From January 2001, the DoCoMo paging service changed its name to "QUICKCAST".

Types of characters you can input

Full-pitch	Kanji, Hiragana, Katakana, alphabet (upper case, lower case), numbers[*], symbols, pictographs
Half-pitch	Katakana, alphabet (upper case, lower case), numbers, symbols

* You can enter full-pitch numbers in full-pitch alphanumeric character input mode, using the 5-touch method.
● Refer to P.539 to P.541 for details.

Quick dictionary and Next word guess functions

Quick dictionary	For every 1 to 5 characters you enter in Hiragana, conversion candidate words starting with those characters appear. Commonly used words are registered in a specialized dictionary for this purpose.
Next word guess	As you confirm character entry, the mova predicts the next word from previous input and the conversion record, automatically showing candidate characters to follow confirmed characters.

● The default setting has both conversion functions enabled for use. You can turn off either function separately (☞P.529).
● You can reset all learned conversion candidates in the memory (☞P.531).

Input Method

Entering Text Using the 5-touch Input Method

You can switch between input modes depending on the type of characters you wish to enter.
Press ⓐ to switch between input modes.

1 **Press ⓐ in the character input screen.**

- Each time ⓐ is pressed, the input method switches in the following order: ｱ (full-pitch Katakana) ➡ ｱ (half-pitch Katakana) ➡ A (full-pitch alphanumeric characters) ➡ A (half-pitch alphanumeric characters) ➡ 1 (half-pitch numbers) ➡ CHR CODE (Kuten code) ➡ 漢 (Kanji/Hiragana).
- After pressing ⓐ in the character input screen, you can switch between input modes by pressing ◯ instead of ⓐ. Press ◖ to switch in the opposite direction.
- When "Pict/Sym" appears in the character input screen, you can switch to Pictograph input mode or Symbol input mode by pressing ⓘ (Pict/Sym) (☞P.518).

■ Entering lower case letters

To enter lower case letters, press ⓐ while A (full-pitch alphanumeric) or A (half-pitch alphanumeric) is selected.
Press ⓐ again to switch to upper case input.
You can also convert 1 character at a time by pressing ⓐ after character input.

Upper case   Lower case

Note	**When canceling character input**
	● Press ☺CLR. If you have already entered text, press ☺CLR to delete all the text (☞P.514), and then press ☺CLR. If the cursor is in the middle of text, press ☺CLR for at least 1 second twice, delete all characters, and then press ☺CLR.

Input Method

Entering Kanji/Hiragana/Katakana (Full-pitch)

By entering Hiragana characters in Kanji input mode, you can convert them to full-pitch Kanji, Hiragana and Katakana characters, symbols, etc.

In Kanji input mode, enter Hiragana (Kanji candidates appear)

Select the Kanji to enter

Converted to Kanji

- Kanji candidates appear each time you enter a Hiragana character. To convert to the desired Kanji, press ◯ to move the cursor to the Kanji candidates list, use ◯ to select the desired Kanji, and then press ⦿.
  To cancel selection from the conversion candidate list, press ⊗. The cursor returns to the character input screen and you can proceed with character entry.
- When using the same key to enter the next character (Example: "　　"), always press ◯ to move the cursor before entering.
- If desired Kanji is not displayed, press ◯ while converting, or ⓘ or ⓐ to change the characters to convert (highlighted characters), then convert again.
- Press ◯ to enter 1-touch conversion mode (☞P.513).

Single-character conversion

Once you have entered a Kanji using normal conversion, the mova can automatically convert to that Kanji the next time you enter the first character in its reading.

When you cannot find a Kanji (conversion by On and Kun reading)

You can enter a single Kanji by entering its On or Kun reading.
To convert by On or Kun reading, enter the Hiragana in Kanji input mode, and then press ⓘ (On & Kun).

Entering Hiragana in Kanji input mode

(On & Kun)

The candidate Kanji appear

Select the Kanji to enter

- After this, press ⦿ to convert to the desired Kanji.

Note	● The order in which Kanji candidates are displayed varies depending on the dictionary memory function.
	● You can convert to 6,355 characters in the JIS Kanji Standard 1 and JIS Kanji Standard 2 character codes.
	● Complex Kanji are changed in part or excluded.

Input Method

Applying the Dakuten (   ) and Handakuten (   ) Marks

- For full-pitch characters, press ⌨ once to add a Dakuten mark (   ) and twice to add a Handakuten mark (   ). Press 3 times to return to the original character.
- For half-pitch characters, press ⌨ once to add a Dakuten mark (   ), twice to add a Handakuten mark (   ), 3 times to add a prolonged sound symbol (   ), and 4 times to add a line break (♪). Press 5 times to return to the Dakuten (   ).
  The added marks count as one character.

Note ● There are cases of partial omission for Hiragana or Katakana with Dakuten marks.

Converting to Lower Case Letters

Enter the characters to convert to lower case, and then press ⓐ.
Alphabet letters are converted into lower case, and the input mode switches to Lower case mode.
- This function is not available when the character is Hiragana or Katakana which cannot be converted to lower case.

Entering a Space

If the cursor is at the end of a character string, press ◯ to move the cursor forward.
In this case, you are entering a half-pitch space regardless of the input mode. Half-pitch spaces are counted as 1 character.

Quickly Specifying Characters to Convert to Kanji (1-touch Conversion)

■ 1-touch conversion

With 1-touch conversion, you can enter Kanji using combinations of all the Hiragana assigned to the keys you pressed.
To use 1-touch conversion, enter the Hiragana and then press ◯. This eliminates the need to press the same key several times to enter the desired Hiragana.
Example:

- 1-touch conversion works best with nouns.
- In 1-touch conversion, the cursor turns blue.
- In 1-touch conversion mode (blue cursor), press ⓘ or ⓒ to change the characters selected for conversion. From this point on, conversion is 1-touch.
- For 1-touch conversion, a priority list of character strings frequently converted so far appears.
- With 1-touch conversion candidates displayed, press ⓒ to return to the original Hiragana. At this point, press ◯ to view the normal conversion candidates.
- To enter characters with a Dakuten or Handakuten mark, press the key for the original character once, then enter the Dakuten or Handakuten mark.
  (Example: for "   ", enter "   ".)

Input Method

Predictive headword conversion

When you perform 1-touch conversion after entering only one character, words starting with characters assigned to that key (words starting with " ", " ", " ", " ", " " when " " is entered) are displayed, and the choices are matched to the time of day.

● The words to display are already registered.
● Available word lists change for each time frame: 5:00 to 10:59, 11:00 to 16:59, 17:00 to 22:59, 23:00 to 4:59.
● If you have not set the time, the contents for 11:00 to 16:59 are shown regardless of the actual time of the operation.

1-touch single-character memory

If you enter the first character of a string for which 1-touch conversion has already been performed (for example, " " if you entered "   " and used 1-touch conversion to select "   ") and perform 1-touch conversion, and the previous conversion result ("   ") appears first.

Editing Text

Adding characters

Press 🔘 to move the cursor to the point where you wish to add text, and enter the characters.

Move the cursor to where you wish to add text

Enter text at the cursor

Deleting characters

Press 🔘 to move the cursor to the point where you wish to delete a character, and then press 🆑. The character at the cursor is deleted.

Move the cursor to where you wish to delete text

The character is deleted

● Press 🆑 for at least 1 second to delete a group of characters, depending on cursor position.
  ■ When there are characters before and after the cursor/only after the cursor
    All characters at and after the cursor are deleted.
  ■ When there are characters only in front of the cursor
    Characters before the cursor are deleted.

Changing characters

After using the method above to delete the characters you wish to change, enter new text.

Move the cursor to where you wish to change text

The characters are deleted

Enter text at the cursor

Input Method

Entering Katakana (Half-pitch)

Enter Katakana in half-pitch Katakana input mode.

Enter Katakana in half-pitch
Katakana input mode

Enter the next character or
press ◯ or ◗ to confirm

- When using the same key to enter the next character (Example: "   "), always press ◗ to move the cursor before input.

Entering Alphanumeric Characters

Entering alphabet characters

Enter alphabet letters in Full-pitch alphanumeric input mode (upper case and lower case) or in Half-pitch alphanumeric input mode (upper case and lower case).

Enter alphabet in
Alphanumeric input mode

Enter the next character or
press ◯ or ◗ to confirm

- When using the same key to enter the next character (Example: "AB" or "ab"), always press ◗ to move the cursor before input.
- If you enter a Japanese reading for an English noun in Kanji input mode (Example: "   "), you can enter the English word in half-pitch alphanumeric characters by selecting it from the conversion candidates (Example: "House" or "house").
- If you enter the Roman character reading of a Japanese word or name in Kanji input mode (Example: "   "), you can enter the word in half-pitch alphanumeric characters by selecting it from the conversion candidates (Example: "hitomi", etc.).

Entering numbers

You can enter numbers in Half-pitch numeric input mode (Half-pitch numbers).

Enter numbers in Half-pitch
numeric input mode

- You can enter full-pitch numbers in Full-pitch alphanumeric input mode (upper case/ lower case) by repeatedly pressing the dial keys for the numbers you wish to enter.
  Example: To enter "1", ➡ Press ⓵ 5 times.
  To enter "2", ➡ Press ② 7 times (upper case)/press ② 4 times (lower case).
- When you enter Hiragana in Kanji mode, you can also enter full-pitch/half-pitch numbers by selecting them from the Kana/English conversion candidates.

Input Method

515

Conversion to Katakana, Alphabet Characters, and Numbers in Kanji Input Mode <Kana/Alphanumeric Conversion>

You can convert entered Hiragana into Katakana, or into the alphabetical characters and numbers corresponding to the keys pressed. You can only use Kana/Alphanumeric conversion in Kanji input mode.

Enter characters, and then press ⓐ (Kana/Alphanumeric).

Example:
For Katakana

ⓐ
(Kana/Alphanumeric)

Example:
For numbers

ⓐ (Kana/Alphanumeric) 🔘

Example:
For alphabet

ⓐ (Kana/Alphanumeric) 🔘

● Choose the character(s) you wish to enter using 🔘, and then press ● to confirm entry.
● When conversion candidates are displayed, you cannot choose directly using the dial key.
● You can convert to numbers as follows. (The same applies to entry of lower case characters and characters with Dakuten/Handakuten marks.) If you enter   space and convert to "Kana/Alphanumeric", 0 appears.

■ line…1 ■ line…2 ■ line…3 ■ line…4 ■ line…5 ■ line…6
■ line…7 ■ line…8 ■ line…9 ■ / / , space…0

Input Method

Using Preset Phrases

You can enter preset phrases (☞P.545), original phrases you have saved (☞P.521) and mail addresses. In the character input screen, press 🖂, and then 5 (Insert phrase).

● You can also press 🙂 for at least 1 second in the character input screen to call up the phrase selection screen.

● Phrase categories are displayed. Select the category, press ⬤, select the phrase to use, and then press ⬤.

🖂 → Select "Insert phrase" → Press 🛈 (Switch) to display phrases

Submenu
1 Copy
2 Cut
3 Paste
4 Emoticon
5 Insert phrase
6 2-touch
7 Quick dictionary
8 Next word guess
9 Switch font size

Insert phrase
1 Greetings
2 Business
3 Private
4 Reply
5 Internet
6 Original phrase

2 → Select the category of phrase (When "business" is selected)

Business
1 直行します
2 直帰します
3 休暇をとります
4 半休します
5 電車遅延のため、遅れ
6 本日の会議は中止とな
7 出欠をご連絡ください
8 次の指示を待ってくだ
9 携帯の電源を切ります
0 メールで連絡してくだ

6 → Select the phrase to use → Check the phrase

Check phrase
本日の会議は中止となりました

⬤ OK

Input message 28/500
本日の会議は中止となりました

● Text used for mail addresses are saved in the "Internet" category. In the character input screen, press 🙂 for at least 1 second to use "Internet" phrases.

🙂 at least 1 second →

Internet
1 .ne.jp
2 .co.jp
3 .ac.jp
4 .or.jp
5 .go.jp
6 .com
7 @docomo.ne.jp
8 http://
9 www.
0 .html

Note	● The phrases are listed in order of use, starting with the most recent.
	● If a phrase is entered in screens where only half-pitch characters can be entered, such as the address input field for mail, only the half-pitch characters in the phrase are entered.

Input Method

517

Entering Symbols <Symbol Conversion>

■ Symbol input mode

In any character input mode (a screen with "Pict/Sym" shown in the lower left), press ⓘ (Pict/Sym) twice to switch to Symbol mode. Symbol list is displayed.

By pressing ⓒ in Symbol input mode, you can switch between Full-pitch symbol input mode and Half-pitch symbol input mode.

● Press ⓒⓛⓡ to exit Symbol input mode and return to the previous input mode.

Full-pitch symbol mode

■ Input selected symbols

Press ⓞ in Symbol input mode, choose the desired symbol, and then press ●.

● The following list screen is displayed when you press 🖮. Press 🔊 to return to the previous screen.

● The same operation is possible using the 2-touch input method.

Symbol list   Select the desired symbol   The symbol is confirmed

Note	● The symbols displayed in the first line are the last 10 symbols that were used.

Entering Pictographs

■ Pictograph input mode

In any character input mode (a screen with "Pict/Sym" shown in the lower left), the mova switches to pictograph mode and the pictograph list is displayed when you press ⓘ (Pict/Sym).

By pressing ⓒ in Pictograph input mode, you can switch between Pictograph input mode 1 and Pictograph input mode 2.

● Press ⓒⓛⓡ to exit Pictograph input mode and return to the previous input mode.

Pictograph input mode 1

■ Input by selecting from the screen

Press ⓞ in Pictograph input mode, choose the desired pictograph, and then press ●.

● The following list screen is displayed when you press 🖮. Press 🔊 to return to the previous screen.

Pictograph List   Select the desired pictograph   Pictograph is confirmed

Entering Emoticons

In the character input screen, press ⓒ④ (Emoticon). A screen appears showing the emoticons you can enter.
Press the code for the emoticon (2-digit number) to use it.

Menu screen   List of emoticons

Code
(2-digit number)

Confirm

Select the emoticon
to enter

- If you enter "　　" in Hiragana, and then press ○, emoticons are shown together with the Kanji candidates. Emoticons not listed in the Emoticon table can also be entered.
- Press ○ to select the emoticon, and then press ● to confirm entry.
- The following list is displayed when you press ⌨ in the emoticon list screen. Press ⌨ to return to the previous screen.

Emoticon table

Code	Emoticon	Code	Emoticon	Code	Emoticon	Code	Emoticon
01	(＾０＾)	14	(Ｔ_Ｔ)	27	(゜　∇゜)	40	(￣∇￣ ;)
02	o(＾-＾)o	15	(￥_￥)	28	! (＾ ＾) !	41	(＾＾)Ｙ☆Ｙ(＾＾)
03	(＾０＾)/	16	(@_@)	29	o(＞＜)o	42	o(＾-０)(０＾-＾)o
04	p(＾＾)q	17	(?_?)	30	(。 。 ;)	43	(ノ゜０゜)ノ
05	(＞_＜)	18	(;_;)	31	φ(..)	44	(゜０゜)＼(-_-)
06	(￥_￥)	19	(０_０)	32	(＾人＾)	45	(∪0∪)。。。
07	m(__)m	20	(＾_＾)	33	〈 (__) 〉	46	(＾ ＾)＼(゜ ゜)
08	f＾_＾;	21	(＾＾)	34	(´ Д`)	47	＼ ゜0 ＾ ／
09	(:_;)	22	(☆_☆)	35	＼(＾＾:;)	48	(┬┬_┬┬)
10	(-. -;)	23	(ノ＞＜)ノ	36	(#＾.＾#)	49	??(゜Ｑ。)??
11	(+_+)	24	(―_―#)	37	(＾０)＝３	50	(＾_-)-☆
12	(-_-)	25	(¨ ;)	38	(; ´ ・ ゛)		
13	(v_v)	26	(―_―メ)	39	(´～゛;)		

Entering Using Bar Codes

You can enter data read from bar codes (JAN codes or QR codes) by pressing ⓒ⓪ (Bar code reader) in the character input screen while connected to i-mode. (" Selecting items within the site or webpage, and entering text" on P.260)

Entering Using OCR

You can enter data read from OCR by pressing ⓒ⑨ (Character reader) in the character input screen while connected to i-mode. (" Selecting items within the site or webpage, and entering text" on P.260)

Canceling Input and Undoing Operations <UNDO Function>

After confirming the input operation (delete, cut, etc.), press ⓐ to cancel input and undo the operation. The previous operation is undone each time you press ⓐ, for up to 3 times. Pressing ⓐ again will display "Unable to undo anymore", and the mova returns to the screen 3 steps earlier.

● When you are finished editing text, the operations are cleared from the memory.

Input Method

Changing Font Size <Font Size>

In the character input screen for Mail, Phonebook, Schedule, ToDo, or Memo pad, press
(📷)(9ｗｘｙｚ) (Font size) to set the size of the font to be displayed.

● In the input screen for mail, you can select from "Large font", "Default", and "Small font". This
is also reflected in the mail details screen.
● In the input screen for the Phonebook, you can select "Large font" or "Default".
● Once the font size is set, it remains set even after the power is turned off.

(📷)(9ｗｘｙｚ)

(1.｡) to (3ｄｅｆ)

Confirm

When "Large font" is
selected

When "Default" is
selected

When "Small font" is
selected

Editing and Registering Phrases

〈(●)(3ｄｅｆ)(5ＪＫＬ)〉

You can register frequently used original phrases and edit phrases already stored in the mova.
● For details of preset phrases, refer to P.545.
● You can enter up to 64 full-pitch (128 half-pitch) characters.

1 **In the stand-by, press (●) and select ▨, and then press
(●)(3ｄｅｆ)(5ＪＫＬ).**

● The screen to edit phrases is displayed.

2 **Press (6ｍｎｏ) (Original phrase).**

● The original phrase screen is displayed.

To edit preset phrases
● Press a key from (1.｡) (Greetings) to (6ｍｎｏ) (Original phrase).

3 **Select the number to register, and then press (ⅰ) (Edit).**

● The screen to edit phrases is displayed.

521

4 Enter the phrase, and then press ⚫.

Resetting to Default Phrases <Reset>

By resetting phrases, you can return edited/registered phrases to their default state.
There are the following types of reset.

Reset one	You can specify and reset one phrase at a time.
Reset folder	You can specify and reset all phrases in one category.
Reset all	You can reset all phrases.

■ Performing Reset one/Reset folder

1 In the stand-by, press ⚫ and select 　　, and then press ⚫ ③ᴅᴇꜰ ⑤ᴊᴋʟ.

● The screen to edit phrases is displayed.

2 Select the category containing the phrase to reset, and then press ⚫.

3 Select the phrase to reset, and then press ⓒ.

● The submenu screen is displayed.

4 Press ①.。 (Reset one).

To reset all phrases in a folder
● Press ②ᴀʙᴄ.

5 Select "Yes", and then press ⚫.

To not reset
● Select "No", and then press ⚫.

■ Performing Reset all

1 In the stand-by, press ⚫ and select 　　, and then press ⚫ ③ᴅᴇꜰ ⑤ᴊᴋʟ.

● The screen to edit phrases is displayed.

2 Press ⓒ (Reset).

3 Select "Yes", and then press ⚫.

To not reset
● Select "No", and then press ⚫.

Input Method

Cutting, Copying and Pasting Text

You can copy or cut a character string and paste it to a different location.

- You can paste the copied text to the same screen or to a different screen. (Cannot be pasted to a screen without "▨▨▨▨▨" displayed.)
- When you cut any text, the specified character string is deleted from its original location.
- Up to 256 full-pitch characters (512 half-pitch characters) can be cut or copied at one time.

Copying/Cutting Text

1 **Move the cursor to the first character in the text you wish to copy/cut in the character input screen.**

2 **Press ⊛ for at least 1 second.**

To cut
- Press ⌗ for at least 1 second.

3 **Move the cursor to the last character in the text you wish to copy/cut.**

- The character string is selected and highlighted. (The highlighted text may now be copied or cut.)
- Press ◗ for at least 1 second to select all characters after the character you specified in step 1.
- Press ◖ for at least 1 second to select all characters before the first character you specified in step 1.

4 **Press ⦿.**

Note	- Only one copied/cut text item can be saved in memory. If you copy/cut again, the new text replaces the old text in memory.
	To perform operations using the menu
	- You can also copy or cut text by pressing ⊙①(Copy) or ⊙②(Cut) in the character input screen. Specify the range using ⬡ and ⦿.

Copying Mail Text

You can copy the sender, receiver, subject, and message of outgoing, incoming, and unsent mail.

1 **Display the received mail with the content you wish to copy.**

2 **Press ⊙⑥ (Copy).**

- The screen to set copy source is displayed.

For sent/unsent mail
- Press ⊙③.

Input Method

3 Select the item to copy, and then press ⦿.

To copy "Sender" (Received messages) or "Receiver" (Sent messages)
● Press ①.
● The content is copied, and the mova returns to the mail screen.

To copy the "Subject"
● Press ②.
● The screen to specify the copy range is displayed.
  Specify the copy range using ◌ and ⦿.

To copy the "Message"
● Press ③.
● The screen to specify the copy range is displayed.
  Specify the copy range using ◌ and ⦿.

Pasting Text

1 Display the screen (character input screen) where you wish to paste text.

2 Press ⦿③ (Paste).

● The paste screen is displayed.

3 Move the cursor to the point where you wish to paste the character string in memory, and then press ⦿.

● The text saved in memory is pasted at the cursor position.

Note	● When pasted to a location that only accepts half-pitch characters, such as the "Reading" input box in the phonebook, only the half-pitch characters within the saved character string are pasted. Depending on the pasting location, only the allowed number of characters are pasted.
	● Copied/cut text remains in the memory until copying/cutting other text, or until the mova is turned OFF.
	● To return to the previous state (screen), press ⦿. (☞P.520 "Canceling Input and Undoing Operation <UNDO Function>")

Kuten Code Input

Using JIS Kuten Codes to Enter Characters

You can use 4-digit Kuten codes to enter Kanji, Hiragana, Katakana, symbols, and alphanumeric characters.
● Kuten codes are unique numbers assigned to individual characters such as Kanji.
  For details on JIS Kuten codes and the characters you can enter with Kuten codes, refer to the Kuten code list (☞P.534 to P.538).

1 In the character input screen, press ⦿ (Character) repeatedly until you enter Kuten code input mode (ᶜᴴᴿ_CODE).

2 **Enter the 4-digit Kuten code.**

(Example: JIS Kuten code 6211)

- After the fourth digit is entered, the character for the entered code is displayed.

If you press the wrong key when entering a Kuten code

- If you press ⊛ CLR before entering the fourth digit, the number is cleared. Enter the correct number.

Registering Words (User Dictionary)

Registering Frequently Used Words

⟨●③⌇③⌇⟩

You can register a maximum of 100 frequently used words, attaching a short keyword (of up to 8 full-pitch Hiragana) to each one for easy retrieval. The registered word appears as a conversion candidate when you enter the keyword and perform the Kanji conversion. You can then select the candidate and the registered word is entered.

- You can register up to 5 identical keywords.

Saving a New Word

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select [✕], press ●③⌇③⌇, select "Save new", and then press ●.**

2 **Enter the word to register.**

- You can enter up to 15 full-pitch (30 half-pitch) characters. You can enter Pictographs and symbols.
- You cannot enter line breaks.

3 **Press ●, and then enter the keyword.**

- Enter it in Hiragana (up to 8 characters).

4 **Press ●.**

Note • In the stand-by, press ●③⌇③⌇ (Switch) to display the keyword list. Each time you press ⓘ, the display switches between the word list and the keyword list.

Editing Saved Words

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select [icon], and then press ● ③ᴅᴇꜰ ③ᴅᴇꜰ.**

● The registered words are displayed.

2 **Select the word to edit, and then press ●.**

● The screen to edit the User dictionary is displayed.

3 **Edit the word, and then press ●.**

● To not edit the word, just press ●.

4 **Edit the keyword, and then press ●.**

● To not edit, just press ●.

5 **Press ②ᴀʙᴄ (Overwrite).**

To save a new word
● Press ①. You cannot register the new keyword if the same keyword is already registered 5 times.

Deleting Saved Words

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select [icon], and then press ● ③ᴅᴇꜰ ③ᴅᴇꜰ.**

● The registered words are displayed.

2 **Select the word to delete, and then press 📷 ① (Delete).**

3 **Select "Yes", and then press ●.**

To not delete
● Select "No", and then press ●.

Converting User Dictionary to Download Dictionary <Dwld Dictionary>

You can convert User dictionaries with user registered words (☞ P.525) to Download dictionaries.

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select [icon], and then press ● ③ᴅᴇꜰ ③ᴅᴇꜰ.**

● The registered words are displayed.

2 **Press 📷 ②ᴀʙᴄ (Dwld dictionary).**

● The screen to select a save location is displayed.

Input Method

3 Select a save location, and then press ⬤.

4 Select "Yes", and then press ⬤.

To not save as dictionary to use
● Select "No", and then press ⬤.

Note	● The User dictionary is deleted when converted to Download dictionary.

Download Dictionary

Setting the Dictionary to Use

⟨ ⬤ ③ ④ ⟩.

The mova lets you download dictionaries for Japanese conversion from various sites, and register up to 5 such dictionaries. You can use 2 of these dictionaries for Kanji conversion. If you download a dictionary of technical terms, the terms stored in that dictionary appear as conversion candidates when you enter text.
● You can convert User dictionaries to Download dictionaries.
● Refer to P.279 for details on downloading a dictionary.
● There are no Download dictionaries saved by default.

Setting/Clearing a Dictionary to Use <Set Dictionary>

1 In the stand-by, press ⬤ and select 🗂️, and then press ⬤ ③ ④.

● The registered dictionaries are displayed. Dictionaries currently in use appear with "▤".

2 Select the dictionary you wish to set/clear, and then press 📷.

● The Submenu screen is displayed.

To confirm the dictionary information
● In the screen of step 2, press ④ (Properties). Dictionary information (dictionary name, author, version, and date of download) is displayed. If a User dictionary is converted to Download dictionary, creation date is displayed in place of download date. Press ⊘ or 📱 (Return) to return to the original screen.

3 Press ① (Set dictionary).

If 2 items are already in use
● "2 dictionaries can be saved" is displayed, and the mova returns to the screen of step 2. Clear the dictionaries you are currently using, and then try again.

To clear dictionary in use
● Press ①.

Input Method

527

Changing Dictionaries While Entering Text <Switch Download>

You can switch dictionaries to use while entering text.

1 **In the character input screen, press ⓐ.**

● The submenu screen is displayed.

2 **Select "■Switch download", and then press ⦿.**

● The registered dictionaries are displayed. Dictionaries currently in use appear with "▤".

3 **Select a dictionary to use, and then press ⦿.**

● When 2 dictionaries are already set, perform operations after selecting a dictionary to cancel and pressing ⦿ (Clear).

Checking Dictionary Content

1 **In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select 🗡, and then press ⦿③DEF④GHI.**

● The registered dictionaries are displayed.

2 **Select the dictionary to check, and then press ⦿.**

● A list of the terms saved in the dictionary is displayed.
● Select a dictionary to confirm, and then press ⓐ②ABC to also display the list of terms.
● When you have finished checking, press ⓐCLR.

To check the list of keywords
● Press ⓘ (Switch). Each time you press ⓘ (Switch), the display switches between "Word list" and "Keyword list".

Changing Dictionary Title

You can change the title of the dictionary converted to Download dictionaries.
● You cannot change titles for dictionaries downloaded from sites.

1 **In the stand-by, press ⦿ and select 🗡, and then press ⦿③DEF④GHI.**

● The registered dictionaries are displayed.

2 **Select a dictionary to change the title of, and then press ⓐ③DEF (Edit title).**

3 **Enter title, and then press ⦿.**

● You can enter up to 9 full-pitch (18 half-pitch) characters.
● The dictionary title is changed.

Input Method

Deleting Dictionaries

You can delete registered dictionaries individually, or all the dictionaries together.

1 In the stand-by, press ● and select ⚒, and then press
●③DEF④GHI.

● The registered dictionaries are displayed.

2 Select the dictionary to delete, and then press 📷⑤JKL (Delete).

● The delete screen is displayed.

3 Press ①.• (Delete one).

To delete all registered dictionaries
● Press ②ABC.

4 Select "Yes", and then press ●.

To not delete
● Select "No", and then press ●.

Selecting the Conversion Method

You can choose whether to use Quick dictionary (☞P.510) or Next word guess (☞P.510).
● For both functions, the default setting is "ON" (Use).

1 In the character input screen, press 📷.

2 Press ⑦PQRS (Quick dictionary).

To select Next word guess
● Press ⑧TUV.

3 Press ①.• (ON: Use).

To not use
● Press ②ABC.

Input Method

529

Entering Text Using the 2-touch Input Method

Setting the 2-touch Input Method <Character Input Method>

You can enter Hiragana with 2 keys using the "2-touch". This method is recommended for users accustomed to 2-touch character input.

In the character input screen, press (◉)(6 ₘₙₒ) (2-touch).

2-touch input screen

- The 2-touch input method will continue until you set the normal input method (5-touch input method).
- In 2-touch input method and 5-touch input method, press (⌬) for at least 1 second to enter Internet phrases.
- With the 2-touch input method, Kana/Alphanumeric conversion is not available.

To return to 5-touch input method

In the character input screen, press (◉)(6 ₘₙₒ) (5-touch).

Switching the Input Mode

1 Press (⌬) in the character input screen.

- Each time (⌬) is pressed, the input mode switches in the following sequence: Half (half-pitch upper case) ➡ CHR CODE (Kuten code) ➡ Full (full-pitch upper case).

- You can switch between upper case and lower case modes in full-pitch or half-pitch mode. You can also convert characters one at a time by pressing (⌬) after character input (☞P.511).
- After pressing (⌬) in the character input screen, you can switch between input modes in the direction of the diagram above by pressing (◯) instead of (⌬). Press (◯) to switch in the opposite direction.

Entering Characters

When using the 2-touch input method, enter a 2-digit number to specify a character.

1 **In the character input screen, enter a 2-digit number.**

Example: ②②②② ➡ " "
● Refer to P.541 for details on character assignments.

Resetting the Memorized Conversion Candidates

⟨●③⧆⟩

You can reset all conversion candidates for entering text which were placed in the memory by the Quick dictionary or Next word guess conversion functions.

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select 🔧, press ●③⧆, and then enter your terminal security code (4 digits).**

● Each entered digit is displayed as "＊".

2 **Select "Yes", and then press ●.**

To not reset conversion candidates
● Select "No", and then press ●.

Input Method

531

Changing the Character Style (Width)

〈 ● 2 ABC 3 DEF 〉

The size of characters displayed on the screen can be changed.
● There are 3 character styles that can be set.
● The default setting is "Bold".

1 In the stand-by, press ● and select 🖊 , and then press ● 2 ABC 3 DEF .

● Press ⬡ to display sample text.

2 Press 1. (Normal).

To set Bold
● Press 2 ABC .

To set Bolder
● Press 3 DEF .

| Note | ● This mova features LCFONT, developed by Sharp Corporation, to make the LCD easier to view and read. LC /LCFONT and the LC logo are registered trademarks of Sharp Corporation. |

● Width of characters in i-mode menu and Mail menu are also changed.
● Character width for phone numbers, date/time displayed on the stand-by, guidance keys, Emoticons, TOP menu, and Shortcut menu cannot be changed.
● Refer to P.364 to switch the size of characters in mail.

Confirming Key Operations in the Character Input Screen

You can confirm key operations in the character input screen.
● The display may vary when in Viewer position.

1 In the character input screen, press 📷, select "■Key list", and then press ●.

● The key list is displayed.

| Note | ● "Switch window" for "■Key list" is only displayed when entering mail messages. |

23

Appendix

Kuten Code List

You can use the 4-digit Kuten code to enter Kanji, Hiragana, Katakana, symbols, and alphanumeric characters.

● Refer to "Using JIS Kuten Codes to Enter Characters" on P.524 for information on using the Kuten code to enter characters.

Kuten Digits 1 to 3	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	Kuten Digits 1 to 3	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	Kuten Digits 1 to 3	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
010		(		)	´		¨				070											181										
011											071											182										
012											072																					
013							…	'		'	073											182										
014	"		"								074											183										
015											075											184										
016			±	×	÷						076											185										
017							°				077											186										
018		¢	£					¥		§	078											187										
019																						188										
020											080											189										
021											081											190										
022											082											191										
023											083											192										
024						¬																193										
																						194										
026											130											195										
027											131											196										
028				‰				†	‡	¶	132											197										
029											133											198										
											134											199										
031							0	1	2	3	135											200										
032	4	5	6	7	8	9					136											201										
033											137											202										
034											138											203										
035											139											204										
036																						205										
037											160											206										
038											161											207										
039											162																					
040											163											207										
041											164											208										
042																						209										
043											164											210										
044											165											211										
045											166											212										
046											167											213										
047											168											214										
048											169											215										
											170											216										
050																						217										
051											170											218										
052											171											219										
053											172											220										
054											173											221										
055																						222										
056											173											223										
057											174											224										
058											175											225										
											176											226										
060											177																					
061											178											226										
062																						227										
063											178											228										
064					μ						179											229										
065											180											230										

Note	● When you enter a Kuten code for which there is no corresponding character in this Kuten code list, an error tone sounds and no character is entered, or a space may be displayed.
	● Characters in the Kuten code list may differ from characters that are actually displayed.

Kuten Digits 1 to 3	Kuten 4th digit 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	Kuten Digits 1 to 3	Kuten 4th digit 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	Kuten Digits 1 to 3	Kuten 4th digit 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9
231		288		346	
232		289		347	
		290		348	
232		291		349	
233		292		350	
234		293		351	
235		294		352	
236		295		353	
237		296		354	
238		297			
239		298		354	
240		299		355	
241		300		356	
242		301		357	
243		302		358	
		303		359	
243		304		360	
244		305		361	
245		306		362	
246		307		363	
247		308			
248		309		363	
249		310		364	
250		311		365	
251		312		366	
252		313			
253		314		366	
254		315		367	
255				368	
256		315		369	
257		316		370	
258		317		371	
259		318		372	
260		319		373	
261		320			
				373	
261		320		374	
262		321		375	
263		322		376	
264		323		377	
265		324		378	
266		325		379	
267		326		380	
268		327		381	
269		328		382	
270		329		383	
271		330		384	
272		331		385	
273		332		386	
273		332		386	
274		333		387	
275		334		388	
276		335			
277		336		388	
278		337		389	
279		338		390	
280		339			
281		340		390	
282		341		391	
283		342		392	
284				393	
285		343			
286		344		393	
287		345		394	

535

Kuten Digits 1 to 3	Kuten 4th digit 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	Kuten Digits 1 to 3	Kuten 4th digit 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	Kuten Digits 1 to 3	Kuten 4th digit 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9
395		444		492	
396		493			
397		444		494	
398		445		495	
399		446		496	
400		447		497	
401				498	
402		447		499	
403		448		500	
404		449		501	
405				502	
		449		503	
405		450		504	
406		451		505	
407		452		506	
408				507	
409		452		508	
410		453		509	
411		454		510	
412		455		511	
413		456		512	
414				513	
415		456		514	
		457		515	
415		458		516	
416				517	
417		458		518	
418		459		519	
419		460		520	
420		461		521	
421		462		522	
422		463		523	
		464		524	
422		465		525	
423				526	
424		466		527	
425		467		528	
426		468		529	
		469		530	
426		470		531	
427				532	
428		470		533	
429		471		534	
430		472		535	
431		473		536	
432				537	
433		473		538	
434		474		539	
435		475		540	
436		476		541	
		477		542	
436		478		543	
437		479		544	
438		480		545	
439		481		546	
440		482		547	
		483		548	
440		484		549	
441		485		550	
		486		551	
441		487		552	
442		488		553	
		489		554	
442		490		555	
443		491		556	

Kuten Digits 1 to 3	Kuten 4th digit										Kuten Digits 1 to 3	Kuten 4th digit										Kuten Digits 1 to 3	Kuten 4th digit									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
557											622											687										
558											623											688										
559											624											689										
560											625											690										
561											626											691										
562											627											692										
563											628											693										
564											629											694										
565											630											695										
566											631											696										
567											632											697										
568											633											698										
569											634											699										
570											635											700										
571											636											701										
572											637											702										
573											638											703										
574											639											704										
575											640											705										
576											641											706										
577											642											707										
578											643											708										
579											644											709										
580											645											710										
581											646											711										
582											647											712										
583											648											713										
584											649											714										
585											650											715										
586											651											716										
587											652											717										
588											653											718										
589											654											719										
590											655											720										
591											656											721										
592											657											722										
593											658											723										
594											659											724										
595											660											725										
596											661											726										
597											662											727										
598											663											728										
599											664											729										
600											665											730										
601											666											731										
602											667											732										
603											668											733										
604											669											734										
605											670											735										
606											671											736										
607											672											737										
608											673											738										
609											674											739										
610											675											740										
611											676											741										
612											677											742										
613											678											743										
614											679											744										
615											680											745										
616											681											746										
617											682											747										
618											683											748										
619											684											749										
620											685											750										
621											686											751										

Kuten Digits 1 to 3	Kuten 4th digit										Kuten Digits 1 to 3	Kuten 4th digit										Kuten Digits 1 to 3	Kuten 4th digit									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
752											817																					
753											818																					
754											819																					
755											820																					
756											821																					
757											822																					
758											823																					
759											824																					
760											825																					
761											826																					
762											827																					
763											828																					
764											829																					
765											830																					
766											831																					
767											832																					
768											833																					
769											834																					
770											835																					
771											836																					
772											837																					
773											838																					
774											839																					
775											840																					
776																																
777																																
778																																
779																																
780																																
781																																
782																																
783																																
784																																
785																																
786																																
787																																
788																																
789																																
790																																
791																																
792																																
793																																
794																																
795																																
796																																
797																																
798																																
799																																
800																																
801																																
802																																
803																																
804																																
805																																
806																																
807																																
808																																
809																																
810																																
811																																
812																																
813																																
814																																
815																																
816																																

Keypad Character Assignment List (5-touch)

Enter characters using the keypad. Several characters are assigned to one key, as shown in the tables below.

● The displayed character changes depending on the number of times you press the key.
Example: If you press (1.ぁ) 3 times in full-pitch 5-touch input mode,
(1.ぁ) " " is displayed ➡ (1.ぁ) " " is displayed ➡ (1.ぁ) " " is displayed
(Press (ﾏ) to display in reverse.)

Full-pitch Character Assignment

Key	漢 Kanji (hiragana) input mode	ｱ Full-pitch katakana input mode	Full-pitch alphanumeric input mode		Kuten code mode
			A Upper and lower case	a Lower case	
(1.ぁ)	あいうえおぁぃぅぇぉ	アイウエオァィゥェォ	．／＿＠１ (space)	．／＿＠１ (space)	1
(2.ABC)	かきくけこ	カキクケコ	ＡＢＣａｂｃ２	ａｂｃ２	2
(3.DEF)	さしすせそ	サシスセソ	ＤＥＦｄｅｆ３	ｄｅｆ３	3
(4.GHI)	たちつてとっ	タチツテトッ	ＧＨＩｇｈｉ４	ｇｈｉ４	4
(5.JKL)	なにぬねの	ナニヌネノ	ＪＫＬｊｋｌ５	ｊｋｌ５	5
(6.MNO)	はひふへほ	ハヒフヘホ	ＭＮＯｍｎｏ６	ｍｎｏ６	6
(7.PQRS)	まみむめも	マミムメモ	ＰＱＲＳｐｑｒｓ７	ｐｑｒｓ７	7
(8.TUV)	やゆよゃゅょ	ヤユヨャュョ	ＴＵＶｔｕｖ８	ｔｕｖ８	8
(9.WXYZ)	らりるれろ	ラリルレロ	ＷＸＹＺｗｘｙｚ９	ｗｘｙｚ９	9
(0)	わをん (space)	ワヲン (space)	０ (space)	０ (space)	0
(＊)	ﾞ ﾟ ↲ *1 (for characters to which they can be added)				↲
(#)	Full-pitch symbol conversion（ー、。！？・）				－
⌃	1-touch conversion (previous candidate)	Cursor up			
⌄	Normal conversion (next candidate)/↲ *1	Cursor down ／↲ *1			
◖		Cursor left			
◗		Cursor right			
⊞		Change character input modes			
⊞ For at least 1sec.		Display "Internet" of Insert phrase			
✉	Conversion to lowercase characters (for characters which can be lowercase)	Conversion between upper and lowercase characters + Switching between upper/lowercase character input modes	Conversion to uppercase characters + Switching between upper/lowercase character input modes		－
✉ For at least 1sec.		Insert phrase			
(CLR)	Single character deletion, canceling conversion	Single character deletion			Deletion of entered code or single character
(CLR) For at least 1sec.		Deletion of all characters in front of the cursor*2			
●	Apply, OK	OK			
(ﾏ)		Show in reverse order or undo			None or undo

*1 "↲" indicates a line break. "↲" is displayed as half-pitch but counts as a full-pitch character. You can delete and edit it in the same way as other characters. Valid when entering mail messages, schedule, ToDo and Memo pad. Also, "↲" using ⌄ is only valid at the end of a sentence.
*2 When there are characters before and after the cursor, all characters after the cursor, including the one at the cursor position are deleted.

Half-pitch Character Assignment

Key	Half-pitch katakana mode	Half-pitch alphanumeric mode		Half-pitch numeric mode
		Upper and lower case	Lower case	
1	アイウエオ ｱｨｩｪｫ	. / ＿ @ 1 (space)	. / ＿ @ 1 (space)	1
2	カキクケコ	A B C a b c 2	a b c 2	2
3	サシスセソ	D E F d e f 3	d e f 3	3
4	タチツテト ｯ	G H I g h i 4	g h i 4	4
5	ナニヌネノ	J K L j k l 5	j k l 5	5
6	ハヒフヘホ	M N O m n o 6	m n o 6	6
7	マミムメモ	P Q R S p q r s 7	p q r s 7	7
8	ヤユヨ ｬｭｮ	T U V t u v 8	t u v 8	8
9	ラリルレロ	W X Y Z w x y z 9	w x y z 9	9
0	ワヲン (space)	0 (space)	0 (space)	0
✳		↵ [1] ゛ ゜ –		✶
#		-、。!?.~()"、,¥& [3]		#
Cursor up		Cursor up		P (during entry of a phone number)
Cursor down		Cursor down／↵ [1]		
Cursor left		Cursor left		
Cursor right		Cursor right		
Change		Change character input modes		
For at least 1sec.		Display "Internet" of Insert phrase		
Conversion	Conversion to lowercase characters (for characters which can be lowercase)	Conversion between upper and lowercase characters + Switching between upper/lowercase character input modes	Conversion to uppercase characters + Switching between upper/lowercase character input modes	None
For at least 1sec.		Insert phrase		
CLR		Single character deletion		
CLR For at least 1sec.		Deletion of all characters in front of the cursor [2]		
OK		OK		
		Show in reverse order or undo		None or undo

*1 "↵" indicates a line break. "↵" is displayed as half-pitch but counts as a full-pitch character. You can delete and edit it in the same way as other characters. Valid when entering mail messages, schedule, ToDo and Memo pad. Also, "↵" using is only valid at the end of a sentence.

*2 When there are characters before and after the cursor, all characters after the cursor including the one at the cursor position are deleted.

*3 When entries are restricted to half-pitch alphanumeric characters (when entering mail addresses and URLs), you cannot enter "   " or "   " "   ".

How characters are counted

One full-pitch character counts as two half-pitch characters.
In half-pitch characters, the Dakuten and Handakuten marks also count as one character.
- In short mail, both full-pitch characters and half-pitch characters count as one character.

Keypad Character Assignment List (2-touch)

■ Full-pitch

[Full-pitch upper case mode]

1st digit \ 2nd digit (the next key you press)	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
1	あ	い	う	え	お	A	B	C	D	E
2	か	き	く	け	こ	F	G	H	I	J
3	さ	し	す	せ	そ	K	L	M	N	O
4	た	ち	つ	て	と	P	Q	R	S	T
5	な	に	ぬ	ね	の	U	V	W	X	Y
6	は	ひ	ふ	へ	ほ	Z	?	!	―	/
7	ま	み	む	め	も	¥	&	☎		
8	や	(	ゆ	)	よ	＊	＃		♥	*1
9	ら	り	る	れ	ろ	1	2	3	4	5
0	わ	を	ん	゛	゜	6	7	8	9	0

[Full-pitch lower case mode]

1st digit \ 2nd digit (the next key you press)	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
1	ぁ	ぃ	ぅ	ぇ	ぉ	a	b	c	d	e
2						f	g	h	i	j
3						k	l	m	n	o
4			っ			p	q	r	s	t
5						u	v	w	x	y
6						z				
7										
8	ゃ		ゅ		ょ					*1
9										
0	わ			、	。					

*1 Press 8ｷTUV 0ﾜｦ to switch between Upper case mode (left table) and Lower case mode (right table).

■ Half-pitch

[Half-pitch upper case mode]

1st digit \ 2nd digit (the next key you press)	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
1	ｱ	ｲ	ｳ	ｴ	ｵ	A	B	C	D	E
2	ｶ	ｷ	ｸ	ｹ	ｺ	F	G	H	I	J
3	ｻ	ｼ	ｽ	ｾ	ｿ	K	L	M	N	O
4	ﾀ	ﾁ	ﾂ	ﾃ	ﾄ	P	Q	R	S	T
5	ﾅ	ﾆ	ﾇ	ﾈ	ﾉ	U	V	W	X	Y
6	ﾊ	ﾋ	ﾌ	ﾍ	ﾎ	Z	?	!	ｰ	/
7	ﾏ	ﾐ	ﾑ	ﾒ	ﾓ	¥	&	☎		
8	ﾔ	(	ﾕ	)	ﾖ	＊	＃		♥	*1
9	ﾗ	ﾘ	ﾙ	ﾚ	ﾛ	1	2	3	4	5
0	ﾜ	ｦ	ﾝ	ﾟ	ﾟ	6	7	8	9	0

[Half-pitch lower case mode]

1st digit \ 2nd digit (the next key you press)	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
1	ｧ	ｨ	ｩ	ｪ	ｫ	a	b	c	d	e
2						f	g	h	i	j
3						k	l	m	n	o
4			ｯ			p	q	r	s	t
5						u	v	w	x	y
6						z				
7										
8	ｬ		ｭ		ｮ					*1
9										
0				,	.					

*1 Press 8ｷTUV 0ﾜｦ to switch between Upper case mode (left table) and Lower case mode (right table).

*2 "☎" and "♥" each count as two half-pitch characters.

Note	● Empty boxes indicate a space. ● Where ▨ is shown, each time ☺ is pressed, the characters will switch between upper and lower case characters.

Appendix

Symbol/Special Character List

Press (i) in the character input screen to switch between "symbols" and "pictographs" and enter them.

Press (o) when entering symbols to switch between "Half-pitch symbols" and "Full-pitch symbols", or when entering pictographs to switch between "Pictograph 1" and "Pictograph 2".

Full-pitch symbols/Special characters list

Special symbols

Special characters may not be displayed properly if sent to a device that is incompatible with i-mode mail, such as other mobile phones and PCs.

Half-pitch symbols list

List of Pictographs

You can enter the reading and convert to pictographs.

Pictograph 1 list

Heading (Reading)	Pictograph	Heading (Reading)	Pictograph	Heading (Reading)	Pictograph	Heading (Reading)	Pictograph	Heading (Reading)	Pictograph
はれ		ひこうき		ばーすでー		いす		はーと、はあと	
くもり		いえ		でんわ		よる、つき		はーと、はあと	
あめ、かさ		びる		でんわ、けいたい		すーん		しつれん、はーと、はあと	
ゆき		ゆうびんきょく		めも		おん		はーと、はあと	
かみなり		びょういん		てれび		えんど		かお、にこ	
うずまき、たいふう		ぎんこう		げーむ		とけい		かお、むか	
きり		ぎんこう、えーてぃーえむ		しーでぃー		でんわ		かお、かなしい	
こさめ		ほてる		はーと、はあと		めーる		かお、かなしい	
おひつじざ		こんびに		すぺーど		ふぁっくす		かお、ふらふら	
おうしざ		がそりん、すたんど		だいや		あいもーど		やじるし、ぐっど	
ふたござ		ちゅうしゃじょう		くろーばー、くらぶ		あいもーど		おんぷ	
かにざ		しんごう		め		めーる		おんせん	
ししざ		といれ		みみ		どこも		かわいい	
おとめざ		れすとらん		ぐー		どこも		きす	
てんびんざ		きっさてん		ちょき、ぶい		ゆうりょう		ぴかぴか、きらきら	
さそりざ		ばー		ぱー		ふりー、むりょう		ひらめき	
いてざ		びーる、さけ		やじるし、みぎした		あいでぃー		むか、いかり	
やぎざ		はんばーがー		やじるし、ひだりうえ		かぎ、しーくれっと、ぱすわーど		ぱんち	
みずがめざ		ぶてぃっく		あし		りたーん		ばくだん	
うおざ		はさみ、びょういん		くつ		くりあ		おんぷ	
すぽーつ		からおけ		めがね		むしめがね、るーぺ、さーち		ぱっど、やじるし	
やきゅう		えいが		くるまいす		にゅー		ねる、ねむい	
ごるふ		みぎうえ、やじるし		しんげつ、つき		はた		びっくり	
てにす		ゆうえんち		つき		ふりーだいやる		びっくり	
さっかー		おんがく		はんげつ、つき		しゃーぶだいやる		びっくり	
すきー		あーと		みかづき、つき		もばきゅー		しょうげき、いらいら	
ばすけっと、ばすけ		えんげき		まんげつ、つき		いち		あせ	
はた		いべんと		いぬ		に		あせ	
ぼけっとべる、ぽけべる		ちけっと		ねこ		さん		だっしゅ	
でんしゃ		たばこ、きつえん		よっと、りぞーと		よん、し		–	
ちかてつ		きんえん		くりすます		ご		–	
しんかんせん		かめら		やじるし、ひだりした		ろく		おーけー	
くるま		かばん		かちんこ		なな、しち			
くるま		ほん		ふくろ		はち			
ばす		りぼん		ぺん		きゅー、く			
ふね		ぶれぜんと		ひとかげ		ぜろ			

- Depending on the recipient's mobile phone type, these pictographs may not be displayed properly when they are sent in i-mode mail.
- In Short mail, pictographs other than "♥", "♣" and "☎" become spaces.
- When a "Heading (reading)" is entered, "　　" is displayed after the pictograph candidate. Choosing that candidate will not change the pictograph to "　1".

Appendix

543

■ Pictograph 2 list

Heading (Reading)	Pictograph	Heading (Reading)	Pictograph	Heading (Reading)	Pictograph	Heading (Reading)	Pictograph	Heading (Reading)	Pictograph
あいあぶり		すなどけい、とけい		ねこ		やじるし、さゆう		らーめん、どんぶり	
あいあぶり		じてんしゃ		かお、かなしい		やじるし、じょうげ		ぱん、しょくぱん	
てぃーしゃつ、しゃつ		おちゃ、ゆのみ		かお、なみだ、かなしい		がっこう		かたつむり	
さいふ		うでどけい、とけい		えぬじー		なみ		ひよこ	
くちべに、けしょう		かお		くりっぷ		ふじさん、やま		ぺんぎん	
じーんず、じーぱん、ずぼん		かお、にこ		こぴーらいと		くろーばー		さかな	
すのぼ		かお、あせ		てぃーえむ、とれーどまーく、しょうひょう		さくらんぼ、ちぇりー		かお、うまい	
べる、ちゃべる		かお、あせ		はしる、ひと		ちゅーりっぷ、はな		かお	
どあ		かお、むか		まるひ		ばなな		うま	
おかね、どるぶくろ		かお、ぼけ		りさいくる		りんご		ぶた	
ぱそこん		はーと		まるあーる、しょうひょう		め		わいん、さけ	
らぶれたー		おーけー、ぐっど、ないす		きけん、けいこく		もみじ		かお、げっそりさけび	
れんち、こうぐ		かお、べー		きんし		さくら			
えんぴつ		かお、ういんく		あき、くうしつくうせき、くうしゃ		おにぎり、おむすび			
おうかん		かお、にこ、うれしい		ごうかく		けーき			
ゆびわ		かお、がまん、かなしい		まんしつ、まんせき、まんしゃ		とっくり、さけ			

- Unless the recipient uses a mobile phone that supports the pictographs in the Pictograph 2 list, these pictographs are not displayed properly when they are sent in i-mode mail.
- In Short mail, pictographs other than "♥", "❀" and "☎" become spaces.
- Pictographs may not be properly displayed depending on the site.
- When a "Heading (reading)" is entered, " 2" is displayed after the pictograph candidate. Choosing that candidate will not change the pictograph to " 2".

Common Phrase List

Greetings	1	おはようございます	**Reply**	1	OKです
	2	おやすみなさい		2	NGです
	3	昨日は,どうもありがとうございました		3	ありがとう
	4	行ってきます		4	ごめんなさい
	5	いってらっしゃい		5	待ってて
	6	お疲れ様でした		6	今忙しい
	7	お世話になっております		7	後で連絡入れます
	8	こんにちは		8	保留です
	9	こんばんは		9	キャンセルです
	0	よろしくお願い致します		0	時間がありません
Business	1	直行します	**Internet**	1	.ne.jp
	2	直帰します		2	.co.jp
	3	休暇をとります		3	.ac.jp
	4	半休します		4	.or.jp
	5	電車遅延のため、遅れます		5	.go.jp
	6	本日の会議は中止となりました		6	.com
	7	出欠をご連絡ください		7	@docomo.ne.jp
	8	次の指示を待ってください		8	http://
	9	携帯の電源を切ります		9	www.
	0	メールで連絡してください		0	.html
Private	1	遊びに行こう	**Original phrase**	1	--------------------
	2	飲みに行きませんか？		2	--------------------
	3	遅れます		3	--------------------
	4	変更します		4	--------------------
	5	中止です		5	--------------------
	6	先に行きます		6	--------------------
	7	先に帰ります		7	--------------------
	8	時間です		8	--------------------
	9	何してるの？		9	--------------------
	0	どこにいるの？		0	--------------------

● Original phrases are not initially set.

Appendix

Examples of Calculator Operations

■ Sample calculations

Example calculations		Operation	Displayed result
Addition, subtraction, multiplication, division	$14 \times 3 + 5 =$	$14[\times]3[+]5[=]$	47
	$(-24) \div 4 - 2 =$	$[-]24[\div]4[-]2[=]$ Press [C] [-] to calculate only for when a negative number comes at the beginning of the equation.	-8
Constants	$34 + 57 =$ $45 + 57 =$	$34[+]57[=]$ $45 \qquad [=]$ (The addend becomes the constant.)	91 102
	$48 - 23 =$ $14 - 23 =$	$48[-]23[=]$ $14 \qquad [=]$ (The subtrahend becomes the constant.)	25 -9
	$68 \times 25 =$ $68 \times 40 =$	$68[\times]25[=]$ $40 \qquad [=]$ (The multiplicand becomes the constant.)	1700 2720
	$35 \div 14 =$ $98 \div 14 =$	$35[\div]14[=]$ $98 \qquad [=]$ (The divisor becomes the constant.)	2.5 7
Percentages	What is 10% of 200?	$200[\times]10[\%]$	20
	9 is what % of 36?	$9[\div]36[\%]$	25
Consumption Tax calculation	3000 yen with tax incl.?	$3000[TAX]$	3,150 with tax
	Total with tax if 13 items are bought at 35 yen each?	$35[\times]13[=][TAX]$	477 with tax
	How much tax is levied on 3000 yen?	$3000[TAX][TAX]$	150 Tax
Premiums, discounts	10% increase of 200?	$200[+]10[\%]$ (Or $200[\times]10[\%][+][=]$)	220
	20% discount of 500?	$500[-]20[\%]$ (Or $500[\times]20[\%][-][=]$)	400
Powers	$(4^3)^2 =$	$4[\times][=][=][\times][=]$	4096
Inverse numbers	$1 / 8 =$	$8[\div][=]$	0.125
Memory calculations	Sum $27 \times 5 =$ $+)87 \div 3 =$ $+)68 + 15 =$ (Sum) $=$	$[CM]$ $27[\times]5[M+]$ $87[\div]3[M+]$ $68[+]15[M+]$ ($[M+]$ also functions as a $[=]$) $[RM]$	M $\quad$ 135 M $\quad$ 29 M $\quad$ 83 M $\quad$ 247
	Temporary memory $(13 + 3 \times 4) \times (50 - 45) =$	$[CM]13[M+]3[\times]4[M+]50[-]45[\times][RM][=]$	M $\quad$ 125
	Constant memory $135 \times (12 + 14) =$ $(12 + 14) \div 5 =$	$[CM]$ $12[+]14[M+]$ $135[\times][RM][=]$ $[RM][\div]5[=]$	M $\quad$ 26 M $\quad$ 3510 M $\quad$ 5.2

● "M" is displayed when a number other than "0" is placed in the memory.

Note ● Delete data in the memory using [CM] before starting calculations involving the memory.

If "E" is displayed
● If "E" is displayed as the calculation result, further calculation is not possible. In this case, press [C CE].
　When the divisor is zero (e.g. 5 [÷] 0 [=])
　When the integers in the memory exceed 12 digits (e.g. [CM] 999999999999 [M+] 1 [M+])
　When the calculation result exceeds 12 digits (e.g. 1000000000 [÷] 0.01 [%])
● When calculating tax, digits after the decimal point are dropped.
　Example: If you enter 99 [TAX], "103" will be displayed.

Appendix

Menu List

Settings Menu

● In the tables on P.547 to P.551, an item marked with "　" returns to its default setting when you use the reset function (P.505).

Sound

Menu		Key operations	Default settings	Page
1 Ring volume	Phone ring vol	●①①①	Volume 3	56
	Mail ring vol	●①①②	All volume 3	108
	Chat mail ring vol	●①①③	Volume 3	108
	Setting sound vol	●①①④	All volume 3	107
2 Tone	Select ring tone	●①②①	1	102
	Select mail tone	●①②②	All　2	104
	Chat mail tone	●①②③		105
	Setting sounds	●①②④	All	105
3 Original ring tone		●①③	-	109
4 Vibrator	Vibrator	●①④①	OFF	98
	Mail vibrator	●①④②	OFF	98
5 Manner mode		●①⑤	*1	97
6 Ring output		●①⑥	Earp. + speaker	114
7 Mail ring duration		●①⑦	ON/3 seconds	113
8 Set mute seconds		●①⑧	00 seconds	62

*1　Record message: ON, Vibrator: ON, Manner talk: OFF

Display

Menu		Key operations	Default settings	Page
1 Main display	Stand-by display	●②①①	Stand-by dsp 1	184
	Clock display	●②①②	OFF	185
	Calendar display	●②①③	OFF	185
	Picture call set	●②①④	1 second	192
	Make call screen set	●②①⑤	Make call1	194
	Rcv call screen set	●②①⑥	Rcv call1	194
	Send mail screen set	●②①⑦	Send mail1	194
	Rcv mail screen set	●②①⑧	Rcv mail1	194
	Brightness	●②①⑨	Brightness 12	187
	Power saver mode	●②①⓪	Start time: 5 minutes LED display set: LED display off	189

■ Display (continued)

Menu		Key operations	Default settings	Page
2 Sub display	Callr ID display	●②②①.	ON	188
	Contrast	●②②②	Contrast 3	188
3 Font style		●②③	Bold	532
4 Misc displays	Popup window	●②④①.	Popup window1	193
	Notice window	●②④②	Notice window1	193
	Background	●②④③	Background1	192
	Title&Status color	●②④④	Pattern 1	195
	Guidance keys	●②④⑤	Left key, Right key: Guidance L/R1 Center key: Guidance center1	195
5 Called LED	Called LED color	●②⑤①.	Green	190
	Mail/Msg LED color	●②⑤②	Blue	190
	Called LED ON	●②⑤③	Without melody	191
	Mail/Msg LED set	●②⑤④	Without melody	191
6 Display light time	Display light time	●②⑥	15 seconds	189

■ General settings

Menu		Key operations	Default settings	Page
1 Check memory		●③①.	-	491
2 Battery level		●③②	-	34
3 User dictionary		●③③	-	525
4 Dwnld dictionary		●③④	-	527
5 Edit phrase		●③⑤	*3	521
6 Auto power ON		●③⑥	OFF	214
7 Auto power OFF		●③⑦	OFF	215
8 Date settings		●③⑧	*4	37
9 Side key settings		●③⑨	None	484
0 Earphone		●③⓪	Earphone : ON , Memory number set : 749	502
✳ Clear memory terms		●③✳	-	531
# Select language		●③#		36
◘ Software Update		●③ "◘Software Update"	-	564

*3　Refer to P.545 for details on default registered phrases.

*4　January 1, 2004 (time not set)

Appendix

▉ Network services

Menu		Key operations	Default settings	Page
❶ Service	NW stored data	● 4 1 1	-	418
	Check NW inf.	● 4 1 2	-	418
❷ Voice mail		● 4 2	-	419
❸ Set forward	Set forward	● 4 3 1	-	427
	Save destination	● 4 3 2	-	427
	Set Fwd w/Msg.	● 4 3 3	ON	427
❹ Call Waiting		● 4 4	-	422
❺ Fax mode		● 4 5	OFF	501

▉ Phone settings

Menu		Key operations	Default settings	Page
❶ Noise canceling		● 5 1	ON	489
❷ Reconnect		● 5 2	OFF	488
❸ Quality alarm		● 5 3	ON (High note)	488
❹ Number Plus		● 5 4	-	432
❺ Battery saver mode		● 5 5	OFF	486
❻ Record message	Set record msg	● 5 6 1	OFF	69
	Start time	● 5 6 2	10 seconds	71
	Check reply msg	● 5 6 3	-	69
❼ Close operation		● 5 7	Finish call	485
❽ Auto answer set		● 5 8	OFF	504
❾ Self mode		● 5 9	OFF	504
❿ Int'l prefix		● 5 0	First item: 009130-010	50
✳ Any key answer		● 5 *	ON	486

▉ Support menu

Menu		Key operations	Default settings	Page
❶ Secret mode		● 6 1	OFF	93
❷ Security setting	Security	● 6 2 1	All OFF	204
	Keypad lock	● 6 2 2	Disable	207
	i-mode lock	● 6 2 3	OFF	290
	Remote keypad lock	● 6 2 4	OFF	208
❸ Keypad dial lock		● 6 3	OFF	205

Appendix

549

Support menu (continued)

Menu		Key operations	Default settings	Page
▲ Accept/Reject	Accept calls	●⑥④①	Disable	57
	Reject calls	●⑥④②	Disable	59
	Reject unknown	●⑥④③	Disable	63
	Reject user unset	●⑥④④	Disable	61
	Reject payphone	●⑥④⑤	Disable	61
	Reject not support	●⑥④⑥	Disable	61
⑤ Send own number		●⑥⑤	OFF	38
⑥ Call details		●⑥⑥	0:00, 0 yen *5	489
⑦ Change sec code		●⑥⑦	0000	201
⑧ Del all secret		●⑥⑧	-	211

*5 Even if settings are reset, accumulated duration and cost of calls will not be reset.

Other settings

Menu		Key operations	Default settings	Page
Own number		●⓪	Your own phone number	39
Initial settings		●＊	-	36
Reset settings		●＃	-	505

Library Menu

Menu		Key operations	Default settings	Page
My picture		●⑦①	-	149
My movie		●⑦②	-	175
My melody		●⑦③	-	110
Print setting (DPOF)		●⑦④	-	169

Appendix

Tool Menu

Menu		Key operations	Default settings	Page
Schedule		●⑧①ᴛ	-	228
ToDo list		●⑧②	-	242
Calculator		●⑧③	Tax rate 5%	492
Money Calc		●⑧④	-	496
Timer		●⑧⑤	03:00	216
Alarm		●⑧⑥	-	217
Memo pad		●⑧⑦	-	493
Receive Ir data		●⑧⑧	-	439
miniSD manager	View miniSD data	●⑧⑨①	-	450
	Transfer group	●⑧⑨②	-	453
	Import	●⑧⑨③	-	456
	New manager info	●⑧⑨④	-	457
	Format	●⑧⑨⑤	-	458

KEITAIviewer

Menu		Key operations	Default settings	Page
e-Dict/Book		●⑨①	-	460
Document viewer		●⑨②	-	471

Appendix

Options and Accessories

Your mova supports an even wider range of personal and business applications when combined with various options and accessories.

Note that some products may not be available in certain areas. For more information, contact your local DoCoMo retailer.

For details of operation, read the User's Manual for each option and accessory.

▋ Mobile card Triplex N

This card supports DoPa packet communication, 9,600bps data communication, and PHS data communications.

● This mova supports 9,600bps data communication.

Main specifications

● Data transmission speed   DoPa*
            Max 28,800bps/9,600bps
         Mobile phones
            9,600bps
         PHS
            64K/32K (PIAFS)

● Fax transmission speed   Mobile phones
            9,600bps (class1 ECM), 4,800bps (class2)
         PHS
            14.4Kbps (transmission via PTE only)

● Connection interface   PC Card Standard Type II
● Supported models   Windows 95/Windows 98/Windows Me/
         Windows 2000 Professional/Windows XP PC/AT devices

● Faxes to and from G4 fax machines supported. (in G3 mode)

* DoPa is an optional service that requires a subscription. The service cannot be accessed using this mova.

Accessories for Other Applications

▋ For battery pack charging
● AC adapter SH002
● Desktop holder SH006
● Data transmission adapter SH2001

▋ To use as spares
● Battery pack SH007
● Rear cover SH006

▋ For your car
● Doccimo DC adapter SH2001
● In-car holder SH009

▋ For enhanced portability
● Carrying case SH007

▋ Other items
● Flat-type switch-equipped earphone/ microphone P01/P02
● Earphone jack adapter P001
● Switch-equipped earphone/microphone P001/P002*
● Stereo earphone set P001*
● Earphone terminal P001*
● USB Data Link cable F001
● Flat-type stereo earphones P01

* An earphone jack adapter is necessary to use the switch-equipped earphone/microphone, stereo earphone set, and earphone terminal.

Appendix

Introduction to Data Link Software

Using mova "SH Series Data Link Software", you can transfer data between your mova and a connected PC. Also, by using a miniSD memory card, you can transfer data between your mova and a connected PC.
You can download the Data Link software from http://k-tai.sharp.co.jp/soft/soft.html.
● To download the software, you will need a PC connected to the Internet.
● Also, downloading of software entails a separate communication charge.
● For details on how to download and operate the software, consult the website above or the Help menu of the Data Link software.

■ Supported models and data that can be transmitted

Model	Transfer method	Phonebook, mail, bookmark, schedule, melody	ToDo, memo	My picture	Movie	Import
SH506iC	miniSD memory card (*3)					
	Transmission cable (*1)				×	×
SH505iS	miniSD memory card (*3)					
	Transmission cable (*1)				×	×
SH505i	miniSD memory card (*3)					
	Transmission cable (*1)				×	×
SH252i	Transmission cable (*1)				×	×
SH251iS	Transmission cable (Read only)		×	(*2)	(*4)	×
SH251i		×	×		×	×

● Downloaded images (including Flash movies) and melodies that cannot be pasted to mail cannot be forwarded.
● Even for items marked with an   , reading and editing may not always be possible.
● The display when transmitting data is displayed with the side with the guidance keys up. The display is upside down when in Viewer position.
(*1) Data read from a miniSD memory card cannot be written.
(*2) E-anime cannot be read.
(*3) When transferring data to/from a miniSD memory card, a device that can read and write onto a miniSD memory card is necessary.
(*4) Data can be read but cannot be written onto a mova SH506iC, SH505iS or SH505i.

■ Operating environment

PC: PC/AT compatible

CPU: Pentium or 100% compatible processor (Pentium II 266MHz or above recommended)

HDD: Must have over 50MB of space for installation.

(Additional disk space is required separately to read images)

Display: Resolution of 800× 600 or greater, and High color or higher

Memory: 64MB or greater (128MB or greater is recommended for Windows XP)

Japanese: Microsoft Windows 98 Second Edition/Windows Me/Windows 2000 Professional/
Windows XP Home Edition/Windows XP Professional

Browser: Internet Explorer 5.5 or later

Communication port: USB port (Version 1.1 or above). However, a USB hub cannot be used.

Others: Devices that can read and write onto a miniSD memory card

■ Cable

The "USB Data Link Cable F001" is required for using the Data Link software.

■ When using the Data Link software

● Copyright

Although this freeware is distributed free of charge, this software is protected by the copyrights of Sharp Corporation.

● Disclaimer

Sharp Corporation shall not be liable for damages arising from faults or failures of the software, and makes no guarantee or warranty of any kind with respect to such faults or failures. Also, Sharp Corporation does not guarantee or warrant in any way the use of this software as a commercial product nor the performance of the software with respect to the purposes for which the customer is using the software.

About the Movie Playback Software

Movies saved on a miniSD memory card using the SH506iC can be played using movie playback software. For information on the movie playback software, refer to " daSH" (Keitai daSH) on the Sharp Website.

http://k-tai.sharp.co.jp/

● To download, a PC connected to the Internet is necessary.

● In addition, additional transmission fees are incurred when downloading.

● Refer to the website above for details such as downloading methods operation methods.

■ When using the Movie Software

● Disclaimer

Sharp Corporation shall not be liable for damages arising from faults or failures of the software, and makes no guarantee or warranty of any kind with respect to such faults or failures. Also, Sharp Corporation does not guarantee or warrant in any way the use of this software as a commercial product nor the performance of the software with respect to the purposes for which the customer is using the software.

■ For technical inquiries concerning Data Link software/Movie playback software:

Sharp Data Communications Support Center
TEL: (03) 5396-2351
Hours: Weekdays 10:00 am to 12:00 noon, 1:00 pm to 5:00 pm
(Excludes Saturday, Sunday, holidays, and other set days)

24

Troubleshooting

Malfunction? Check Here First

Symptom	Explanation	Page
Cannot receive calls during an i-mode session.	● Is "Set i-mode rcv" set to something other than "i-mode answer"? ● Are settings for calls received during calls set to "Forward to Voice Mail Service center (1451)", "Forward to the specified number (1452)", or "Play busy signal (1459)"?	281 416 425
"Service is not registered" is displayed.	● i-mode service is not available because you are not subscribed to i-mode. ● i-mode connection is not set to "ON". Set it to "ON", and try again.	– 286
"self" is displayed and calls cannot be made.	● Is Self mode set?	504
"Sent address" and "Rcvd address" cannot be selected when saving an address.	● Are "Sent address" and "Rcvd address" security set to ON?	202 204
"圏外" is displayed and no calls can be made.	● Are you outside the service area or in a location where the signal is weak?	43
" " (Please wait) appears and a busy signal is heard.	● The network is down or busy. Try again later.	–
The battery pack will not charge.	● Is the battery pack attached properly? ● Are the charging terminals dirty? Clean the terminals with a cotton swab. ● Is the AC adapter properly connected to the mova external connection terminal or desktop holder? ● Is the mova properly set in the desktop holder?	28 – 31 32 32
Even when charged, the mova soon stops working.	● Is the mova properly set in the desktop holder? ● Has the battery pack reached the end of its service life? ● Are the charging terminals dirty? Clean the terminals with a cotton swab. ● The battery life changes according to how the mova is handled.	32 30 – 30
After dialing, the busy signal is heard.	● Did you remember to dial "090", "080", "070", or the area code? ● Is "圏外" displayed? ● When the other party's phone is a mobile phone, the call may not be connected if the other party's signal is weak.	42 43 –
Cannot call by pressing the keypad.	● Is Keypad dial lock enabled? ● Has the Keypad lock been set?	205 207

Troubleshooting

Symptom	Explanation	Page
The ring tone does not sound.	● Is the ring volume set to "Silent"?	56
	● Is the specified ring tone set to "Silent"?	82
	● Is the battery empty?	34
	● Is the power turned on?	35
	● Is a call finished?	42
	● Is there a call on hold?	485
	● Is "Accept calls" enabled?	57
	● Is "Reject calls" enabled?	59
	● Is "User unset" enabled?	61
	● Is "Reject unknown" enabled?	63
	● Is Voice Mail Service set with the ring time set to "0 second"?	414
	● Is Drive mode enabled?	66
	● Is Manner mode enabled?	96
Calls are interrupted or cut off.	● Is Battery saver mode ON?	486
	● Are you in a location where the signal is poor?	42
	● Is the battery empty?	34
The other party's voice is too loud or distorted.	● Is the earpiece volume too loud?	56
Clicks are heard during calls.	● This may occur when the signal is weak and the mova switches to another area.	–
The power does not turn on.	● Have you pressed for at least 2 seconds?	35
	● Is the battery empty?	34
	If the alert tone sounds and you are unable to turn the power on, charge the battery.	34
	● Is the battery pack attached properly?	28
Cannot call from the phonebook.	● Has Phonebook lock been set?	202
	● Has the Keypad lock been set?	207
Mail was received while storing a phonebook entry/ composing a message. When mail is received, the mova returned to the stand-by display instead of the screen being edited.	● Press in the "receive results" screen to return to the previous screen and resume editing. (This applies even when the "receive results" screen disappears after a certain period of time.)	309
Cannot make or receive calls, send/ receive mail, or use i-mode functions.	● Is the battery empty?	34
	● Is "圏外" displayed?	43
	● Is i-mode lock set?	290
	● Is Self mode set to "ON"?	504
The mova does not work.	● Is the power turned on?	35
	● Is the battery empty?	34
	● Is the battery pack attached properly?	28
Notices are on the DoCoMo website and in " & " (News & Help) of iMenu stating that Software update is necessary.	● Software update is necessary. Update software.	564
The date is displayed backwards.	● Is English selected in the language selection?	36
Displayed text does not disappear.	● After checking the content of the notice, press for at least 1 second to delete the message.	43
Cannot perform key operations.	● Is the power turned on?	35
	● Is Keypad lock or Key guard set?	207
		206

Troubleshooting

List of Error Messages

Some messages are accompanied by a 3 digit number. These numbers are codes that are used by DoCoMo and appear on the terminal.

Display	Explanation	Page
"Size of this page is not supported"	● The connection was interrupted because the amount of data received from a site or Internet web page exceeds the maximum allowed for a single page. The data is displayed up to the point where the connection was cut off.	266
"⌨ Please wait"	● The network is down or busy. Try i-mode again later.	–
"Out of ⌨-mode service area"	● i-mode service cannot be used because you are outside the i-mode service area or in a location where the signal does not reach. Move to a location where "⌨" lights to use i-mode services.	–
"Service is not registered"	● i-mode service is not available because you are not subscribed to i-mode.	–
	● i-mode connection is not "ON". Set i-mode connection to "ON", then try again.	286
"⌨-mode is locked"	● The mova is set so that i-mode cannot be used. Disable i-mode lock.	290
"Ⓜ Lights red" Memory is full	● Lights red if the file size will exceed the saving area when shot with current settings or the number of saved files will exceed 700. Actual numbers may be less depending on memory usage because saving area is shared between My picture and i-αppli.	126 276
	● Delete i-αppli and images from My picture to secure memory, and try again.	157 404
"Ⓜ Lights yellow" Memory is full	● Lights yellow when saving area for My picture or i-αppli is 600KB or less, or more than 630 files are saved.	126 276
	● Delete i-αppli and images from My picture to secure memory, and try again.	157 404
"SSL session cannot be established" "Root Certificate is not valid" "Certificate is rejected (tampered)" "SSL session failed"	● Displayed when SSL certificates disabled in "Certificates" or tampered SSL certificates are received, and when SSL sessions are disconnected because of errors during confirmation.	–
"Cannot use. Connected to external device"	● The mova is connected to a car navigation system or "PlayStation". No i-mode related functions, other than canceling the session, can be performed.	506
"Does not operate properly due to error in image"	● Error in Flash movie.	–
"圏外" (Out of service area)	● You are outside the service area or in a location where the signal is weak.	43
"Don't send personal information if any doubt on the site's integrity. Do you connect?"	● Displayed when an expired SSL certificate or an unsupported SSL certificate is received. To connect, select "Yes", and then press ⏺. To cancel the connection, select "No", and then press ⏺.	257
	● Also displayed when connected to a site or Internet web page that uses an SSL certificate while the date and time are not set on the mova. Set the date and time.	–

Display	Explanation	Page
"Unable to protect anymore"	● Displayed when the number of protected messages for Screen memos, Message Request, Message Free, Mail, and Sent mail exceeds the maximum allowed. Disable protection.	274 298 337
"URL address changed"	● The site has moved, and the URL has changed. When the URL has been saved as a bookmark, register the URL again.	268
"Page is not found"	● Displayed when the specified site or Internet web page cannot be found.	–
"No content is available"	● Displayed when a site has no data to display.	–
" " (Please wait)	● The network is down or busy. Try again later. Press keypad to delete message.	–
"Signature space is not available"	● Could not add a signature because the total of the message text and signature exceeds 250 full-pitch characters. Delete some of the message text or send the message without adding a signature.	308 359
"Security error"	● i-αppli attempted an invalid action. ● Displayed when i-αppli attempts an invalid action. If i-αppli ends due to security error, the error history will be saved.	405 405
"Connection interrupted"	● i-mode was interrupted because the signal is weak. Move to a location where the signal is strong before using i-mode services. ● If the signal is strong and "📶" is displayed, the site to which you are connecting to may be busy. Try connecting to the site again later. ● If the "set i-mode rcv" is set to "i-mode answer", this message may be displayed after you finish a call, if you receive a call during an i-mode transmission.	43 – 281
"Connection is not valid"	● If the host number is changed from the default setting, you cannot connect to i-mode. Restore the default setting.	285
"Time out"	● The connection to a site or mail service was interrupted because the time limit set for "Connection timeout" has been exceeded. Try connecting to the site or mail service again later. ● If the "set i-mode rcv" is set to "i-mode answer", this message may be displayed after you finish a call, if you receive a call during an i-mode transmission.	284 281
"Self mode"	● The mova is set to not use functions with signals. Disable Self mode.	504
(Error while checking new messages) "▦ full" "▦ held" "▮ full"	● Displayed when the mova was unable to contact the center correctly. The number of messages received will be displayed after 5 seconds. Reorganize mail and messages in the mova, and then try receiving new mail again. You cannot receive mail and messages if: the total size of unread mail and protected mail or messages has reached the maximum (250K bytes), the total of unread mail and protected mail or messages is 1,000 items, the total of unread Message Requests and protected Message Requests is 20 items, or the total of unread Message Free items and protected Message Free items exceeds 10 items.	295 316

Troubleshooting

Display	Explanation	Page
"Unable to send"	● Displayed when i-mode mail could not be sent correctly. Try sending the mail again from a location where the signal is strong. When this is displayed together with "Address is not valid", resend the message after editing the address. When this is displayed together with "⛁mode center is busy", try sending again later. When this message is displayed together with "Target server is full", you cannot send mail because the recipient does not have enough space to receive the mail. ● Displayed when i-shot could not be sent correctly. Check the address, and try sending the mail again from a location where the signal is strong.	– –
"This software contains an error" "Error in software. Unable to download" "This software contains an error. Unable to download"	● i-αppli data is invalid. Cannot download or update.	–
"This software is not supported by this phone"	● Download was attempted on an i-αppli that is incompatible with the mova. You cannot download this data.	–
"Download aborted"	● Displayed when a download is canceled.	277 278 279
"Unable to download"	● Displayed when there is no data to download or the data is invalid. You cannot download this data. ● You cannot download data if the data is invalid, or the format is not supported.	277 278 279
(During Ir exchange) "Connection interrupted. Retry?" "No response. Retry?" "Authentication failed. Retry?"	● Displayed when the operation to cancel Ir exchange is performed. ● Displayed when the other party could not be recognized. Select "Yes", and then press ⦿. Try again. ● Displayed when Ir exchange was not operated properly. Select "Yes", and then press ⦿. Try again.	437 437 437
"Too much data was entered"	● Could not send data because too many characters were entered in a text box or other input field. Reduce the number of characters and try sending again.	–
"Input error"	● Displayed after data is entered and sent to a site or Internet website. Reset the settings and entered characters, and the display returns to the original screen.	–
"Authentication type is not supported"	● Displayed for about 2 seconds if the mova is unable to connect to a specified site.	–
"Authentication aborted"	● Displayed for about 2 seconds if authentication was canceled on the "authentication" or "authentication confirmation" screens. The display then returns to the previous screen.	–
"Password is not correct"	● Displayed for about 2 seconds when authentication failed on the "authentication" or "authentication confirmation" screens.	–
"Unable to paste. Exceeds max size"	● Could not paste because the total of the message and pasted melody exceeds 250 full-pitch characters. Delete some of the message text or send the message without pasting a melody.	311

Troubleshooting

Display	Explanation	Page
"Unable to paste. Message exceeds 200 bytes"	● Cannot attach because the number of characters in the text exceeds 100 full-pitch characters. Delete some of the message text or send the message without attaching an image.	380
"Pasted data is not a melody. It cannot be played back"	● Displayed if the attached data is invalid and cannot be played back.	322
"Too many unsent messages"	● Because the number of protected sent messages and unsent messages exceeds 100, new mail messages cannot be composed. Disable protected sent messages, or send/delete unsent messages, and then compose a new message again.	309 337
"Unsupported. Cannot display"	● The image data could not be displayed or recognized because it is invalid.	–
"Data not applicable"	● There was an error in the received data, so it cannot be displayed. The received data is deleted.	–
"Memory is full. Overwrite?"	● The total of images in My picture and i-αppli exceeds the maximum size or maximum number of items that can be saved. Select the item to overwrite in the next screen.	–
"Short of memory. Cannot display"	● The process was interrupted because of insufficient memory, and the display returns to the previous screen.	–

Other Messages

Display	Explanation	Page
"Root Certificate is not valid"	● Displayed if SSL certificates are not validated when updating software. Validate all certificates from 1 to 5 in "Certificates".	288
"SSL session was terminated"	● Displayed if the date (year/month/day) is not set properly on the mova when updating software. Set the date and time.	37
"Rewrite failed"	● Displayed when the software could not be updated. Turn off your mova, and then take out the battery.	564
"Camera function is not available now"	● Displayed when the mova becomes warm due to having been exposed to high temperatures or when the mova has been used continuously for long periods of time. Wait for a while before using the camera.	–
"Processing data"	● Displayed when the processing of memory data takes time. Do not remove the battery pack while this message is displayed.	–
"Battery too low. Please recharge and retry"	● This is displayed when the battery level is ▭ or ▭ when updating software. Charge to ▭.	564

Troubleshooting

Warranty and After-sales Service

About the Warranty

Make sure that the warranty card is included with your mova at the time of purchase. Check that the name of the retailer, the date of purchase, and the necessary details have been filled in on the warranty card, and be sure to keep it in a safe place.
If any necessary item on the warranty card is not completed, contact the shop where you purchased the mova and request that they complete it.
The warranty period is 1 year from the date of purchase.

● For the purpose of improvement, the specifications for this product and its accessories are subject to complete or partial change without prior notice.
● Note that information registered in your mova, such as phonebook entries, may be lost or damaged if your mova is damaged, repaired, or mishandled. As a precaution, keep a separate record of all data stored in the mova. If you own a PC (Windows 98 Second Edition, Windows Me, Windows 2000 Professional, Windows XP Home Edition, or Windows XP Professional), you can use Data Link software (☞P.553) to transfer mail, messages, bookmarks, and other content to your PC and store it there. In addition, if and when the mova is repaired, information downloaded using the i-mode service/i-αppli service cannot be transferred to a new mobile phone due to copyright laws.

After-sales Service

■ If you have problems with your mova

Refer to the "Malfunction? Check Here First" section of this manual to see if the solution to your problem is listed before bringing your mova in for repair.
If the mova still malfunctions, contact NTT DoCoMo at any of the following numbers.

DoCoMo group companies

When calling from DoCoMo mobile phones, or PHS phones:

113 (no area code) (toll free)

※ You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.

When calling from an ordinary (landline) phone:

携帯・PHS OK **0120-800-000**

※ You can call this number from any type of phone, including mobile phones and PHS phones.
※ Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

After contacting DoCoMo, if your mova needs repairs
Bring your mova to a designated repair shop. The repair shop is only open during business hours. Remember to bring your warranty card with you.

● For details, refer to the "Service station location list" provided with the mova.

▉ During the warranty period

The mova will be repaired in accordance with the terms of the warranty.

- When bringing the mova in for repairs, be sure to bring the warranty certificate. Even during the warranty period, a fee will be charged for repairs of malfunctions or damage caused by improper handling by the customer, or when no warranty certificate is presented.
- Repairs for damages caused by the use of devices and accessories other than those specified by DoCoMo will incur a fee.

   Repairs may not be possible in the following circumstances.

- Note that repairs to your mova may not be possible if the moisture detection sticker has reacted, if damage from water, condensation, sweat or other liquids are found, or if the internal circuit board is damaged or deformed. Even when repairs are possible, repair charges will be incurred because such damage is not covered by the warranty.

▉ After the warranty period has expired

Where the repair work can successfully restore the functionality of the mova, charged repairs will be carried out upon request.

▉ The stocking of replacement parts

Replacement parts (required for maintaining the functionality of the mova) will be kept in stock for a minimum of 6 years following the termination of production. Repairs to the mova will be possible during this period. Repairs may still be possible after this period has passed, depending on the type of malfunction. Contact the phone numbers listed on P.562 for more information.

▉ IMPORTANT!

Never attempt to modify the mova or its accessories.

- Doing so may result in fire, injury, or malfunctions.
- The technical standards of mobile phones are strictly controlled by law to avoid potential network malfunctions and crosstalk. The use of mobile phones that do not meet these technical standards is not permitted.
- If your mova has been modified previously (replacement of parts, modification, coating, etc.), it will only be accepted for the repair of a malfunction if it has been restored to its original state (as a standard DoCoMo product). However, repair may be refused depending on the extent of the modification.
- The user will be charged for the repair of any malfunctions or damage caused by such modifications even during the warranty period.

Memory dial (Phonebook) and downloaded information/IC card data

- It is recommended that you keep a separate memo of the information you register on the mova. DoCoMo cannot be held responsible in anyway for information that may be modified and lost data.
- If you upgrade your mobile/car phone, data you created and data you have downloaded may be modified or deleted. In addition, DoCoMo may, at our convenience, exchange your mobile/car phone for a substitute in lieu of repairs. Should this occur, some data may not be transferred. DoCoMo cannot be held responsible.

Never peel off the model nameplate attached to the mova.

- The nameplate seal functions as a certification that the equipment conforms to the prescribed technical standards. If the nameplate seal is removed or replaced, repair may be refused because conformity to the standards cannot be determined.

Note that the information stored in your mova, such as the "ON" or "OFF" settings of various functions and the total call charges, may be cleared or reset if your mova is damaged, repaired, or mishandled.

- If this happens, please re-enter the information or re-specify the settings.

If your mova gets wet or has been in a humid or steamy location, turn off the power, take out the battery immediately, and bring it to a repair shop as soon as you can. However, repairs to your mova may not be possible depending on the condition.

Troubleshooting

Updating Software

This function allows you to check whether updating of software is necessary. If it is necessary, a portion of the software can be downloaded using packet transmissions[*].

* Packet transmission fees are not incurred when updating software.
  If updating of software is necessary, the information will be posted on the DoCoMo website and "   &   " (News & Help) of iMenu.
  You can update software using "   " or "   ".
  [   ]: Download immediately.
  [   ]: Set date and time to update software automatically.
- A subscription to i-mode or packet transmission services is necessary for updating software.
- Software can also be updated when set to a host other than "   " (DoCoMo).
- Before updating software, fully charge the battery.
- Software cannot be updated in the following situations.
  - When date and time are not set
  - When the battery icon is 🔲 or 🔲
  - During a call/When out of the service area
  - When i-mode is locked
  - During Self mode
  - When connected to an external device
- Updating of software (download, rewrite) may take some time.
- While updating, other functions cannot be used. (Voice calls can be received. However, in-call menu cannot be used during incoming calls are received.)
- When updating software, SSL communication with NTT DoCoMo is performed. SSL certificates must be enabled. (The default setting is "Able".) (☞ P.288)
- It is recommended that software updates be performed where signals are strong, 3 antenna marks are displayed, and while stationary.
  If signal becomes weak or is interrupted, retry software update at a location where signals are stronger.
- Do not remove the battery pack while software is being updated. Update may fail. When update fails, "Rewrite failed" is displayed and the power can only be turned ON/OFF. Other operations cannot be performed. In such cases, consult with a DoCoMo designated repair shop (☞ P.562).
- Note that Software update is performed without affecting saved phonebook entries, camera images, downloaded data, etc. However, such data may not be protected under certain circumstances (such as malfunctions, damage, exposure to fluids, etc.).

Updating Software (Immediate Update)

1 **In the stand-by, press ● and select 🛠, press ●③, select "� Software Update", and then press ●.**

Troubleshooting

2 **Enter your terminal security code (4 digits).**

- Each entered digit is displayed as "＊".

3 **Press** $\boxed{1.\circ}$ **(OK).**

When battery level is low

- Press $\boxed{2\frac{?}{ABC}}$. Try again after fully charging.

4 **Press** $\boxed{1.\circ}$.

To not check for software updates

- Press $\boxed{2\frac{?}{ABC}}$.

5 **Press** $\boxed{1.\circ}$ **(OK: Send terminal ID).**

To not send mobile phone information

- Press $\boxed{2\frac{?}{ABC}}$.

- mova information (such as the model and serial number) is sent to the NTT DoCoMo site. Your mobile phone information sent will not be publicized/transferred to a third party.

When Software update is not needed

- "No update is needed. Please continue to use as before" is displayed. Press ● and keep using without updating.

To cancel the send operation

- Press $\boxed{\bullet\frac{PWR}{HLD}}$.

Troubleshooting

6 Press ①.⓪ (Now update), and then press ●.

- The software download starts. Software update is automatically performed without selecting menus.
- To not update, press ③ᵈᵉᶠ.

Ready to download?

OK

About 5 seconds or ● (OK)

Software Update

Negotiating

Downloading

approx. 100 %

Cancel

When performing a Scheduled update, this is displayed after "Establishing SSL session (Authenticating)" is displayed.

Download is complete. Ready to rewrite?

OK

Wait 5 seconds or press ● (OK) to turn the power OFF and then ON.

(Note)

ソフトウェア
書換え
Software Rewrite

ソフトウェア
書換え
Software Rewrite

書換え中
Rewriting

50%

(Note)

書換え完了しました
Rewriting is complete.
再起動します
Ready to reload?

(Note)

After about 5 seconds, the power automatically turns OFF and then ON.

(Note) All key operations are invalidated. Updating cannot be canceled.

10:05

Software Update

Checking if update is fully complete

SSL session

Establishing SSL session (Authenticating)

Software Update

Your update is complete

OK

- While downloading, press 🕾 and a message asking whether to end operations will be displayed. If download is canceled, downloaded data is deleted. (Cannot be operated while software is being rewritten.)

Troubleshooting

When "Server is busy" is displayed after "Negotiating" is displayed

- Press $\boxed{1}$ (Reserve).
- Refer to steps 2 to 4 of "Reserving Software Update (Scheduled Update)" for subsequent steps.
- To not reserve, press $\boxed{2_{ABC}}$ (Cancel). A screen to confirm whether to end is displayed. Select "Yes", and then press ● to end operations.

7 **Press ●.**

Note	- If a call is received while performing operations for steps 1 to 7, those calls may be answered (depending on i-mode Receive options) unless "Software Rewrite", "Software Rewrite Rewriting", or "Rewriting is complete. Ready to reload?" is displayed. When the call is ended, the mova returns to the screen prior to the call.

- "📧" lights when mail or message is received at the i-mode center while performing steps 2 to 7. After Software update is complete, check for new messages or receive selected mail to receive mail and messages. ("📧" does not appear when mail is received if Receive option is "ON". ("📧" appears when messages are received.) "📧" does not appear if set to a host other than "   " (DoCoMo).
- If Keypad lock is set remotely when you are performing steps 1 to 7, Software update is canceled.
- Press ● after "Update complete" is displayed in the stand-by display.
- If "check update" is displayed after Software update is completed, press ●, enter your terminal security code (4 digits), and then a message stating unsuccessful update is displayed.
- The display when writing appears with the side with the guide keys up. The display is upside down when in Viewer position.

Reserving Software Update (Scheduled Update)

If downloading takes time or the server is busy, you can set the date and time at which to connect to the server and update software in advance.

1 **Perform steps 1 to 5 on P.564 and P.565, and then press $\boxed{2_{ABC}}$ in step 6.**

- The screen to select schedule candidates is displayed.
- The date and time of the server is displayed.

2 **Select the desired date and time, and then press ●.**

Select "Others", and then ● pressed

- Your desired day and time can be selected. Select your desired day, and then press ●. Next, select your desired time slot, and then press ●. After "Negotiating" is displayed, the candidates for the selected day and time slot are displayed. Select a reservation candidate using ●.

Troubleshooting

3 Press $(1.\overset{\circ}{\mathbb{A}})$ (Yes).

- The date and time are reserved.
- If $(\overset{PWR}{HLD})$ is pressed, a message asking whether to end operations is displayed. To cancel, select "Yes", and then press $(\bullet)$ (Select).

4 Press $(\bullet)$ (OK).

Note	• If a call is received while setting the reservation time, the schedule screen reappears after the phone call is ended. • "📧" lights when mail or message is received at the i-mode center while scheduling an update. After Software update is complete, check for new messages or receive selected mail to receive mail and messages. "📧" does not appear when mail is received if Receive option is "ON". ("📧" appears when messages are received.) "📧" does not appear if set to a host other than "　　　" (DoCoMo). • If Keypad lock is set remotely while setting the reservation time, Software update is canceled.

■ When the reserved time arrives

If the stand-by is displayed at the reserved date and time, the screen to the left is displayed and Software update is started automatically. If the stand-by is not displayed at the set date and time, software will not be updated.

Subsequent operations are the same as steps 6 and 7 of "Updating Software (Immediate Update)".

Wait about 5 seconds or press $(\bullet)$ (OK) to start Software update automatically.

- Have the stand-by displayed in a place where the signal is strong on the date and time of Software update. In addition, if the battery level is 🔋 or 🔋 at the scheduled date and time, Software update will not be performed. It is recommended that the AC adapter, etc. be used.
- If the mova is not in stand-by or is receiving a call, making a call, receiving mail, in i-mode, starting i-αppli, or is displaying a menu, Software update will not be performed when the mova returns to the stand-by after the scheduled date and time has passed.
- If a function such as an alarm is set for the same date and time as the schedule, the alarm will ring but the software will not be updated.
- If the mova is turned OFF at the scheduled date and time or if the power is turned OFF immediately after starting on the scheduled time and date, the schedule becomes invalid.

Checking/Changing/Canceling the Reservation

1 Perform steps 1 and 2 on P.564.

- The reserved date and time is displayed.
When reservation is checked
- Press $(1.\overset{\circ}{\mathbb{A}})$.
To change a reservation
- Press $(2.\overset{\circ}{\mathbb{B}})$, and then press $(1.\overset{\circ}{\mathbb{A}})$ (OK). The screen to select the desired date is displayed. For subsequent operations, refer to steps 2 to 4 of "Reserving Software Update (Scheduled Update)".
To cancel a reservation
- Press $(3.\overset{\circ}{\mathbb{C}})$, and then press $(1.\overset{\circ}{\mathbb{A}})$ (Yes) $(1.\overset{\circ}{\mathbb{A}})$ (OK). When "The reservation is canceled" is displayed, press $(\bullet)$.

Troubleshooting

Note	● If a call is received during step 1 when changing/canceling a reservation, the call can be answered (depending on i-mode receive settings). When the call is ended, the mova returns to the screen prior to the call. "✉" lights when mail or message is received at the i-mode center. After Software update is complete, check for new messages or receive selected mail to receive mail and messages. "✉" does not appear when mail is received if Receive option is "ON". ("✉" appears when messages are received.) "✉" does not appear if set to a host other than " " (DoCoMo).
	● If Keypad lock is set remotely during operations, Software update is canceled.

Troubleshooting

miniSD Memory Card/miniSD Memory Card Adapter

miniSD memory card/miniSD memory card adapter (Trial product)

Owner's manual

This miniSD memory card and miniSD memory card adapter are provided as part of our commitment to provide better service for our customers. Please read this owner's manual carefully for proper use. Keep the manual in a safe place, and refer to it as needed.

Characteristics:
1. The miniSD memory card is an even smaller version of the SD memory card. 2. You can save mova data onto the miniSD memory card by installing it in your mova. 3. The miniSD memory card adapter allows use on SD memory card compatible equipment.

Names of Parts

miniSD memory card   miniSD memory card adapter

terminals   terminals

Front   Back   Write protect switch   Front   Back

Safety Precautions (To Be Strictly Followed)

These safety precautions must be observed at all times because they contain information intended to prevent bodily injury and damage to property.
●The following symbols indicate the different degrees of injury and damage that may occur if the information provided is not observed and the mova is used improperly.

⚠ **Danger**	**This symbol indicates that death or serious bodily injury may directly and immediately result from improper use.**
⚠ **Caution**	**This symbol indicates that serious bodily injury and/or property damage may result from improper use.**

●The following symbols indicate specific directions.

🚫 Don't	Don't Indicates a prohibited action.	❗ Instruction	Instruction Indicates that instructions specified are compulsory (must be followed).
🚫 No disassembly	No disassembly Indicates not to disassemble the device.	🚫 No liquids	No liquids Indicates not to use the device in a wet environment or where it could get wet.

⚠ Warning
🚫 Don't   **Do not place the miniSD memory card or miniSD memory card adapter inside cooking appliances such as a microwave oven, or in a pressure cooker.** Doing so could cause melting damage, overheating, smoking, data loss, or malfunctions.

⚠ Caution
🚫 No disassembly   **Do not attempt to disassemble or modify.** Doing so could cause data loss or malfunctions.
🚫 Don't   **Do not drop or otherwise subject to strong impact.** Doing so may result in malfunctions.
🚫 Don't   **Do not bend or place under a heavy object.** Doing so may result in malfunctions.
🚫 No liquids   **Keep the miniSD memory card and adapter dry.** Exposure to liquids such as water or pet urine may cause malfunctions.
🚫 Don't   **Do not scratch the terminal area.** Doing so may result in malfunctions.

Troubleshooting

🚫 Don't	**Do not place into a fire or subject to heat.** Doing so could cause melting damage, overheating, smoking, data loss, or malfunctions.
🚫 Don't	**Do not touch or short the terminal area.** Doing so may result in data loss or malfunctions.
🚫 Don't	**Do not use or leave in a high temperature location, such as near an open flame or near a heater.** Doing so could cause melting damage, overheating, smoking, data loss, or malfunctions.
❗ Instruction	**If used by a child, the child's parent or guardian should instruct the child regarding proper handling, and monitor the child during use to ensure proper use as instructed.** Improper usage may result in bodily injury.
❗ Instruction	**Keep out of reach of small children.** A small child may accidentally swallow the miniSD memory card or adapter, or suffer other bodily injury.
🚫 Don't	**Do not use or store in the following locations.** ●In a car with high temperatures, or other high temperature locations in hot weather. ●Humid or corrosive environments. ●Locations with strong magnetic fields or electric noise. ●In direct sunlight. ●In dusty locations. This may cause malfunctions or loss of internal data.

Handling Precautions

●The miniSD memory card has a limited service life. After long-term use, writing and erasing will no longer be possible. Please replace it with a new miniSD memory card.
●Do not adhere a label to the miniSD memory card or to the miniSD memory card adapter.
●Because a portion of the memory is used for data management based on the miniSD memory card specifications. Therefore, the available memory is less than the displayed memory availability.
●Do not install the miniSD memory card into SD memory card compatible equipment without first installing the miniSD memory card into the miniSD memory card adapter. Also, do not remove the miniSD memory card alone while installed into SD memory card compatible equipment in the miniSD memory card adapter. Doing so may result in equipment malfunctions, mini-SD memory card damage, or data loss or corruption.
●Before use, confirm the proper insertion and removal method for the equipment. Do not point the SD memory card slot on the mova toward your face when inserting or removing the miniSD memory card. Releasing the miniSD memory card suddenly may cause the card to forcefully eject.
●Do not expose to liquids. The miniSD memory card and miniSD memory card adapter are not waterproof. Do not use in humid locations such as a bath, or expose to rain. When carried on your person, moisture from sweat may cause internal corrosion, resulting in malfunctions.
●Do not place near air conditioning vents. Condensation caused by sudden temperature changes may cause internal corrosion, resulting in malfunctions.
●Always keep the terminal area clean.
●Use caution when installing or removing the miniSD memory card or adapter.
　Do not apply any more load than necessary for installation into the mova or other equipment.
●Do not store the miniSD memory card in high temperatures while still installed in the miniSD memory card adapter.
●Use a soft, dry cloth to clean the miniSD memory card and adapter.
●Do not install a miniSD memory card by itself into SD memory card compatible equipment.
●Do not allow debris, foreign objects, or dust into the miniSD memory card adapter installation port.
　-It is recommended that important data be backed up on devices such as the hard disk on your computer. Be aware that NTT DoCoMo will not accept responsibility for saved data that is lost.
●Do not insert/remove the miniSD memory card/miniSD memory card adapter while data written/stored.
●Under the following circumstances, data may be lost.
　-If the miniSD memory card or its adapter is removed or the mova is turned off.
　-If the mova is dropped, shook, or force is applied while the miniSD memory card inserted.
　-When the mova is used in areas where it is exposed to static electricity or electric noise.
●Do not insert any objects other than a miniSD memory card into the miniSD memory card slot.
●Store in the included case when carrying or storing.

Troubleshooting

To use in SD memory card compatible equipment

When combined with the miniSD memory card adapter, you can use the miniSD memory card in SD memory card compatible equipment.

●Insert the miniSD memory card into the miniSD memory card adapter in the direction indicated by the arrow, with their label surfaces facing the same direction.
●To detach, use the cutaway portion on the miniSD memory card to grasp the miniSD memory card, and pull in the opposite direction.

To protect data

Accidental erasing of data can be prevented. Data copying, folder creation and editing, data erasing, and card formatting can be prevented by using the miniSD memory card adapter.

Write protect switch

Slide in the direction of the arrow

1. Slide the write protect switch to the LOCK position.
・Use a pointed tip to move the switch.
・Take care not to scratch the miniSD memory card adapter.
To release, return the switch to its original position.

■Main specifications of the miniSD memory card

Operating voltage	2.7V-3.6V	Exterior dimensions	About 20x21.5x1.4mm
Current consumption	During operation: 80mA max		
	During standby: 200μA max	Unit mass	About 1g
Access speed	400KB/sec.-2.0MB/sec.	Operating conditions	0˚C-55˚C (no condensation)

●The miniSD memory card included with the mova is manufactured by Toshiba Corporation or SanDisk Corporation.
●miniSD memory cards and miniSD memory card adapters can be purchased at home electronics stores.
●This is compatible with the mova SH505i.
●miniSD memory card specifications and appearance are subject to change without notice for the purpose of improvement.
See the mova Owner's Manual for how to use this product.

▫This product is not included in the warranty.

The miniSD memory logo is a trademark.

Please direct product inquiries to:
Sharp Data Communications Support Center
Tel (03) 5396-2351
Hours: Weekdays (Monday to Friday),
10:00 am to 12:00 noon, 1:00 pm to 5:00 pm.
(Excludes Saturdays, Sundays, Holidays, and other set days)

Troubleshooting

Index

Troubleshooting

Troubleshooting

Troubleshooting

577

Troubleshooting

579

Using the Quick Manual

You can detach the Quick Manual along perforations from page 581.

How to fold

(Completed)

Caution	● Be careful not to injure yourself when detaching.

This manual is produced of recyclable material. Please recycle when no longer needed.

mova SH506iC

Quick Manual

Registration/Contacts

■ General contact for the DoCoMo Information Center
When calling from DoCoMo mobile phones or PHS phones:
151 (no area code) (toll free)
You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.
■ For inquiries
When calling from ordinary (landline) phones:
0120-005-250 (toll free)(in English)
You can also call this number from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHS phones.

If you have problems with your mova

■ General contact for the DoCoMo group companies
When calling from DoCoMo mobile phones or PHS phones:
113 (no area code) (toll free)
You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.
When calling from ordinary (landline) phones:
0120-800-000 (toll free)
You can also call this number from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHS phones.
Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

–1–

Add to Phonebook

1 **In the stand-by, press ⊚ for at least 1 second**
2 **Enter last name** ⦿
3 **Enter first name** ⦿
4 **Select "☎"** ⦿
5 **Enter phone number** ⦿
6 **Select type of phone number** ⦿
7 **Select "✉"** ⦿
8 **Enter mail address** ⦿
9 **Select mail address type** ⦿
10 ⓘ **(Complete) memory number**

–1–

Items you can save

Icon	Category	Notes
👤	Name	16 full-pitch (32 half-pitch) characters or less
R	Reading	Automatically entered
👥	Group	Select from 20 different groups
☎	Phone number	Save up to 3 per entry
☎📟🖨	Phone number type	Select from 5 different icons
✉	Mail address	Save up to 3 per entry
✉📟	Mail address type	Select from 4 different icons
🏢	Personal data	Such as address. 30 full-pitch (60 half-pitch) characters or less
🔒	Set secret	Only display when in Secret mode
🔑	Secret code	Used when sending mail. Enter when specified by other party
♪	Select ring tone	Select specific ring tones for incoming calls
🔔	Mail ring tone	Select specific mail ring tones for incoming mail

–2–

Icon	Category	Notes
💡	Called LED	Select LED patterns for incoming transmissions
✉💡	Mail/Message LED	Select Mail/Message LED patterns for incoming transmissions
🖼	Picture call set	Select still pictures for transmissions

Edit Phonebook

1 **In the stand-by, press ⊚**
2 **Select an entry** ⓘ②
3 **Select an item** ⦿
4 **Edit**

Recall Entries

1 **In the stand-by, press ⊚**
To switch search method
ⓘ① select search method ⦿
2 **Select an entry** ⦿
3 ✉

–3–

Enter Text

Switching the Input mode

1 **In character input screen, press ⊚**
Press ⊚ to switch in order of ｱ (full-pitch Katakana) ｱ (half-pitch Katakana) Ａ (full-pitch alphanumeric characters) Ａ (half-pitch alphanumeric characters) １ (half-pitch numbers) ᴄʜʀᴄᴏᴅᴇ (Kuten code) 漢 (Kanji/Hiragana).

Entering lower case characters

1 **In full-pitch alphanumeric/half-pitch alphanumeric mode, press ⊛**
Switches to lower case characters.
Switching to lower case after entering ⊛

1-touch conversion

1 **After entering character, press ⌒**

Entering pictographs/symbols

1 **In character input screen, press ⓘ (Pict/Sym)**
Alternates between Pictograph and Symbol entry mode.

–4–

Switching Pictograph entry mode 1/ Pictograph entry mode 2
In Pictograph mode, press ⊚
Switching full-pitch symbol mode/half-pitch symbol mode
In Symbol mode, press ⊚

Deleting characters

1 **Adjust the cursor position, and then press ⊚ᴄʟʀ**
To delete all characters
Press ⊚ᴄʟʀ for at least 1 second

Using phrases

1 **In character input screen, press ⊛ for at least 1 second**
2 **Select a phrase** ⦿
To use Internet phrases
In character input screen, press ⊚ for at least 1 second

Entering emoticons

1 **In character input screen, press ⊚④**
2 **Select an emoticon** ⦿

–5–

Text input example

Example) " 3 🔍 "

1 **In character input screen, press ② twice ◯ select " "**
● Enter Hiragana with dial keys. Character is determined by the number of times pressed.
● Select from candidates that appear when entering.
● Press ⊛ to change the character to lower case.

今日 Input message 4/500
Select (25)

2 **Press ◯ select " "** ⦿
3 ④⑤③ ⌒ ⦿
● Press ⌒ to perform 1-touch conversion.

今日のテニス Input message 12/500

–6–

4 **Press ⊚ 5 times ③**
● Press ⊚ 5 times to change to half-pitch numbers.

今日のテニス3 Input message 13/500

5 **Press ⊚ twice ③ twice ⊛ ◯ select " "** ⦿
● Add Dakuten with ⊛.

今日のテニス3時 Input message 15/500
Select (31)

6 **Press ⓘ (Pict/Sym) ◯ select "🔍"**

今日のテニス3時 Input message 17/500
Pictograph 1

–7–

perforated line

Camera – Shooting Still Pictures

1 **Press** ⊙.
2 **Press** ⊙ **or shutter (all the way)**

   To lock focus
   Press shutter halfway to lock focus, and then press all the way.

3 **Press** ⊙ **(Save)**

   To end Camera mode
   Press ⊠

Camera – Shooting Movies

1 **Press** ⊙
2 **Press** ⊙①②
3 **Press** ⊙ **or shutter (all the way) (Rec)**
4 **Press** ⊙ **or shutter (all the way) (Stop)**
5 **Select** ① **(Save)**

   To end Camera mode
   Press ⊠

–8–

Viewing Still Pictures

1 **In the stand-by, press** ⊙⑦①
2 **Select folder** ⊙
3 **Select a still picture** ⊙

Viewing Movies

1 **In the stand-by, press** ⊙⑦②
2 **Select folder** ⊙
3 **Select a movie** ⊙

–9–

Customizing the Display

Example: Changing the Menu screen background

1 **In the stand-by, press** ⊙②④③
2 **Select folder** ⊙
3 **Select a still picture** ⊙
   You can change the background of Menus, Pop-up windows, Notice windows, Title & Status colors, and Guidance key background.

Arranging TOP Menu

Example) Setting background image for TOP menu

1 **In TOP menu, press** ⊙③
2 **Select folder** ⊙
3 **Select a still picture** ⊙
   You can set icons, order, background image, and icon name display ON/OFF.

–10–

KEITAIviewer

1 **Press** ⊙⑨
2 **Select** ①
3 **Select Book/Dictionary** ⊙

   Scrolling lines and pages
   Align in direction to display and press ⊙

   To display first/last page
   Press ⊙④⑤

   To use table of contents
   Press ⊙③ ⊙ select item ⊙

–11–

Composing and Sending i-mode Mail

1 **In the stand-by, press** ⊙ **for at least 1 second**

2 **Select "Receiver" input field** ⊙
3 ② **Receiver** ⊙

   To select from phonebook
   Press ① select other party
   To select from Sent/Received address history
   Press ③/④ select other party
   To send to multiple addresses
   Repeat steps 2 and 3.

–12–

4 **Select "Subject" input field** ⊙
5 **Enter subject** ⊙
   ● Enter up to 15 full-pitch (30 half-pitch) characters.
6 **Select "Message" input field** ⊙
7 **Enter message** ⊙
   ● Enter up to 250 full-pitch (500 half-pitch) characters.
8 **Press** ⓘ **(Send).**

Sending i-shot (Sending Still Pi]ctures)

1 **In the stand-by, press** ⊙⑦①
2 **Select folder** ⊙
3 **Select a still picture** ⊙
4 **Press** ⓘ **(Mail)**
5 **Enter receiver, subject, and message, and then send**

–13–

Check New Message

1 **In the stand-by, press** ⊙⑦

Message Auto Receive

1 **When a message arrives, it is automatically received.**

After reception is completed, the received results are displayed, and i-mode mail ring tone sounds.

–14–

2 **Select "i-mode mail"** ⊙
3 **Select folder** ⊙
4 **Select a message** ⊙

–15–

perforated line

Menu List

Sound

Menu	Function	Function number
Ring volume	Phone ring volume	111
	Mail ring volume	112
	Chat mail ring volume	113
	Setting sound volume	114
Tone	Select ring tone	121
	Select mail tone	122

–16–

Menu	Function	Function number
Tone	Chat mail tone	123
	Setting sounds	124
Original ring tone		13
Vibrator	Vibrator	141
	Mail vibrator	142
Manner mode		15
Ring output		16
Mail ring duration		17
Set mute seconds		18

Display

Menu	Function	Function number
Main display	Stand-by display	211
	Clock display	212
	Calendar display	213
	Picture call set	214
	Make call screen set	215
	Receive call screen set	216
	Send mail screen set	217
	Receive mail screen set	218
	Brightness	219
	Power saver mode	210

–17–

Menu	Function	Function number
Sub display	Caller ID display	221
	Contrast	222
Font style		23
Miscellaneous displays	Popup window	241
	Notice window	242
	Background	243
	Title & Status color	244
	Guidance keys	245
Called LED	Called LED color	251
	Mail/Message LED color	252
	Called LED ON	253
	Mail/Message LED set	254
Display light time		26

General settings

Menu	Function number
Check memory	31
Battery level	32
User dictionary	33
Download dictionary	34
Edit phrase	35
Auto power ON	36

–18–

Menu	Function number
Auto power OFF	37
Date settings	38
Side key settings	39
Earphone	30
Clear memory terms	3✳
Select language	3#
Software update	3 "Software Update"

Network services

Menu	Function	Function number
Service	Network stored data	411
	Check network information	412
Voice mail		42
Set forward	Set forward	431
	Set destination	432
	Set forward with message	433
Call Waiting		44
Fax mode		45

Phone setting

Menu	Function	Function number
Noise canceling		51

–19–

Menu	Function	Function number
Reconnect		52
Quality alarm		53
Number Plus		54
Battery saver mode		55
Record message	Set record message	561
	Start time	562
	Check reply message	563
Close operation		57
Auto answer set		58
Self mode		59
International prefix		50
Any key answer		5✳

Support menu

Menu	Function	Function number
Secret mode		61
Security setting	Security	621
	Keypad lock	622
	i-mode lock	623
	Remote keypad lock	624
Keypad dial lock		63

–20–

Menu	Function	Function number
Accept/ Reject	Accept calls	641
	Reject calls	642
	Reject unknown	643
	Reject user unset	644
	Reject payphone	645
	Reject not support	646
Send own number		65
Call details		66
Change security code		67
Delete all secret		68

Other settings

Menu	Function number
Own number	0
Initial settings	✳
Reset settings	#

Library menu

Menu	Function number
My picture	71
My movie	72
My melody	73

–21–

Menu	Function number
Print setting (DPOF)	74

Tool menu

Menu	Function	Function number
Schedule		81
ToDo list		82
Calculator		83
Money calculator		84
Timer		85
Alarm		86
Memo pad		87
Receive Ir data		88
miniSD manager	View miniSD data	891
	Transfer group	892
	Import	893
	New manager information	894
	Format	895

KEITAI viewer

Menu	Function number
e-Dict/Book	91
Document viewer	92

–22–

Other Functions

Set/Disable Manner mode	Press (#...) for at least 1 second
Set/Disable Drive mode	Press (✳...) for at least 1 second
Set/Disable Key guard	Press ● for at least 1 second
Show redial	○
Show Received calls	○
Display Record message/ Voice memo	○
Display Shortcut menu	○
Display i-mode menu	(i)
Display i-αppli screen	Press (i) for at least 1 second
Display Mail menu	(⊠)
Display Phonebook	(⊠)
Activate camera	(◎)
Display My picture	Press (◎) for at least 1 second
Activate Assistant view	(view)
Register to Shortcut menu	Press (view) for at least 1 second

–23–

Network Services

Voice Mail Service (Fees apply)

This is an optional (Fees apply) subscription service.
STEP 1 Record a reply message. (Default Setting)
STEP 2 Set the Voice Mail Service to "Start".
STEP 3 Caller leaves a message.
STEP 4 Play back the recorded message.

Play back new recorded message	1 4 1 7 ⟳ 1
Play back recorded message	1 4 1 6 ⟳ 1
Switch service options	1 4 1 6 ⟳ 9 1 #? #? 📞
Change the reply message	1 4 1 6 ⟳ 9 2
Start the service	1 4 1 1 ⟳ 📞
Stop the service	1 4 1 0 ⟳ 📞
QUICKCAST ring function	1 4 1 8 ⟳ Set 📞

–24–

Set/Change the ring time	1 4 1 9 ⟳ Set 📞
Record/Check/Change reply message for message box (Optional)	1 4 1 6 ⟳ 5 Set 📞

Call Waiting Service (Fees apply)

This is an optional (Fees apply) subscription service.

Start the service	1 4 5 0 ⟳ 📞
Stop the service	1 4 5 9 ⟳ 📞

Call Forwarding Service (Free)

This is an optional (free) subscription service.
STEP 1 Register a phone number to forward to. (Up to 5 numbers can be registered.)
STEP 2 Set the forwarding destination and select "Start" for the Call Forwarding Service.
STEP 3 A call is made to your mova.
STEP 4 If you do not answer, the call is automatically forwarded to the forwarding destination.
STEP 5 The caller can talk to the party at the forwarding destination.

–25–

Set destination phone number	1 4 2 9 ⟳ 3 specify list number register forwarding phone number #?
Start the service	1 4 2 1 ⟳ specify list number 📞
Stop the service	1 4 2 0 ⟳ 📞
Set the ring time	1 4 2 9 ⟳ 1 Set #? #? 📞
Enable/Disable Forward with Message	1 4 2 9 ⟳ 2 Set #? #? 📞
Check service options	1 4 2 9 ⟳ 4 Check #? 📞

Caller ID Request Service (Free)

This service is available without subscription (free).

Start the service	1 4 8 ⟳ 1 📞
Stop the service	1 4 8 ⟳ 0 📞

–26–

Services You Can Use with Your mova

Available services	Phone number
Collect calls (Paid for at receiving end)	(No area code) 106
Standard directory assistance calls or calls to DoCoMo directory assistance for mobile phones (Fees apply) (You cannot get information about phone numbers of those who have not requested this service.)	(No area code) 104
Send telegrams (Fees apply: telegram charge) 8 A.M. to 10 P.M.	(No area code) 115
Time signal service (Fees apply)	(No area code) 117
Weather forecast (Fees apply)	Area code for region concerned +177
Police emergencies	(No area code) 110
Fire and ambulance emergencies	(No area code) 119
Marine emergencies and accident reports	(No area code) 118
Busy signal inquiries	(no area code) 114

–27–

Pictograph List

Top of display

1 📶 : Signal status
2 📧📨 : i-mode
3 ✉📧📨📭 : Mail received
4 Assistant view (Original function)
   ✉ : Mail
   📞 : Call
   📖 : Phonebook
   ✅ : ToDo list
   📅 : Schedule
   📝 : Memo pad
   📱 : i-mode
   🧮 : Money Calc
   📔 : e-Dictionary&Book
   📄 : Document viewer
5 ↩ : Indicates function that can be added to the Shortcut menu
6 SD : miniSD memory card
7 🔔 : Manner mode
8 Clock display
9 ● : Record message
   🎙 : 1 recorded message
   🎙 : 2 recorded messages
10 🚗 : Drive mode
11 🔒 : Secret mode
12 🔊 : Speakerphone
13 M (Yellow) : Low available memor
   M (Red)   : No available memory
14 📞 : New Voice mail message
15 🔕 : Ring volume set to "Silent"
16 📳 : Vibrator
17 ✳ (flashing) : Calling in Battery saver mode
18 self : Self mode
19 SSL : SSL Display
20 🔴🔴 : i-αppli status
21 📡 : Ir exchange
22 🔒 : Mail lock
23 🔒 (Blue background): Key lock
   🔒 (Red background): Keypad lock
24 🔋 : Battery status
25 🔔 : Schedule alarm/Alarm
26 H : Hands-free
27 R : Message R
   F : Message F
28 🎮 : i-navi link/ "PlayStation" connection

–28–   –29–   –30–

NTT DoCoMo mova SH506iC

Quick Manual

Registration/Contacts

■ General contact for the DoCoMo Information Center
When calling from DoCoMo mobile phones or PHS phones:

151 (no area code) (toll free)

You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.
■ For inquiries
When calling from ordinary (landline) phones:

0120-005-250 (toll free)(in English)

You can also call this number from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHS phones.

If you have problems with your mova

■ General contact for the DoCoMo group companies
When calling from DoCoMo mobile phones or PHS phones:

113 (no area code) (toll free)

You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.
When calling from ordinary (landline) phones:

0120-800-000 (toll free)

You can also call this number from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHS phones.
Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

–31–

Please Follow Proper Etiquette

When using your mova, please be considerate of those around you.

Turn off Your mova in the Following Places

When in an area where use is prohibited

There are places where the use of mobile phones is prohibited. Be sure to turn off your mova in the following places.

   On an airplane   In a hospital
    There are people outside hospital wards who also use electric medical equipment.
    Please make sure that your mova is turned off in the lobby and waiting room.

While driving

Talking on your mova while driving may result in an accident.
    If you do not wish to turn off your mova, please set Drive mode.

When in crowded places such as rush-hour trains in case somebody nearby is using an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted cardioverter-defribrillator

Your mova may affect the operation of such equipment.

When in public places such as theaters, movie theaters, or museums

Use of your mova in quiet public places will annoy others.

Be Careful of Where You Use Your Mobile Phone and the Volume of Your Voice and the Ring Tone

When using your mova in a restaurant or a hotel lobby, lower your voice.

In crowded places, be careful not to obstruct other pedestrians.

Be Considerate of the Privacy of the Individuals Around You

Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending images using camera-equipped mobile phones.

The Following Functions Will Help You to Keep Your Manners in Public

There are useful functions you can use to set your mova not to answer incoming calls, and to silence all sounds.

Manner mode (☞P.96) /Original Manner mode (☞P.97)

Silences the Keypad sound and all the sounds from the mova, and Voice memo is set (Manner mode). You can set (ON) or disable (OFF) the functions that are automatically set (Record message, Vibrator, Manner talk mode) when Manner mode is set (Original Manner mode).

Drive mode (☞P.66)

The caller hears a guidance that informs callers that the receiver is driving and unable to answer. The call is then disconnected. The ring tone does not sound even when it receives calls, so you can drive safely.

Vibrator (☞P.98)

Notifies incoming calls by vibration.

Record Message (☞P.69)

When you are unable to take a call, the Record message function records the caller's message.

You can also use optional services such as Voice Mail Service (☞P.414) and Call Forwarding Service (☞P.423).

**Don't forget your mobile phone
… or your manners!**

**When using your mobile phone in public, don't forget to show common courtesy
and consideration for others around you.**

Sales   NTT DoCoMo Group

NTT DoCoMo Hokkaido, Inc.	**NTT DoCoMo Tohoku, Inc.**
NTT DoCoMo, Inc.	**NTT DoCoMo Tokai, Inc.**
NTT DoCoMo Hokuriku, Inc.	**NTT DoCoMo Kansai, Inc.**
NTT DoCoMo Chugoku, Inc.	**NTT DoCoMo Shikoku, Inc.**
NTT DoCoMo Kyushu, Inc.	

Manufacturer: SHARP Corporation

R100
This manual is made of 100% recycled paper.

**PRINTED WITH
SOY INK**
Trademark of American Soybean Association
This manual is printed with soy based ink.

Li-ion

To protect the environment, return used battery packs to NTT
DoCoMo, any NTT DoCoMo retailer, or a recycling agency.